S·P·Q·R

LATIN FOR TODAY

GRAY AND JENKINS

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION
COUNTY OF LOS ANGELES
STATE OF CALIFORNIA
ALHAMBRA HOOL DISTRICT
No. 29 - 47

2 ft
which
in the
3. If
if it is
4. In c
and hon
5. Writ

Pc

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/latinfortodaysec0000maso

A HOUSE WITH BALCONIES AND LOGGIAS AT ANCIENT OSTIA,
THE PORT OF ROME

LATIN FOR TODAY

SECOND-YEAR COURSE

BY

MASON D. GRAY

DIRECTOR OF ANCIENT LANGUAGES IN EAST HIGH SCHOOL AND IN JUNIOR HIGH SCHOOLS, ROCHESTER, NEW YORK

AND

THORNTON JENKINS

HEAD MASTER, HIGH SCHOOL, MALDEN, MASSACHUSETTS

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION
COUNTY OF LOS ANGELES
STATE OF CALIFORNIA
ALHAMBRA CITY HIGH SCHOOL DISTRICT
29 47
No. .....

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON
ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1928, BY MASON D. GRAY AND THORNTON JENKINS
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

928·9

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

In this second-year course the general plan and the method are those of "Latin for Today : First-Year Course." The recommendations of the Classical Investigation * have been closely followed as to the valid objectives of the second year and as to the content and methods best adapted to the attainment of those objectives.

The recent revision of the requirements in Latin of the College Entrance Examination Board, adopted in November, 1925,† has now harmonized college requirements with the recommendations of the "Report"; this book conforms to both.

Part I, on mythology, provides a thorough review of the vocabulary, forms, and syntax of the first year. For its specific content, teachers are referred to Introduction I, pages xiii–xvii. The only new points introduced in the first eleven lessons are the declension of **quīdam** (Lesson 5), three additional participles and infinitives (Lesson 7), and the closely associated ablative absolute (Lesson 8). Teachers who feel that their pupils do not need this review and who desire to proceed at once to the new work should, after taking up the points just mentioned, begin with Lesson 12 (deponent verbs). The subjunctive is begun in Lesson 14.

The reading material included is believed to be sufficiently abundant and varied in type to meet the needs of divergent courses of study.

The authors have not interpreted the recommendations of the Classical Investigation with respect to freedom of selection from classical literature as justifying a mere miscellany

* The Classical Investigation, Part I: General Report.

† Document No. 120 of the College Entrance Examination Board.

LESSON PAGE

10. NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN · Review of Forms and Vocabulary of the First Year 59

11. NARCISSUS AND ECHO · Review of Suffixes · Review of Forms and Vocabulary of the First Year · Subordinate Clauses 67

12. MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH · Deponent Verbs · Review of Forms and Vocabulary of the First Year · Irregular Adjectives 75

PART II. THE ROMAN IN HIS HOME

13. ROMAN FAMILY LIFE · Suggestions for the Comprehension of Latin 83

14. A ROMAN WEDDING · The Subjunctive Mood · The Volitive Subjunctive · The Present Subjunctive, Active and Passive, of the Four Conjugations 88

15. THE ROMAN FAMILY · The Objective Genitive · The Dative with Special Verbs 102

16. OLD-FASHIONED IDEALS OF EDUCATION · The Forms and Uses of the Gerund 110

17. DEVOTION IN THE ROMAN FAMILY · Clauses of Result with *ut* and *ut nōn* · The Past Progressive Subjunctive, Active and Passive 120

18. SUPPLEMENTARY SELECTIONS 131
AFFECTION FOR SLAVES 131
AN EXAMPLE OF *PATRIA POTESTĀS* 131
"MODERN YOUTH" 133
"PLAY THE GAME!" 133
"MOLLYCODDLES" 133
HOW TO STUDY 134
CICERO'S LONGING FOR HIS FAMILY WHEN HE WAS IN EXILE . . 134
FROM A LETTER ON THE DEATH OF A GIRL OF THIRTEEN . . 134
CITY LIFE VERSUS COUNTRY LIFE 135
THE JOYS OF THE COMMUTER 136
A HAUNTED HOUSE 137

19. TRANSLATIONS OF LATIN AUTHORS 139
HOME — Catullus 139
AN EXILE'S LONGING FOR HOME — Ovid 140
"I'M BUILDING" — Martial 141
A "BLUFFER" — Martial 142
TO THE PENATES — Horace 144

PART III. ROMAN HISTORY

LESSON PAGE

20. The Spread of Roman Dominion · Outline of Roman History · Books for Collateral Reading 145

21. The Roman Republic · Hints for the Translation of Latin . . . 154

22. The First Consuls: Brutus and the Establishment of the Republic · Expressions of Place without a Preposition · The Uses of the Ablative Case 157

23. The Secession of the Plebeians and the Appointment of Tribunes of the People · The Irregular Verb *ferō* · The Ablative of Separation · The Infinitive as Subject 166

24. The Twelve Tables of the Law: Appius Claudius, the Decemvir · The Perfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive · Clauses of Purpose with *ut* or *nē* 174

25. Camillus, the Great Dictator, "Second Founder of Rome" · The Irregular Verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō* · The Impersonal Use of Verbs · The Dative with Compounds · The Ablative with Deponents 181

26. The Roman Senate · The Irregular Verb *fīō* · *Cum* Clauses of Description 190

27. Hannibal · The Irregular Verb *eō* · Substantive Volitive Clauses 196

28. The Career of Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus · The Gerund with *ad* or *causā* 203

29. Marcus Porcius Cato, the Censor · Impersonal Verbs 210

30. Women in Politics · Semi-Deponent Verbs · The Genitive of the Whole 217

31. Roman Ideals of Citizenship · The Genitive with Adjectives · The Dative of Possession · The Ablative of Comparison . . . 223

32. Tiberius Gracchus, Tribune of the People · Indirect Questions 231

33. The Relations of Rome with Foreign Nations 237

34. Supplementary Selections 243
A Joke defeats a Roman Office-Seeker 243
A Dictator condemns to Death his Master of Horse . . 243
The Duties of Magistrates, Citizens, and Aliens 244
Rome's Magnanimity toward Conquered Greece 244
The Grounds for War and the Treatment of the Vanquished 246

LESSON PAGE

The Last Years of Scipio Africanus 247
The Political Use of Omens 248
An Aedile asks Cicero for Panthers 249

35. Roman Wit and Humor 250
A Lady conceals her Age 250
A Witness falsifies his Age 250
A Contagious Example 250
A Too Careful Centurion 250
"Not at Home" 251
Valuable Assistance 251
A Vigilant Consul 251
A Big Sword and a Little Man 251

PART IV. THE ARGONAUTS

36. The Golden Fleece 253
37. Jason and his Uncle Pelias · Causal Clause with *cum* 255
38. The Argonauts arrive in Colchis 260
39. The Winning of the Golden Fleece 266
40. The Return from Colchis and the Death of Jason 272

PART V. CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL

41. Caius Julius Caesar · Collateral Reading on Caesar 279
42. The Gauls 286
43. The Campaign against the Helvetians 293
44. The Geography of Gaul 294
45. The Proposed Migration of the Helvetians · The Gerundive, or Future Passive Participle 297
46. The Conspiracy of Orgetorix, the Helvetian 302
47. The Helvetians continue their Preparations · Future Active Participle with *sum* · The Genitive and Ablative of Description 305
48. Caesar prevents the Helvetians from going through the Province 310
49. The Helvetians decide to try the Alternative Route · The Sequence of Tenses 316
50. Caesar pursues and attacks the Helvetians 321
51. A Peace Conference that Fails · Relative Clauses of Purpose 326

LESSON PAGE
52. A Surprise Attack that Failed 330
53. The Final Battle with the Helvetians · Impersonal Passives · The Dative of Purpose · The Double Dative 334
54. Concluding Events of the Struggle 340
55. The Campaign against Ariovistus and the Germans 344
56. The Gallic States beseech Caesar for Aid against Ariovistus 345
57. A Panic seizes the Roman Army 351
58. Caesar calms the Mutiny 354
59. Caesar and Ariovistus hold a Conference 358
60. Final Defeat of Ariovistus 363
61. The Campaign against the Belgians 367
62. The Belgians form a League against the Romans · Clauses after Verbs of Fearing 368
63. The Opposing Armies approach each other 376
64. The Battle at the River Axona (Aisne) · Special Uses of Participles 382
65. Caesar proceeds against Other Belgian Tribes · Clauses of Anticipation 388
66. The Nervii 394
67. The Battle with the Nervii at the Sabis (Sambre) · The Future Passive Participle with *sum* · The Dative of Agent . . 398
68. The Crisis in the Battle with the Nervii 403
69. The First Expeditions to Germany and Britain 409
70. Caesar's First Invasion of Germany · Ablative of Degree of Difference 410
71. Caesar's First Invasion of Britain 417
72. The Dramatic Landing on the Shore of Britain 423
73. A Tidal Wave engulfs the Roman Fleet 428
74. A Legion rescued from a British Ambuscade · The Supines . . 431
75. Caesar returns to Gaul 435
76. Caesar's Second Expedition to Britain and Cicero's Defense of his Camp 439
77. Caesar's Second Invasion of Britain 440
78. The Earliest Description of the Britons 445
79. Caesar's Military Operations on the Island and his Return to Gaul 449

INTRODUCTION

I

WHAT YOU WILL STUDY IN THE SECOND YEAR OF LATIN *

During the first year your study of Latin was devoted to two main objects: the mastery of Latin itself and the attainment of certain definite and permanent values from the subject. Both phases of the study of Latin will be continued throughout the second year.

Comprehension and Translation of Latin

In the first place, you learned to read, understand, and translate Latin stories of gradually increasing difficulty. This gradual progress will continue throughout the second year, until during the last half you will be reading the Latin written by the greatest of the Romans, Caesar. The method of reading Latin which you learned the first year should continue throughout the course. It is reviewed in chapter III of the Introduction.

One of the most important values of the study of Latin which you secured the first year was a knowledge of the

* To the Teacher. This "preview" is not intended for intensive study. Each of the three introductory chapters can be read over in about twenty minutes, and the authors believe that this time may be profitably expended in giving a general perspective. One or all of the introductory chapters may be omitted, however, if desired, since a knowledge of their contents is not assumed in the lessons which follow.

history, manner of life, and ideas of the Romans. From the Latin stories you learned much about their private life, their public life, their myths and legends, and their military exploits. In particular, you became acquainted through the legends of the old Roman heroes with those characteristic qualities of the Romans which we call the old Roman virtues: sternness of discipline, patriotic devotion to country, courage and fortitude; respect for the authority of the gods, of the state, and of parents; frugality and simplicity of life, integrity and honor in keeping one's word, steadfastness in the face of defeat.

You will return to a number of these topics this year from a more advanced point of view. You will read more of the ancient myths, and seek to understand the Roman view of them, as well as their importance in the ancient and modern world. You will read tales of Roman home life and will learn something of the importance of the family in ancient Rome. In the history of Rome, especially in the development of her republican institutions, lies a very valuable lesson for you as future citizens of another republic. Accordingly you will read about the most dramatic episodes in that history and about the famous Romans who made Rome a great republic. You will understand the ideals of duty to the state which the Romans cherished, and see the various branches of the Roman state in action. The deep religious feeling of the early Romans had a great effect upon their character; you will learn more about their gods, their religious beliefs, their superstitions, and their ideas with reference to the gods. The legend of the quest of the Golden Fleece is one of the most

famous and familiar of all the tales of the ancient world and will be read in considerable detail.

Finally you will read in Caesar's own words his account of his conquest of the Gauls, a conquest which enabled him

TEMPLE OF JUPITER

Jupiter was the chief deity of the Roman state. He was called Maximus and Optimus, and was regarded as the special protector of Rome. The consuls, on entering office, sacrificed here to Jupiter, and the triumph of a victorious general was a solemn procession to this temple. All treaties negotiated by Rome were sworn to in the name of Jupiter

to take possession of Rome itself, destroy the Roman republic, make himself the supreme ruler, and change the course of history.

Thus throughout your second year of Latin you will be increasing your knowledge of Rome, the central point in the history of the world. Continue throughout the year

to supplement what you read in Latin by reading as widely as possible on the same topics in English. Books will be suggested at appropriate points.

Vocabulary, Inflections, and Syntax

During the first year you were obliged to master thoroughly the meanings of about five hundred words; the inflections of verbs, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and adverbs; and about forty principles of syntax. No other ability counts for so much in understanding Latin as a thorough mastery of these fundamental elements. They will all be reviewed again in the stories and sentences of the early lessons of this book. They can also be identified readily in the Appendix. The vocabulary of the first year is on pages 48–51 of the Appendix; the new vocabulary to be mastered is on pages 44–47. The syntax learned the first year is printed in small type on pages 31–43 of the Appendix; the new syntax, in large type. The forms learned the first year are likewise printed in small type on pages 1–29 of the Appendix; the new forms to be mastered, in large type.

During the second year you will master thoroughly another five hundred words. The most important of the remaining forms are those of the subjunctive mood. There will be about forty new principles of syntax, relating mainly to participles, verbal nouns, new uses of the dative and ablative cases, and the subjunctive mood.

Methods of Studying Vocabulary, Inflections, and Syntax

Follow, this year and so long as you study Latin, the methods learned the first year. Try to work out the

meanings of new words by a sensible use of the context and through related English and Latin words already familiar. In studying new inflections, note carefully all resemblances to forms already learned and observe carefully the way inflections are constructed, especially the inflection of verbs. Continue also to use the help given by English derivatives in learning inflections. Remember that no inflection is really mastered until you can recognize immediately the individual forms as they are met in reading.

In studying new principles of syntax keep constantly in mind that the important question is simply *what the word or group* containing the new idea *tells* about the rest of the sentence. This point will be particularly helpful in connection with the uses of the subjunctive. Attack each new principle with the determination to make it your own. As an aid in fixing new forms and principles there will be constant practice in writing Latin.

II

OTHER VALUES OF THE STUDY OF LATIN

During your first year of Latin you found that it was giving you, in many ways, very direct assistance in improving your ability to speak, read, and write English. All those aspects of Latin will continue throughout the year. You will continue the study of unfamiliar English derivatives and thereby increase your vocabulary. You will study the English descendants of Latin roots and get a better idea of many familiar English words. You will see many cases in which a knowledge of derivation will improve your English spelling. You will discover that the new principles of syntax will aid you in writing and speaking English correctly.

Two of these "applications" of Latin will become for some of you of greater value than they were in the first year. (1) You will be able to use your knowledge of Latin words more effectively in understanding the meanings of new or technical terms in the textbooks of other subjects. It has been said, "Latin is a carpet on the floor of every other classroom." What does that mean? (2) Many of you are now studying one of the Romance languages. Try to see the familiar Latin words which are back of many of the words of the new language. Cover carefully everything in this book bearing on this relationship.

Make sure, as you progress in your knowledge of Latin, that you are also reaping the full benefits of the study. This can be done only provided you make a determined effort to apply *independently* the facts learned in Latin.

The improvement of your English through practice in translating should be greater this year than last because the Latin is growing more complex and the exercise of translating it more valuable. But only the habit of translating in natural, idiomatic English will benefit you. Shun "translation English."

You learned a good deal last year about the historical relationships of languages through a study of resemblances. You found that even Anglo-Saxon and Latin are related languages and are descended from a common parent language, the Aryan or Indo-European tongue. Your study of "cognate" words, forms, and syntax will continue through the year, and your idea of the growth and development of language will continue to expand.

MINERVA

Minerva (Athena) was the goddess of wisdom and of war. She was also patroness of the arts and trades. Her distinctive symbol is the aegis, a breastplate to which is affixed the head of Medusa

After a year's study of Latin you are now ready to appreciate better what is meant by saying that Latin has "disciplinary" or "training" values. Latin is not an easy subject. Its chief difficulty lies in the fact that it is "cu-

mulative"; that is, each new step depends upon and requires a knowledge of all the previous steps. It is not a series of separate topics, as is the case in some subjects. Hence no one can succeed in Latin without a thorough mastery of each succeeding step and without keeping ready for accurate use everything previously learned. The successful mastery of Latin means that you are developing a capacity for sustained effort, for perseverance in the face of difficulties, for orderly procedure, for accuracy, and for thoroughness, which you should then seek to use in the study of other subjects and in the everyday affairs of life. This is what is meant by saying that Latin is a "disciplinary" study, that it has "training" values. But to secure this value from Latin you must be sure to master Latin first.

You can see other "training" values in your study of Latin. For example, when you solve independently the meaning of a new Latin word, the thinking you do is of immense value as a general habit. Cultivate the habit of attacking not only Latin problems in that way but problems of similar character anywhere.

These are some of the basic reasons why you study Latin.

III

HOW TO STUDY YOUR LATIN LESSON

Understanding the Thought of a Latin Sentence

The aim you have before you throughout your study of Latin is to be able to read a Latin sentence, paragraph, or story through in Latin and understand its meaning as you read. Hence the *reading of the Latin*, with the general story clearly in mind, emphasized throughout the first year, should be the invariable first step in attacking new Latin, both in work in class "at sight" and in home study. Read it aloud, since the ear can help you as well as the eye to remember words and forms, and thus to get the thought. Read it with careful attention to the thought-groups into which sentences naturally fall, and with all your effort centered upon understanding through the Latin itself the story told by the Latin. Make sure that the thought you recognize fits in with the general setting of the story; for if it does not, you have misunderstood it. Many sentences can be understood at once in this way. Frequently a second or third reading will make clear what was not clear on the first reading. Sometimes rereading what has gone before will make you see the connection better and give you the thought. When you find yourself understanding the thought even of single sentences in this way, you are reading and comprehending Latin as a Roman did.

But you have found and will continue to find, as the Latin you read becomes more complex, that such a reading frequently does not give you the thought, or, at least, not

all of it. You are then compelled to go over the sentence again more carefully, word by word or group by group, *consciously* determining the probable *meanings* of new words, or looking them up, deciding the *form* of each word or group and thinking of the possible *uses* (that is, the syntax) which each possible form may have in the sentence, and selecting that form and use which makes sense with the rest of the sentence.

Holding Ideas in Suspense

The Latin sentence is frequently "periodic"; that is, the main verb is not found until the end of the sentence. This makes it necessary to *hold in suspense* the possible ideas expressed by a form until the word has been reached which settles it definitely. For example, a word may appear in the accusative case, but you do not know whether it is the object of a verb or the subject of an infinitive, or may possibly express some other idea, until some word appearing *later* shows you which it is. Keeping various possibilities of form and use in mind until something comes which solves the problem is the most important habit to form in reading Latin.

A Roman, of course, took in the thought of a sentence *unconsciously*, just as we do in English; but that was because he had heard Latin all his life and had read it from early childhood, and consequently had to give as little conscious attention to the meanings, the forms, and the syntax of Latin words as we have to give to English words. In your study of Latin you are trying to make yourself as much like a Roman as possible in understanding the thought of a sentence in the Latin order of words.

Translation into English

After the thought of a sentence, paragraph, or story has been grasped from the Latin words and in the Latin order, you will frequently, but not always, be required to express the same thought in English. Translation is an exercise in English expression, and at the same time it shows whether you have correctly grasped the thought of the Latin. Accuracy in rendering the thought, and natural, idiomatic English, — these are the prime essentials of a good translation.

MARS

Mars, god of war, was a patron deity of the Romans. His sons, Romulus and Remus, founded Rome

Differences between Latin and English Sentences

This is a very important caution. When you read a sentence in English, you can usually understand its meaning if you know the meaning of the words, for the *position* of the words tells how they are used in the sentence. Thus the subject ordinarily comes first, then the verb, and then the object; and if you change the position of these words, you frequently change the meaning. But in a Latin sentence you cannot get the thought simply by knowing the meaning of the

words; for the *forms* of the words tell how they are used, and not their position. Thus Latin is very largely a study of *endings*, whereas endings are of comparatively slight importance in English.

But it is not enough for you to recognize a certain word as being, for example, in the dative case. You need to know also what possible *uses* this case may have. In English you can usually understand the meaning of a sentence, even if you do not know the syntax of the words, because the position makes the thought clear and because we express in English by prepositions many phrase-ideas which in Latin are expressed by various cases without prepositions. Hence you will need to study constantly all the ideas expressed by each case and mood.

LATIN FOR TODAY

ORPHEUS

PART I. SOME STORIES FROM ANCIENT MYTHOLOGY

LESSON 1

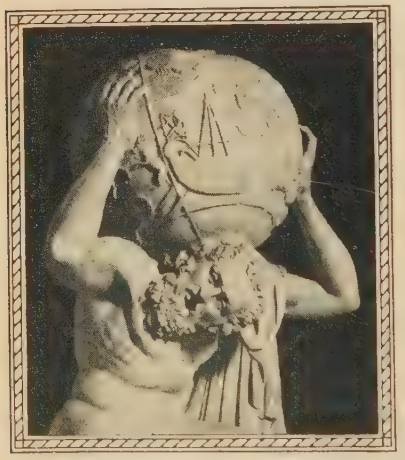
WHAT IS MYTHOLOGY?

Primitive peoples look upon the world about them with eyes of childish wonder. The sights of nature, — the sun, the moon, the stars, light, fire, the procession of the seasons, — all the surroundings which more civilized races accept without seeing, demand some sort of explanation in the mind of primitive man. In his simple attempts at interpretation of the events of nature, primitive man peoples the earth about him with superhuman beings, concerning whom he proceeds to tell stories. Such stories, growing up in the imagination of a primitive people, and repeated again and again by successive generations until finally accepted as true, are called myths. A myth is therefore a story told by a people, not by an individual. Its characters are gods and heroes, and the deeds it recounts are far beyond the doing of human beings; but the motives that actuate the characters are usually quite human.

Most of our familiar myths originated with the poetic and imaginative Greeks. The Greek mythology (or collection of primitive tales) the practical Romans took over bodily, and identified their own gods with those of Greece, as Jupiter with Zeus, Juno with Hera, Diana with Artemis. This mass of stories of gods and heroes formed an important part of the religion of the great majority of the Romans. Rome was

crowded with temples in honor of the various divinities of the old stories, both Roman and Greek.

We must not suppose, however, that the more intellectual Romans believed very literally these early tales. Their great thinkers and writers considered them lovely fanciful imaginings, as we do; but for a real guide to living they adopted a stern and noble philosophy of conduct that helped them to live uprightly and to die courageously. This Stoic philosophy you will learn more about as you study the Roman writers.



ATLAS SUPPORTING THE HEAVENS

The giant Atlas, who held up the heavens with his shoulders, lived near the Strait of Gibraltar and gave a name to the Atlantic (the waters of Atlas)

Through the literature of Greece and Rome classical mythology has come down to the modern world, and it is so much a part of the background of our thought that it is impossible to read many of the books of the greatest English poets intelligently without some familiarity with it. Painters and sculptors also, both ancient and modern, have often chosen subjects from classical mythology. Many illustrations are given in this book. You will find it interesting to make a collection of pictures based on ancient mythology.

An elementary knowledge of mythology is assumed to be the possession of all people of moderate education, and writers of magazine advertisements take it for granted that the average reader will understand references to the story of Narcissus, for instance, or to the attributes of the various

divinities. Make a list of the number of manufactured articles which have the name of a classical god or goddess or hero as a trade-mark, such as Venus pencils, Hercules powders, etc. There are also many words in English having a more concealed reference to an old myth, such as *cereal, tantalize, vulcanize, phaeton, herculean, titanic, labyrinth, jovial.*

VULCAN, THE GOD OF FIRE

Vulcan is shown with his helpers, the Cyclopes, forging a shield. His smithy was in the lower world, and the smoke from his forge was said to issue from the summit of Mt. Aetna. Vulcan was represented as a lame and somewhat ugly god; yet he was the husband of Venus, most beautiful of the goddesses. In this picture Vulcan is making the famous shield of Achilles. At the left stands Minerva; at the right, Thetis, the mother of Achilles

Read books in English on mythology. Two especially should become very familiar, Gayley's "Classic Myths" and Sabin's "Classical Myths that live Today." Charming also is the edition of Hawthorne's "Wonder Book" illustrated by Maxfield Parrish.

CERBERUS

This famous dog was stationed at the entrance of Hades to prevent the living from entering the infernal regions and the dead from escaping. (After an old print)

LESSON 2

THE PUNISHMENT OF TANTALUS *

In your study of the following passage, apply the hints for comprehension given in Introduction III. Underscored words are those not found in the list learned the first year (App., pp. 48–51). You have already met many of the underscored words, and those already met are not printed in the lesson vocabulary.

1. Deī antīquīs temporibus dē virīs malīs quōs vītā prīvāverant multa et dūra supplicia sūmēbant. Tantalum Juppiter ad cēnās deōrum saepe vocābat, eīque cōnsilia sua committēbat. Haec cōnsilia autem omnia Tantalus nōn cēlābat, sed hominibus nūntiābat. Ob hanc fraudem igitur novum genus poenae Tantalō ab deīs īnstitūtum est.[1] Nam ille condemnātus[1] apud īnferōs[2] ūsque ad medium corpus aquā lacūs mersus est. Hīc semper sitiē-

* The story of Tantalus is told in the following books:
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, p. 358.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 162, 165–166.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, p. 167.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Mythology, p. 190.
BULFINCH. The Age of Fable, pp. 274–275 (Everyman's Library).

bat.[3] Cōpia aquae certē satis erat; sī tamen haustum[4] sūmere Tantalus temptābat, aqua recēdēbat. Pōma quoque super caput eius pendēbant, quae, sī capere temptābat, ventī ē manibus eius semper movēbant. Atque saxum magnum et cadere[5] parātum super caput eius miserum Tantalum semper terrēbat.

PLUTO

Pluto, the god of the Lower World and of the shades of the dead, was hard and inexorable. Black sheep were sacred to him. In his right hand he holds the key of the infernal regions; at his feet is the dog Cerberus

2. Notes

1. Solve the meaning from English derivatives.

2. **Apud īnferōs**, *in the Lower World.* The ancient Greeks and Romans believed that the earth was flat, and that beneath the flat expanse of land and water with which they were familiar was another world, called Hades, whither all men descended after death. There the good inhabited a beautiful and happy region known as Elysium; while the bad, in another region, named Tartarus, suffered punishment for the wrong they had done in life.

3. **Sitiēbat**, *was thirsty.*

4. **Haustum**, *a drink.*

5. **Cadere**: depends upon **parātum.**

3. Vocabulary

New Word *	Related Word	Meaning
īnstituō, -ere; -uī, īnstitūtus	institute	(Meaning?)
īnferus, -a, -um	infernal	*low*
lacus, -ūs, *m.*	lake	(Meaning?)
pendeō, -ēre, pependī	pendant	*hang*

Learn thoroughly the meaning of the underscored words.

4. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain on the basis of their derivation the meaning of the italicized words in the following sentences:

a. The music was most *tantalizing.*
b. He was unable to overcome his *propensity* for idle dreaming.
c. Scientists classify man as belonging to the *genus homo.*
d. He is an instructor in *pomology.*
e. A jail is a *penal institution.*
f. The speaker *enunciated* his words clearly.

2. **Pendēre** (second conjugation), *to hang,* and **pendere** (third conjugation), *to weigh,* are closely related words. The root **pend** meant *hang*; then, since weighing was done by hanging an article from one side of a balance, it came to mean *weigh.* Finally, since money was originally computed by weight, it came to mean *pay.*

3. Explain the following derivatives of the root **pend**, *to hang*: *depend, impend, append, suspend, pendulum, pendulous, pendent, appendix, pendant, pending, perpendicular.*

4. Explain the derivation of *dependent, independent,* and *gender,* technical terms in grammar.

* *Note carefully.* This vocabulary contains all words occurring in the new story not met in the work of the first year, except compounds of familiar verbs the meaning of which may easily be determined from their composition. Words explained in the notes are not always repeated here. All words are included in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

5. Drill and Review

1. Review the meanings of the first fifty words in the list of those learned the first year (App., p. 48).

2. Decline **porta, servus, bellum, bonus** (App., pp. 1 and 4). Decline **cōpia magna, ventus magnus, saxum magnum.**

3. Review the principal parts of **vocō** and **moneō**; give the three stems of each; state the tenses formed from each stem; and give synopses in the third singular and third plural, both voices (App., p. 13). Do the same with **parō** and **moveō.**

4. Conjugate **vocō, moneō, parō, habeō** in the present, future, and perfect indicative, active and passive (App., pp. 13–15).

5. Give the principal parts of **sum** and the synopsis in the third singular; conjugate the first four tenses (App., p. 23).

PHILEMON AND BAUCIS ENTERTAIN JUPITER AND MERCURY

LESSON 3

PHILEMON AND BAUCIS

The story of Philemon and Baucis is one of the myths told by Ovid in his famous poem, the "Metamor'phoses." This poem tells of the transformation of gods, heroes, and human beings into other forms; even inanimate objects suffer changes at the will of the gods. Thus, in the following story, a city is changed into a swamp, and the two principal characters are changed into trees.*

In reading this story, follow the suggestions for the reading and comprehension of Latin on pages xxi and 87.

* The story of Philemon and Baucis is told in the following books:
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 77–80.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 83–84.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 43–44.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Mythology, pp. 28–31.
BULFINCH. The Age of Fable, pp. 54–58.
HAWTHORNE. "The Miraculous Pitcher" in "The Wonder Book."

6. Ōlim [1] ut poēta scrīpsit, Juppiter, quī rēs hominum deōrumque regēbat, atque Mercurius, quī hominibus deīsque imperia deōrum nūntiābat, dē caelō in terram dēscenderant. Sē in hominum fōrmam verterant et incognitī [2] inter populōs Asiae [3] sē movēbant. Tōtum diem per agrōs et urbēs iter fēcerant. Tandem ad urbem magnam et pulchram pervēnērunt et, quod nox aderat, locum quiētemque [4] petēbant.

Multīs domiciliīs [5] appropinquāvērunt; adventus autem eōrum nūllō in locō incolīs grātus erat. Quod incognitī erant, ab omnibus jānuīs repulsī sunt.

Ut accidit, nōn longē ab urbe et domiciliīs superbōrum dominōrum erat casa parva et misera. Eō [6] ubi gradūs vertērunt deī, jānuam nōn clausam [7] invēnērunt; neque hinc repulsī sunt. Hīc enim habitābant senex Philēmōn et Baucis, uxor eius. Quōs nūllus servus juvābat; nam duo senēs tōta familia erant, et eīdem jubēbant et pārēbant.[8] Pauperēs erant hī senēs, dominus et domina casae parvae.

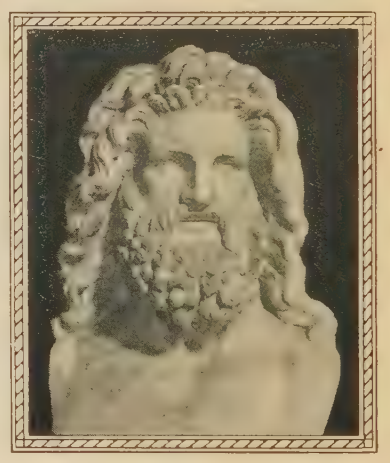
"Salvēte, amīcī," inquit Philēmōn, "et in nostram casam humilem intrāte. Cum gaudiō vōbīs cibum et vīnum ego et Baucis dabimus." Hīs verbīs senex eōs benignē excēpit et in sellīs rudibus sedēre [9] jussit. Interim Baucis bona sine morā cēnam frūgālem parat. Mēnsam pōnit, sed pēs tertius non pār [10] erat.

Tandem dum deī incognitī cēnant, pōcula, quotiēns hausta sunt, [11] vīnō optimō suā sponte [12] per sē replentur. Simul atque hoc vīdērunt, Baucis et Philēmōn, mīrā rē commōtī, horrēbant et maximē terrēbantur; timidī enim putāvērunt incognitōs propter cēnam frūgālem esse īrātōs.

Tum dīxit Juppiter: "Nōs nōlīte timēre. Deī sumus.

Quod bene nōs excēpistis, vōs incolumēs eritis. Sed vestrī vīcīnī malī, ā quibus repulsī sumus, poenam meritam [7] dabunt. Vōbīs in animō habēmus praemium maximum prō beneficiō vestrō tribuere."

Parvā morā Juppiter senēs ad collem proximum dūxit, unde vīdērunt urbem propinquam in palūdem lātam vertī. Oculōs flexērunt et casa ipsōrum in templum pulchrum subitō mūtātur. Tum Juppiter, "Dīcite," inquit, "jūste senex et fēmina digna marītō [13] jūstō, quid cupitis?" Philēmōn commūne cōnsilium nūntiat: "Cupimus cūstōdēs illīus templī esse et eōdem tempore ā vītā discēdere." Posteā, dum vīta manēbat, Philēmōn et Baucis illīus templī cūstōdēs erant. Neque ab eō locō sacrō post mortem discessērunt; nam ā deīs in arborēs mūtātī sunt, quae sibi proximae [14] prope templum illud multōs annōs stetērunt.



JUPITER

Jupiter (Zeus), the supreme ruler of earth and sky, held the scepter, the symbol of power. He controlled night and day, thunder and lightning. He was the protector of the state and the upholder of justice

7. Notes

1. If you do not understand this sentence on the first reading, read it again, omitting the subordinate clauses.

2. **Incognitī**, *as strangers*. What literally?

3. **Asiae**: to the Romans *Asia* meant only Asia Minor.

4. **Locum quiētemque**, *a place for rest* (lit. *a place and rest*).

5. **Multīs domiciliīs** is dative. Just as adjectives like **proximus** take the dative, so verbs expressing a similar idea take the dative instead of the accusative of direct object. Translate such datives as if they were direct objects.

6. **Eō** belongs in the **ubi** clause. Often in Latin each succeeding sentence of a paragraph begins with a word or phrase, like **eō**, linking it with the preceding sentence.

7. **Clausam**: perfect passive participle of **claudō**, used adjectively.

8. **Eīdem jubēbant et pārēbant**, lit. *the same persons gave orders and obeyed them*, that is, *together they ruled and served*.

9. **Eōs** must be understood as the subject of **sedēre**. Pronouns referring to persons mentioned in an earlier part of a sentence are often omitted when it is clear who is meant.

MERCURY

Mercury (Hermes), the swift messenger of the gods, aided shepherds and traders. He wore winged sandals, and usually a winged cap, and bore the caduceus, a staff with two serpents twined round it

10. **Nōn pār**, *not equal* to the other legs.

11. **Quotiēns hausta sunt**, *as often as emptied*.

12. **Suā sponte**, *of their own accord*.

13. **Digna marītō**, *worthy of a husband*; the adjective **dignus** may take the ablative, as here.

14. **Sibi proximae**, *side by side*. What literally?

8. Vocabulary

To the Pupil. When you meet a new or unfamiliar word in the reading, follow the same method which you used during the work of the first year. Regard each new word as a challenge to your own powers to solve a problem. As a last resort translate, putting the Latin word in place of its meaning. This brings the context to bear very effectively. When you are compelled to look up a word in the vocabulary, try to see how you might have determined the meaning for yourself and note carefully any related English or Latin words.

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
fōrma, -ae, *f.*	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
gradus, -ūs, *m.*	grade	*step*
uxor, -ōris, *f.*		*wife*
pāreō, -ēre, -uī		*obey*
pauper, -eris	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
humilis, -e	humility	*humble*
vīnum, -ī, *n.*		*wine*
rudis, -e	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
frūgālis, -e	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
pār, paris	"at par"	*equal, even*
pōculum, -ī, *n.*		*cup*
hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus	exhaust	*draw, drain, drink*
sponte suā	spontaneous	*of one's own will*
mīrus, -a, -um	miracle	*astonishing, wonderful*
nōlī, nōlīte, *imperative*		*do not* (lit. *be unwilling to*)
incolumis, -e		*unharmed, safe*
collis, -is, *m.*		*hill*
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*		*swamp, marsh*
jūstus, -a, -um	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
dignus, -a, -um	dignity	*worthy*
commūnis, -e	community	*common, joint*

9. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

a. His failure greatly *humiliated* him.
b. There was considerable *disparity* in their ages.
c. *Condign* punishment was promptly meted out.
d. The librarian was famous for his scholarship and his *erudition*.

2. Explain the derivation of *depletion, exhaustion* (why spelled with an *h*?), *degradation, mercurial, jovial, impoverish.*

3. Explain the following derivatives from **tribuere**, *to give, bestow, assign*, noting especially the force of prefixes: *tribute, tributary, attribute, distribute, contribute, retribution.* Account for the two *t's* in *attribute* and the one in *retribution.* What does *contribution* show about the last principal part of **tribuō**?

MERCURY, OR HERMES

The head of a famous statue of Hermes made by Praxiteles, one of the greatest of Greek sculptors

4. *Umpire* is from **nōn**, *not*, and **pār**, *equal*, and meant originally a third man called in to decide a dispute by making the vote *unequal.* A *peer*less leader has no *equal.* Stock is "at par" when the quoted price is *equal* to its face value. A *pair* consists of two *equal* or like things. Look up *disparage.*

10. Drill and Review

1. Review the words numbered 51–100 (App., p. 48).

2. Decline **ager, puer, vir, miser, noster** (App., pp. 1 and 4). What problem is involved in declining words in **-er**?

What English derivatives of these words show the form of the Latin stem? Decline **beneficium vestrum, locus pulcher.**

3. Decline **mīles, cōnsul, caput, cīvitās** (App., p. 2). Give English derivatives showing the stems of the first three.

4. Give the genitive singular and the gender of **genus, homō, urbs, nox, cūstōs, tempus, pēs, corpus.**

5. Review the principal parts, stems, and synopses (third singular and plural) of **dūcō, capiō,** and **audiō** (App., p. 13). Conjugate in the present and future indicative active.

6. Give the principal parts and stems of **regō, excipiō, inveniō.** Give derivatives showing the participial stem. Conjugate in the present and future indicative active.

7. Give the infinitives (so far as already learned), with meanings, of **vocō** and **moneō** (App., p. 20). Give the principal parts and the infinitives of **dō** and **jubeō.**

LESSON 4

HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Hercules was a Greek hero, who was noted for his great strength, and for the twelve exploits that he performed during the years of his servitude to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns. These exploits are known as the "Twelve Labors of Hercules."*

From your reading of Latin in the first year you are expected to be familiar with the principles of Latin syntax referred to in the following story. The references are to the "Summary of Grammatical Principles" given in the Appendix, pages 31–43.

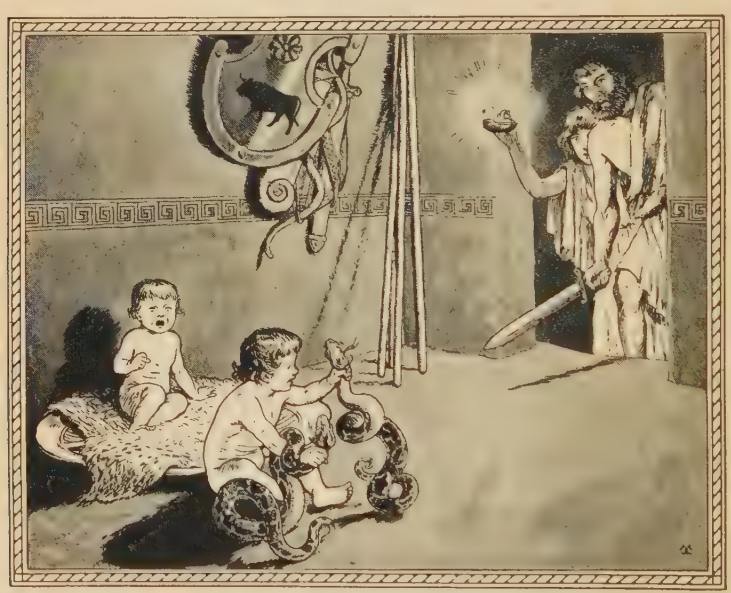
11. Poētae [8] antīquī [2] fābulās [23] multās nārrāvērunt.[1] Magistrī antīquī puerīs [14] puellīsque hās fābulās nārrābant. Hās in librīs nostrīs [41] hodiē legimus. Hae fābulae antīquōs [6] dēlectābant; et puerīs [15] hodiē sunt grātae.[3]

Multae fābulae dē Hercule [45] ā poētīs antīquīs [40] nārrābantur. Herculēs fīlius [9] Alcmēnae [10] erat. Fortissimus [9] erat atque omnium hominum [11] validissimus. Poētae nārrant Herculem [27] in Graeciā habitāvisse.[84] Adulēscēns Thēbīs [47] habitābat. Duodecim annōs [26] in servitūte ab Eurystheō habēbātur. Per hōs annōs [25] Eurystheus Herculem duodecim labōrēs cōnficere [81] jussit.

Jūnō, rēgīna [4] deōrum, Alcmēnam, mātrem Herculis, nōn amābat. Itaque Herculem, quī [5] adhūc īnfāns erat,

* The story of Hercules is told in the following books:
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 215–228.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 211–229.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 216–239.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Mythology, pp. 210–227.
BULFINCH. Age of Fable, pp. 149–154.

interficere[82] cōnstituit. Mīsit igitur duās serpentēs in domicilium[24] Alcmēnae. Quae[7] mediā nocte[42] in cubiculum vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre[29] dormiēbat. Puerī forte in scūtō magnō dormiēbant. Serpentēs jam



HERCULES STRANGLES THE SERPENTS

appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō[38] excitātī sunt.

Frāter Herculis, nōmine[43] Īphiclēs, timidus puer erat. "Māter![46] Māter!" magnā vōce[31] clāmābat. Sed Herculēs ipse, puer magnae virtūtis,[12] nōn territus est. Parvīs manibus[30] serpentēs statim prehendit, et colla eārum magnā vī compressit. Hōc modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectae sunt. Alcmēna, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audīverat et

marītum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et gladium rapuit; tum ad puerōs properāvit, sed ubi ad locum vēnit, rem mīram vīdit, Herculēs enim rīdēbat et serpentēs interfectōs [85] mōnstrābat. Maximē forte patrī [16] et mātrī puerōrum factum Herculis vidēbātur (*seemed*). Alcmēna salūte [32] līberōrum dēlectāta [86] ex cubiculō [39] properāvit et Jovī (*to Jupiter*) grātiās ēgit.

12. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*	*servus*	*slavery*
labor, -ōris, *m.*	labor, *labōrō*	*labor, work, trouble*
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	*con* + *faciō*	*perform, accomplish, exhaust*
serpēns, -entis, *f.*	serpent	(Meaning?)
vīs, vīs, *f.*	vim	*force, violence*; plur. **vīrēs, -ium,** *strength*
comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus	*con* + *premō*	*press together*
lūmen, -inis, *n.*	illuminate	*light, lamp*
accendō, -ere, -ī, -cēnsus	censer	*set fire to, light*

13. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

a. *Rapine* and destruction marked the enemy's advance.
b. They pulled him from the water and tried to *resuscitate* him.
c. Near the horizon were great banks of *luminous* clouds.

2. Study the following derivatives from **prehendere**, *to seize.* To ap*prehend* a criminal is to *seize* him. A person ap*prehen*sive of danger *lays hold* of it with his mind, anticipates and fears it. To com*prehend* a thought is to *grasp* it completely

(*con-*, intensive). To re*prehend* a person is to *hold* him back, check, reprove him. A re*prehens*ible (force of suffix?) act should be *checked*, reproved. Explain ***prehensile.***

JUNO

Juno (Hera), the sister and wife of Jupiter, was the most queenly of the goddesses. Juno, Jupiter, and Minerva were the three chief deities of Rome. Juno was the guardian of women. Her power is symbolized by the scepter. The peacock was sacred to her

3. The derivatives of **prehendō** just given have reached us directly from Latin and follow closely the Latin spelling. In the following derivatives, reaching us indirectly through French, changes in spelling have taken place. An ap*prent*ice is just *grasping* or learning his trade. An im*pregn*able fortress cannot be *seized*. Nations at war engage in re*pris*als when they *hold back* or seize something in retaliation. *Reprisal* now means retaliation. A *prize* was something *seized* in war. There is thus a great difference between direct and indirect Latin derivatives. The main value for students of Latin lies in the direct derivatives.

4. Explain the force of prefix, root, and suffix in *incomprehensible, irrepressible, immersion, fortitude, laborious.*

14. Drill and Review *

1. Review words numbered 101–150 (App., pp. 48 and 49).

2. Decline **manus, diēs,** and **rēs** (App., p. 3). Decline **adventus** (sing.) and **gradus** (plur.). Decline **vīs** (App., p. 3).

* To the Teacher. Selections may be made, in accordance with the needs of the class, from the various types of drill material included.

3. Give the genitive singular and ablative singular of **palūs, labor, māter, pater, vōx, salūs, servitūs.** Give the genitive plural of the first five. Give the nominative plural of **genus, corpus, caput.**

4. Decline **omnis, ācer, audāx,** (App., p. 5). What three forms differ from those of most nouns of the third declension? What kind of stems do these adjectives and nouns respectively have? Give the genitive singular, ablative singular, and genitive plural of **tempus breve, homō fortis.** Decline **cōnsilium commūne.**

5. Give the principal parts and stems of **nārrō, habeō, cōnstituō, rapiō, veniō.** Give derivatives of the fourth principal part. Conjugate the present and perfect active tenses.

6. Give the principal parts of **horreō, clāmō, prehendō, premō, commoveō, agō, dormiō, committō, mergō, cadō, terreō.**

7. Decline **hic, ille, ipse, quī** (App., pp. 8 and 9).

8. Give the infinitives (so far as already learned), with meanings, of **dūcō, capiō, audiō** (App., p. 20). Give the principal parts and the infinitives of **legō, interficiō,** and **dormiō** (active).

9. *The Uses of the Nominative and Genitive.* (*a*) Read, explain the case of the italicized words, and translate:

1. *Cīvitātēs Germāniae* erant *barbarae.* 2. Cīvēs Graeciae nōn appellābantur *barbarī.* 3. Captīvī vidēbantur *barbarī.* 4. Amīcī nostrī *cōnsulēs* creātī erant. 5. Cōnsulēs Rōmānī erant hominēs *auctōritātis maximae* et *dignitātis.* 6. Cōnsul factum *summae audāciae* laudābat. 7. Pars *exercitūs* in castrīs majōribus mānserat. 8. Pars *classis* dēlēta est; reliqua pars hostēs vītāverat. 9. Rōma exīstimābātur maxima *urbium omnium* Italiae.

(*b*) Express in Latin the italicized words, and tell the reason for the case of each word:

1. They are leaders *of great diligence.* 2. Part *of your friends* are speaking. 3. The terms seemed *very hard.* 4. That boy, who is called *Marcus,* is a boy *of good mind.* 5. Many *of the horsemen* had horses *of very little speed.*

LESSON 5

ATALANTA'S RACE

In the myth of Atalanta the story is told of a maiden who would marry only the man who could beat her in a running race. Many suitors contended with her and forfeited their lives as a condition of their defeat. Hippomenes, however, with the aid of Venus was able to beat Atalanta.*

15. Quī [1] in certāmine pedum [2] dubitat, interdum superātur. Fortasse audīvistis quandam [3] virginem Graecam celeritāte virōs vēlōcēs facile superāvisse sed ipsam tandem superātam esse [4]; nam breve tempus in cursū dubitāvit. Audīte igitur fābulam dē Atalantā, celerrimā puellārum antīquārum.

Atalanta nōn modo celerius [5] quam omnēs virī currere poterat sed etiam pulcherrima erat. Propter hanc pulchritūdinem [6] multī eam in mātrimōnium dūcere cupiēbant. Frūstrā autem cupiēbant: nam dūrae erant condiciōnēs quās Atalanta procīs nūntiābat. "Sī mē," inquit, "certāmine pedum superāveris, mē in mātrimōnium dūcere poteris; sīn ā mē superātus eris, tē ad mortem dūcī necesse erit." Virgō sē condiciōne eius modī procōs territūram esse [7] spērābat. Multī tamen

* The story of Atalanta is told in the following books:
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 139–141.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 179–180.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 276–278.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Myths, pp. 115–117.
BULFINCH. Age of Fable, pp. 146–148.

ATALANTA'S RACE

From a painting by Poynter

juvenēs (tanta erat fāma pulchritūdinis virginis) cum Atalantā pedibus contendērunt; et multī victī cursū poenās ex foedere pependērunt.

Forte juvenis quīdam, nōmine Hippomenēs, sēderat certāminis inīquī spectātor et pulchram puellam vīderat. Neque fātō procōrum miserōrum commōtus est; sed statim fortūnam certāminis temptāre ipse cōnstituit. "Deus ipse," inquit, "audācēs juvat." Prīmum igitur ā deā Venere auxilium ōrāvit; quae eī tria pōma aurea dedit atque ūsum eōrum docuit.

Tandem diēs certāminis aderat et omnibus ex partibus spectātōrēs ad certāmen convēnerant. Simul atque signum tubā datum est, et juvenis et puella ab carcere ēmicuērunt [8] et celerī pede per arēnam volāvērunt. Interim populus eōs clāmōribus incitābant: "Nunc, nunc est tempus currere, Hippomenē! Properā! Pelle moram! Celerius curre, Atalanta, aut tū vincēris."

Jam dēfessī magnum spatium cucurrērunt et mēta longē abest. Tum dēnique Hippomenēs imperiō Veneris ūnum ē tribus pōmīs multōs pedēs ab oblīquō [9] jacit. Statim virgō ob cupiditātem aurī cursum vertit et pōmum volvēns [10] petit. Dum illa petit, Hippomenēs prīmum locum occupat. Resonant spectācula plausū.[11] Sed Atalanta celerī cursū moram corrigit atque iterum juvenem post tergum relinquit. Inde secundum pōmum eōdem modō jacitur et petitur.

Ubi tandem fīnem cursūs esse propinquum intellēxit, "Nunc," ōrat Hippomenēs, "mē juvā, dea mūneris meī auctor."[12] Hīs verbīs tertium pōmum jacit. Neque frūstrā ōrat; nam dea Atalantam diūtius dubitāre et longē ā cursū vertere coēgit et eam impedīvit. Dum virgō

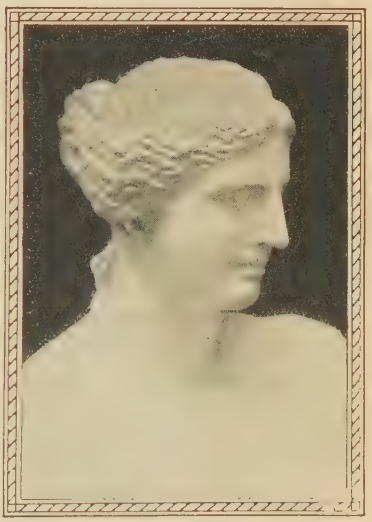
pōmum petit, Hippomenēs victor cōnsiliō subsidiōque deae ad fīnem cursūs celeriter pervēnit. Superāta est virgō; dūxit ab arēnā praemia sua victor.

16. Notes

1. Sometimes a relative clause is placed before its antecedent, and sometimes the antecedent is itself omitted, as here. So in English: "Who loves me loves my dog."

2. **Certāmine pedum,** *a footrace* (lit. *a contest of feet*).

3. **Quandam** is accusative singular of the indefinite pronoun **quīdam,** *a certain.* Indefinite pronouns, which are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, refer to persons or things in an indefinite way; in this they are different from demonstratives, which point out persons or things in a definite way. For the declension of **quīdam** (**quī** + the suffix **-dam**), see the Appendix, page 10. Observe that when **m** comes before **d** it is changed to **n**: as, **quandam** for **quamdam**, like *eun*dem.



VENUS OF MILO

Venus (or Aphrodite) was the goddess of love and beauty, possessing all the charms and graces that are associated with womanhood. In the world of nature she symbolized the force that reproduces life

4. **Superātam esse:** perfect infinitive passive. This infinitive is formed by using the perfect passive participle with **esse**; the participle, being an adjective, changes its ending to agree with the subject of the infinitive.

5. Comparative of **celeriter**. Superlative? Derivative?

6. If **lātitūdō**, from **lātus**, *wide*, means *width*, what must **pulchritūdō** mean? Derivative?

7. **Sē . . . territūram esse**, *that she would frighten*. **Territūram esse** is a future active infinitive in an indirect statement; its subject is **sē**. The future infinitive expresses time *after* that of the verb of *thinking* upon which it depends.

8. **Ab carcere ēmicuērunt**, *leaped forth from the starting place*. The expression is taken from the chariot race.

9. **Ab oblīquō**, *sideways*. Derivative?

10. **Volvēns**, *rolling*; accusative singular of the present active participle of **volvō**. Part of speech of a participle?

11. The story and English derivatives should give you the meaning of the sentence. If you are compelled to look up any of the words in the general vocabulary, determine first the exact form for which you are going to look. **Resonant** is shown by the **a** to be a verb of the first conjugation. Accordingly you will look for **resonō**. **Spectācula** must be the subject of **resonant**, and hence is nominative neuter plural from **spectāculum**, the vocabulary form. **Plausū** is shown by the **ū** to be ablative singular of a noun of the fourth declension, and hence the form to look up is **plausus**.

12. An appositive with **dea**.

17. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam)		*a certain*
vēlōx, vēlōcis	velocity	*swift*
cursus, -ūs, *m.*	*currō*	*race, course*
celer, celeris, celere	celerity	(Meaning?)
procus, -ī, *m.*		*suitor*
sīn, *conj.*	*sī*	*but if*
inīquus, -a, -um	*in* + *aequus*	(Meaning?)

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
aureus, -a, -um	*aurum*	(Meaning?)
ūsus, -ūs, *m.*	use	(Meaning?)
carcer, -eris, *m.*		*barriers, prison*
ēmicō, -āre, -uī, -ātus		*spring forth*
oblīquus, -a, -um	oblique	*sideways*
corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus	correct, *regō*	*make up*
auctor, -ōris, *m.*	*auctōritās*	*maker, author*
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus	cogent, *con* + *agō*	*compel, force*

18. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words:

a. He was *incarcerated* in this horrible dungeon for a year.
b. The child proved utterly *incorrigible.*
c. His moral *obliquity* unfitted him for positions of trust.

2. Explain the derivation of *velocipede, delinquency, oriole.*

3. To re*volve* (from **volvere**, *to roll, turn*) means to *turn* back or around. The re*volut*ion of the earth is its *turning* around the sun. A re*volt*ing sight is one that causes us to *turn* back. To e*volve* an idea is to *unroll* it from the mind. The theory of e*volut*ion in science holds that higher forms of life have gradually *unrolled* or unfolded from lower forms. To in*volve* a person in a quarrel is to *roll* or drag him into it. An in*volv*ed statement *turns* in upon itself, is complicated. When duties de*volve* upon one, they *roll* down upon him. A *volu*ble person is one from whom words *roll* easily, a glib speaker.

4. *Volume* is from **volvere**, *to roll*, and preserves a picture of Roman books, which consisted of long *rolls* of papyrus.

5. Give the first and last principal parts of the simple Latin verbs from which are derived *contention, inscription, pension, dereliction, correction, inversion, injection, doctor, adoration, excursion, victor, spectator, enunciation.*

19. Drill and Review

1. Review the words numbered 151–200 (App., p. 49).

2. Decline **quīdam vir, cursus celer, cupiditās ācris** (sing.).

3. Decline **ego, tū, is,** and **sē.**

4. Give the principal parts and stems of **vincō, currō, jaciō**; and the synopses, with meanings, in the third plural, active. Conjugate **vincō** and **jaciō** in the present passive.

5. Give the principal parts of **superō, cupiō, pendō, doceō, ōrō, perveniō, juvō, tribuō, scrībō.**

6. Give the present passive, perfect active, and perfect passive infinitives of **vertō, relinquō, jaciō, impediō.**

7. Give the principal parts of **possum,** and the synopsis in the first singular; conjugate the present, past progressive, and perfect tenses.

8. *The Uses of the Dative.* (*a*) Read, explain the case of the italicized words, and translate:

1. *Mihi* fātum *eōrum* dūrius vidēbātur. 2. Hoc foedus *hostibus* grātissimum erat. 3. Hoc flūmen celerius quam illud fluit. Nōnne *vōbīs* celerrimum vidētur? 4. Cōpia frūmentī *eīs gentibus* facile augēbitur. 5. Adversa *gentibus* Galliae erat victōria Rōmānōrum. 6. Dux fideī ēgregiae et *Rōmānīs* amīcissimus erat. 7. *Quibusdam ducibus* fortūna bellī dubia vidēbātur.

(*b*) Write in Latin, stating first the use of the dative case in the sentence:

1. The advice of a certain friend was pleasing to us. 2. That place is not suitable for a house. 3. That man is not like you in body and mind. 4. Food was quickly given to the tired horses. 5. For all men life is very short. 6. The terms were hard for them.

LESSON 6

CERES AND PROSERPINA

Venus, the goddess of love, was determined that none of the deities should be beyond her power. So she caused her son Cupid to pierce Pluto with an arrow, thereby making him fall in love with Proserpina, daughter of Ceres. The moment Pluto saw Proserpina, he seized her and carried her off to the Lower World. For a long time Ceres searched for her lost daughter.*

20. Plūtō, deus īnferōrum, per agrōs Siciliae currū ātrōrum[1] equōrum vehēbātur. Venus, quōdam in monte Siciliae sedēns,[2] deum vīdit et "Cape arma illa tua, fīlī,"[3] dīxit, "quibus omnēs superās, et in pectus illīus deī sagittās celerēs jace. Tū superōs[4] ipsumque Jovem, tū deōs maris vīcistī; nunc tempus est tertiam partem[5] mundī vincere." Itaque Cupīdō imperiō mātris pharetram solvit et dē mīlle sagittīs ūnam dextrā dēposuit quam in cor deī terribilis sine morā immīsit.

Mox Plūtō, sagittā Cupīdinis vulnerātus, Prōserpinam, fīliam pulchram Cereris, in agrō flōrēs legentem[6] vīdit. Quō in locō dum illa perīculum nōn exspectāns cum sociīs lūdit et aut violās aut līlia candida carpit, paene simul ab deō vīsa et amāta et rapta est. Dea territa et mātrem et

* The story of Ceres and Proserpina (Persephone) is told in the following books:

GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 159–163.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 43–47.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 183–197.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Myths, pp. 154–158.
BULFINCH. Age of Fable, pp. 58–63.

sociōs, sed mātrem saepius, clāmāvit; raptor[7] tamen, neque clāmōribus neque lacrimīs eius mōtus, equōs suōs nōmine vocāns, trāns agrōs Siciliae perque lacūs altōs Prōserpinam celeriter trānsportāvit. Ibi tandem fōns

PLUTO CARRIES AWAY PROSERPINA

quīdam, scēptrō deī ictus,[8] viam fēcit, per quam deus cum puellā in Tartara[9] (acc.) dēscendit.

Diū frūstrā Cerēs multīs cum lacrimīs omnibus in terrīs fīliam quaerēbat. Ubi almus diēs stellās fugāverat, quaerēbat; ab sōlis occāsū ad ortūs iterum quaerēbat. Postquam noctēs diēsque multōs per terrās omnēs et maria errāvit, dēfessa labōre in Siciliam vēnit māter misera et ad fontem ubi Plūtō in Tartara dēscenderat. Hīc Prō-

serpinae zōnam, quae forte illō locō [10] dēlāpsa est,[11] summīs in undīs [12] Cerēs vīdit.

Quam simul ac vīdit, tum dēnique dea sē fīliam suam nōn inventūram esse [13] scīvit. Iterum atque iterum suīs mani-

AT THE ALTAR OF CERES

From a painting by Forti

bus pectus pellēbat. Īrā magnā commōta omnēs terrās culpāvit et Siciliam ante aliās, in quā vēstīgia fīliae āmissae invēnerat. Deinde carrōs et arātra agricolārum frēgit; agricolās ipsōs et bovēs interfēcit; frūctūs omnibus terrīs negāvit. Mox omnibus in locīs inopia vidēbātur; nam dea agrōrum officium proprium neglegēbat.

Tum Arethūsa [14] flūmen, īram et dolōrem ācerrimum et

labōrēs mātris vidēns, Cererem hīs verbīs monuit: "Immēnsīs labōribus dēsiste. Nōlī terram culpāre; nam terra nihil poenae [15] meruit. Forte Prōserpinam tuam, dum hūc sub terrīs fluēbam, meīs oculīs vīdī. Rēgīna maxima mundī opācī est et apud īnferōs regit."

Sīc monita et dolōre gravī pulsa māter ad caelum ascendit et ab Jove auxilium postulat, quī ita respondit: "Prōserpinam tuam in terram redūcēs, sī apud īnferōs cibum nūllum sūmpserit. Haec lēx certa est. Nam sīc fāta statuērunt." Sed Prōserpina, ut accidit, dum in hortō Plūtōnis errābat, pūniceum pōmum [16] gustāverat. Quam ob rem dea omnem spem dēpōnere coepit.

Quod ubi pater hominum et deōrum intellēxit, ob misericordiam annum volventem in duās partēs dīvīsit.[17] Hāc rē factā,[18] Prōserpinam sex mēnsēs [17] cum mātre, totidem[17] mēnsēs cum conjuge [17] manēre jussit. Cerēs cūrā tandem līberāta terrīs fertilitātem [17] reddidit.

21. Notes

1. The belongings of a god of the Lower World were of a somber color, in distinction from the brighter-colored equipment of the gods of the Upper World.

2. **Sedēns**, *sitting*, is nominative singular of the present active participle of **sedeō**. See the Appendix, pages 5, 20. Remember that participles may be translated by various clauses: thus, **sedēns** may be translated here *while sitting*.

3. **Fīlī**: she addresses her son Cupid (**Cupīdō**).

4. **Superōs**, *the gods of the Upper World*.

5. When the greater gods divided the world, Jupiter took the earth and the heavens for himself, giving to his brother Neptune the sea, and to his brother Pluto the underworld.

6. **Legentem**, *gathering*; accusative singular of the present active participle of **legō**.

7. If **rapiō** means *seize, snatch, plunder*, what is a **raptor**?

8. **Ictus**, *struck* (perfect passive participle), modifies **fōns**.

9. Tartarus was that part of the Lower World in which the wicked were punished. Here, however, the word refers to the whole underworld, *the lower regions*.

10. Sometimes **in** is omitted in expressions of place.

11. **Dēlāpsa est**, *fell off*; perfect tense of a *deponent* verb, a verb which has passive forms with active meanings.

12. **Summīs in undīs**, *on the surface of the water*.

13. **Sē . . . nōn inventūram esse**, *she would not find*; future infinitive active in an indirect statement. Why has **inventūram** a feminine accusative ending?

14. The Arethusa, a fountain in Greece, was supposed to make its way beneath the earth and to reappear in Sicily.

15. **Nihil poenae**, *no punishment*. What literally?

16. **Pūniceum pōmum**, *a pomegranate*.

17. Determine the meaning of **dīvīsit** and **fertilitātem** from derivatives; of **mēnsēs**, **totidem**, **conjuge**, from the context.

18. **Hāc rē factā**, *having done this* or *when this was done* (lit. *this thing having been done*); this combination of a noun and a participle in the ablative case is known as an ablative absolute.

22. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
currus, -ūs, *m.*		*chariot*
āter, -tra, -trum		*black*
pectus, -oris, *n.*		*breast*
mundus, -ī, *m.*	mundane	*world*
pharetra, -ae, *f.*		*quiver*
immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus	*in* + *mittō*	*send in, let loose*

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
flōs, flōris, *m.*	floral	(Meaning?)
līlium, līlī, *n.*	lily	(Meaning?)
candidus, -a, -um	candid	*white*
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus		*pluck*
paene, *adv.*	peninsula	*almost*
scēptrum, -ī, *n.*	scepter	(Meaning?)
almus, -a, -um	alma mater	*fostering*
stella, -ae, *f.*	constellation	(Meaning?)
occāsus, -ūs, *m.*	*cadō*	*falling, setting*
ortus, -ūs, *m.*		*rising*
zōna, -ae, *f.*	zone	*girdle*
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus	*ā* + *mittō*	*lose*
arātrum, -ī, *n.*		*plow*
bōs, bovis, *m.*	bovine	*ox*
frūctus, -ūs, *m.*		*crops, fruit*
dēsistō, -ere, -stitī	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
opācus, -a, -um	opaque	(Meaning?)
gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	disgust	*taste*
coepī, coepisse, *defective*		*began*
misericordia, -ae, *f.*	*miser* + *cor*	*pity*
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, vīsus	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)

23. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *cereal, mundane, expectorate, stellar, violent.* What are *pectoral* muscles?

2. Explain the Latin expressions *de gustibus non est disputandum*; *carpe diem*; *et al.*

3. Solvere, *to loosen*, has numerous derivatives. To re*solve* a word into its elements is to *loosen* it (back), to break it up. To dis*solve* a substance is to *loosen* it (apart), to break it up into particles. A dis*solute* person is of *loose* character. Thus

dissolute and *loose* are heteronyms. To ab*solve* a person from guilt is to let him *loose* from it, to free him. Ab*solute* power is *loosened* or freed from any restriction. The nominative ab*solute* is *loosened* or freed from the rest of the sentence.

4. *Flora*, from **flōs**, *flower*, was the goddess of flowers. In science the *flora* of a country means its native plants. *Flour*, short for "flower of wheat," and *flower* are simply different spellings of the stem **flōr-** of **flōs**. They are "doublets." To *flourish* is to flower. *Efflorescence* in chemistry is the bloom-like powder that forms on the surface of certain materials.

5. *Candidate* is derived from **candidus**, *white*, and meant originally a person dressed in white. It was the Roman custom at election times for those who were running for office to wear freshly whitened togas when appearing in public and asking for support. Hence **candidātus** came to mean a white-togaed seeker for office. In our word *candidate* the idea of white attire has disappeared, leaving only the meaning of a seeker for office.

24. Drill and Review

1. Review the words numbered 201–250 (App., p. 49).

2. Decline **quoddam flūmen, illud iter, omnis spēs** (sing.).

3. Decline **cīvis** and **īnsigne** (App., p. 2). In what three forms does the declension of i-stem nouns differ from that of other nouns (the consonant stems) of the third declension? What do the i-stem nouns resemble in these forms? Decline **omne mare**. Decline **domus** (App., p. 3).

4. Give the principal parts of **mittō, videō, contendō, dēpōnō, pellō, reddō, sūmō, vehō, solvō, dēscendō, quaerō, sciō, frangō, mereō, accidō**. Give the synopsis of **mittō** in the third singular, active and passive. Conjugate **videō** and **sūmō** in the future, active and passive. Give the infinitives of **mittō**.

5. Learn the present active participle of the type verbs (App., p. 20). The present active participle is an i-stem

adjective of the third declension. Learn the declension of **vocāns** (App., p. 5).

6. Remembering that a participle may be translated sometimes as a modifying adjective and sometimes by a clause of time, cause, concession or condition, or by a relative clause, translate the participles in the following sentences:

1. Puer dīligenter labōrāns semper laudābitur; puer laudātus amīcus dominī erit. 2. Plūtō cum puellā horrente ex Siciliā excessit; puella ā deō capta horruit. 3. Injūriae eōrum ante mūrōs jacentium multae erant. 4. Puerī lapidēs jacientēs injūriās certē facient. 5. Cupīdō sagittam in latus Plūtōnis mittēns mātrem juvat. 6. Flūmen lātum equitibus iter facientibus impedīmentum erat.

7. *The Uses of the Accusative.* (*a*) Read, explain the case of the italicized words, and translate:

1. Hūc veniet et trēs *hōrās* manēbit. 2. Intellegēmus *ingenium* Caesaris *clārissimum* fuisse. 3. Virī *vulnerātī* propter *injūriās* cēdent, sed integrī *pontem* fortiter dēfendent. 4. *Initium* fugae ab lēgātō nūntiātum esse dīxērunt. 5. Hic vir ad *Italiam* discēdet. 6. *Rōmam* iter facere jussus est. 7. Equō *partem* itineris vehētur.

(*b*) Write in Latin:

1. They will come into Italy, but not to Rome. 2. I think that your advice is very good. 3. They wandered in the fields twelve hours. 4. Because of a lack of grain they will depart toward their own territory. 5. We shall wait for them across that river.

8. Review Word List 1, in the Appendix, page 44.

THE PARTING OF ORPHEUS AND EURYDICE

LESSON 7

ORPHEUS AND EURYDICE

In the following passage is told the story of Orpheus, most famous of the musicians of mythology, who went down into the Lower World to get back his dead wife.*

25. Animae post mortem ē corpore līberātae ad īnferōs dēscendisse dīcuntur, ubi Plūtō cum Prōserpinā rēgīnā regēbat. Neque omnēs umbrae[1] eōdem in locō morantur.[2] Prīmum enim ad Mīnōem,[3] jūdicem gravissimum īnfe-

* The story of Orpheus and Eurydice is told in the following books:
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 165–168.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 243–249.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 75–80.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Myths, pp. 192–195.
BULFINCH. The Age of Fable, pp. 190–193.

rōrum, convocantur, quī dē vītīs eōrum et crīminibus jūdicat et praemia aequa statuit. Quī in vītā bonī fuērunt in campīs Ēlysiīs fēlīcissimē habitant; quī autem malī fuērunt in Tartara mittuntur, ubi gravissimō suppliciō pūniuntur.

Paucī vīventēs, virtūte clārī aut ex deīs nātī,[4] in rēgnum umbrārum dēscendere et rūrsus ad terrās superās ascendere potuērunt. Inter quōs erant Herculēs, quī canem Cerberum ex rēgnō Plūtōnis trāxit,[5] et Orpheus, quī inde uxōrem āmissam redūcere temptābat.

Hic, fīlius Apollinis et Calliopēs (gen.) mūsae,[6] artem canendī[7] ā patre et mātre didicit et dulcissimā vōce ad lyram cecinit. Nōn hominēs sōlum sed etiam pecora et avēs vōce dēlectābat; atque flūmina et saxa et arborēs movēbat. Eurydicēn (acc.) in mātrimōnium dūxerat, quam magnopere amābat; nihil eī cārius quam uxor erat. Haec autem, ut accidit, in campō flōrum plēnō ambulāns, serpentis morsū vulnerāta, mox ē vītā discessit.

Eius mortem noctēs diēsque Orpheus dolēbat. Prīmum ad Jovem ascendit, ā quō sē auxilium acceptūrum esse[8] spērābat. Ubi tandem dolōrem diūtius patī[9] nōn potuit, quod Juppiter auxilium dare nōn poterat, ad Plūtōnem ipsum dēscendere cōnstituit. Postquam in campōs Ēlysiōs pervēnit, ante rēgem dūrum haec dīxit: "Audī verba mea. Homō miserrimus, nōn hostis, ad tē veniō. Haec est ultima domus omnium. Uxōrem āmissam petō, sine quā vīvere mihi nōn facile erit. Eam mihi redde, aut mē quoque in potestāte tuā retinē." Tum umbrae dulcēdine vōcis eius et lyrae flēbant.[10] Tantalus aquam nōn jam capiēbat. Etiam furiae lacrimās fūdērunt. Prōserpina ad misericordiam mōta est. Nec rēx ipse negāre potuit. "Eury-

dicēn" (acc.), inquit, "tēcum redūcēs, sed hāc condiciōne: sī tū in eam oculōs retrō flectēs, priusquam īnferōs relīqueris, uxōrem rūrsus āmittēs." Hanc condiciōnem Orpheus cum gaudiō accēpit sed propter amōrem nōn potuit servāre; namque postquam in mediam viam quā ad īnferōs dēscenderat prōcessērunt, magnō uxōris amōre Orpheus respexit. Ecce, dum eam spectat, Eurydicē ē cōnspectū statim remōta ad Tartarum revocāta est et Orpheum "Eurydicē! Eurydicē!" vocantem et manūs tendentem relīquit. Uxōre iterum āmissā,[11] Orpheus septem diēs in rīpā Stygis sine mūnere Cereris[12] sēdit; dēnique cūrā, dolōre animī, lacrimīs cōnfectus (*exhausted*) ad terrās superās ascendit.

ORPHEUS, EURYDICE, AND MERCURY

This is one of the most beautiful works of ancient sculpture. Mercury, standing at the left, is about to lead Eurydice back to the Lower World, for Orpheus has broken his word with Pluto

26. Notes

1. **Umbrae**, *spirits*, *ghosts* (lit. *shades*) of the dead.

2. **Morantur**, *stay*; the present indicative of a *deponent* verb, a verb with passive forms and active meanings.

3. Minos was one of the judges of the Lower World before whom the souls of the dead were brought to trial. The wicked were punished in various ways: some were scourged by the Furies; others were tortured in the manner of Tantalus. "But the souls of the guiltless passed to the Elysian Fields, where each followed the chosen pursuit of his former life in a land of spring, sunlight, happiness and song."

4. **Ex deīs nātī,** *sons of gods.*

5. Cerberus, the three-headed watchdog of Hades.

6. Calliope was the Muse of epic poetry. See illustration.

7. **Artem canendī,** *the art of singing.* **Canendī** is the genitive of a verbal noun (gerund) of the verb **canere,** *to sing.*

8. **Sē . . . acceptūrum esse,** *that he would receive*; the future active infinitive in an indirect statement. This tense of the infinitive is formed by using the future active participle with **esse**: as, **vocātūrus esse,** *to be about to call.* See section 27.

9. **Patī,** *to endure,* is the present infinitive of a deponent verb. What is a deponent verb?

10. Orpheus told of his sorrow in so pathetic a manner that all in the Lower World were moved by his words.

11. **Uxōre āmissā,** *when his wife was lost.* What literally? What is this combination called?

12. What would the "gift of Ceres" be?

27. Summary of Participles and Infinitives in Latin

A. There are in Latin four participles:

1. The perfect passive participle is already familiar.

2. The present active participle is formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem: as, **vocā + ns,** *calling*; **monē + ns,** *warning.* It is an **i**-stem adjective of the third declension, declined like **ingēns.** Throughout its declension appear the letters **nt** (as, **voca*nt*is**), which occur also in the name of the form, pres*ent* active participle.

3. The future active participle is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the participial stem: as, **vocāt + ūrus = vocātūrus,** *going,* or *about, to call.* The resulting form usually contains the significant letters

tūr, which occur also in the name of the form, fu*ture* active participle. It is declined like **bonus**.

4. The future passive participle will be taken up later.

B. There are five infinitives in common use in Latin:

1. The present active infinitive is formed by adding **-re** to the present stem: as, **vocāre**, *to call.*

2. The present passive infinitive, in all conjugations except the third, is formed by changing the active infinitive ending **-re** to **-rī**: as, **vocārī**, *to be called*; **audīrī**, *to be heard.* In the third conjugation final **-ere** of the active infinitive is changed to **-ī**: as, **dūcī**, *to be led*; **capī**, *to be taken.*

3. The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem: as, **vocāvisse**, *to have called*; **cēpisse**, *to have taken.*

4. The perfect passive infinitive is formed by using **esse** with the perfect passive participle: as, **ductus esse**, *to have been led*; **gestus esse**, *to have been carried.*

5. The future active infinitive is formed by using **esse** with the future active participle: as, **vocātūrus esse**, *to be going*, or *to be about, to call*; **audītūrus esse**, *to be going to hear.*

CALLIOPE, THE MUSE OF EPIC POETRY

The Muse in a meditative attitude, as though composing a poem. The left hand holds a writing tablet; the right hand, a stilus. The nine Muses presided over poetry and art

Note that the perfect passive participle and the future active participle are important, both for their own sakes and because they form the basis for two important infinitives. In actual practice you will rarely meet an infinitive form containing **-us**, since the participle is an *adjective* and must *agree* with the subject, which will be in the accusative case.

28. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
anima, -ae, *f.*	animate	*air, breath, life, soul*
jūdex, -icis, *m.*	judicial	(Meaning?)
crīmen, -inis, *n.*	crime	(Meaning?)
campus, -ī, *m.*	campus	*field*
fēlīx, fēlīcis	felicity	*lucky, happy*
pūniō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus	punish	(Meaning?)
canis, -is, *m.*	canine	(Meaning?)
canō, -ere, cecinī	canto	*sing*
discō, -ere, didicī	disciple	*learn*
dulcis, -e	dulcet	*sweet*
lyra, -ae, *f.*	lyre	(Meaning?)
pecus, -oris, *n.*	*pecūnia*	*cattle*
morsus, -ūs, *m.*		*bite*
doleō, -ēre, -uī	*dolor*	(Meaning?)
ultimus, -a, -um	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
dulcēdō, -inis, *f.*	*dulcis*	*sweetness*
fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus		*weep*
retrō, *adv.*	retrograde	*backward*
priusquam, *conj.*	prior	*before*
amor, -ōris, *m.*	*amō*	*love*
respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus	*spectō*	*look back*
cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*	*spectō*	*sight, view*
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus	tend	*stretch out*

29. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the following words:

a. Even *inanimate* objects listened to the lyre of Orpheus.
b. His wit was keen and *mordant.*
c. The experience was better in *retrospect* than in *prospect.*
d. Instead of balloting they elected him *viva voce.*
e. He was declared by one and all a *rara avis.*

2. Explain the derivation of *remorse, museum, Stygian, morsel, encamp, decamp, animato* (in music).

3. From **tendere**, *to stretch out, extend*, comes at*tent*ion, *stretching* one's mind to something; dis*tend*, to *stretch* apart; in*tend*, to *stretch* or apply the mind; pre*tend*, to *stretch* or hold out something before as an excuse; ex*tend*, to *stretch* out; *tend*on, lit. a *stretcher*. A person works in*tens*ely when he *stretches* every nerve. The *tens*ile strength of a wire is the amount of *stretching* it will stand before breaking. A *tent* is a covering *stretched* on poles. The nerves are *tense* when they are *stretched* or strained to the breaking point.

4. Since private property in early times consisted of cattle, **pecūlium**, related to **pecus**, *cattle*, came to mean one's own particular property. From this comes *peculiar*, originally that which is one's own, as in "the Lord's peculiar people," "the peculiar property of a substance," that is, that which belongs to it alone. It now usually means not like anything else, strange. **Pecus** is closely related to **pecūnia** (meaning?), from which comes *pecuniary*. Explain *peculate*.

5. *Scamp* and *scamper* are interesting derivatives of **campus**, *field*. *Scamp* originally meant one who runs away from (*s* from *ex-*) a (battle) *field*. Explain *scamper*.

30. Drill and Review

1. Review the words numbered 251–300 (App., p. 49).

2. Decline **jūdex gravis, hic rēx ipse, cōnspectus lātus** (sing.), **ambulāns.**

3. Decline **tōtus** (App., p. 6). Name six other adjectives of the first and second declensions which have the same peculiarities. Give the neuter nominative singular of **alius.**

4. In what one form do all i-stem nouns of the third declension differ from consonant stems? Give the genitive plural of **urbs, vōx, nox, mors, cūstōs, collis, nōmen, virtūs, pēs, mōns, cor, fōns, flūmen, pars, mēnsis, hostis, gēns, fīnis,**

cīvis, ars, mīles, aedēs. Which of these words are i-stems? Give the ablative singular of these words. Decline **turris.**

Observe that the i-stem nouns are

1. Those ending in **-is** or **-ēs** in the nominative singular, with the same number of syllables in the genitive singular as in the nominative: as, **hostis**, gen. **hostis** (but not **mīles**, gen. **mīlitis**).

2. Monosyllables ending in **-s** preceded by a consonant: as, **mōns, mors, fōns, ars, urbs, gēns.**

5. Give the principal parts of **ambulō, prōcēdō, excitō, ascendō, fundō, accipiō, trahō, flectō, cadō, caedō, cēdō.** Give the synopsis of **prōcēdō** in the third plural active. Give the passive infinitives (except the future) of **trahō** and **pellō.** Conjugate **trahō** and **pūniō** in the future passive indicative.

6. Give the future active participles and infinitives of the type verbs (App., p. 20).

7. Read and translate:

1. Mīlitēs pugnātūrī ducem exspectābant. 2. Līterās ad tē missūrus sum. 3. Putō mē tua verba facile audītūrum esse. 4. Spērābat eum ventūrum esse. 5. Māter scit servōs fīliam cūrātūrōs esse.

8. Write in Latin:

1. I was about to call you. 2. I know that that girl will have many friends. 3. I hope that tribe will join with the Romans. 4. We heard that they would soon come.

9. *The Uses of the Ablative.* (*a*) 1. Read, explain the case of the italicized words, and translate:

1. Castra *mūrīs altīs* et turribus mūnīta erant. 2. *Cum cūrā*, līberī, manūs lavāte. 3. Possuntne sōl et lūna *eōdem tempore* vidērī? 4. Illī *linguā* et *mōribus* et *lēgibus* similēs sunt. 5. *In lītore* classis locātur. 6. Oppidum *ab legiōnibus nōnō diē* expugnābitur. 7. Hīc trēs diēs mānsērunt, quod *cibō* prīvātī erant. 8. Imperātor *cum quīnque legiōnibus in Galliā* erat. 9. *Fossā*, quae octō pedēs alta est, dēfendēmur. 10. Magister eōs *ex lūdō* dimittet. 11. Sine *timōre* pontem trāicient. 12. *Quantā cum dīligentiā* ille puer scrībit!

(*b*) Write in Latin: X

Among the ancients Orpheus was famous for his very sweet voice. He had been taught with the greatest care by his father and mother. He was heard by all with pleasure. When deprived of his wife, he descended into the realm of Pluto. In that place he found his lost wife, who desired to leave the Lower World. At that time Pluto was moved by the words of Orpheus. With his wife Orpheus attempted to ascend from the Lower World, but he was not able to save her from death.

CIRCE TRANSFORMS THE SAILORS OF ULYSSES INTO SWINE

LESSON 8

ULYSSES AND CIRCE (1)

Circe, the great enchantress of mythology, was able to change men into wild beasts. The visit of Ulysses at the island where Circe dwelt was famous in ancient literature.*

31. Trōjā captā [1] et dēlētā,[1] Graecī, quī decem annōs illam urbem oppugnāverant, domum [2] sē recēpērunt.[3] Ūnus ex prīncipibus, Ulixēs, diū in marī errāvit et īrā ācerrimā Neptūnī [4] āctus multa passus est.[5] Interdum

* The story of Ulysses and Circe is told in the following books:
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 324–327.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 313–315.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 347–349.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Myths, p. 310.
BULFINCH. The Age of Fable, pp. 245–248.

putāvit sē neque in patriam Ithacam [6] perventūrum esse neque uxōrem cāram umquam vīsūrum esse. Longō spatiō temporis intermissō,[1] ad īnsulam quandam appropinquāvit, in quā Circē, fīlia Sōlis, habitābat.

NEPTUNE

Neptune, the implacable enemy of Ulysses, was god of the waters. From his palace in the depths of the sea he came forth in a chariot drawn by brazen-hoofed steeds. His scepter was the trident, or three-pronged spear, with which he could raise storms or subdue them

Eō postquam pervēnit, Ulixēs virōs in terram mittere statuit; nam cognōverat sē nōn satis magnam frūmentī cōpiam in nāvī habēre. Sociōs igitur ad sē convocātōs in duās partēs dīvīsit; ipse ūnam partem sēcum prope nāvem retinuit, alteram partem frūmentum obtinēre jussit. Hōc factō, Eurylochus, vir summae virtūtis, cum duōbus et vīgintī sociīs nāvem relīquit et ab lītore discessit. Eō tempore eī quī in nāvī relictī erant lacrimās tenēre nōn poterant; crēdēbant enim sociōs suōs ad mortem discessisse.

Postquam illī multa mīlia passuum iter fēcērunt, ad vīllam quandam pervēnērunt. Cuius ad jānuam ubi appropinquāvērunt, dulcissimam vōcem audīvērunt. Quod dulcēdō vōcis eīs grātissima erat, Graecī jānuam pulsāvērunt. Inde Circē ipsa ex vīllā vēnit et omnēs in domicilium invītāvit. Eurylochus īnsidiās sibi parārī

crēdēns extrā vīllam exspectāre cōnstituit, sed reliquī virī intrāvērunt. Cēnam magnificam omnibus rēbus parātam invēnērunt et imperiō Circae libentissimē accubuērunt. At Circē vīnum quod servī ante sociōs posuērunt medicāmentō quōdam miscuerat[7]; quod simul atque gustāvērunt, gravī somnō subitō oppressī sunt.

Tum Circē, quae artis magicae scientiam habēbat, baculō aureō quod gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit. Quō factō, omnēs in porcōs subitō mūtātī sunt. Interim Eurylochus ante jānuam sedēbat. Postquam autem ad sōlis occāsum anxiō animō exspectāvit, sōlus ad nāvem properāre cōnstituit. Eō ubi vēnit, dē fātō aliōrum Graecōrum nārrāre nōn potuit. Ulixēs autem, quī satis[8] intellēxit sociōs in perīculō esse, gladiō raptō, Eurylochum sine morā viam ad illam vīllam mōnstrāre jussit. Hāc viā cognitā, dīxit sē ipsum sine ūllō praesidiō in domicilium Circae intrātūrum esse. Hoc postquam magnā vōce clāmāvit, ē nāvī ēgressus[9] nūllō sequente[10] in viam sē dedit. Omnēs sociī sciēbant Ulixem in maximum perīculum sē committere.

PENELOPE

During the twenty years that Ulysses was absent his faithful wife, Penelope, waited for him, spending her time weaving. When she finished the web, she was to choose one of her many suitors. To postpone this she unraveled by night what she had woven by day

32. Notes

1. **Trōjā captā,** *when Troy had been captured* (lit. *Troy having been captured*). Observe that both words are ablative.

2. **Domum** expresses place whither. A preposition is not used with **domum** or with names of towns.

3. **Sē recēpērunt,** *they went, returned.* What literally?

4. Neptune was angered when Ulysses put out the eye of the Cyclops, Polyphemus, who was under the protection of Neptune. Thereafter he did his best to prevent Ulysses from reaching home and caused many disasters to befall him. Ulysses was protected by Minerva, with whom he was a favorite because of his courage and cleverness in the siege of Troy.

5. **Passus est,** *he suffered*; the perfect indicative of a deponent verb.

6. Ithaca, an island off the west coast of Greece, was the home of Ulysses, where his wife, Penelope, faithfully awaited his return. See illustration of Penelope.

7. **Vīnum medicāmentō miscuerat,** *had mixed a drug with the wine* (lit. *had mixed the wine with a drug*).

8. **Satis,** *well enough, very well* (lit. *sufficiently*).

9. **Ē nāvī ēgressus,** *having left the ship* (lit. *having walked out of the ship*).

10. **Nūllō sequente,** *with no companion* (lit. *no one following*); ablative absolute.

33. The Ablative Absolute

In the English sentence "The work finished, we went home," the verb of the sentence is *went* and its subject is *we*. *Work* is used *independently* with the participle *finished* and is called an *independent nominative* or a *nominative absolute*. The word "absolute" means *used independently*. In the sentence "Having finished the work we went home," the

participle *having finished* is not used independently but modifies the subject *we*.

The same two uses of participles exist in Latin. You have met many times the perfect passive participle in the nominative case, modifying and agreeing with the subject and frequently modified by a phrase in the ablative case: as, **Plūtō sagittā vulnerātus Prōserpinam vīdit.** You have also been meeting recently the perfect passive participle used *independently*, or *absolutely*; but you have observed that in Latin the *ablative* case is used, instead of the nominative as in English. Thus, in the first sentence of this lesson, **Trōjā captā** is an ablative absolute, with no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence. See Appendix, section 33.

Caution. Observe that in an ablative absolute *both* the *participle* and the *noun* are in the *ablative* case. Since the other use of the participle, in the nominative case modifying the subject, frequently has a modifying phrase in the ablative, you will need to look sharply to see which use of the participle is involved in any instance. Look sharply at the *case of the participle.*

Translation of the Ablative Absolute. We do not use the nominative absolute very much in normal English. We use instead a clause introduced by *when, after, since, because, although, if,* or some other subordinating conjunction. Accordingly, translate the ablative absolute by a subordinate clause that brings out the relation in thought.

34. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	pulsation	*beat*
invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	invite	(Meaning?)
magnificus, -a, -um	magnificent	(Meaning?)
libenter, *adv.*		*willingly*
accumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus		*lie; recline (at table)*
medicāmentum, -ī, *n.*	medicine	*drug*

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
misceō, -ēre, -uī, mix-tus	mixture	(Meaning?)
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus	oppress, *premō*	(Meaning?)
magicus, -a, -um	magic	(Meaning?)
scientia, -ae, *f.*	science, *sciō*	(Meaning?)
baculus, -ī, *m.*		*staff, wand*
anxius, -a, -um	anxious	(Meaning?)

35. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *incredible, creed, credulous, promiscuous.*

2. The verb **-cumbere**, *to recline, lie,* appears both in Latin and in English only in compounds. When a person is in a re*cumb*ent position he is *lying* on his back. When he is in a pro*cumb*ent position, he has fallen forward (*pro-*) and lies with his face down. The in*cumb*ent of an office remains (lit. *reclines* or rests) in it. It is in*cumb*ent upon a citizen to vote, because this duty *lies* (lit. *reclines*) upon him. To suc*cumb* to misfortune is to *lie* down under it, to yield to it. Give the compounds of **-cumbere** with the prefixes **re-, sub-, in-, prō-.**

3. Tell the Latin words (with meanings) from which the following French words come: *mille, mort, nom, notre, patrie, pauvre, premier, reine, roi, sept, temps, tout, trois, venir.*

4. How will a knowledge of derivation help you to spell correctly *miscellaneous* and *resuscitate*?

36. Drill and Review

1. Review the words numbered 301–350 (App., p. 50).

2. Decline **urbs quaedam, haec nāvis longa, passus** (plur.).

3. Review the comparison of the regular adjectives (App., p. 11). What is the regular ending of the superlative? When does the superlative end in **-rimus**?

Four adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus**. They are **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis.**

4. Give the principal parts and stems of **stō, pōnō, statuō, gerō, cognōscō, recipiō, obtineō, discēdō, dēleō, oppugnō.** Give the synopsis of **stō** in the third plural, active; of **gerō** in the third singular, passive. Give the infinitives and participles of **gerō.** Conjugate **pōnō** in the present and future, both voices.

5. Review the imperative, active and passive, of the type verbs (App., pp. 19, 20).

6. *The Ablative Absolute.* (*a*) Read and translate, using a clause as a translation of an ablative absolute (§ 33):

1. Mīlitibus armātīs, signum datum est. 2. Mīlitibus male pugnantibus, rēs pūblica nōn dēfendētur. 3. Portīs ruptīs, nostrī in oppidum facile scandent. 4. Agrīs ignī vāstātīs, magna erat inopia frūmentī. 5. Ōrātiōne eius audītā et probātā, omnēs tacent.

(*b*) Express in Latin, using an ablative absolute for the dependent clause:

1. If messengers have been sent (= messengers having been sent), aid will come. 2. When victory was announced (=?), great was the joy of all citizens. 3. Because few are fighting (=?), the battle will be brief. 4. Although our men were led out (=?), the enemy remained in their camp.

7. Read and translate, giving special care to the participles:

1. Trōja ā Graecīs capta dēlēta est. 2. Trōja decem annōs oppugnāta decimō annō capta erat. 3. Eurylochus in terram missus aquam petēbat. 4. Eurylochus invītātus in domicilium Circae nōn intrāvit. 5. Quīdam servitūte līberātus grātiā mōtus est. 6. Somnō excitātī, virī octō arma rapuērunt. 7. Animae fēlicēs, quae in campīs Ēlysiīs habitābant, suum sōlem et lūnam vidēbant. 8. Omnēs jūrant sē patriam dēfēnsūrōs esse. 9. Virī līberī ligārī et in servitūtem dūcī nōn dēbent.

LESSON 9

ULYSSES AND CIRCE (2)

37. Ubi Ulixēs pauca mīlia passuum ambulāvit, ad vīllam magnificam pervēnit, in quam intrāre statuit; intellēxit enim hanc esse domum Circae. Eōdem tempore vīdit nōn longē ā sē adulēscentem fōrmae pulcherrimae aureum baculum gerentem. Hic Ulixem jam domum intrantem dextrā manū retinet et "Quō vādis?" inquit. "Nōnne[1] scīs hanc esse domum Circae et hīc inclūsōs esse amīcōs tuōs ex hūmānā speciē in porcōs conversōs? Num[1] cupis ipse in eandem calamitātem venīre?" Ulixēs simul atque vōcem audīvit, deum Mercurium agnōvit; nūllīs tamen precibus ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrērī potuit. Quod ubi Mercurius sēnsit, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam contrā magicam artem Circae multum valēre[2] dīcēbat. "Hanc cape," inquit, "et meīs verbīs monēre.[3] Ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit, tū gladiō eam aggredere."[4] Hīs verbīs dictīs, Mercurius discessit.

Brevī spatiō intermissō, Ulixēs ad omnia perīcula parātus jānuam pulsāvit et ab Circā ipsā benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque[5] anteā facta sunt. Cēnam magnificē īnstrūctam vīdit et accumbere jussus est. Mox Circē pōculum aureum vīnī plēnum Ulixī dedit, quod ille statim hausit. Quō factō, Circē, postquam caput eius baculō tetigit, ea verba dīxit quibus sociōs eius anteā in porcōs converterat. Res tamen omnīnō aliter ēvēnit atque[6] illa spērāverat; nam magna erat vīs eius her-

bae quam Ulixī Mercurius dederat. Itaque neque vī venēnī neque verbīs Circē Ulixem opprimere potuit. Ille gladiō, ut ab deō jussus erat, impetum in eam fēcit. Circē simul atque artem suam nihil valēre[7] sēnsit, multīs cum lacrimīs pācem petere coepit.

MERCURY MEETS ULYSSES AND GIVES HIM THE MAGIC HERB

Deinde Ulixēs eam jam territam jussit sociōs sine morā in hūmānam speciem redūcere (certior enim factus erat[8] ā deō Mercuriō eōs in porcōs conversōs esse). Hīs imperātīs audītīs, Circē graviter commōta eī[9] ad pedēs sē jēcit et misericordiam postulāvit. Tum porcōs in domicilium vocātōs quōdam unguentō tetigit. Quō factō, omnēs statim in hūmānam speciem reductī sunt. Magnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs suōs amīcōs agnōvit et nūntium ad lītus mīsit, quī reliquīs Graecīs sociōs servātōs esse nūntiāvit.

38. Notes

1. **Nōnne** in questions expects the answer "Yes," and **num** the answer "No." **Nōnne scīs**, *do you not know?* **Num cupis**, *you do not wish, do you?*

2. **Multum valēre**, *had much power.*

3. **Monēre**, *be warned*; passive imperative singular. This form of the verb is like the present active infinitive.

4. **Eam aggredere**, *attack her.* **Aggredere** is the present imperative of a deponent verb. With what form is it identical?

5. **Eōdem modō atque**, *in the same way as.*

6. **Omnīnō aliter ēvēnit atque**, *turned out altogether differently from what.*

7. Compare **nihil valēre** with **multum valēre** (n. 2).

8. **Certior factus erat**, *he had been informed* (lit. *he had been made more certain*).

9. Which use of the dative? Translate as if it were a genitive modifying **pedēs**.

39. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
hūmānus, -a, -um	human	(Meaning?)
speciēs, -ēī, *f.*	species	(Meaning?)
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus	convert, *vertō*	(Meaning?)
calamitās, -ātis, *f.*	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
prex, precis, *f.*		*prayer*
herba, -ae, *f.*	herb	(Meaning?)
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus	instruct	*arrange; equip*
aliter, *adv.*	*alius*	*otherwise*
ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus	event, *ē* + *veniō*	(Meaning?)
unguentum, -ī, *n.*	unguent	*ointment*

40. Summary of Applications of Latin to English Spelling

The following principles underlie resemblances in spelling between Latin words and English derivatives:

1. Original double consonants are regularly preserved in English derivatives (except at the end of compounds).

Thus the derivatives of **terra** have two *r's* (*territory, Mediterranean, terrestrial*), and derivatives of **annus** have two *n's* (*annual, millennium*).

THE SHIP OF ULYSSES

In a final burst of anger against Ulysses, Neptune is said to have turned into stone the ship that had borne him from the land of the Phaeacians to his home in Ithaca. The ancients thought a little island at the entrance to a harbor in Corfu was the transformed ship

2. When a prefix ending in a consonant (**ad-, con-, in-, ex-, ob-, dis-, sub-**) is prefixed to a word beginning with a consonant, the first consonant is *assimilated*, if possible, to the second, and double consonants are produced in the derivative.

Affiliate is spelled with two *f's* because it is derived from **ad** and **filius**.

3. The "obscure" vowel follows the original Latin.

The obscure sound in *temporal* is represented by *o* because the stem of **tempus, temporis**, has an **o**.

4. Forms in *-nt* (*-nce*) from verbs of the *first* conjugation end in *-ant* (*-ance*); all others, in *-ent* (*-ence*).*

Important is spelled with *-ant* because it comes from a verb of the *first* conjugation; *dependent* is spelled with *-ent* because it comes from a verb of the third conjugation.

5. If the last principal part of a Latin verb ends in **-tus**, the English derivative will be spelled with *t* (*-tion, -tor, -ture, -tive, -tory*); if in **-sus**, the English derivative will be spelled with *s* (*-sion, -sor, -sure, -sive, -sory*).

Thus *dissension* ends in *-sion* since the last principal part of **sentiō** is **sēnsus**. *Petition* ends in *-tion* because the last principal part of **petō** is **petītus**.

6. Many original letters are preserved in English derivatives, although their pronunciation has changed.†

Thus *disciple* is spelled with *sc* following **discipulus**. Account for the bold-faced letters in *adjacent, antecedent, complacent, crescent, debt, impartial, necessity, nihilist, precedent, president, supersede, victuals.*

41. Drill and Review

1. Review the words numbered 351–400 (App., p. 50).

2. Decline **calamitās gravis, speciēs hūmāna** (sing.), **impetus ācer**. Decline **domus** and **vīs** (App., p. 3).

3. Compare **dulcis, cārus, pulcher**. Decline the comparative of **cārus** (App., p. 6). Has the comparative a consonant stem or an i-stem?

* Some words in *-nt* from verbs of the third conjugation end in *-ant*. These words have reached us through French, where they changed their part of speech from adjectives to nouns: for example, *pendant, confidant, defendant*. When the original part of speech is kept, the original spelling is retained: for example, *confident, pendent*.

† Initial *s* is lost after the prefix *ex-*: as, *expect* (**ex** + **spectō**), *expatiate* (**ex** + **spatium**), *exist* (**ex** + **sistō**), *expire* (**ex** + **spīrō**).

4. Give the principal parts and stems of **sentiō, struō, intellegō, hauriō, dīcō, opprimō, tangō, faciō, valeō, spērō, petō, nūntiō, retineō, mūtō, vādō.** Give synopses of **mūtō** in the third singular, passive; the third plural, passive. Conjugate **mūtō** in the present, future, and perfect passive tenses.

5. Give the present active and present passive infinitives, and the passive imperative of **mūtō, videō, vertō.**

6. Give the forms of **poterat, potuit, potuerat, posuit.**

7. Read and translate, giving special attention to the infinitives and participles:

1. Mentēs antīquōrum ōminibus adversīs territās esse intellegimus. 2. Vidētisne rādīcēs huius arboris paulō longiōrēs quam illīus esse? 3. Latus sinistrum mīlitis Rōmānī, quī scūtum sinistrā gerēbat, apertum (*exposed*) nōn erat. 4. Dīxērunt sē imperāta eius audītūrōs esse. 5. Alcmēna Herculem magnā vī serpentēs premere vīdit. 6. Pīlum pedēs sexāgintā (*sixty*) jacere mīlitī Rōmānō facile erat. 7. Mūrīs occupātīs, multa praeda capta est. 8. Cicerō ab inimīcīs damnātus Rōmam relīquit. 9. Nōnne verba eius tibi grāta erant? 10. Num locus ille domō idōneus erit? 11. Estne domus vestra lītorī proxima? 12. Num equī jugō jungentur?

8. Write in Latin:

1. They were ordered to bring water from the river. 2. He knew he would approach the home of Circe. 3. In what way did he learn that his companions had been turned into swine? 4. His companions were not able to help him. 5. When this was done, he decided to make an attack on her.

LESSON 10

NIOBE AND HER CHILDREN

A beautiful queen of Thebes named Niobe boasted that she was the superior of Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana, because she had fourteen children while Latona had but two; and she forbade her countrywomen to worship Latona. Thereupon Apollo slew the sons of Niobe with arrows from his silver bow, and Diana struck down the daughters. Niobe herself in her grief was changed to stone and borne on a whirlwind to her native mountain, there to remain a mass of rock, whence came a trickling stream as a sign of her unending sorrow.*

42. Niobē, Tantalī [1] fīlia pulcherrima, ab Amphīone, rēge Thēbānōrum, in mātrimōnium ducta erat. Ille fēlīcissimē cum uxōre multōs annōs Thēbīs [2] habitāverat. Haec nōn sōlum pulchritūdine sed etiam dīvitiīs omnēs mulierēs cēterās superāvisse dīcitur. Atque superbissima erat aliā dē causā, quod quattuordecim līberōs habuit, septem fīliōs totidemque fīliās.

Forte turba mulierum et virginum Thēbānārum Lātōnae, mātrī Apollinis et Diānae,[3] sacrificia parābant. Ecce, per viās Niobē animō superba et vestēs splendidissimās gerēns cum sociīs vēnit. Mulieribus virginibusque vīsīs, rēgīna superbiā et īrā et invidiā commōta, "Cūr," inquit, "Lātōna per ārās Thēbānās adōrātur et colitur?

* The story of Niobe is told in the following books:
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 99–103.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 13–15.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 93–96.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Myths, pp. 66–70.
BULFINCH. The Age of Fable, pp. 117–120.

Cūr mihi sacrificia nōn parātis? Cūr mihi [4] Lātōna praepōnitur? Nōnne ego ex gente dīvīnā nāta sum? [5] Nōnne Tantalus mihi pater erat, quī sōlus ex hominibus ad mēnsās deōrum accumbēbat? Nōnne maximus Atlās [6] mihi avus erat, quī caelum lātum umerīs tenet? Nōnne

DIANA SLAYS THE DAUGHTERS OF NIOBE

Juppiter alter avus erat? Multae gentēs mē timent; urbs ampla ā mē virōque [7] regitur. In quamcumque partem domūs meae oculōs advertētis immēnsae dīvitiae spectantur. Spectāte faciem meam deā dignam [8] atque fīliās septem et totidem fīliōs. Illa Lātōna, ad cuius ārās sacrificia portātis, duōrum parēns est; haec est septima pars meōrum liberōrum. Fēlix sum (quis enim hoc negāre potest?) fēlīxque manēbō. Hoc quoque quis dubi-

tāre potest? Tūtām mē cōpia[9] fēcit. Fortūna mihi[10] nocēre nōn potest. Etiam sī fortūna multa ā mē ēripiet, multō mihi plūra relinquet. Fingite multōs ex līberīs cārīs āmittī, tamen ad numerum duōrum, Lātōnae turbam,

LATONA AND HER CHILDREN

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

sine dubiō nōn redigar. Dēbētis igitur mē, nōn Lātōnam, dōnīs sacrificiīsque colere." Mulierēs dōna dēpōnunt et sacrificia Lātōnae relinquunt.

Sententiīs rēgīnae cognitīs, Lātōna summō in monte Cynthī cum līberīs, Apolline et Diānā, haec verba locuta est[11]: "Ego, māter vestra, ā meīs ārīs dēpellor et per omnēs annōs dēpellar, nisi vōs mē juvābitis. Neque hic est sōlus dolor: nam illa superba vōs suīs postpōnit."[12]

Cui haec Phoebus[13] respondit: "Verba mora poenae sunt. Thēbās[14] properēmus[15] et supplicium dē illā sūmāmus."[15] Phoebē idem dīxit. Inde celerī cursū Thēbās profectī sunt.[16]

Eō ubi pervēnērunt, Apollō prīmum fīliōs Niobae, Diāna posteā fīliās sagittīs acūtīs interfēcit. Dum haec geruntur, pater Amphīōn, morte fīliōrum nūntiātā, fīnem dolōris et vītae eōdem tempore fēcit. Fāma est Niobam inter fīliōs et fīliās et virum sedentem[17] in saxum mūtātam esse, quod etiam nunc lacrimās fundit.

APOLLO

Apollo, or Phoebus, the god of the sun, was the ideal of fair and manly youth. He was the patron of music and poetry, also of athletics. Through his oracle at Delphi he made known the future to those who consulted him

43. Notes

1. For Tantalus see section 1.

2. **Thēbīs**, *at Thebes*; locative case.

3. For an account of Apollo and Diana see Gayley, pages 26 and 29; Sabin, pages 9 and 51.

4. **Mihi praepōnitur**, *is preferred to me.* What literally? The dative is used with certain compound verbs when the noun or pronoun is closely associated with the prefix.

5. **Nōnne ego nāta sum**, *was not I born?* **Nāta sum** is perfect indicative of **nāscor**, a deponent verb.

6. For Atlas, one of the lesser deities, see page 4.

7. **Virō**, *husband.*

8. **Deā dignam**, *worthy of a goddess.* Case of **deā**?

9. **Cōpia**, *my wealth.*

10. **Mihi nocēre**, *injure me.* **Nocēre**, like **appropinquāre** (§ 7, n. 5), takes the dative case instead of a direct object.

11. **Locūta est**, *spoke*; perfect of **loquor**, a deponent verb.

12. **Vōs suīs postpōnit**, *holds you in less esteem than her own children.* Literally? Why is **suīs** dative? (See note 4.)

13. Apollo and Diana are also called Phoebus and Phoebe.

14. What use of the case? What usually occurs with it?

15. **Properēmus** is in the subjunctive mood; the present indicative would be **properāmus**. **Sūmāmus** is also subjunctive; what would the present and future indicative be? These independent subjunctives express an idea for which we sometimes use the subjunctive in English: as, "Be it known"; "Every man stay in his place." (Give the indicative forms of *be* and *stay*.) In the *first* person we use in English, not the subjunctive, but the auxiliary *let* with the infinitive: as, **properēmus**, *let us hasten*; **sūmāmus**, *let us inflict.*

16. **Profectī sunt**, *they set out.* In what voice is the Latin verb in form? in meaning? What is this kind of verb called?

17. Does this word modify **Niobam** or **virum**?

44. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*		*riches*
vestis, -is, *f.*	vest	*garment*
superbia, -ae, *f.*	*superbus*	(Meaning?)
invidia, -ae, *f.*	invidious	*envy*
colō, -ere, -uī, cultus	*agricola*	*till, inhabit, worship*
umerus, -ī, *m.*		*shoulder*

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque		*whoever, whatever*
advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus	advert, *ad* + *vertō*	*turn*
faciēs, -ēī, *f.*	superficial	*face*
parēns, -entis, *m.*	parent	(Meaning?)
septimus, -a, -um	*septem*	*seventh*
noceō, -ēre, -uī	noxious	*harm, injure*
ēripiō, -ere, -uī, ēreptus	*ex* + *rapiō*	*snatch away, take away*
fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictus	fiction	*shape, invent, imagine*
redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus	*re(d)* + *agō*	*reduce*
nisi, *conj.*		*unless, except*
acūtus, -a, -um	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)

45. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *innocuous, innocent, figment, specious, porcine, nuisance.* What bone is called the *humerus*?

2. Why is *innocuous* spelled with two *n's* and *inoculate* with one?

3. **Prex, precis,** *prayer,* has important English derivatives. A *prec*arious situation is one the outcome of which depends upon *prayer,* and is uncertain. To de*prec*ate praise is to *pray* it away, to disapprove it. To im*prec*ate curses is to utter *prayers* to heaven against someone.

4. Resemblances between English and Latin words are accounted for, in general, by two causes: *derivation* of English words from Latin; and the *common descent* of Latin and Anglo-Saxon from a parent language, the Aryan or Indo-European tongue. These two relationships may be illustrated by resemblances among members of families. A daughter resembles her parents because her qualities are

derived from them; but two brothers resemble *each other* because their qualities are derived from common parents. Anglo-Saxon and Latin are *brother*, or cognate (lit. *born together*), languages. Thus from **verbum**, meaning *word*, we have the derivatives *verb, adverb, proverb, verbal.* Observe that all the derivatives contain the letter *v*. You have also learned that **verbum** and *word* are cognates; that is, they are both derived from a common ancestor in the Aryan language. Observe that **v** (pronounced like *w*) appears as *w* in the cognate English word. In the same way Latin **via** gives us the derivatives *viaduct, previous, devious,* all containing the letter *v*. The Anglo-Saxon *cognate* of **via** is *way*, where **v** appears as *w*. Give English cognates of **ventus, vīnum, vādere,** and **novus.**

DIANA

To the early Romans Diana was the goddess of the woods. When identified with Artemis, the twin sister of Apollo, she became the goddess of the moon and of hunting, and the ideal of modesty, grace, and maidenly vigor

46. Drill and Review

1. Review the words numbered 401–450 (App., p. 50).

2. Decline **faciēs** (sing.), **duo fīliī, fīnis, quis** (App., p. 9).

3. Compare **magnus, multus, parvus, malus, bonus** (App., p. 11).

4. Give the principal parts and stems of **teneō, maneō, dubitō, respondeō, sedeō, agō, redigō, fingō, noceō, timeō, dēbeō.**

5. Give synopses of **teneō** in the first singular, passive; the third singular, passive; and the third plural, passive. Conjugate the present, future, and perfect passive tenses.

6. Give the infinitives and participles of **maneō** and **sedeō**. Give the imperative, active and passive, of **teneō**.

7. What adjectives take the dative case?

8. Read and translate:

1. Quod ibi agrī plānī et vacuī erant, is locus pugnae idōneus vidēbātur. 2. Ultrā terminōs orbis terrārum Atlās umerīs caelum tenuit. 3. Cīvēs, ignōrātisne cōpiās hostium per fīnēs nostrōs perdūcī? 4. Hōc proeliō factō, victī sub jugum mittentur. 5. Eō bellō virī sanguinis nōbilis praesertim nōtī erant. 6. Duo flūmina prope illud oppidum sē jungēbant. 7. Dē causā bellī prīnceps pauca dīxit. 8. Cerberus vivus ex īnferīs trahētur. 9. Aqua in quam nauta cecidit duodecim pedēs alta est.

9. Write in Latin:

1. If a wall is constructed (**struere**), we shall be shut out of the garden. 2. When about to depart they found that the horses were not ready. 3. Your daughter is like you in face. 4. Women wearing wretched garments were tilling the fields. 5. I think that leisure will delight my grandfather.

LESSON 11

NARCISSUS AND ECHO

Narcissus, a handsome but conceited youth, refused to associate with other boys and girls. The beautiful nymph Echo fell in love with him. Her vexation at his haughty treatment of her, and the fate of Narcissus, who fell in love with his own face, are told in the following story.*

47. Pulcherrimus puerōrum ā prīmīs annīs erat Narcissus. Ab omnibus propter pulchritūdinem amātus, ipse amīcitiam et puerōrum et puellārum vītābat. Multī amīcitiam eius petiērunt, sed verbīs puerī superbī aut factīs repulsī sunt; nam sōlus per agrōs silvāsque Narcissus errābat.

Jam sēdecim annōs nātus erat,[1] cum forte Ēchō, pulcherrima omnium nymphārum, eum in silvīs errantem et cervōs sagittīs agentem vīdit. Haec nympha garrula semper aestimāta erat; sed eō tempore, quod Jūnōnem ōlim offenderat, vōcis brevissimum ūsum habēbat. Dea enim īrāta dīxerat: "Illa mihi poenās dabit. Linguae potestātem āmittat[2] et vōcis brevissimum ūsum habeat."[2] Quam ob rem posteā Ēchō sōlum verba audīta reportāre et novissima[3] verba dē multīs reddere poterat.

* The story of Narcissus and Echo is told in the following books:
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 188–189.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 147–148.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 118–120.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Myths, p. 185.
BULFINCH. The Age of Fable, pp. 106–110.

Ēchō simul atque Narcissum per silvās errantem vīdit, eum amāvit, et vēstīgia eius sequī[4] coepit. Quō magis sequitur, eō major[5] amor illīus est. Quotiēns appropinquāre et cum eō dīcere cupiēbat! Nātūra autem et poena Jūnōnis impediēbant.

Tandem Narcissus, sē esse sōlum crēdēns, dīxit, "Ecquis adest?"[6] "Adest," statim respondit puella, verba illīus exspectāre et reddere parāta. Ille stupet et oculōs omnēs in partēs dīmīsit. Nūllō vīsō, "Venī!"[7] magnā vōce clāmāvit. Iterum Ēchō vocat vocantem.[8] Inde Narcissus respexit, et, nūllō veniente, rūrsus "Cūr," inquit, "mē fugis?" Eadem verba quae dīxerat rūrsus audīvit. Tum, quod socium adesse crēdēbat, "Coeāmus!"[9] clāmāvit; cui Ēchō "Coeāmus!" libentissimē respondit. Et ex silvīs ēgressa[10] nympha ad puerum properābat, dulce[11] ad eum rīdēns, et bracchia collō[12] juvenis inicere temptābat.

A NYMPH

The primitive Greeks imagined the woods, mountains, and streams as peopled with beautiful beings called nymphs. There were the Oreads, or mountain nymphs, of whom Echo was one, the Dryads, or tree nymphs, and the Naiads, or water nymphs. (From a painting by Burne-Jones)

At Narcissus, nymphā incognitā vīsā, verbīs īrātīs et

superbīs puellam īnfēlīcem relīquit. Quae hōc modō ab eō sprēta in silvīs ob dolōrem latuit. Mox vīta ē corpore miserae puellae discessit; sed vōx mānsit. Quā dē causā Ēchō posteā (et hodiē) ab omnibus audīta ā nūllō vidērī potest.

Postquam multī aliī puerī et puellae similī modō ab Narcissō repulsī sunt, quīdam ex sprētīs[13] sīc petīvit: "Eōdem modō ipse amet[14] et repellātur!"[14] Hunc petentem et manūs ad caelum tollentem Nemesis[15] dea audīvit et jūvit.

Ut accidit, quīdam senex mātrī īnfantis Narcissī rogantī, "Venietne in senectūtem meus fīlius?" responderat, "Certē ille multōs annōs vīvet, sī faciem suam numquam vīderit." Vāna diū vīsa erant verba senis; sed fātum superbī puerī et genus mortis ad quam cōnsiliō Nemesis ductus est illum vērē dīxisse probāvit.

Mediā in silvā erat fōns pūrus, prope quem Narcissus dēfessus accumbēbat. Dum ex fonte bibit, subitō in aquā imāginem cōnspexit, sed sē nōn agnōvit. Tum prīmum, pulchritūdine imāginis commōtus, alium admīrārī[4] et amāre coepit. Speciem sine corpore amat; corpus putat esse quod umbra est. Noctēs diēsque in illō locō mānsit. Nec cūra cibī nec cūra quiētis illum ā rīpīs fontis abstrahere potest. Nec vigor nec vīrēs nec pulchritūdō quam Ēchō amāverat mānsērunt. "Eheu!" clāmat puer miser; et "Eheu!" respondet Ēchō, quae videt et dolet. "Valē!" vocat ille; et "Valē!" inquit Ēchō. Tandem caput dēfessum viridī in herbā Narcissus dēposuit et mors oculōs fōrmam dominī admīrantēs clausit. Haec erat fīnis vītae Narcissī: nusquam enim erat corpus; prō corpore croceus flōs[16] invenītur quem folia alba cingunt.

48. Notes

1. **Jam . . . nātus erat**, *he was now sixteen* (lit. *he had been born now sixteen years*).

2. **Āmittat**, *let her lose*; **habeat**, *let her have*. Both verbs are in the present tense of the subjunctive mood.

3. **Novissima**, *the last* (lit. *the newest*).

4. **Sequī**, *to follow*; present infinitive of the deponent verb **sequor**. **Admīrārī**, present infinitive of **admīror**.

5. **Quō magis . . . eō major**, *the more she follows, the greater*. **Sequitur** is present indicative of a deponent verb.

6. **Ecquis adest**, *is anyone here?*

7. Present imperative or perfect indicative?

8. **Eum** must be understood with **vocantem**.

9. **Coeāmus**, *let us meet*; present subjunctive (n. 2).

10. **Ēgressa**, *having emerged*; perfect participle of the deponent verb **ēgredior**.

11. **Dulce**, *sweetly*.

12. **Collō** is dative case with the *compound* verb **inicere**. Can you recall other *compound* verbs governing the dative?

13. **Ex sprētīs**, *of those who had been scorned*.

14. Mood of **amet** and **repellātur**? How translated?

15. Nemesis, goddess of retribution, inflicted the punishment of the gods on the proud as well as on the guilty.

16. The narcissus.

49. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
sēdecim, *indecl. num.*	*sex, decem*	(Meaning?)
nympha, **-ae**, *f.*	nymph	(Meaning?)
cervus, **-ī**, *m.*		*deer*
garrulus, **-a**, **-um**	garrulous	*talkative*
sōlum, *adv.*	*sōlus*	*only*
bracchium, **bracchī**, *n.*		*arm*

NARCISSUS FALLS IN LOVE WITH HIS OWN REFLECTION

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
iniciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectus	*in* + *jaciō*	(Meaning?)
īnfēlīx, -īcis	*in* + *fēlīx*	(Meaning?)
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus		*scorn*
lateō, -ēre, -uī	latent	*be concealed, be hidden*
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus	extol	*lift, raise*
vānus, -a, -um	vain	(Meaning?)
vērus, -a, -um	veracity	*true*
bibō, -ere, bibī, bibitus	imbibe	*drink*
imāgō, -inis, *f.*	image	(Meaning?)
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus	*cōnspectus*	*see*
abstrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus	abstract, *ab(s)* + *trahō*	(Meaning?)
vigor, -ōris, *m.*	vigor	(Meaning?)
viridis, -e		*green*
croceus, -a, -um		*yellow*
folium, folī, *n.*	foliage	*leaf*
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus		*surround*

50. Review of Suffixes in Latin and English

-tās, -tūdō, and -ia (-tia) form nouns of quality.

a. Explain the derivation and meaning of **adulēscentia, amīcitia, audācia, dignitās, gravitās, hūmānitās, jūstitia, lātitūdō, lībertās, miseria, multitūdō, potestās, pulchritūdō, superbia.**

b. Give the Latin original and meaning of *antiquity, brevity, calamity, facility, injury, solitude, victory.*

Note. The suffix **-tūs** sometimes expresses quality. Give the derivation, meaning, and genitive singular of **juventūs, senectūs, servitūs, virtūs.**

-tiō (**-siō**) and **-tus** (**-sus**) form nouns expressing action.

a. Explain the derivation and meaning of **adventus, cōnspectus, cursus, dēditiō, ēventus, mūnitiō, occāsus.**

b. Give the Latin original and meaning of *aspect, conversion, dissension.*

-or is used to form nouns of condition from verbs.

a. Explain the derivation and meaning of **amor, terror.**

b. Give the derivation and meaning of the English words *clamor, dolor.*

-tor (**-sor**) forms nouns of agency from verbs.

a. Explain the derivation and meaning of **explōrātor, imperātor, raptor.**

b. Give the derivation and meaning of *creditor, debtor, divisor, victor.*

NOTE. Occasionally **-tor** is added to nouns. Explain **jānitor, viātor.**

-bilis (**-ilis**) forms adjectives from verbs. They usually indicate what *can be done*, "able to be." Occasionally they are active.

a. Explain the derivation and meaning of **mōbilis, terribilis** (act.).

b. Give the derivation and meaning of *agile* (act.), *incurable, inexhaustible, inflexible, invincible, portable, tangible.*

-ōsus and **-lentus** form adjectives meaning "full of."

a. Explain the derivation and meaning of **imperiōsus, violentus.**

b. Give the derivation and meaning of *audacious, corpulent, fabulous, impetuous, insidious, specious, turbulent.*

51. Drill and Review

1. Review words numbered 451–500 (App., pp. 50 and 51).

2. Decline **vōx sōla, idem verbum** (App., p. 8), **senex, potestās similis** (sing.).

3. How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Give and compare the adverbs from **lātus, fortis, audāx, miser, ācer, facilis** (App., p. 11). With what is the comparative of the adverb identical?

4. Give the principal parts and stems of **ēripiō, fugiō, dīmittō, crēdō, rīdeō, repellō, rogō, vīvō, claudō, coepī.**

5. Give synopses of **claudō** in the first singular, passive; the third singular, passive; and the third plural, passive. Conjugate the present, future, and perfect passive tenses.

6. Give the infinitives and participles of **fugiō** and **claudō**; the imperative active of **fingō**; the imperative passive of **claudō**.

7. *Subordinate Clauses.* (*a*) What kind of clause is introduced by **quod**? by **dum**? by **ubi**? by **postquam**? by **sī**? by **quī**? By what kinds of clause may a participle be translated?

(*b*) Read and translate:

1. Eō postquam gradūs vertērunt, casam senis pauperis vīdērunt. 2. Deī benignē exceptī vīnum quod Philēmōn dederat suā sponte hausērunt. 3. Quod collēs et palūdēs impedient, iter celeriter nōn facient. 4. Nunc Baucis et Philēmōn, fōrmā mūtātī, arborēs sunt. 5. Multīs beneficiīs acceptīs, deīs grātī sumus. 6. Ubi ex servitūte et labōribus servātī sunt, adulēscentēs deīs grātiās ēgērunt. 7. Sī celerī pede contendēs, cursū puellam superābis. 8. Dum Cerēs fīliam āmissam petit, multī sunt labōrēs agricolārum.

(*c*) Write in Latin:

1. The girls will gather flowers in the fields while the farmers are plucking fruit from the trees. 2. We shall give thanks because our friends have been led back unharmed. 3. The men who were wearied were laying aside their heavy arms. 4. After Ceres had been warned in this way, she began to look for her daughter. 5. The barbarians, who were strong of (in) body and keen of (in) eye, were not easily overcome.

LESSON 12

MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH

Silenus, the guardian and teacher of Bacchus, had been captured by the Phrygians and taken before Midas, their king. Midas entertained Silenus and restored him to Bacchus. Bacchus, in gratitude for this kindness, gave the king the choice of a gift. Midas asked that whatever he touched might turn to gold. The magic touch proved a curse, for even his food and drink became gold in the hands of the king. So Midas prayed for release. He was ordered to bathe in the source of the river Pactolus. He did so, and his wonderful power left him and passed into the river, the sands of which afterward were golden.*

52. Magistrō cārissimō, Sīlēnō, servātō et receptō, Bacchus ob gaudium magnum Midae mūneris arbitrium dederat. Ille responderat, "Omnia quae corpore tetigerō in aurum vertantur." [1] Mūnus īnfēlīx et inūtile futūrum erat,[2] sed deus nōn negāverat. Doluit autem quod Midās meliōra nōn petīverat.

Inde rēx laetus domum profectus est.[3] Dum in itinere prōgreditur,[3] sēcum locūtus est[3]: "Fidem [4] deī et potestātem dextrae tangendō [5] singula temptātūrus sum." Hōc dictō, vix crēdēns virgam ex proximā arbore dētrāxit.

* The story of Midas is told in the following books:

GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 110–111, 157–158.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 19–21.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 177–179.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Myths, p. 170.
BULFINCH. The Age of Fable, pp. 52–54.

For Bacchus see Gayley, p. 44; Sabin, pp. 36–38; Guerber, pp. 171–182; Tatlock, pp. 165–172; Bulfinch, pp. 165–170.

Ecce, virga quam tenēbat aurea facta est.[6] Deinde humō[7] saxum tollit; aurō quoque illud saxum lūcēbat. Arēnam tetigit, et sine morā ūllā arēna in aurum contāctū mūtāta est. Pōmum ab arbore raptum simile erat eīs quae Hesperidēs[8] dēfendērunt. Ubi manūs liquidīs aquīs lāvit, aurea unda dē manibus fluēbat.

Sīc omnia aurea fingēns domum pervēnit, ubi servī ante dominum avidum cibum et frūctūs posuērunt. Cibus autem quem dextrā suā tetigit in aurum statim mūtātus est; et aurum, nōn frūctus, in dentibus haesit. Vīnum in pōculīs similī modō in aurum vertī vīdit. Cōpia nūlla famem ācrem relevat. Tum vērō, attonitus[9] novitāte malī, quod famem sitemque nūllō modō relevāre poterat, eōdem tempore dīves et miser, potestātem novam effugere Midās cupiēbat; et id quod rogāverat ōdit.[10] Ad caelum manūs et splendida bracchia tollēns, "Pater Bacche," inquit, "in mūneris arbitriō errāvī. Nunc mihi auxilium tuum petō. Ex famē et morte mē servā."

Tum deus ad misericordiam mōtus rēgem ad ortūs Pactōlī, flūminis Asiae, vādere ibique caput et corpus submergere jussit. Hāc rē factā, vīs aurea dē corpore hūmānō in flūmen cessit et aquam tīnxit. Quā dē causā posteā aurea erat arēna illīus flūminis.

53. Notes

1. **Omnia vertantur,** (*let*) *all things be changed.* **Vertantur** is present subjunctive. What would the present and future indicative be? The idea is that of *command,* of *volition.*

2. **Futūrum erat,** *was going* (*about*) *to be.* The future active participle is often combined in this way with a form of **sum.**

THE DESPAIR OF MIDAS AS EVERYTHING TURNS TO GOLD

3. **Profectus est,** *set out*; the perfect indicative of the deponent verb **proficīscor. Prōgreditur,** *sets forth, proceeds*; the present indicative of the deponent verb **prōgredior. Locūtus est,** *spoke*; the perfect indicative of the deponent verb **loquor.** See section 54 for an explanation of deponent verbs.

SILENUS WITH THE INFANT BACCHUS

The satyrs were shaggy creatures, each having the ears and tail of a goat, and sometimes the horns and hoofs. The oldest of these was Silenus, to whom Jupiter intrusted the education of his son Bacchus

4. **Fidem,** *good faith.*

5. **Tangendō singula,** *by touching different objects* (lit. *single objects*). **Tangendō** is a verbal noun in the ablative (means), with an object, **singula.** The phrase corresponds exactly to the English translation.

6. **Facta est,** *became* (lit. *was made*). By what case will it be followed?

7. **Humō,** *from the ground.*

8. **Hesperidēs:** daughters of Atlas, who guarded the golden apples in the garden of their father.

9. **Attonitus novitāte malī:** you should be able, with the aid of the story and related Latin words, to solve the form and meaning of each word.

10. **Ōdit,** *hates.* This verb has forms only in the perfect system, but they have the meanings of the present system.

54. Deponent Verbs

Deponent verbs are verbs that are passive in form but active in meaning. They are called *deponent* because they

have *laid aside* their active forms. They are conjugated exactly like the passive of the four regular conjugations. There are thus no new forms to be learned. Decide in the case of each deponent verb to what conjugation it belongs, and give its forms like the passive of the type verb of that conjugation. The only new point is that the *passive* principal parts have to be learned instead of the active, and you will

A FESTIVAL IN HONOR OF BACCHUS

From a painting by Alma-Tadema

need to recognize a deponent verb instantly or, otherwise, you will misunderstand the voice. Deponent verbs have three active forms, the future infinitive and the present and future participles. A typical deponent verb of each conjugation is given in the Appendix, pages 21–23.

You have already met informally in the stories several deponent verbs of the first and third conjugations, and they were explained in the notes. Learn now their principal parts. Note their identity with the passive forms of the type verbs of the regular conjugation.

1st moror, *I delay* (vocor)	morārī, *to delay* (vocārī)	morātus sum, *I delayed* (vocātus sum)
1st admīror, *I admire*	admīrārī, *to admire*	admīrātus sum, *I admired*
3d sequor, *I follow* (dūcor)	sequī, *to follow* (dūcī)	secūtus sum, *I followed* (ductus sum)
3d nāscor, *I am born*	nāscī, *to be born*	nātus sum, *I was born*
3d loquor, *I speak*	loquī, *to speak*	locūtus sum, *I spoke*
3d patior, *I suffer*	patī, *to suffer*	passus sum, *I suffered*
3d ēgredior, *I go (step) out*	ēgredī, *to go out*	ēgressus sum, *I went out*
3d prōgredior, *I step forward, proceed*	prōgredī, *to proceed*	prōgressus sum, *I proceeded*
3d proficīscor, *I set out*	proficīscī, *to set out*	profectus sum, *I set out*

You can readily see that deponent verbs of the third conjugation are the most numerous. Give a derivative in *-ion* from the last principal part of the above verbs.

55. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
arbitrium, arbitrī, *n.*	arbitration	*choice*
inūtilis, -e	utility	*useless*
singulī, -ae, -a	single	(Meaning?)
vix, *adv.*		*scarcely*
humus, -ī, *f.*	humus	*ground*
lūceō, -ēre, lūxī	translucent	*shine*
contāctus, -ūs, *m.*	contact, *tangō*	(Meaning?)
liquidus, -a, -um	liquid	*flowing*
avidus, -a, -um	avid	*greedy, hungry*
dēns, dentis, *m.*	dentist	(Meaning?)
famēs, -is, *f.*	famine	(Meaning?)
relevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus		*relieve*
sitis, -is, *f.*		*thirst*
dīves, -itis		*rich*
ōdī, ōdisse, *defective*	odious	*hate*
tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus		*color, tinge*

56. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the following derivatives from the deponent verbs given in section 54: *sequence, consequence, cognate, eloquent, elocution, patient, compassion, egress, progress.*

2. From **tangere**, *to touch*, come numerous derivatives with various forms of the root: *tang-, ting-, tag-, tig-, tact-*. The beauty of a poem is in*tang*ible, because it cannot be *touched*, or laid hold of definitely. A *tang*ent in geometry is so called because it *touches* a circle. If a plan is con*ting*ent upon the weather, it *touches* it closely (*con-*), that is, is dependent upon it. Two houses are con*tig*uous, when they *touch* each other (*con-*). Explain *contact*. Con*tag*ious diseases are communicated through *touching*. A person of *tact* has just the right *touch*. An *integer* means literally an *untouched* or whole number. To *attain* (Fr.) success is to *touch* or reach to it.

57. Drill and Review

1. Review the words numbered 501–550 (App., p. 51).

2. Decline **ea manus sōla** (sing.), **dēns, haec domus similis** (plur.) (App., p. 8).

3. Give and compare adverbs from **bonus, malus, magnus, parvus, multus** (App., p. 11).

4. Give the principal parts of **fluō, mergō, haereō, lavō, sequor, loquor, nāscor, patior, prōgredior, tollō, tangō, fingō.**

5. Give synopses of **sequor** in the third singular and plural (App., p. 21); conjugate in the present, future, and perfect indicative.

6. Give the present imperative of **prōgredior.** Give the infinitives and participles of **sequor.**

7. Count from one to twenty in Latin. Which of these numerals are declined? Decline each. Decline **mīlle.**

8. *Irregular Adjectives.* (*a*) Read and translate, observing the forms of the irregular adjectives:

1. Virtūte ūnīus virī, Horātī, Rōma servāta est. 2. Incolae tōtīus Galliae Germānōs timēbant. 3. Tibi sōlī dōna dabuntur. 4. Cornēlia fīlia alterīus fēminae erat. 5. Dīxit sē impetum nūllīus hostis timēre. 6. Tōtī urbī ōrātiō eius grātissima erat. 7. Neuter puer in carrō vehētur; uterque ambulābit.

(*b*) Write in Latin:

1. The command of neither man will be heard. 2. To no general was greater power given than to Caesar. 3. The roots of both trees are long. 4. The arrival of the whole family in Italy gives greater pleasure to no one than to me.

9. Read and translate, giving particular attention to the deponent verbs:

Mūnere Bacchī acceptō, Midās amīcīs ita locūtus est: "Dum domum prōgredior, singula tangam. Tempus jam est domum proficīscī. Quis vestrum mēcum prōgrediētur?" Neque amīcī eius morantur, sed omnēs eum sequuntur. Dum prōgrediuntur, Midās virgās et saxa et arēnam tangit. Statim omnia contāctū eius in aurum mūtantur. Quod cibus quoque et vīnum in aurum mūtābantur, Midās famem sitemque passus est.

10. Review Word List 2, in the Appendix, page 44.

THE PERISTYLE OF A ROMAN HOUSE

PART II. THE ROMAN IN HIS HOME

LESSON 13

ROMAN FAMILY LIFE

The family was the center of Roman life. The Romans placed great stress on relationship, and attached more importance to it than did any other ancient nation.*

Meaning of *Familia*. The Latin word **familia** had a wider meaning than our word "family." It included the father, the mother, the unmarried children, the married sons and their wives and children, and the slaves. So **familia** corresponded more closely to "house," in such expressions as "the House of Hapsburg," than to the English word "family."

Importance of Kinship. All **familiae** that could trace descent from a common male ancestor, however remote, were members of the same **gēns**. The second part of the triple name that we associate with the Romans was called the **nōmen**, and indicated the **gēns** to which the person belonged, as in **Gāius *Jūlius* Caesar, Mārcus *Tullius* Cicerō, Pūblius *Vergilius* Marō.** Romans of distinguished families took the utmost pride in their ancestry, and through stories of the glorious deeds of their forefathers tried to inspire their children to uphold the family tradition. The spirits of departed ancestors were believed to guide and protect the living, and ceremonies in their honor were performed annually by the descendants at the family tombs.

* For more detailed accounts of the Roman family see the following:
JOHNSTON. The Private Life of the Romans, chap. i.
BAILEY. The Legacy of Rome, pp. 209–236.
DAVIS. A Day in Old Rome, pp. 184–206.

Special Names for Degrees of Relationship. The Romans had very exact names with which to designate various degrees of relationship. For example, **avus** meant *grandfather*,

THE ATRIUM OF A ROMAN HOUSE

In this picture you are standing in the **tablīnum**, looking across the **ātrium** toward the entrance of the house, which is marked by two columns. Note the square basin in the floor (**impluvium**) and the opening in the roof (**compluvium**). In the left foreground is a tall bronze table with a rim. At the right is a water heater. Charcoal was placed in the center of this, and the water was heated in the hollow space about this fire pan. In the center is a table, called the **cartibulum**, which was traditionally placed in the atrium near the impluvium. In front of the columns are tall candelabra with elaborate lamps, in which oil was burned. The atrium was intended for formal uses, such as the reception of clients, and was not supplied with chairs or couches

proavus, *great-grandfather*; while for **abavus**, **atavus**, and **tritavus** we have to prefix "great" a corresponding number of times.* We have the one word *uncle* to indicate the brother

* For an impressive table of relationships see Johnston's "The Private Life of the Romans," page 27.

of a father or a mother. The Romans made a distinction, and a father's brother was called **patruus**, and a mother's brother **avunculus**. From the latter comes our word *uncle*.

A HOUSEHOLD SHRINE AT POMPEII

This picture was painted on the wall over a shrine to the household gods in a house at Pompeii. In the middle stands the Genius of the paterfamilias, with libation saucer and a box of incense. At the side are the two Lares, guardians of the prosperity of the family. Below is a crested serpent about to partake of the offerings, a personification of the head of the house

Power of the Head of the Family. The **pater familiās** had absolute authority over all the members of his household. He controlled all the property, arranged the marriages of his sons and daughters, and was even allowed to punish his children with penalties as severe as banishment or death. But in actual practice this power was not used so tyrannically as we might imagine; for affection for his wife and children,

the custom of calling a family council, and general public sentiment restrained the father from harsh or arbitrary actions.

Marriage and the Position of Women. While marriages were arranged, not by the young couples concerned, but by their parents, — a system very different from our own, but similar to what prevails in some European countries today, — the results seem to have been generally good, and affection and harmony between husbands and wives seem to have been the rule. Roman women occupied a higher position in the home than the women of any other nation of antiquity. A Roman wife was not confined to certain secluded women's apartments, as in Greece and the oriental nations, but the whole house was hers, and she was absolute mistress of it. Roman women supervised their children's education, were their husband's comrades and advisers, and were practically on a plane of equality with them.

CAVĒ CANEM

The entrance (**vestibulum**) of the house was in early times frequently guarded by a watchdog. The custom is reflected in this mosaic of a dog, which was found on the floor of the passageway (**faucēs**) in a Pompeian house

Training of Children. It was in this closely knit family circle that the children received their first training in those characteristic virtues which we associate with the early Romans: patriotism, courage, endurance, obedience to authority, honor, a sense of duty and respect for the gods, pride in their race and in worthy achievements.

Religion in the Home. The Roman religion was very closely connected with home life. In every house there was

a shrine, where images of the household gods, the Lares and Penates, were kept, and where Vesta, the spirit of the hearth, was worshiped, as well as the Genius, or guardian spirit of the **pater familiās**. The father acted as high priest, and presided over the religious ceremonies of the household.

SUGGESTIONS FOR THE COMPREHENSION OF LATIN

1. Read each sentence in Latin, preferably aloud, with your mind on the story, and trying to understand what the new sentence adds to the story. Read it several times, if necessary.

2. As you read, observe carefully the endings of inflected words, and group together words that belong together: as, adjectives with their nouns, prepositional phrases, subordinate clauses.

3. As you read, note the meaning of the successive words, trying to decide the meaning of unfamiliar words from the context and by the use of related Latin and English words. Finally translate the sentence or prepare yourself to answer questions on the thought.

4. If you do not yet understand the thought, read the sentence again, determining definitely all possible forms of each word or group and its possible uses. Hold these uses in mind until something later in the sentence helps you to decide the exact use. Note particularly, as you read, what word, if any, must be subject, or object, or verb.

5. If you still do not understand everything in the sentence, as a last resort translate each word or group literally, keeping the Latin order, and looking up unfamiliar words. Make sure that you translate each word or group by the use which the ending indicates. Then put your translation into clear, idiomatic English.

6. In reading sentences containing more than one subordinate clause, be particularly careful to note where each subordinate clause begins and ends, and when an interrupted main clause is again resumed. Failure to see short but very important conjunctions or to associate the right verb with a subordinate conjunction is a common source of error.

LESSON 14

A ROMAN WEDDING

The following scenes describe three important parts of a Roman wedding. The **spōnsālia**, *betrothal*, corresponds to the modern engagement, except that it was a formal ceremony with the Romans, as it still is in European countries. The **nūptiae** was the wedding ceremony itself. The **dēductiō** was a procession in which the bridegroom conducted the bride to her future home.*

58. PERSŌNAE

PŪBLIUS CORNĒLIUS FLACCUS
CORNĒLIA, daughter of Flaccus
MĀRCUS CLAUDIUS MĀRCELLUS
LŪCIUS, son of Marcellus

Prōnuba, a Roman matron, corresponding to the modern "bridesmaid" — Guests
Pontifex — A Roman
— A Stranger in Rome

SCENE 1 (Spōnsālia)

The scene is the city home of Flaccus. He and his wife, Terentia, his daughter Cornelia, and a group of friends are standing at one side of the atrium. The walls are hung with garlands; for the occasion is the betrothal of Cornelia, and consequently this is a festal day for all the household of Flaccus.

Enter Marcellus with his son Lucius and friends of their family

FLACCUS. Salvē, Mārcelle! Salvēte, vōs omnēs!
MĀRCELLUS. Salvē! Salvēte!

* For interesting descriptions of all the ceremonies connected with Roman marriage, read Johnston's "Private Life of the Romans," pages 53–64, and Davis's "A Day in Old Rome," pages 67–71.

THE BETROTHAL (SPŌNSĀLIA) OF LUCIUS AND CORNELIA

At the right stands Cornelia, the bride-to-be, with her father, Flaccus, at her right, and her mother, Terentia, at her left. Lucius is giving her the ring, which is almost precisely the engagement ring of a later age. The father and mother of Lucius stand not far behind him. Other members of both families are grouped on either side. The ceremony is taking place in the atrium

There is general conversation while Marcellus and his company are ranging themselves opposite the family of Flaccus. Then a solemn silence ensues

FLA. Attendite, omnēs. Mārcellus, amīcus meus, vēnit Cornēliam nostram in mātrimōnium petēns. Tempus est spōnsālium[1]; itaque huic officiō[2] operam dēmus.[3]

MĀR. Spondēsne, Flacce, fīliam tuam fīliō meō uxōrem darī?

FLA. Spondeō. Deī testēs sint[4] verbīs meīs. Deī bene vertant.[4]

2

MĀR. Deī et maximē Jūnō, dea nūptiārum, bene vertant.[4]

LŪC. Hōc tempore Cornēlia spōnsa[5] hunc ānulum[6] ā mē recipiat.[3] (*He advances to Cornelia, and gives her a ring.*) Hic ānulus per omnēs annōs in testimōnium spōnsālium nostrōrum ā tē habeātur.[3]

COR. Ego quoque Lūciō spōnsō[5] dōnum parāvī. (*She summons a slave from an adjacent room.*) Hic servus ā tē in testimōnium spōnsālium nostrōrum retineātur.[3]

MĀR. Necesse est nostrō mōre puellam, quae in mātrimōnium datur, dōtem ferre.[7] Quid dē huius puellae dōte? Quantum pecūniae et rērum aliārum dabitur?

FLA. Satis pecūniae prōvīsum est. In tablīnum autem intrēmus et dē condiciōnibus dōtis agāmus. (*He moves toward the tablinum with Marcellus, but as he is leaving the atrium he turns to the others.*) Vōs in triclīnium intrāte, ubi cēna parāta est. Eō ego et Mārcellus brevī tempore prōgrediēmur.

They all go out

SCENE 2 (NŪPTIAE)

The atrium of Flaccus. The time is shortly after sunrise. There is an altar at one side of the room, beside which are stools covered with the skin of a sheep. The room is well decked with flowers and garlands, as befits the wedding day of the daughter of a Roman family. Guests are already gathered for the ceremony. The bride and groom have not yet appeared.

59. FIRST GUEST. Diēbus īnfēlīcibus[8] omissīs, paucī manent diēs nūptiīs fēlīcēs.

SECOND GUEST. Et quam crēbrae sunt nūptiae ad quās invītātī sumus!

FIRST GUEST. Illīs officiīs[2] multae hōrae cōnsūmuntur.
SECOND GUEST. Hae nūptiae tamen mihi grātissimae sunt; nam omnibus nōbīs cārissima est Cornēlia. Bonum virum[9] illa certē meret.

ADORNING THE BRIDE

The bride wore a special tunic falling to the feet, and over this a flame-colored bridal veil, the **flammeum**. This might be draped over the head, as in the picture on page 96. The hair received particularly careful treatment. The bride had also a wreath of flowers and sacred plants gathered by herself

FIRST GUEST. Spērēmus[3] nūllōs mōrēs nūptiālēs ā Flaccō et Terentiā neglēctōs esse.

SECOND GUEST. Omnēs observātī erunt. Proximā nocte[10] Cornēlia Laribus[11] bullam suam et togam praetextam et crepundia dedit. Hodiē, prīmā lūce,[12] sacrificium deīs fēcit. Ā mātre cum cūrā jam ōrnātur. Tunicam albam geret et flammeō[13] croceō sē nūbet. Coma eius ōminis bonī causā[14] in sex crīnēs cuspide hastae dīvidētur.

FIRST GUEST. Vidē! Cornēlia adest! Spectā! Corōnam et vittās gerit atque flōrēs ā sē lēctōs[15] portat.

Accompanied by her mother and friends, and preceded by the pronuba, Cornelia enters the atrium. At the same

moment Lucius enters with members of his family and friends. He wears a toga and has a garland on his head

PRŌNUBA, *stepping forward.* Adsuntne decem testēs? (*Seeing them present, she leads Cornelia to Lucius and joins the hands of the bride and groom.*) Vestrās manūs jungō.

CORNĒLIA, *to Lucius.* Ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia.[16]

Lucius and Cornelia move over to the altar and take their places on the seats prepared there

PONTIFEX. Deōs et maximē Jūnōnem adōrēmus.[3] Juppiter, deōrum pater et hominum rēx, hīs spōnsīs [17] per annōs faveat. Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum Jovisque conjūnx et soror et cūstōs nūptārum, hīs spōnsīs fēlīx sit.[4] Hic diēs Lūciō et Cornēliae fēlīciter ēveniat.[4] (*He goes to the altar, places on it a cake of meal, and then turns to the company.*) Fēlīcia videntur ōmina.

GUESTS. Fēlīciter! Fēlīciter! Vōbīs [17] grātulāmur. Beātī vīvātis.[4] Vītam longam atque beātam habeātis.[4] O Lūcī, fortūnātissime omnium! Fēlīciter! Fēlīciter!

FLACCUS. Cēna nūptiālis [18] parāta est. Ad triclīnium prōgrediāmur.[3]

The guests go toward the dining-room

SCENE 3 (Dēductiō)

A residence street in Rome. The time is toward evening. Two men — one obviously a Roman from his toga, and the other as obviously a stranger in Rome — are walking through the street. They pause in conversation.

60. THE ROMAN, *pointing toward the entrance of a house on the opposite side of the street.* Illa est domus Mārcellī cuius fīlius Lūcius (ut dīcēbam) Cornēliam, fīliam Flaccī,

in mātrimōnium hodiē dūxit. Sine dubiō mox uxōrem domum Lūcius dēdūcet. Num dēductiōnem vīdistī? Hīc pompam exspectēmus; nam prōspectus est proximus.

THE WEDDING PROCESSION

The procession in this picture, on one of the residential streets, is approaching the home of Lucius. As this function was always a public ceremony, anyone might join it and participate in the merriment. In addition to the three boys who usually attended the bride, there were two attendants, immediately following her, who carried the distaff and spindle as emblems of domestic life. The **camillus,** with his **cumera,** was also a member of the procession. During the march there was singing and general rejoicing, in which bystanders, including well-to-do people, often took part

THE STRANGER. Nōn dissimillimī Graecīs sunt vestrī mōrēs nūptiārum.

THE ROMAN. Minimē (*Not at all*). Mōs est et Rōmānōrum et Graecōrum, cēnā nūptiālī cōnfectā, pompam ad vesperum[19] parāre. Tum, novā nūptā ā mātre per vim

abstrāctā,[20] pompa per viās prōgreditur. Sed attende! Nōnne audīvī clāmōrēs? Putō pompam appropinquāre.

THE STRANGER. Ecce! In hanc viam pompa intrāvit!

THE ROMAN. Eam videō. Omnēs amīcī [21] et hospitēs canunt laetī et rīdent. "Talassiō!" [22] clāmant.

Enter the wedding procession. Three young boys attend the bride: one carries a torch before her; the others are at her side, each leading her by the hand. Behind the bride are persons carrying a spindle and a distaff. All are hilarious. The procession stops in front of the house of Marcellus

THE BRIDE. Date mihi lāneās vittās et oleum.

Attendants hand her these emblems of plenty

THE STRANGER. Quidnam [23] illa facit?

THE ROMAN. Nunc spectā, mī amīce. Nova nūpta postēs vittīs ōrnat [24] et oleō unguit.

ONE OF THE GUESTS. Cornēlia trāns līmina [25] tollātur [3]!

ANOTHER GUEST. Lūcius ipse novam nūptam in domicilium tollat!

Lucius lifts the bride in his arms and starts to carry her into the house

THE BRIDE, *as she enters the doorway.* Ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia.

Some of the guests also enter. The rest of the procession, which has not been invited to enter, begins to disperse

THE ROMAN. Āctum est dē [26] pompā et nūptiīs Cornēliae; posthāc in potestāte [27] Mārcellī, nōn Flaccī, vīvet. Sed hīc diūtius nē maneāmus.[28]

They move along the street

61. Notes

1. In the formal ceremony of betrothal the head of the young man's family (**pater familiās**) went to the home of the girl and obtained from the head of her family a solemn promise that she should be married to his son.

2. **Officiō**, *ceremony* (lit. *duty*). The ceremony was a solemn family duty.

3. **Dēmus**, *let us give*; first person plural of the present subjunctive of **dō**. This independent use of the subjunctive expresses something as *wanted*, and is known as the *volitive subjunctive*. It is commonly translated by *let*. The present subjunctive of all conjugations occurs in these scenes. Observe that the characteristic vowel is **ē** in the first conjugation and **ā** in all the others.

4. **Sint**: present subjunctive of **sum**. In prayers and wishes the subjunctive may be rendered by *may*: as, **Deī bene vertant**, *may the gods bring luck*.

5. **Spōnsa**, *my betrothed*, or *who has been promised* (*to me*).

6. **Ānulum**: the ring given at the **spōnsālia** was afterwards worn on the third finger of the left hand, whence a nerve was supposed to run to the heart.

7. **Ferre**, *to bring*; learn thoroughly the principal parts. It was an inviolable custom with the Romans, as it is now with some European peoples, for the bride to bring a dowry to her husband.

8. **Diēbus īnfēlīcibus**: many days in the Roman year, such as the numerous holidays and the occasions set aside for religious ceremonies, were thought unlucky for a wedding.

9. **Virum**, *husband*.

10. **Proximā nocte**, *last night*.

11. **Laribus**: the Lares were the household gods of the Romans, the deified spirits of their ancestors, protecting the family and bestowing prosperity. They were worshiped in the kitchen or in a shrine set up in the atrium. On the eve

of her wedding day the bride dedicated to the Lares the amulet she had worn since childhood; the toga with the purple border, which, as a matron, she might no longer wear; and, if she was rather young, her childish playthings.

THE FLAMMEUM, OR BRIDAL VEIL

This veil was large enough to cover the whole person from head to foot. During the ceremony it was worn over the head, and was so retained until the bride arrived at her new home

12. **Prīmā lūce**, *at daybreak* (lit. *at first light*).

13. This *flame*-colored veil of the bride was so important that **nūbere**, *to veil oneself*, is the regular verb for *marry* when used of a woman, and **nūpta**, *veiled*, meant *bride*.

14. **Causā**, *for the sake of*, the ablative of **causa**, is equivalent to a preposition governing the genitive. It always follows the word it governs.

15. **Lēctōs**, *gathered*. What are the two meanings of **legere**?

16. **Ubi . . . Gāia**, *where you are Gaius, I am Gaia*, that is, *where you are master, I am mistress*. These words, the most essential part of the ceremony, were always used, no matter what the names of the bride and groom.

17. **Spōnsīs**: **faveō** takes its apparent object in the dative. See also **grātulor** below.

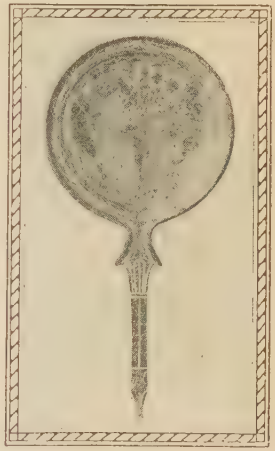
18. The wedding feast began at the conclusion of the wedding (early in the forenoon) and lasted till evening. The most important item was the wedding cake (**mustāceum**), made of meal steeped in unfermented wine.

19. **Ad vesperum**, *at evening*.

20. **Abstrāctā**: the bride was taken from her mother by the groom with a show of force.

21. **Amīcī**: the wedding procession was never omitted. It might be joined by any person inclined to enjoy merriment.

22. **Talassiō**: the Romans themselves did not know the meaning of this word, which they cried out as they proceeded through the streets.



A ROMAN MIRROR

23. **Quidnam**, *what, may I ask?*

24. **Ōrnat**: this was done as a symbol of her future work as mistress of the house.

25. **Trāns līmina tollātur**: to avoid the possibility of the bad omen of stumbling or slipping as she walked in.

26. **Āctum est dē**, *it is all over with* (lit. *it has been done with*). This is the *impersonal* use of the passive voice and is very common in Latin.

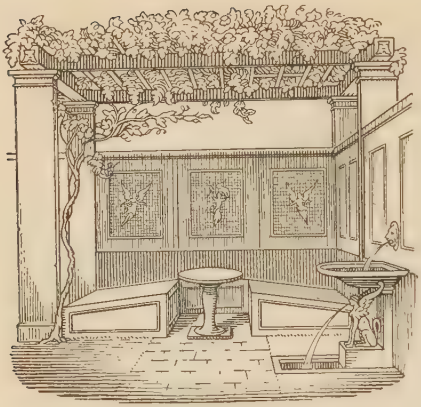
27. **In potestāte**: the bride passed from the **patria potestās** of her father into that of her husband's father.

28. **Nē maneāmus**, *let us not remain.* Observe that **nē** (not **nōn**) is the negative which is used with a volitive subjunctive.

62. The Subjunctive Mood in English and Latin

In English* the subjunctive mood, while not so commonly used as formerly, is still often heard in such sentences as "Each one *bring* his own lunch." For this independent use

* The English subjunctive is most easily recognized in the third singular, which lacks the personal ending *-s*: as, "Long *live* the king!" where the indicative form would be *lives*, and in forms of the verb *to be*, which has special present and past subjunctive forms, *be* and *were*: as, "Peace *be* with you"; "If he *were* here."



A SUMMER DINING-ROOM

of the subjunctive we more commonly use *let* and the infinitive. The subjunctive is also regularly employed in certain kinds of *dependent* clauses: as, "I move that Mr. Rice *take* the chair"; "We propose that the class *present* a play"; "They insisted that he *be* rewarded." In Latin the subjunctive has, in general, the same uses as in English; but you will discover that it is much more commonly used, both in independent and in dependent clauses.

63. The Volitive Subjunctive

You have met in this lesson a number of illustrations of the independent use of the *volitive* subjunctive, so called because it represents an act as *willed* (from **volō**, *I will*; compare also English *involuntary* and *volition*). It is regularly translated by *let* and the infinitive: as, **dēmus**, *let us give*; **nē maneāmus**, *let us not remain*; **prōgrediāmur**, *let us proceed*; **recipiat**, *let him receive*; **nē recipiat**, *let him not receive*.

Observe:

The negative used with the volitive subjunctive is *nē*.

64. Forms of the Subjunctive Mood in Latin

The subjunctive mood in Latin is much easier to learn than the indicative. A few principles thoroughly mastered

will enable you to recognize or build the great majority of subjunctive forms. Learn the following statements:

1. The subjunctive mood has but four tenses. (It has no future or future perfect.)
2. The personal endings used are the same as in the indicative, but **-m** (never **-ō**) is always used in the first person active.
3. The vowel before the personal ending remains the same throughout any given tense.
4. The *quantity* of vowels changes as in the indicative mood.

65. The Present Subjunctive, Active and Passive, of the Four Conjugations

The sign of the present subjunctive is **ē** (**e**) in verbs of the *first* conjugation and **ā** (**a**) in all the others.

Thus the forms of the first person of the present active subjunctive of the type verbs of the four conjugations are

1	2	3	3 (-iō)	4
vocem	moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiam

Conjugate these verbs in the present subjunctive active by simply changing the personal endings of these forms. If you have any difficulty, consult the Appendix, page 16. For deponent verbs see the Appendix, page 21.

Conjugate these same verbs in the present subjunctive passive by using the passive personal endings instead of the active. Consult the Appendix, if necessary.

Observe that in the first and third conjugations the stem vowels are dropped.

Observe that the significant vowels in the present subjunctive of the first and second conjugations are the reverse of what they are in the indicative.

What particular subjunctive form given above is identical with an indicative form? How shall you tell them apart?

The present subjunctive of **sum** is **sim**. Conjugate it, and compare with the Appendix, page 24.

66. Vocabulary

The lesson vocabularies of Part II will contain mainly those words which are to be thoroughly mastered.

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
opera, -ae, *f.*	coöperation	*work, attention*
testis, -is, *m.*	testify	*witness*
crēber, -bra, -brum		*frequent*
cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus	*con* + *sūmō*	*use up*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus	transfer	*bear, bring*
prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus	*prō* + *videō*	*care for, provide*
toga, -ae, *f.*		*toga*
lūx, lūcis, *f.*	lucid	*light*
causā (*abl. of* **causa**)		*for the sake of* (with gen.)
-ne, *interrog. particle*		indicates a question
soror, -ōris, *f.*	sorority	*sister*
vesper, -erī, *m.*	vespers	*evening*

67. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following phrases: *prenuptial* entertainments; *vesper* services; *unctuous* words; an *endowed* institution; to *elucidate* an obscure point; an *elimination* contest; to be *sponsor* for a candidate. Explain *spouse, beatitude, pompous.*

2. Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following technical or scientific expressions: an *annual* eclipse; *annulment* of a contract; *oleaginous* products; to *probate* a will; *circumference* of a circle; *efferent* nerves; *bicuspid* teeth; *auriferous* rocks. To what ceremony of the Catholic Church does "supreme *unction*" refer?

3. Testis, *witness*, has bequeathed to us some interesting derivatives. *Test*ify means to bear *witness*. *Test*imony is

evidence given by a *witness*. To at*test* the truth of a statement is to bear *witness* to it. To pro*test* meant to bear *witness* publicly (*pro-*, forth, in public); hence to make a solemn declaration. A con*test* was originally a going into court with *witnesses*, then a dispute. An incon*test*able argument is indisputable. To de*test* hypocrisy is to hate it as if you were calling down the gods as *witnesses*. Since in Rome a frequent occasion for the use of a witness was in the making of a will, **testārī**, *to bear witness*, came to mean *to make a will*. Hence our words *test*ament, a will; *test*ator, one who makes a will; in*test*ate, without a will.

4. The suffix **-mōnium** indicates action or state: as, **mātrimōnium**, *marriage* (from **māter**). This suffix appears in English as *-mony*: as, *matrimony*. Explain **testimōnium** and **patrimōnium**, and give their English forms.

68. Drill and Review

1. Compare **crēber, similis**. Decline **lūx, testis**. Conjugate **dēdūcō, prōvideō, adōrō** (pres. subjv., act. and pass.). Give synopsis of **proficīscor** (third sing.); infinitives and participles of **prōgredior**. Locate **omittunt, omittant, omittent, dēdūcam.**

2. Read and translate:

1. Ad domicilium Mārcellī nūptiārum causā properēmus. 2. Spōnsālibus cōnfectīs, domum proficīscāmur. 3. Nova nūpta diē nūptiārum cum cūrā ā mātre ōrnētur; tunicam albam gerat; corōnam habeat et flōrēs ex agrīs lēctōs portet. 4. Amīcī in ātrium prīmā lūce crēbrī conveniant; testēs adsint; manūs Cornēliae et Lūcī ā prōnubā jungantur. 5. Tuō negōtiō operam dā.

3. Write in Latin:

1. Let us escort the bride to the home of her husband. 2. Let all her friends walk through the streets with the procession. 3. Let them laugh and sing; let all be happy, for the omens seem favorable. 4. Let him not delay.

A ROMAN PATERFAMILIAS AND HIS WIFE

LESSON 15

THE ROMAN FAMILY

As Pliny, a Roman lawyer and man of letters, who lived A. D. 62–114, might have written you about family life in the days of the Roman Republic, the earlier and better times of Rome, when the family was the unit about which centered social life.

69. Epistula tua mihi grātissima est, quod quaeris ā mē dē familiā mōribusque[1] antīquōrum Rōmānōrum. Nihil mihi[2] magis placēbit quam tibi, quī ignōrās, pauca dē mōribus scrībere quōs magnopere probō.

Love of home; its sacred character

Prīmō, quī[3] cīvēs umquam domōs suās magis amāvērunt quam antīquī Rōmānī? Quantō cum dolōre procul ā

domō, uxōre, līberīs, familiā morābantur! Quantō gaudiō, bellīs aut labōribus cōnfectīs,[4] ā terrīs longinquīs revertēbant majōrēs nostrī![5] Quibus[6] nihil erat sānctius quam domus, ubi ārae, focī, Larēs, Penātēs,[7] imāginēs majōrum nostrōrum, sacra[8] continēbantur. Nūllum aliud perfugium tam sānctum omnibus cīvibus erat; itaque Cicerō, clārissimus ōrātor Rōmānōrum et cōnsul, domō in monte Palātīnō[9] ab inimīcīs dēlētā,[10] exclāmāvisse dīcitur, "Domicilium vāstāre et prīvāre cīvem hōc commūnī perfugiō nefās[11] est."

Respect and affection for the paterfamilias

Illīs temporibus, cum (*when*) pater familiās[12] familiam tōtam regēbat, reverentia patris[13] maximē flōruit. Auctōritās patris, quae "patria potestās" appellābātur, maxima erat. Pater familiās vītae necisque in suōs potestātem habēbat. Quīdam senātor nōmine Fulvius suum fīlium interfēcit, quī, Cicerōne cōnsule,[14] contrā rem pūblicam cum Catilīnā[15] conjūrāverat. Nōn saepe autem necesse erat patrem familiās suīs[16] tam gravī suppliciō nocēre. Quod officium tōtīus familiae erat imperātīs[16] patris obēdīre, et līberī et servī patrī familiās[16] libentissimē pārēbant; sed patrem nōn minus amābant quam verēbantur.

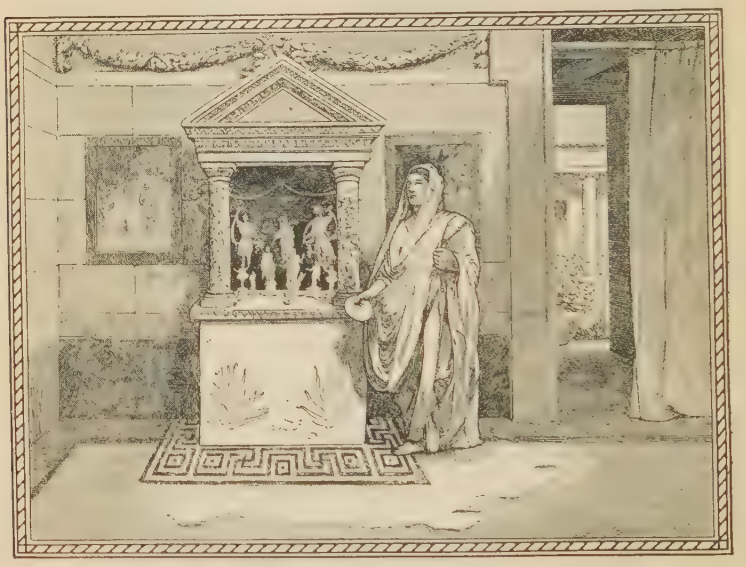
Appius Claudius, the blind censor, a typical paterfamilias

Igitur dē Appiō Claudiō, quī viam Appiam fēcit atque cīvēs cōnsiliīs bonīs magnopere jūvit, ita legimus: "Quattuor validōs fīliōs, quīnque fīliās, magnam domum, multōs servōs Appius regēbat et senex et caecus. Tenēbat nōn

modo auctōritātem sed etiam imperium in suōs. Eum verēbantur servī, verēbantur līberī, sed cārum omnēs habēbant."

Affection of masters for their slaves

Nōn modo inter parentēs et līberōs sed etiam inter dominōs et servōs saepe aderat magnus amor. Servī



FAMILY WORSHIP

The paterfamilias, as priest, is offering sacrifice to the household gods

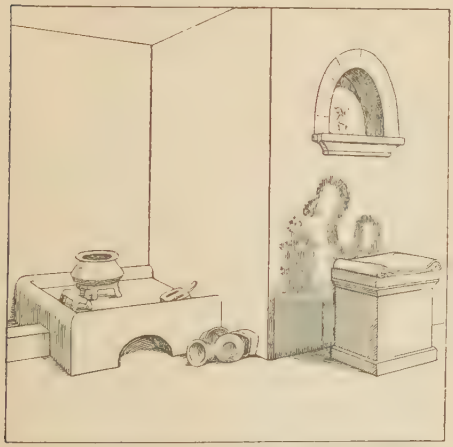
dominum patrem appellābant; dominī servōs familiārēs habēbant.[17] "Ad servōs, quōrum condiciō et fortūna īnfima[18] est," dicēbant majōrēs nostrī, "jūstitia semper servētur. Memoriā teneāmus servōs esse hominēs. Itaque cum eīs familiāriter vīvāmus."

Pliny's treatment for ailing slaves

Ego ipse exemplum antīquōrum secūtus[19] aegrōs servōs ab urbe in praedia rūstica saepe mittō, ubi āēr salūbris[20] et lac cūrātiōnibus maximē idōneum est.

Regard for the imāginēs of ancestors

Nē omittāmus mentiōnem facere dē imāginibus[21] quae[22] cērā expressae et longō ōrdine[23] in ālīs expositae nostrōs majōrēs dē rēbus gestīs[24] mortuōrum[25] monēbant et animōs adulēscentium ad virtūtem similem atque fāmam incitāre solēbant. Similī modō statuae mortuōrum in celeberrimīs locīs positae superbiam gentis Rōmānae augēbat.



A KITCHEN SHRINE AND STOVE

The shrine to the household gods was usually in the kitchen, because it was originally associated with the hearth

The family as the foundation of the state

Dē hīs rēbus plūra fortasse dīxī quam dēbuī sed pauciōra quam cupīvī; nam familia Rōmāna, quae hominēs commūnī sanguine dēvinciēbat, erat prīncipium urbis et quasi sēmināriūm reī pūblicae.[26] Magnum est[27] — ut Cicerō dīxit — et prīvātīs[28] et cīvitātibus eadem habēre monumenta majōrum, eadem facere sacrificia, sepulcra habēre commūnia. Valē.

70. Notes

1. **Familiā mōribusque**, *family customs.*

2. **Mihi**: dative with **placēbit**. Translate as direct object.

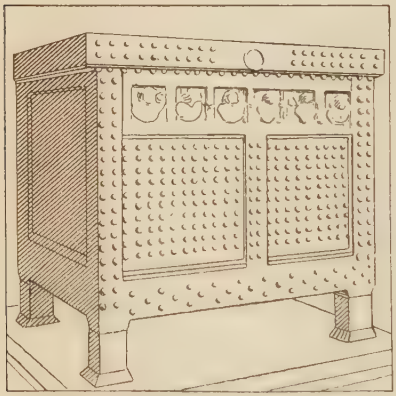
3. **Quī**: in what forms does the interrogative adjective **quī** differ from the pronoun **quis**? See Appendix, page 9.

4. What use of the participle?

5. **Majōrēs nostrī**, *our ancestors.*

6. What use of the relative pronoun?

7. For the Lares see section 61, note 11. The Penates were gods of the storeroom, whose aid was invoked to provide abundant stores for the family.



THE SAFE, OR STRONG BOX, OF THE PATERFAMILIAS

8. **Sacra**, *religious rites.*

9. The Palatine Hill, one of the famous seven hills, was a residential section of ancient Rome.

10. **Dēlētā**: owing to a change in political conditions Cicero was forced into exile at one time in his career, and his house was burned by his enemies in his absence.

11. **Nefās**: the words **fās**, *right*, and **nefās**, *wrong*, are used with reference to matters which are right or wrong in the eyes of the gods.

12. The **pater familiās** (gen. **patris familiās**) was the head of the Roman family.

13. **Reverentia patris**, *respect for a father.* This is not the possessive use of the genitive, since it does not mean *a father's respect.* The father is the *object* of the feeling expressed by **reverentia**; that is, they respected their father.

14. **Cicerōne cōnsule**, *when Cicero was consul*; lit. *Cicero* (being) *consul*, ablative absolute. Two nouns may form an ablative absolute.

15. **Cum Catilīnā**: you may read next year the orations that Cicero delivered against Catiline, who had formed a conspiracy to overthrow the government at Rome.

16. **Suīs**: dative with a special verb. Translate as direct object.

17. **Familiārēs habēbant**, *considered as friends.*

18. **Īnfima**: superlative of **īnferior.**

19. **Secūtus**, *following*; the perfect participle of some deponent verbs is best translated like a present participle.

20. **Salūbris**: predicate adjective.

21. **Imāginibus**: wax busts of those ancestors who had held high office. They were kept in niches on the walls of a room (**āla**) just off the atrium, with cords connecting them in such a way as to show their relationship to one another. Inscriptions told of the deeds of each ancestor.

A ROMAN MATRON

This Roman lady wears the ample **stola**, held together by jeweled clasps and pins. Outdoors she wears over this the **palla**, a large shawl which can be drawn up over the head

22. Observe that **quae** is modified by two participles connected by **et**, and that each of these participles is, in turn, modified by ablative phrases.

23. **Longō ōrdine**, *in a long row.*

24. **Rēbus gestīs**, *deeds* (lit. *things done*).

25. **Mortuōrum**, *of the dead* (from **morior**).

26. **Erat . . . reī pūblicae**: out of the family grew a larger family, the state.

27. **Magnum est**, *it is a great thing.*

28. **Prīvātīs**, *for private citizens*; dative of reference.

71. The Dative with Special Verbs

Certain verbs in Latin, such as **placeō, appropinquō, noceō, pāreō, faveō** (meanings?), as you have observed, take an indirect object in the dative case, while the corresponding English verbs take a direct object. These Latin verbs take the dative because they have in general the same meanings as have the *adjectives* that take the dative case (App., § 15). For example, **Hoc mihi placet**, *this pleases* (*is pleasing to*) *me*, is equivalent to **Hoc mihi grātum est.*** Learn the five verbs given above, associating with them the dative case.

72. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
placeō, -ēre, -uī		*please*
procul, *adv.*		*far away, at a distance*
revertō, -ere, -ī, -sus	*re* + *vertō*	(Meaning?)
majōrēs, -um, *m. plur.*		*ancestors*
contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus	*con* + *teneō*	*hold, keep*
perfugium, perfugī, *n.*	*fugiō*	*place of refuge*
tam, *adv.*		*so*
cum, *conj.*		*when*
conjūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	*con* + *jūrō*	*conspire*
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum	reverence	*fear, respect*
familiāris, -e	*familia*	*intimate, friendly*
aeger, -gra, -grum		*sick*
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus	*ex* + *pōnō*	*set forth, arrange*

* The dative both with adjectives and with verbs tells the person toward whom the quality or attitude expressed by the adjective or verb is directed.

73. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words: a fruitless *quest*; an *epistolary* correspondence; an *internecine* war; a *nefarious* deed; a *revered* parent; *lactic* acid; a *quasi*-independent nation.

2. The title *Reverend* means one *to be respected*. The *-nd* has the same force as in *dividend*, that which is *to be divided*.

3. A theological *seminary* is literally a *seed-bed*. Explain the phrase "to *disseminate* knowledge."

4. *Complacent* and *complaisant* are doublets from **placēre**, *to please*, that is, two words that have come into English at different periods from the same Latin word and are made up in the same way. *Complacent* now means much *pleased* (with oneself). *Complaisant* has retained the original meaning of *pleasing* (others), often to the point of servility.

74. Drill and Review

1. Compare **aeger**. Conjugate **revertō** and **exclāmō** (pres. indic. and subjv., act. and pass.). Give a synopsis of **vereor** (third plur.); of **placet** (third sing.); infinitives of **revertō**; participles of **expōnō**.

2. Read and translate:

1. Morārī propter bella longinquīs in terrīs et procul ab urbe Rōmā manēre Rōmānīs numquam placuit. 2. Nūllum perfugium cīvibus sānctius quam domus erat, nūllum eīs magis placēbat. 3. Locō appropinquēmus in quō familiārēs nostrī sē nōs exspectātūrōs esse dīcēbant. 4. Līberī patrī suō pāreant; tum poenam nōn verēbuntur.

3. Write in Latin:

1. I am not able to favor the plans which please the consul. 2. A good master will not harm his slaves. 3. A boy of noble family always approached with awe the atrium, where were contained the images of his ancestors. 4. Let us not neglect our duty.

LESSON 16

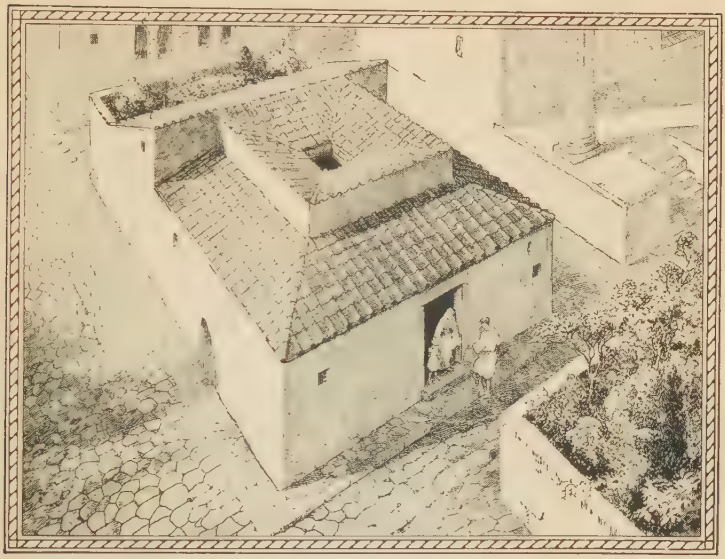
OLD-FASHIONED IDEALS OF EDUCATION

The training of children in the homes was at its best in the second century B.C. Then parents themselves undertook the early education of their sons and daughters. In the later times of Rome, when children were commonly brought up and taught by slaves, no little respect was felt for the sterner methods of education of earlier days, and for the personal attention parents then gave to their children. The following letter is taken from Pliny and other late writers.

75. Mē jūdice,[1] tū et tua uxor doctissima laudārī dēbētis, quod līberōs vestrōs antīquō mōre ēducāvistis. Ōlim fīlius ex optimīs parentibus nātus [2] nōn ā nūtrīce sed ā mātre suā ēducābātur, cuius praecipuum officium erat tuērī domum et servīre līberīs.[3] Ac nōn modo studia sed etiam lūdī [4] puerōrum ā parentibus temperābantur. Similī modō vōs fīliīs vestrīs [5] nūllum servum Graecum vel magistrum praefēcistis, sed ipsī docuistis.

The story of Cato and his son

Quam praeclārum exemplum praebuistis, et dignum Catōne illō![6] Cuius [7] in familiā mōs et disciplīna antīquōrum maximē flōruit. Nūllus servus parvum Catōnem errantem vel tardum aure trahēbat et culpābat; nam pater ipse fīliolum suum ā prīmīs annīs [8] docuit et fōrmāvit et dūrāvit et pūniit. Ā patre,[9] quī suā manū fābulās līterīs magnīs scrībēbat, puer artem legendī [10] didicit. Ā patre quoque artem jaciendī pīlum, pugnandī gladiō,



EXTERIOR OF A SIMPLE ROMAN HOUSE

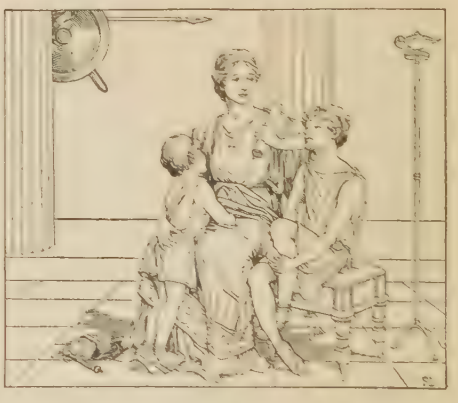
It must not be assumed that all Romans, even those who were well-to-do, lived in elaborate homes. This picture represents a house of an early date, consisting of a single series of apartments around the atrium, with no peristyle. This simple type probably persisted. The very poor lived in large tenements, called **īnsulae,** sometimes covering a block, whence their name

regendī equum, gerendī caestūs[11] didicit atque patientiam famis[12] frīgorisque. Ut (*in order to*) fīliolum dūrāret,[13] Catō eum ad flūmen Tiberim ferēbat[14] et sub undīs frīgidīs mergēbat. Sed satis dē Catōne, cuius exemplum tam dīligenter secūtī estis ut ego exīstimem[15] vōs dignōs maximā laude fuisse.

Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi

Hīc mentiōnem facere volō[16] dē Cornēliā, fīliā Scīpiōnis illīus quem Rōmānī propter superātōs Carthāginiēnsēs[17]

Āfricānum appellāvērunt. Haec in mātrimōnium ducta erat ā Semprōniō Gracchō, quī et in pāce et in bellō praeclārus erat et antīquās virtūtēs colēbat. Tālī patre et virō digna, Cornēlia officia mātris numquam neglegēbat. Ā prīmīs annīs fīliōs Tiberium et Gāium ipsa docuit; posteā magistrīs optimīs ūsa est.[18] Maxima autem cūra eius erat animōs puerōrum exemplīs antīquae virtūtis fōrmāre. Crēdēns enim pietātem, fidem, gravitātem, religiōnem esse virtūtēs cīvis Rōmānī, Cornēlia solēbat vesperī fīliōs ad sē vocāre et eīs dē factīs sententiīsque Rōmānōrum praeclārissimōrum nārrāre. "Quī virī," rogābat, "fortitūdinem, jūstitiam, continentiam, frūgālitātem, contemptum dolōris ac mortis melius docēbunt quam Fabriciī,[19] Curiī, Rēgulī, Deciī, Mūciī aliīque innumerābilēs?"



CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS
Cornelia and her children, Tiberius and Gaius

Boys accompany their fathers in public affairs

Antīquitus nōn auribus modo sed etiam oculīs puerī discēbant. Ductī ā patribus suīs in forum et senātum et comitium[20] spectātōrēs erant cōnsilī pūblicī[21] antequam cōnsulēs et senātōrēs erant; dum spectant,[22] aliīs[23] imperāre et rem pūblicam administrāre cōnsuēscēbant.

Pliny founds a school in his native town

Paucīs ante diēbus,[24] cum in patriā meā [25] fuī, vēnit ad mē puer praetextātus.[26] Huic ego "Studēs?" [27] inquam. Respondit, "Etiam." [28] "Ubi?" "Mediolānī." [29] "Cūr nōn hīc?" Et pater eius (ille enim et complūrēs patrēs audiēbant) respondit, "Quod nūllōs hīc bonōs magistrōs habēmus." "Quārē [30] nūllōs habētis? Nusquam enim puerī melius [31] quam in patriā student; nusquam ēducābuntur melius aut mināre sūmptū [32] quam domī [33] sub oculīs parentum. Volō optimōs magistrōs līberīs vestrīs prōvidērī; itaque ego parātus sum tertiam partem dare eius quod vōbīs [34] dare placēbit. Vōs reliquam partem date. Nihil melius [35] dare līberīs vestrīs, nihil grātius patriae potestis. Educentur hīc eī quī hīc nāscuntur, et ab īnfantiā vestrī līberī nātāle solum amāre incipiant. Spērō vōs tam clārōs magistrōs prōvīsūrōs esse ut puerī fīnitimōrum oppidōrum hinc studia petere cupiant." [36]

BOYS WRESTLING

76. Notes

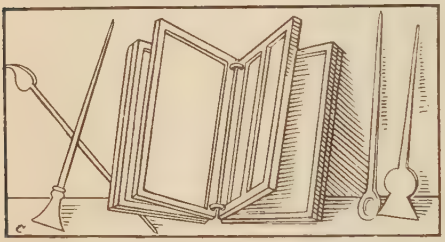
1. Mē jūdice, *in my judgment*; ablative absolute, like **Cicerōne cōnsule** (§ 70, n. 14). Translate literally.

2. **Ex . . . nātus**: this group consists of the perfect participle of the deponent verb **nāscor**, modifying **fīlius**, and itself modified by the phrase with **ex**. Translate by a relative clause.

3. **Līberīs**: dative with the special verb **serviō**.

4. **Lūdī**, *sports*.

5. **Fīliīs vestrīs**: dative with the compound verb **praefēcistis**, *you have put in charge of your children*. Verbs compounded with certain prepositions take a dative of indirect object, closely associated in thought with the prefix.



WAXED TABLETS AND STILI

The writing end of the stilus was sharp. The opposite end was flattened for erasing on the soft wax with which tablets were covered

6. **Catōne illō**, *the famous Cato* (lit. *that Cato*).

7. What use of the relative?

8. **Ā prīmīs annīs**, *from his earliest years*.

9. If **ā patre** denotes agency, what will be the voice of the verb?

10. **Legendī**, *of reading*; genitive of the verbal noun, or gerund, of **legō**. Other gerunds, or verbal nouns, occur in the next sentence. Observe that a gerund may have an object (**jaciendī pīlum**) and an ablative of means (**pugnandī gladiō**).

11. **Gerendī caestūs**, *of boxing* (lit. *of managing gloves*).

12. **Famis** and **frīgoris** are not genitives of possession, but are like **patris** (§ 70, n. 13).

13. **Dūrāret** is the past progressive (imperfect) subjunctive of **dūrō** in a clause telling the *purpose* of Cato's act. This tense is easy to recognize because it consists of the present active infinitive, **dūrāre**, and the personal endings.

14. **Ferēbat**, *he used to carry*; the past progressive tense is used to express repeated or customary action.

15. **Ut ego exīstimem**, *that I think*. What mood is **exīstimem**? Is the clause independent or dependent? This clause tells the *result* of the action of the main verb.

16. **Volō**: learn thoroughly the principal parts of this verb, noting, in particular, that the present infinitive is irregular.

17. **Propter superātōs Carthāginiēnsēs**, *because of his defeat of the Carthaginians*. What literally?

18. **Magistrīs optimīs ūsa est**, *she employed* (lit. *used*) *the best teachers*. The deponent verb **ūtor** takes its apparent object in the ablative case.

19. **Fabriciī**, *the Fabriciuses*, etc. You read of the deeds of these men in your first year of Latin.

20. **Comitium**: a part of the Roman forum where assemblies of citizens were held.

THE ABACUS

Mental arithmetic was emphasized, but for harder sums a reckoning board, known as an **abacus**, was used

21. **Spectātōrēs cōnsilī pūblicī**, *spectators at councils of the state*. For this use of the genitive see note 12.

22. **Dum spectant**, *while they were looking on*; remember that the present indicative with **dum** refers to past time.

23. **Aliīs**: dative with the special verb **imperō**. What case in English?

24. **Paucīs ante diēbus**, *a few days ago* (lit. *before by a few days*). **Diēbus** is ablative, showing the amount or degree of difference. Why can **ante** not be a preposition?

25. **In patriā meā**, *in my native town* (on Lake Como).

26. **Praetextātus**, *still clad in his toga praetexta*; that is, he was not yet of age, and so had not assumed the **toga virīlis.**

27. **Studēs**, *are you a student?*

28. **Etiam**, *yes.*

29. **Mediolānī**, *at Milan*; locative case. Like what case?

30. **Quārē**, *why?* (lit. *because of what thing?*)

31. **Melius**, *better*; adverb.

32. **Minōre sūmptū**, *at less expense.*

33. **Domī**, *at home*; locative.

34. **Vōbīs:** why dative?

35. **Nihil melius**, *nothing better*; **melius** is an adjective here.

36. **Ut puerī cupiant**, *that* (as a result) *boys will desire.* Mood of **cupiant**? What idea does the clause express?

77. The Gerund, or Verbal Noun, in English and Latin

The English form ending in *-ing* has several uses which should be carefully distinguished. It may be used (1) to form the progressive tenses of the verb: as, they are call*ing*; he was runn*ing*. It may be used (2) as a participial adjective: as, runn*ing* water; resound*ing* cheers; a lov*ing* friend. It may also be used (3) as a noun: as, walk*ing* is good exercise; there is no way of cross*ing*; he was fined for speed*ing*; learn by do*ing*. In this last use it is called a gerund.

The gerund, while it is always a noun, with the syntax of a noun, is derived from a verb and retains so strong a verbal idea that in both Latin and English it may take an object or be modified by an adverbial phrase. Thus, in "There is no way of crossing the river," *crossing* is a noun governed by *of*, but it is also a verb taking a direct object, *river*.

The Latin gerund is used in the same way. In **artem legendī**, *art of reading*, **legendī** is a gerund in the genitive case, modifying **artem** like any noun. In **artem jaciendī pīlum**, *the art of throwing the javelin*, **jaciendī** modifies **artem** and at the

same time takes an object, **pīlum**. In **artem pugnandī gladiō**, *the art of fighting with the sword*, **pugnandī** modifies **artem** and is itself modified by the ablative of means **gladiō**.

78. Form of the Latin Gerund

The gerund is a neuter noun of the second declension, lacking the nominative case and used only in the singular. The genitives of the gerunds of the type verbs are

vocandī monendī dūcendī capiendī audiendī

Give the four cases of each of these gerunds. If necessary, consult the Appendix, page 21.

Since the Latin gerund, unlike the English gerund, lacks the nominative case, it cannot be used as subject. In such a sentence as "Seeing is believing," the infinitive would be used in Latin: as, **Vidēre est crēdere** (lit. *to see is to believe*).

79. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum	cognate	*be born*
tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum	tutor	*look out for*
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus	*servitūs*	*minister to, serve*
studium, studī, *n.*	(Derivative?)	*study, zeal*
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	*prae* + *faciō*	*put in charge of*
praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus		*show, furnish*
disciplīna, -ae, *f.*	(Derivative?)	*instruction, discipline*
vel, *conj.*		*or*
auris, -is, *f.*	auricle	*ear*
laus, -dis, *f.*	*laudō*	*praise*
volō, velle, voluī	volitive	*wish, desire*
tālis, -e		*such*
numquam, *adv.*	*umquam*	*never*

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum	(Derivative?)	*use, employ*
religiō, -ōnis, *f.*	(Derivative?)	*reverence for gods*
senātus, -ūs, *m.*	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
pūblicus, -a, -um	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	imperative	(Meaning?)
administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus		*become accustomed*
studeō, -ēre, -uī	*studium*	*desire, be eager for; study*
complūrēs, -a		*very many, several*
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	*in* + *capiō*	*begin*

80. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words: an *incipient* disease; *officious* conduct; a *refrigerating* plant; *voluntary* muscles; *nutritious* food; to consult an *aurist*; a sudden *emergency*; the *assets* of a firm; a business *merger*.

2. *Retaliate* is derived from tālis, *such*, and means to return *such* for *such*, that is, like for like.

3. Nāscī, *to be born*, has numerous derivatives from the stems nāsc- and nāt-. A *nasc*ent conspiracy is one just being *born*. Your *nat*al day is your *birth*day. Cog*nat*e languages are languages *born* together, brother-languages. In*nat*e ability is *born* in one. Your *nat*ive land is the one in which you were *born*. The *nat*ure of an individual is *born* in him. The Re*naiss*ance (Fr.) in Italy, in the fifteenth century, was the re*birth* of classical learning. Ad*nat*e (biol.) means having been *born* together, adherent. A *naïve* person acts in accordance with his *inborn* nature, naturally, artlessly. *Naïve* and *native* are doublets.

4. The suffix **-ulus** (**-olus**, **-culus**, **-ellus**) is added to nouns to form diminutives: as, **fīliolus** (from **fīlius**), *little son*. This suffix appears in English as *-le* (*-cle*): as, *auricle* from **auricula**, *little ear* (from **auris**). Explain **nāvicula**, **castellum**, **libellus**, **tabernāculum**. Explain *corpuscle, reticule, molecule, particle, circle, animalcule.*

81. Drill and Review

1. Decline **complūrēs** and the gerund of **studeō**. Give a synopsis of **cōnsuēscō** (third plur. act.); of **ūtor** (third sing.); the infinitives of **incipiō**; the participles of **imperō**. Conjugate **ūtor** and **administrō** (pres. subjv.); and **incipiō** (perf. indic. act.).

2. Read and translate:

1. Complūrēs mātrēs Rōmānae officium tuendī domum et ēducandī līberōs numquam neglēxērunt. 2. Puerīs Rōmānīs ars legendī et scrībendī linguam Latīnam facilis erat. 3. Magistrīs antīquīs jūdicibus, librī poētārum legendō maximē idōneī erant. 4. Pārendō puerī Rōmānī aliīs imperāre discēbant. 5. Catō scrībendō fābulās līterīs magnīs exemplum praeclārum aliīs patribus praebuit. 6. Celeritāte currendī patrī placeat.

3. Write in Latin:

1. A Roman boy increased his strength by controlling horses, by fighting with a heavy sword, and by throwing the javelin. 2. If you show a desire for (*of*) defending the state, you will be worthy of great praise. 3. Because of the custom of watching the senate, young men became accustomed to manage the state and to command men. 4. Let him not harm the children.

LESSON 17

DEVOTION IN THE ROMAN FAMILY

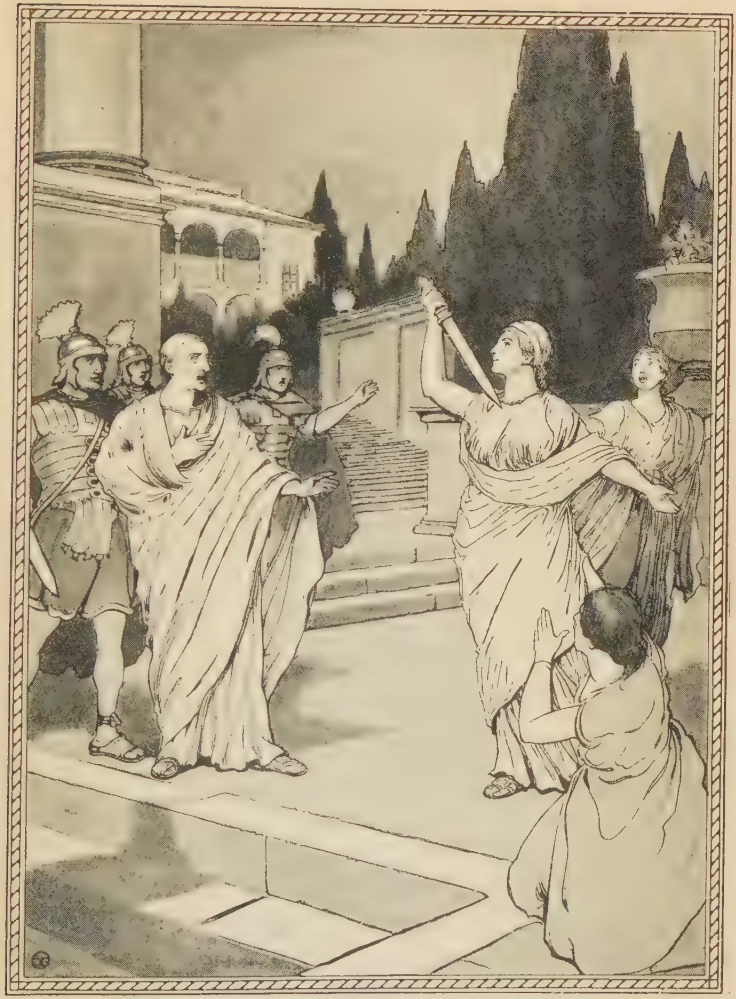
The affection and devotion which existed in Roman family life at all periods are shown in the following selections from the "Letters" of Pliny.

The story of Arria

82. Quaedam facta et verba Arriae tam clāra sunt ut memoriā digna sint.[1] Ut accidit, aeger erat Paetus, marītus Arriae, aeger et fīlius eōrum eōdem tempore erat, uterque mortiferē,[2] ut vidēbātur.[3] Fīlius dēcessit, ēgregiā pulchritūdine[4] et parī verēcundiā, quī ā parentibus nōn minus cārus habēbātur ob alia quam quod fīlius eōrum erat. Igitur dolōrem māter patī vix poterat.

Fūnus tamen ita parāvit ut marītus nōn scīret.[5] Atque quotiēns in cubiculum Paetī intrāvit, fīlium vīvere et commodiōrem esse[6] simulābat; ac marītō saepe de puerō interrogantī respondēbat, "Bene dormīvit" vel "Libenter cibum sūmpsit." Tandem lacrimīs victa ex cubiculō ēgrediēbātur et sē dolōrī dabat. Paulō post,[7] dolōre forīs[8] relictō, siccīs oculīs ad Paetum revertit. Praeter opīniōnem autem Paetus ad salūtem reductus est.

Aliquot post annōs Paetō ad mortem condemnātō, Arria exemplum erat: nam gladium rapuit et pectus suum perfōdit; tum marītō gladium dedit et haec verba immortālia et paene dīvīna addidit: "Paete, nōn dolet."[9] Neque illud cōnsilium pulcherrimae mortis eī subitum[10] erat; nam paulō ante cuidam fēminae, cuius marītus,



THE SELF-SACRIFICE OF ARRIA

interfectus erat, Arria exclāmāvit, "Egone tē audiam, cuius marītus interfectus est, et tū vīvis?" Generī suō, quī rogāverat, "Cupis fīliam tuam, sī mē morī fuerit necesse,[11] morī mēcum?" respondit Arria, "Sī tam diū tantāque concordiā tēcum vīxerit quam ego cum Paetō, cupiō." Mihi vidētur Arriam ob haec verba laudārī dēbēre potius quam (*rather than*) ob illud "Paete, nōn dolet."

A happy marriage

Grave vulnus Macrīnus accēpit. Āmīsit uxōrem singulāris exemplī, quācum trīgintā novem annōs sine jūrgiō vīxerat. Quam reverentiam illa marītō praebuit! Quam reverentiam ipsa meruit! Quot quantāsque virtūtēs illa habuit! Macrīnus quidem magnum sōlācium habet, quod tantum bonum[12] tam diū tenuit; sed eō magis[13] nunc dolet quod āmīsit.

Pliny's description of his wife

Calpurnia est uxor summī acūminis et summae frūgālitātis. Amat mē. Studium līterārum[14] eī placet, quod propter meī amōrem[15] incēpit. Librōs ā mē scrīptōs habet, quōs saepe legit. Cum causam agō,[16] tantā cūrā commovētur ut in forum nūntiōs mittat[17] et dē clāmōribus audientium[18] et dē ēventū causae quaerat. Cum causam ēgī, quantum gaudium eius est! Sī quandō recitō, nōn procul ā mē sedet; itaque laudēs meās avidissimīs auribus excipit. Versūs[19] meōs cantat; etiam fōrmat citharā,[20] nōn artifice docente[21] sed amōre, quī est optimus magister. Hīs dē causīs spērō perpetuam et majōrem in diēs[22] futūram esse nostram concordiam.

ROMAN LADIES IN THEIR HOME

From a painting by Forti

From a letter to his wife, who is ill in Campania

Numquam magis questus sum dē occupātiōnibus meīs, quae mē nōn passae sunt aut tē proficīscentem valētūdinis causā in Campāniam prōsequī aut tē profectam[23] subsequī. Sollicitūdō dē tē mē terret. Vereor omnia, imāginor omnia; et (ut est nātūra timentium[24]) ea maximē quae timeō fingō. Quā dē causā cotīdiē singulās vel bīnās epistulās ab tē recipiam. Erō enim sine cūrā dum legō; sed statim timēbō cum lēgerō.[25] Valē.

From another affectionate letter to his wife

Scrībis tē absentiā meā magnopere commovērī ūnumque habēre sōlācium,[26] quod prō mē librōs meōs habēs. Grātum est quod mē requīris. Ego epistulās tuās legō atque saepe in manūs quasi novās sūmō. Nam cuius epistulae tantum dulcēdinis habent? Tū quam saepissimē[27] scrībe. Valē.

83. Notes

1. **Ut . . . sint**, *that they are* etc. What does the clause tell about the rest of the sentence? Observe the mood used in these clauses introduced by **ut**. What meaning has **ut** introducing a clause with a verb in the indicative?

2. **Uterque mortiferē**, *both fatally*.

3. **Ut vidēbātur**, *as it seemed*; the *impersonal* passive.

4. **Ēgregiā pulchritūdine**, *a remarkably handsome boy* (lit. *of remarkable beauty*); ablative of description.

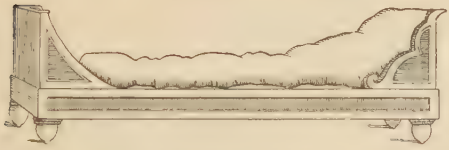
5. **Ita ut marītus nōn scīret**, *in such a way that her husband did not know of it*. This clause tells the result of the main action. What do you suspect is the mood of **scīret**?

6. **Commodiōrem esse**, *that he was better*.

7. **Paulō post,** *a little later.* What does **paulō** express?

8. **Forīs,** *outside the room.*

9. **Nōn dolet,** *it does not hurt.* The Roman attitude toward suicide was radically different from modern views.



A ROMAN COUCH

Couches were made of costly woods, inlaid with ivory, tortoise shell, or precious metals. The mattress was stuffed with wool or with feathers or down

10. **Eī subitum,** *unpremeditated by her* (lit. *sudden for her*); **eī** is dative of reference.

11. **Sī . . . necesse,** *in case it should be necessary for me to die.*

12. **Tantum bonum,** *such a treasure, such a blessing.*

13. **Eō magis,** *all the more* (lit. *more because of this*).

14. **Līterārum,** *of literature* (lit. *of letters*).

15. **Meī amōrem,** *affection for me.* Can you recall other instances of this use of the genitive?

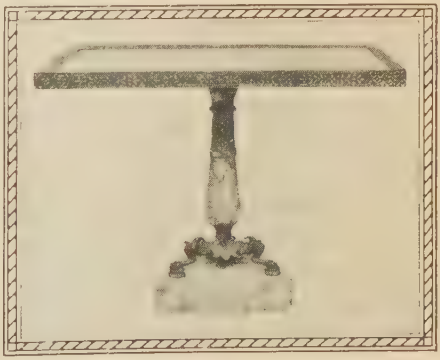
16. **Cum . . . agō,** *when I plead a case.*

17. **Ut mittat,** *that she sends.* Mood? What does the clause tell?

18. **Audientium,** *of the audience* (lit. *of those hearing*).

19. **Versūs:** that is, the poems he writes.

20. **Etiam . . . citharā,** *she even accompanies them with the zither.*



A ROMAN TABLE

Courtesy of the Metropolitan Museum of Art

21. **Nōn . . . docente,** *with no artist teaching her.*

22. **In diēs,** *from day to day.*

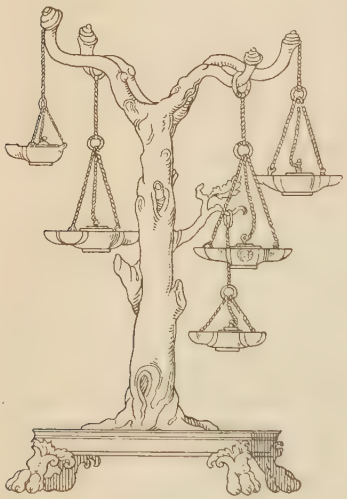
23. **Tē profectam,** *after you had set out;* what literally?

24. **Timentium,** *of persons who are in fear.* The participle is used *substantively,* that is, as a noun.

25. **Cum lēgerō,** *when I have finished reading them* (lit. *when I shall have read*).

26. **Sōlācium:** explained by the following clause.

27. **Quam saepissimē,** *as often as possible.* **Quam** with a superlative means *as . . . as possible.*



ROMAN LAMPS

84. *Review of Dependent Clauses.* A dependent, or subordinate, clause is one used as an adverb, an adjective, or a noun. Thus, in the sentence "He succeeds because he works industriously," the clause *because . . . industriously* tells *why* he succeeds, and is therefore a dependent *adverbial* clause (of cause). In the sentence "The person who works industriously succeeds," the clause *who . . . industriously* tells *what kind* of person succeeds, and is therefore a dependent *adjective* (relative) clause. In the sentence "They advised that he should work industriously," the clause *that . . . industriously* tells *what* they advised, and is therefore a dependent *noun* (substantive) clause (object of *advised*).

Dependent Clauses in Latin. You have met in Latin several kinds of *adverbial* clauses (with the verbs in the indicative mood), introduced by **quod** (cause); **sī** (condition); **postquam, dum** (time); **ubi** (time or place); **ut,** *as.* You are also familiar with *relative* (adjective) clauses, but the only noun (substantive) clauses that you have thus far studied in Latin

are *infinitive* clauses in indirect discourse after verbs of *saying, thinking,* and the like. You will now begin to study dependent clauses in Latin in which the subjunctive mood is used, although the indicative is commonly used in English.

85. Clauses of Result with *ut* and *ut nōn*

In the stories of this lesson you have met the following clauses expressing *result*:

ut memoriā digna *sint* (present subjunctive)
ut marītus *nōn scīret* (past progressive, or imperfect, subjunctive)
ut in forum nūntiōs *mittat* (present subjunctive)

Translate the sentences containing these clauses, noting carefully that each clause tells the *result* of the action expressed by the main clause.

The negative in a result clause, since the clause expresses a *fact,* is naturally **nōn**.

Tenses in Result Clauses. A result clause depending upon a present main verb has the *present* subjunctive; a result clause depending upon a past main verb usually has the *past progressive* (imperfect) subjunctive.

86. The Past Progressive (Imperfect) Subjunctive, Active and Passive

This tense is formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive. Thus the past progressive (imperfect) active subjunctive of the type verbs is

1	2	3	3 (-iō)	4
vocārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem

Conjugate these tenses. If necessary, consult the Appendix, page 17. Conjugate in the same tense of the passive voice by using the familiar passive endings (App., p. 17).

In the case of deponent verbs, which have no present active infinitive, use what would be the present active infinitive if there were one, remembering to use *passive* personal endings. Thus:

1	2	3	3 (-iō)	4
hortārer	verērer	sequerer	graderer	orīrer

Conjugate these tenses (App., p. 22).

87. Vocabulary

New Word	Related Word	Meaning
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *indef. pron.*		*both*
commodus, -a, -um	accommodate	*pleasant, agreeable, happy*
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	simulate	*pretend*
interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	(Derivative?)	*inquire, ask*
praeter, *conj.*	preternatural	*besides, contrary to*
opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*	(Derivative?)	*expectation*
immortālis, -e	(Derivative?)	(Meaning?)
addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus	*ad* + *dō*	(Meaning?)
gener, generī, *m.*		*son-in-law*
singulāris, -e	single	*exceptional*
ēventus, -ūs, *m.*	(Derivative?)	*outcome*
perpetuus, -a, -um	(Derivative?)	*perpetual, lasting*
queror, -ī, questus sum		*complain, lament*
prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum	*prō* + *sequor*	*accompany*
subsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum	*sub* + *sequor*	*follow after*
cotīdiē, *adv.*	*diēs*	*daily*
bīnī, -ae, -a		*two each*

88. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words: *binocular* glasses; a *querulous* invalid; a pertinent *query*; a *subsequent* event; a *funereal* countenance; the property of the *deceased*; an *impatient* customer; a long *digression*; *foreign* affairs; *cordial* greetings; a *consoling* thought; a *figment* of the imagination; to *feign* illness.

2. From **fodiō**, *I dig*, comes *foss*il, something *dug* up. Latin **fossa** is a *ditch*.

A ROMAN CHARCOAL BRAZIER

3. Remember that English derivatives come from both the present and the participial stem of verbs. Give the principal parts of **sequor**, *I follow*, and explain the following derivatives: *sequ*el, *sequ*ence, subse*qu*ent, con*secut*ive, per*secut*e, pro*secut*e. An obs*equ*ious person *follows* fawningly the will of another. Obs*equ*ies means literally *follow*ings, and came to mean funeral ceremonies because the chief characteristic of Roman funerals was the groups of mourners *following* one upon the other. To ex*ecut*e (with loss of **-s**) meant originally to *follow* out a plan. *Sec*ond means literally that which *follows* the first. Latin **socius** means literally a *follower*.

89. Drill and Review

1. Decline **uterque** (App., p. 6), **ēventus**, and the gerund of **queror**. Conjugate **sum** and **possum** (pres. and past prog. subjv.); **addō**, **jaciō**, and **habeō** (pres. and past prog. subjv., act. and pass.). Give a synopsis of **subsequor** (third sing.); infinitives of **prōsequor**; participles of **queror**.

2. Read and translate:

1. Fīliō mortuō, Arria tam commōta est ut dolōrem vix patī posset. 2. Morte fīlī cēlātā, rem ita administrāvit ut marītus aeger fīlium suum dēcessisse nōn scīret. 3. Marītō interrogantī, "Quid dē fīliō nostrō?" uxor ita respondet ut Paetus fīlium esse commodiōrem putet. 4. Interdum Arria lacrimīs ita victa est ut ex cubiculō ēgrederētur et sē dolōrī daret. 5. Ars scrībendī eī īta placuit ut multōs librōs scrīberet. 6. Cotīdiē in cubiculum quaerēndī causā intrēmus.

3. Write in Latin:

1. He is so frightened about her health that he fears everything. 2. Her interest in literature so pleased him that he wrote his friend a letter about it. 3. Her letters had so much charm that he hoped she would write as often as possible. 4. Let him favor this plan. 5. His desire for (*of*) seeing his home was great.

4. Find in the Latin of section 82 four clauses of result; three indirect statements; three ablatives of accompaniment; three genitives of description; six deponent verbs; one accusative of extent; one ablative of agent; one ablative of time; one imperative; one vocative.

5. Review Word List 3, in the Appendix, page 44.

LESSON 18

SUPPLEMENTARY SELECTIONS

AFFECTION FOR SLAVES

A letter from Cicero to Tiro, his favorite slave (later a freedman), who, because of illness, had been left behind by Cicero at Patrae, in Greece, when he was returning from Asia Minor.

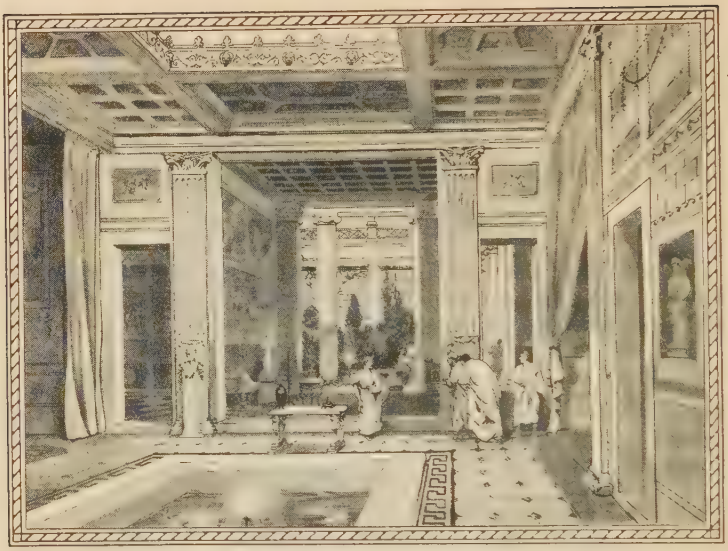
Dēsīderium tuī [1] vix ferre possum. Mē culpō quod ā tē aegrō discessī. Tū autem hoc tibi persuādē,[2] mē nihil tam cupere quam tē valēre et mox mēcum esse. Magnopere sollicitor. Valētūdō tua mihi maximae cūrae est.[3] Innumerābilia tua sunt in mē officia [4] domestica, urbāna, in rē prīvātā, in rē pūblicā, in studiīs, in līterīs. Sed, sī intellegēs necesse esse tē Patrīs (loc.) convalēscere, hoc grātissimum dē tuīs in mē officiīs erit. Maximam spem habeō in medicī dīligentiā, dē quā tū mihi scrīpsistī et aliī nūntiāvērunt. Sī mē amās, cūrā ut valeās.[5] Ad nōs firmus et valēns quam prīmum [6] venī.

1. **Dēsīderium tuī:** *longing for you.*
2. **Hoc tibi persuādē:** *be assured* (lit. *persuade yourself* (*of*) *this*).
3. **Mihi maximae cūrae est:** *is a source of deep concern to me.*
4. **Officia:** *services.*
5. **Cūrā ut valeās:** *take care to get well.*
6. **Quam prīmum:** *as soon as possible.*

AN EXAMPLE OF *PATRIA POTESTĀS*

A father easily restrains a son who had proposed a radical law in defiance of the Senate.

Auctōritās patria aequē potēns fuit apud [1] Gāium Flāminium, quī tribūnus plēbis [2] contrā sententiam senātūs Rōmānī



AN INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE

The view is from the atrium, looking through the tablinum into the peristyle. In the atrium is the impluvium, on the other side of which is a table, a traditional feature of the atrium. The door at the left enters into a guest chamber. The wider openings in each side lead to **ālae**, or wings. The tablinum was the office of the paterfamilias, where he kept his papers and strongbox. The passage (**faucēs**) at the right could be used when the tablinum was occupied

lēgem dē Gallicō agrō dīvidendō[3] prōmulgāverat. Neque precibus minīsque senātūs neque exercitū territus est. Sed postquam prō rōstrīs eī lēgem jam referentī[4] pater manūs injēcit,[5] imperiō patris frāctus[6] ē rōstrīs dēscendit ā multitū-
5 dine reprehēnsus.

1. **Apud**: *in the case of.*
2. **Tribūnus plēbis**: *as a tribune of the people.*
3. **Dē . . . dīvidendō**: *about dividing the Gallic territory.*
4. **Jam referentī**: *as he was offering the law*; modifies **eī.**
5. **Manūs injēcit**: *laid hands.*
6. **Frāctus**: *overcome.*

"MODERN YOUTH"

In this passage Pliny criticizes the younger generation.

Hic adulēscēns ita mē amābat, ita verēbātur ut mē quasi magistrō ūterētur. Rārum est hoc in adulēscentibus nostrīs. Nam quī juvenis vel aetātī seniōris vel auctōritātī ut minor[1] cēdit? Statim sapiunt,[2] statim sciunt omnia, nēminem verentur, nēminem imitantur atque ipsī sibi exempla sunt.

1. **Ut minor:** *as an inferior.*
2. **Statim sapiunt:** *they are wise from the cradle.*

"PLAY THE GAME!"

Seneca's words about boys who take part in games are not without interest and value for boys today.

In certāminibus aequālium puerum nē patiāmur īrāscī.[1] Familiāris sit[2] eīs quibuscum contendere solet. In certāmine cōnsuēscat nōn nocēre velle[3] sed vincere. Quotiēns superāverit et aliquid laude dignum fēcerit, nē superbus sit. Gaudium enim exsultātiō, exsultātiōnem nimia aestimātiō suī[4] sequitur.

1. **Īrāscī:** *to lose his head.*
2. **Familiāris sit:** *let him be friendly.*
3. **Cōnsuēscat velle:** *let him get in the habit of wishing.*
4. **Nimia aestimātiō suī:** "*a swelled head*" (lit. *too great an estimate of himself*).

"MOLLYCODDLES"

Nihil magis facit īrācundōs[1] quam ēducātiō mollis et blanda. Puer, cui nihil umquam negātum est, cuius lacrimās sollicita semper māter abstersit, offēnsīs[2] nōn resistet. Mollis ēducātiō, quam indulgentiam vocāmus, nervōs omnēs mentis et corporis frangit.

1. **Nihil facit īrācundōs:** *nothing makes spoiled boys.*
2. **Offēnsīs:** dative with the special verb **resistō.**

HOW TO STUDY

Silentium et sēcessus et līber animus sunt necessāria. Omnia quae impedient vincat intentiō. Quam sī tōtā mente in opus dīrēxeris,[1] nihil eōrum quae oculīs vel auribus incursant ad animum perveniet.

1. **Quam sī dīrēxeris:** *if you have fixed your attention.*

CICERO'S LONGING FOR HIS FAMILY WHEN HE WAS IN EXILE

Tē dēsīderō, meum frātrem sōlum. Quid enim mihi sine tē umquam grātum fuit? Aut tibi sine mē? Eōdem tempore fīliam dēsīderō. Quā pietāte,[1] quā modestiā, quō ingeniō! Imāginem faciēī, sermōnis, animī meī.[2] Fīlium dēsīderō mihi dulcissimum. Tuum fīlium dēsīderō, imāginem tuam, quem meus Cicerō[3] et amābat ut frātrem et ut majōrem frātrem verēbātur. Et mulierem miserrimam dēsīderō, fidēlissimam conjugem, quae domī commūnēs līberōs tuētur.

1. **Quā pietāte:** *what respect for the gods!* Translate these ablatives of description as exclamations.

2. **Imāginem faciēī . . . meī:** *the image of me in face* etc.; supply **fīliam dēsīderō.**

3. **Meus Cicerō:** *my son Cicero.*

FROM A LETTER ON THE DEATH OF A GIRL OF THIRTEEN

Trīstissimus sum quod fīlia minor[1] Fundānī nostrī[2] mortua est. Nōndum annōs tredecim implēverat; sed jam habēbat anīlem prūdentiam atque mātrōnālem gravitātem, ūnā cum suāvitāte puellārī et verēcundiā. Ut illa patris collō haerēbat![3] Ut nōs amīcōs paternōs amanter complectēbātur! Ut nūtrīcēs et paedagōgōs et magistrōs amābat! Quam studiōsē, quam intellegenter legēbat! Quam parcē[4] lūdēbat! Quā temperantiā, quā patientiā, quā cōnstantiā

novissimam valētūdinem [5] tulit! Nūllam puellam longiōre vītā digniōrem vīdī.

1. **Minor:** *younger.*
2. **Fundānī nostrī:** *of our friend Fundanus.*
3. **Ut haerēbat:** *how she used to cling!*
4. **Quam parcē:** *how little!*
5. **Novissimam valētūdinem:** *her last* (lit. *her newest*) *illness.*

CITY LIFE VERSUS COUNTRY LIFE

Pliny, in his "Letters," contrasts his restless life at Rome with the quiet and satisfaction he found at his villa in the country.

Sī amīcum interrogābis, "Hodiē quid ēgistī?" sine dubiō ille respondēbit, "Officiō togae virīlis interfuī" [1] vel "Spōnsālibus interfuī" vel "Nūptiās frequentāvī" [2] vel "Cuidam cōnsilium dē lēgibus dedī." Necessāria quidem haec officia videntur eō diē quō facis, sed inānia, sī tē cotīdiē per annōs fēcisse putābis; et multō magis inānia videntur ubi, urbe relictā, domum ad vīllam pervēnistī. Tunc enim dīcēs, ut ego hesternō diē,[3] "Quot hōrās in urbe inānibus rēbus hodiē cōnsūmpsī!"

Sed hīc in meā vīllā Laurentiā [4] sum ab officiīs urbānīs līberātus. Hīc aut legō aliquid [5] aut scrībō aut quiētem corporī petō. Hīc nihil audiō quod audīvisse mihi nōn placet; nihil dīcō quod dīxisse nōn grātum est. Hīc nēmō apud mē quemquam [6] reprehendit; nēminem ipse reprehendō, nisi tamen mē, cum commodē [7] scrībere nōn possum. Hīc nūllā spē, nūllō timōre sollicitor neque ūllīs rūmōribus excitor. Hīc mēcum tantum [8] et cum librīs meīs loquor. Ō beātam vītam! Ō dulce ōtium! Itaque tū quoque strepitum urbis et istōs labōrēs inānēs,[9] ut prīmum fuerit occāsiō,[10] relinque et ōtiō vel studiīs similibus tē trāde.

1. **Officiō interfuī:** *I was present at the ceremony.*
2. **Nūptiās frequentāvī:** *I made one of the crowd at a wedding.*
3. **Hesternō diē:** *yesterday.*

4. **Vīllā Laurentiā:** on the coast of Italy, not far from Rome.
5. **Aliquid:** *something*; accusative of the indefinite pronoun **aliquis.**
6. **Quemquam:** *anyone*; accusative of the indefinite pronoun **quisquam.**
7. **Commodē:** *satisfactorily.*
8. **Mēcum tantum:** *only with myself.*
9. **Istōs labōrēs inānēs:** *those useless labors of yours.*
10. **Ut . . . occāsiō:** *as soon as there is a chance.*

THE JOYS OF THE COMMUTER

Pliny had a summer home near enough to the city to be reached easily by a pleasant journey at the end of the day's business.

Saepe interrogāvistī, "Cūr ista vīlla tē dēlectat?" Sed nōn jam mīrāberis, cum cognōveris[1] grātiam[2] vīllae, propinquitātem[3] locī, spatium lītoris.[4] Decem et septem mīlia passuum ab urbe abest, ut, labōribus cotīdiānīs cōnfectīs, magnam partem diēī domī manēre possīs.[5] Adītur[6] duābus viīs; nam et Laurentīna et Ōstiēnsis[7] eōdem ferunt. Laurentīnam ā quārtō decimō lapide,[8] Ōstiēnsem ab ūndecimō relinquere necesse est. Utraque via aliquā ex parte arēnōsa est.[9] Varia est faciēs terrae: nam modo via per silvās, modo[10] per lātissimōs agrōs dūcit. Undique multī gregēs ovium atque multa armenta equōrum et boum videntur.

1. **Cum cognōveris:** *when you have found out about* etc.
2. **Grātiam:** *charm.*
3. **Propinquitātem:** to the city.
4. **Spatium lītoris:** *the expanse of seashore* in front of the villa.
5. **Ut . . . possīs:** *so that you are able* etc.
6. **Adītur:** *it is approached.*
7. **Laurentīna et Ōstiēnsis:** supply **via** with each adjective; two of the highways leading out of Rome toward the west coast of Italy.
8. **Lapide:** *milestone*; distances were marked along the Roman roads by means of such stones.
9. **Utraque via est:** *both roads are.*
10. **Modo . . . modo:** *now . . . now.*

A HAUNTED HOUSE

Quondam Athēnīs [1] erat spatiōsa domus sed īnfāmis.[2] Per silentium noctis sonus vinculōrum, longius [3] prīmō, deinde ē proximō,[3] audiēbātur. Mox appārēbat effigiēs, senex famē cōnfectus, quī longam barbam et capillōs habēbat. Pedibus

THE GHOST BECKONS ATHENODORUS

et manibus vincula gerēbat quatiēbatque. Trīstēs erant noctēs eōrum quī domum habitābant; per diem memoria imāginis manēbat; morbus et mors sequēbantur. Tandem dēserta erat domus et illī mōnstrō omnīnō relicta. Prōscrībēbātur,[4] sed nēmō vel emere vel condūcere voluit.

Vēnit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus. Titulum [5] legit. Pretium quaerit; omnia cognōscit; tum condūcit. Ubi nox vēnit, jubet lectum pōnī in prīmā domūs parte; poscit

tabellās, stilum, lūmen; suōs servōs dīmittit. Sōlus est. Ipse ad scrībendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit. Prīmō silentium noctis; deinde vincula audiuntur. Ille oculōs nōn tollit. Sonus crēscit, appropinquat; jam in līmine, jam intrā līmen audītur. Ille respicit, videt effigiem. Stābat innuēbatque[6] digitīs. Philosophus jubet eam breve tempus exspectāre, et rūrsus stilō et tabellīs labōrat. Iterum sonus vinculōrum audītur. Ille rūrsus respicit et effigiem innuentem videt. Nunc nōn morātur; lūmen tollit et effigiem sequitur. Ambulābat effigiēs tardō gradū, quod vincula impediēbant. Postquam effigiēs in āream pervēnit, subitō comitem relīquit. Ille autem in locō signum pōnit. Posterō diē ad magistrātūs venit, quī dē effigiē cognōscunt, et monet ut jubeant[7] illum locum effodī. Inveniuntur ossa et vincula. Haec collēcta pūblicē sepeliuntur neque umquam posteā effigiēs vidētur vel audītur.

1. **Athēnīs:** *at Athens.*
2. **Īnfāmis:** *of bad reputation.*
3. **Longius:** *at some distance*; ē proximō, *from near by.*
4. **Prōscrībēbātur:** *it was advertised for sale.*
5. **Titulum:** *the poster.*
6. **Innuēbat:** *kept beckoning.*
7. **Monet ut jubeant:** *advises them to order.*

LESSON 19

TRANSLATIONS OF LATIN AUTHORS

Many of you will continue your study of Latin not only through high school, but in college as well. Some of you may very likely specialize in it later. In such a prolonged course the best of Roman literature will be read in the original Latin. But for many of you contact with Roman literature in the original will be limited to the Latin authors read in the high-school course. Those selections are but a small part of Roman literature. Many pupils go through the authors read in high school without ever discovering that there is a wide and interesting literature not included in the course. Some of it is too difficult for pupils at the stage of progress reached in high school, but most of it is available in translations. Pupils who are actually studying Latin can bring to the reading of translations a genuine feeling for things Roman, and a real capacity for enjoying what they read.

Below are given selections from four Latin authors.

HOME

This poem was written by Catullus, a Roman poet who lived at the time of Cicero. He was born at Verona, in Cisalpine Gaul. Julius Caesar was a friend of Catullus's father and often stayed at his home on the way to Gaul.

Dear Sirmio, that art the very eye
Of islands and peninsulas, that lie
Deeply embosomed in calm inland lake,
Or where the waves of the vast ocean break;
Joy of all joys, to gaze on thee once more!
I scarce believe that I have left the shore
Of Thynia, and Bithynia's scorching plain,
And gaze on thee in safety once again!

Oh, what more sweet than when, from care set free,
The spirit lays its burden down, and we,
With distant travel spent, come home and spread
Our limbs to rest along the wished-for bed!
This, this alone, repays such toils as these!
Smile, then, fair Sirmio, and thy master please, —
And you, ye dancing waters of the lake,
Rejoice; and every smile of home awake!

Translated by SIR THEODORE MARTIN

AN EXILE'S LONGING FOR HOME

This poem was written by Ovid, the poet from whose work, the "Metamor'phoses," most of the stories of Part I on mythology were taken. He was exiled to the western shore of the Black Sea by the emperor Augustus.

Weary I lie at Earth's remotest post,
And my sick fancy paints what I have lost.
The thoughts of thee all thoughts, dear wife, outshine,
Thou reign'st supreme still in this heart of mine.
On thee I call afar, aloud I pray
Each night for thee, and each returning day.
They say I rave, whenas in love I frame
Aloud thine oft-reiterated name.
Anon I faint: tongue to parch'd palate clings;
The wine they give but little succor brings;
A word "She's here!" and quickly I arise,
For strength renew'd the hope 'tis thee supplies.
Say not that, as I hang 'twixt death and life,
Happy at home, thou hast forgot, dear wife;
Nay, nay, I swear it, joy of my heart, I know,
To thee without me life must be all woe.
Yet if my years have fill'd their destined space,
If quickly looms the end of this my race,
Grant this much mercy, mighty gods, that I
At least may be entombed in Italy!

Translated by H. L. ROGERS

AN ANCIENT APARTMENT HOUSE

This is a reconstruction of an apartment house at Ostia, the port of Rome on the river Tiber, about fifteen miles southwest of the city. The house, which occupied the four sides of a block, had balconies at the back, and gardens and playgrounds in the central area. It had four stories and was divided into flats, with no atriums or peristyles, with a separate entrance for each flat. Similar apartments doubtless existed at Rome

"I'M BUILDING"

This poem was written by Martial, a famous wit who lived at the time of Pliny. He pokes fun at a friend who is prone to exaggerate his plans for building. Martial's epigrams have the tone of the modern limerick, with the "kick" in the last line.

Gellius "builds" all the year:
Now new thresholds appear,
Now a new lock is put in commission:
Now a window 's renewed,
Readjusted, or screwed, 5

Now he moves one a bit in position.
If he "builds" he's content,
Though he maybe has spent
Just a dime for a bottle of gilding;
For his friends must condone
His refusals to loan,
If he truly alleges, "I'm building."

Translated by PAUL NIXON in "A Roman Wit"

A "BLUFFER"

Martial to his friend Baccara

"If there's need, you're aware I don't have to be asked."
You tell me this ten times a day.
I'm willing to bet
If we met in Tophet,
"If there's need" are the first words you'd say.

My rent is demanded, when you're standing by,
With a vulgar and vehement shout:
But you hear and don't heed
Intimations of need
When I say that I'd hate to move out.

In your presence I sometimes allude to the fact
That my toga is thin, worn and old:
But you hear and don't heed
Intimations of need,
Though my teeth do a clog with the cold.

What I need of you, Baccara, just now is this —
From temptation to kill to be freed:
May a star strike you dumb
Or to death you'll succumb
Some fine day when you start, "If there's need."

Translated by PAUL NIXON in "A Roman Wit"

THE VILLA OF A WEALTHY ROMAN

From a painting by Forti

TO THE PENATES

The poet Horace thus refers to the household shrine

Thy little gods for humbler tribute call
Than blood of many victims; twine for them
Of rosemary a simple coronal
And the lush myrtle's frail and fragrant stem.

The costliest sacrifice that wealth can make
From the incensed Penates less commands
A swift response, than doth the poorest cake,
If on the altar laid with spotless hands.

From G. W. BOTSFORD'S "A History of Rome"*

While complete translations of particular authors are available in most libraries, it will be better, if you are interested in extending your knowledge of Latin literature, to read first shorter selections contained in collections. The following are recommended:

PYM. Readings from the Literature of Ancient Rome. Harcourt, Brace and Company, New York.

HOWE and HARRER. Roman Literature in Translation. Harper & Brothers, New York.

BLAKENEY. Pages from Latin Authors (very short). E. P. Dutton & Company, New York.

ROGERS and HARLEY. The Life of Rome. Oxford University Press, New York.

*Published by The Macmillan Company.

PART III. ROMAN HISTORY

LESSON 20

THE SPREAD OF ROMAN DOMINION *

About sixteen miles from the mouth of the Tiber, there stood, in the middle of the eighth century before Christ, a collection of huts, the beginnings of Rome, where the shepherds and farmers of the district could take refuge when attacked by the Sabine raiders from the surrounding hills. For protection against the less civilized tribes of the hills, the Latin inhabitants of the plains had early united in a confederacy called the Latin League, under the presidency of Alba Longa. The city by the Tiber was at first simply one of the members of the league, but in the course of time it took the chief place.

For about two hundred and fifty years Rome was ruled by kings, some of whom at least, the Tarquins, were Etruscan conquerors, from whom many customs were borrowed by the Romans. The records of this period are filled with picturesque legends. Many of these you read about in your first year of Latin, such as the stories of Romulus and Remus, the seizure of the Sabine women, the treason of Tarpeia, the combat of the Horatii and Curiatii, Tarquin and the Sibylline Books, and the reforms of Servius Tullius. The tyranny of Tarquin the Proud finally led to a revolt, headed by Lucius Junius Brutus, and the overthrow of the monarchy in 509 B. C. With this event are associated the legends of Lucretia, of Horatius

* This summary of Roman history is based in part upon the introduction in E. H. Blakeney's "Pages from Latin Authors" (E. P. Dutton & Company).

at the Bridge, of Mucius Scaevola, of the maiden Cloelia, and of the dictator Postumius and the battle of Lake Regillus, in which Castor and Pollux came to the aid of the Romans. Tell what you know of these legends.

The Republic endured for nearly five hundred years. We may trace the growth of Roman dominion from the few square miles occupied by the city itself to an empire that extended over the civilized world. First Rome established her authority throughout Latium; to this period belong the stories of Cincinnatus and of the Fabii. Then she grew to be the paramount state in central Italy. The catastrophe in 390 B.C., when the Gauls captured and destroyed the city (the citadel, you remember, was saved by the sacred geese), appears to have retarded but little the onward march of Rome. Under the leadership of Camillus she soon recovered her lost territory. Before long she was engaged with the Samnites to the south, and they were conquered in several bloody wars. To this period belong the terrible defeat of the Romans at the Caudine Forks and the famous tales of Papirius Cursor and of Decius Mus. Then came the contact with the Greek cities of the southern extremity of the peninsula. Despite the help which Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, gave to the Greeks, Magna Graecia submitted to the Roman legions under Gaius Fabricius and the other Roman commanders, and by 270 B.C. Rome was the undisputed mistress of all Italy.

Rome succeeded better than any conquering nation had previously succeeded in securing the loyalty of the conquered peoples. She left to each state the right of self-government with respect to its internal affairs, and bound each to herself by an individual treaty which required the defeated nation to render full military support to Rome in case of war. No officials were sent from Rome to govern the conquered state, and no tribute was exacted. Some states were even made part of the city-state of Rome and granted Roman citizenship. The hope of such a reward was a powerful incentive to loyalty.

When the whole peninsula had been subdued, Roman legions passed beyond the boundaries of Italy, and in the First Punic War the Romans and Carthaginians fought for

ROMAN POWER IN ITALY

the possession of Sicily, which became the first of the Roman provinces, paying tribute to Rome and being governed by Roman officials sent out from Rome.

Then came the most severe test of the Roman national character. Hannibal's invasion of Italy in the Second Punic War brought fearful calamities on the country that he rav-

aged and on the armies that he humiliated and destroyed. Yet the spirit of Rome was never broken. Even in the darkest hour after Cannae no thought of peace entered the minds of the Romans, and the great body of Italian subjects remained loyal. Under Fabius, "the Delayer," Marcellus, "the Sword of Rome," and the famous Scipio Africanus, she emerged victorious from the ordeal; and in 146 B.C. her great rival, Carthage, was blotted out by Scipio Africanus the Younger, largely through the influence of Cato.

Rome was now a world power, and the next century witnessed the extension of Roman dominion over the whole Mediterranean shore. In the West, she gained control of Sicily, Spain, and Africa as the result of her defeat of Carthage. In the East, she stands forth, represented by Quinctius Flamininus, Lucius Aemilius Paulus, and Scipio Asiaticus as the liberator of Greece and Asia Minor from the control of Macedon and Syria. Philip and Perseus of Macedon and Antiochus of Syria were defeated in famous battles,* but as the firm champion of law and order Rome was finally compelled to rule the countries she had liberated. It was at this stage that there occurred the inexcusable destruction of Corinth, in 146 B.C.

As a result, however, of the conquests in the East there followed a vast increase of material wealth and a steady diminution of that stern and pure morality which had raised Rome to so proud an eminence. The rule over conquered peoples, even within the boundaries of Italy, became more and more a cruel and arbitrary exercise of authority for the sake of the selfish interests and financial profits of individual Romans. The change for the worse became rapid after the extinction of Carthage and the destruction of Corinth. Corruption spread rapidly. Elections were bought; judges were bribed; the interests of the common people and of the wealthy senatorial oligarchy that ruled the state became increasingly

* Cynoscephalae, 197 B.C.; Pydna, 168 B.C; and Magnesia, 190 B.C.

THE ROMAN FORUM AND ITS BUILDINGS

In the lower left corner is the little round temple of Vesta (*A*). The Sacra Via passes between the temple of Castor and Pollux (*B*) and the temple of Julius Caesar (*C*), who was deified after his death. It leads into the Forum (*F*), in early times a market place, later the official center of the Roman Empire. At the left of the Forum is the Basilica Julia (*E*), a law court erected by Caesar. In the middle foreground is another law court (*D*). Near this is the Senate House (*G*), in front of which is the Rostra (*H*), the speaker's platform. Beyond are the temple of Saturn (*J*), the temple of Concord (*K*), erected by Camillus, and the Tabularium, or Record Building (*L*). Note the Capitoline Hill, with the temple of Jupiter (*M*) on one peak and the citadel with the temple of Juno (*N*) on the other. The Tiber is in the background

hostile. Cato the Censor fought without success against the growing luxury and the incompetence of senatorial rule. Reformers like Tiberius Gracchus and Gaius Gracchus lost their lives in a vain attempt to stem the tide. The states of Italy rose in rebellion against their cruel mistress and were only pacified by the granting of Roman citizenship, which had long been demanded in vain.

The civil wars of Marius and Sulla followed with all their attendant horrors, massacres, and proscriptions. Not until power came into the hands of Julius Caesar, after the battle of Pharsalia, was there any hope of permanent peace in the state. Hardly had his great work of reconstruction begun when he fell, on the ides of March, 44 B.C., at the hands of Brutus and other misguided patriots, who had not realized that the day of the Republic was gone forever. The civil war that followed ended with the battle of Philippi; but not until Octavius and Antony had in their turn contended for supremacy did peace at last come to the distracted Roman world, by the victory of Octavius over Antony at Actium, in 31 B.C.

"So firmly had Octavius, or Augustus, following in the steps of Julius Caesar, laid the foundations of government that the supremacy of the Empire was maintained for more than four hundred years against the invasions of the surrounding barbarian nations. And even then and long after, the magic of the name of Rome could awaken echoes in the hearts even of barbarians; and from the fragments of her shattered world power were built up slowly yet surely the civilizations of modern Europe."

The stories contained in the lessons of Part III relate to some of the outstanding events in the history of Rome and to the famous characters associated with them. They also picture the activities of the Roman senate, the assembly, and the most important magistrates — the consul, dictator, censor, tribune of the people, praetor, aedile, and quaestor.

OUTLINE OF ROMAN HISTORY

Legendary date of the founding of Rome	753 B.C.
Names associated with this event	Romulus, Remus
Period of the kings (legendary)	753–509 B.C.
Names associated with this period	The seven kings, Numa Pompilius, the Tarquins, the Horatii and the Curiatii, Tarpeia
Establishment of the Republic	509 B.C.
Names associated with this event	Brutus, Horatius, Scaevola, Postumius
Extension of the Republic over Italy	509–265 B.C.
Names associated with this period	Cincinnatus, Camillus, Manlius, Fabricius, Papirius Cursor, Decius Mus, Pyrrhus, Appius Claudius
Capture of Rome by the Gauls	390 B.C.
Struggle of the plebeians for equal rights	509–287 B.C.
Names associated with this period	The tribunes of the people
Struggle with Carthage (three wars)	264–146 B.C.
Names associated with this period	1. Duilius, Regulus 2. Hannibal, Fabius, Marcellus, Scipio Africanus 3. Scipio Africanus the Younger, Cato the Censor
Roman control of the Mediterranean world	200–133 B.C.
Names associated with this period	Flamininus, Scipio Asiaticus, Aemilius Paulus

The rule (internal) of the senatorial aristocracy	265–133 B.C.
Growth of popular rights and the civil war between the optimates and populares .	133–78 B.C.
Names associated with this period	The Gracchi, Drusus, Marius, Sulla, Cinna
Downfall of the Republic . . .	78–44 B.C.
Names associated with this period	Pompey, Cicero, Caesar, Crassus, Cato the Younger, Brutus
Establishment of the Empire .	44–27 B.C.
Names associated with this period	Antony, Augustus, Lepidus
The Empire	27 B.C.–A.D. 476
Names of some important emperors	Augustus, Tiberius, Caligula, Claudius, Nero, Trajan, Hadrian, Marcus Aurelius, Diocletian, Constantine

BOOKS FOR COLLATERAL READING

A. Books containing Stories and Legends of Ancient Rome

HAAREN and POLAND. Famous Men of Rome.
GUERBER. The Story of the Romans.
HARDING. The City of the Seven Hills.
TAPPAN. Story of the Roman People.
MORRIS. Historical Tales.
MILLS. Book of the Ancient Romans.

B. Brief Histories of Rome

HAMILTON. Outlines of Roman History.
HAMILTON. Ancient Rome: the Lives of Great Men.
SEIGNOBOS. History of Ancient Civilization, pp. 199–288.
GREENWOOD. Our Heritage from the Old World, pp. 120–176.
BOTSFORD. A Brief History of the World, pp. 87–153.
WOLFSON. Ancient Civilization, pp. 61–107.
ROBINSON and BREASTED. History of Europe, pp. 189–287.
ROBINSON, SMITH, BREASTED. Our World Today and Yesterday, pp. 58–87.

C. More Detailed Accounts of Roman History and Institutions

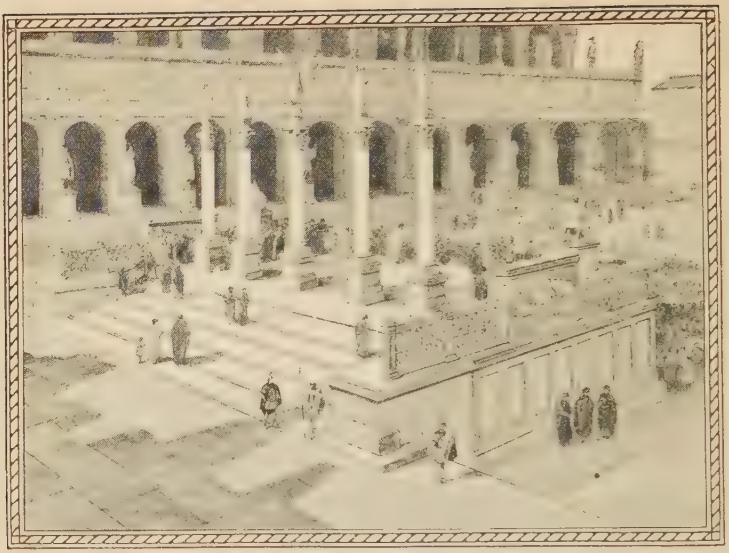
BREASTED. Ancient Times, pp. 484–599.
BOTSFORD. History of Rome.
WESTERMAN. Ancient Nations.
GOODSPEED. Ancient World.
BRYANT. Short History of Rome.
MACGREGOR. The Story of Rome.
JONES. Companion to Roman History.
ABBOTT. Roman Political Institutions.
PELHAM. Outline of Roman History.
FOWLER. Rome.
GRANRUD. Roman Constitutional History.
HEITLAND. Short History of the Roman Republic.
Plutarch's Lives.

D. Accounts of Roman Life

CHURCH. Roman Life in the Days of Cicero.
DAVIS. A Day in Old Rome.
JOHNSTON. The Private Life of the Romans.
SHUMWAY. A Day in Ancient Rome.
HALL. Buried Cities.

E. Stories and Novels

MACAULAY. Lays of Ancient Rome. Macaulay.
BULWER–LYTTON. Last Days of Pompeii.
DAVIS. A Friend of Caesar.
WHITE. Andivius Hedulio.
WHITE. The Unwilling Vestal.



A RECONSTRUCTION OF THE ROSTRA IN THE FORUM

The Rōstra was the famous platform from which Roman orators addressed the people. This view shows the later form under the Empire. Public speeches occupied an even more prominent part in the politics of ancient Rome than they do with us, because no newspapers were developed until the time of Caesar

LESSON 21

THE ROMAN REPUBLIC

The spread of Roman dominion over the civilized world resulted not simply from the military prowess of the Roman people but from the superiority of their political system as well. Amazing as was the extension of Roman empire and interesting as is the tale of that conquest, of even greater significance to us is an understanding of the political development of Rome; for the most important legacies of Rome to the modern world are derived from her government and her laws rather than from her military organization.

Rome was a republic, as the United States is today. The details of government in these two republics have varied greatly, but they have all been based upon the same fundamental idea that the people should rule. In the ancient republic officials were elected and laws were passed by the votes of the people, as they are today in the modern republic.

In Rome, however, the citizens assembled at one spot, either the Forum or the Campus Martius, in order to vote. At the beginning, when Roman territory was limited almost to the city of Rome, this was not a serious difficulty. As Roman power spread through Italy and Roman citizenship was gradually given to the other Italian towns, the old arrangement still held, and the new citizens had to come to Rome to vote. The idea of establishing polling places throughout Italy did not appeal to the Romans. Accordingly it became very inconvenient to call together a body of people scattered so widely; and when these assemblies were called, they were attended mainly by citizens who lived in Rome itself. Thus it was that the senate, a small body of three hundred citizens living in Rome and easily called together, came in practice to be the governing body of the Roman Republic during its great period. The senate was composed of those who had held or were holding high public offices, and it was one of the duties of the censor, who was elected every five years, to draw up a list of those who, in his judgment, were eligible to be members of the senate. Thus the Roman senate, unlike the senate of Athens and of the United States, was not elected by a direct vote of the people. The senate managed all the details of administering the Roman state; and the assemblies of the people, in which the final authority legally resided, were called together mainly for the passage of laws regarding which their action was officially necessary, as in a declaration of war. This combination of the senate and the Roman people is summed up in the abbreviation S.P.Q.R., that is, **Senātus Populusque Rōmānus.**

Hints for the Translation of Latin

You will be more successful in translating into English the thoughts that you have comprehended in the Latin, if you remember the following hints:

1. Latin sentences are often periodic; that is, the main verb is not found until the very end of the sentence. In the English translation the verb generally must be near the subject.

2. The object precedes the verb in Latin, but follows it in English.

3. Do not feel obliged to translate a clause in the same relative place in the English sentence that it had in the Latin.

4. Latin sentences often contain more ideas than we put into a sentence in English. You may therefore break up a long and complex Latin sentence into two or more English sentences.

5. Avoid the literal translation of the ablative absolute and other common Latin constructions which differ from the English idiom.

6. Translate participles (including the ablative absolute) usually by subordinate clauses, introduced by the conjunction which brings out the connection in thought, as *when*, *since*, *although*, *if*.

7. A relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence referring to something in the preceding sentence is translated by a demonstrative.

8. Do not confine yourself to a single meaning for a word. Use synonyms. Remember that you are translating ideas, not words. Keep trying to get the best English word for the idea conveyed in the Latin word. Avoid *great* for **magnus**, *thing* for **rēs**, *place* for **locus**, etc.

9. Remember at all times that the English of your translations must be such as would be accepted in an essay in your English class. If what you offer for a translation does not make sense, it is not a translation but a meaningless collection of words.

LESSON 22

THE FIRST CONSULS: BRUTUS AND THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE REPUBLIC *

Lucius Junius Brutus, ancestor of the Brutus who conspired against Caesar five hundred years later, was honored by the Romans, somewhat as Washington is honored by us, as the founder of the Republic. Kings had ruled in Rome for about two hundred and fifty years. The last of the kings, Tarquin the Proud (Tarquinius Superbus), was a haughty tyrant, whose lawless acts stirred up a spirit of rebellion among the patrician nobles. While the picturesque legend related below from Livy cannot be regarded as historically accurate, there is no doubt that about 509 B.C. the kings were expelled from Rome. The same thing was happening in other Italian towns.

90. Dum Tarquinius Superbus Rōmae rēgnat, portentum terribile vīsum est: serpēns ex columnā ligneā ēlāpsus terrōrem fugamque in rēgiā fēcit.[1] Hōc vīsū tam[2] territus erat Tarquinius ut fīliōs suōs Delphōs[3] ad clārissimum in terrīs ōrāculum mittere statueret. Itaque fīliī eius, Titus et Arrūns, in Graeciam profectī sunt. Ūnā cum eīs missus est comes L. Jūnius Brūtus, Tarquiniae, sorōris rēgis, fīlius, quī, quod prīncipēs cīvitātis atque frātrem suum ab avunculō interfectōs esse audīverat, sibi salūtem in imitātiōne stultitiae petīverat et bona sua[4] ā rēge occupārī passus erat; neque cognōmen Brūtum[5] recūsāverat. Is tum cum Tarquiniīs Delphōs profectus est, lūdibrium vērius[6] quam comes. Perfectīs patris imperātīs, juvenēs haec quoque ab ōrāculō quaesīvērunt: "Quis nostrum rēgnum Rōmānum recipiet?"

* This lesson is adapted from Livy, a famous Roman historian of the time of Augustus. He wrote a history of Rome from the earliest times down to his own day.

Tum haec vōx reddita esse dīcitur: "Imperium summum Rōmae habēbit quī [7] vestrum prīmus, Ō juvenēs, ōsculum mātrī tulerit." Statim Brūtus velut cāsū dēlāpsus [8] cecidit et terram ōsculō tetigit; nam terram commūnem mātrem omnium mortālium esse exīstimābat.

DELPHI

Here was the famous oracle of Apollo, on Mount Parnassus. A priestess, inhaling gas which issued from a fissure in the rock, entered a trancelike state and was supposed to utter inspired prophecies. For the interpretations of omens the Romans usually consulted their own augurs, who had developed a regular science of augury

The banishment of the Tarquins

Posteā rēx Ardeam urbem obsidēbat. Ibi cum fīliī rēgis et aliī juvenēs in castrīs cēnārent,[9] forte facta est de uxōribus mentiō. Suam uxōrem quisque mīrīs modīs laudābat. Tum exclāmāvit Tarquinius Collātīnus, quī Lucrētiam suam cēterīs [10] praestāre putābat, "Equōs cōnscendāmus et ingenia

uxōrum invīsāmus!" Itaque, equīs citātīs, Rōmam properant, ubi rēgiās nurūs in convīviō et lūxū inveniunt. Pergunt inde domum Collātīnī, ubi Lucrētiam lānae dēditam [11] inter ancillās sedentem inveniunt. Quā dē causā ea cēterīs praestāre jūdicātur. Paucīs diēbus intermissīs, Sextus Tarquinius rediit et Lucrētiae vim attulit.[12] Posterō diē illa, advocātīs patre et conjuge, rem exposuit et sē cultrō, quem sub veste cēlāverat, occīdit.

Brūtus autem, virō patreque lūctū occupātīs, cultrum ex vulnere Lucrētiae extrāctum et mānantem sanguine prae sē tenēns, "Per hunc sanguinem," inquit, "jūrō, vōsque, deī, testēs faciō,[13] mē L. Tarquinium Superbum cum scelerātā [14] conjuge et omnibus līberīs ferrō ignīque exsecūtūrum, nec illōs nec alium quemquam Rōmae rēgnāre passūrum esse." Omnēs in exitium [15] rēgum conjūrant et Brūtum sequuntur ducem. Ipse, jūniōribus [16] armātīs, Ardeam ad castra profectus est, ut exercitum contrā rēgem excitāret.[17] Tarquiniō [18] quī Rōmam contendēbat portae urbis clausae sunt et exsilium dēcrētum est. Brūtum līberātōrem urbis laeta castra accēpērunt, et līberī rēgis ējectī patrem in Etrūriam secūtī sunt. Hōc modō rēs pūblica prō rēgnō ā Rōmānīs cōnstitūta est.

The first consuls

Rēgibus expulsīs, Rōmānīs placuit [19] imperium summum ā cōnsulibus tenērī. Duo cōnsulēs aequae potestātis [20] prō ūnō rēge creātī sunt; itaque, sī ūnus magistrātus malus esse vīsus est, alter potestātem similem habēns eum coercēre poterat. L. Jūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātīnus prīmī cōnsulēs creātī sunt. Omnia jūra rēgum et omnia īnsignia prīmī cōnsulēs tenuērunt. Ante eōs ambulābant līctōrēs duodecim, ā quibus summa potestās cōnsulum ostendēbātur. Magistrātūs annuī cōnsulēs factī sunt, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis īnsolentius agerent,[21] nam sē post annum iterum prīvātōs futūrōs esse sciēbant.[22]

Brutus puts his own sons to death for treason

Lēgātī ā Tarquiniō in urbem missī animōs quōrundam adulēscentium nōbilium temptāvērunt, inter quōs duo fīliī Brūti cōnsulis ipsīus erant. Hī adulēscentēs inter sē conjūrāvērunt sē rēgem ējectum in rēgnum restitūrōs esse. Hōc cōnsiliō

BRUTUS CONDEMNS HIS OWN SONS TO DEATH

The conduct of Brutus in putting loyalty to the state ahead of filial affection was ever afterward held up as the highest example of patriotic devotion

nūntiātō, cōnsulēs lēgātōs conjūrātōsque dēprehēnsōs in vincula conjēcērunt.[23] Dē eīs damnātīs supplicium ā cōnsulibus sūmī necesse erat. Ubi diēs poenam sūmendī vēnit, et prōditōrēs dēligātī ad pālum stetērunt, omnēs līberōs Brūtī spectābant. Tum cōnsulēs ad sēdem suam prōcessērunt. Dum līctōrēs meritum supplicium sūmunt, Brūtus vultum ā spectāculō nōn āvertit.

Sed brevī tempore dignitās cōnsulātūs ā Tarquiniō Collā-

tīnō sublāta est, quod Rōmānī Tarquiniōs ita verēbantur ut nūllum ex eā gente in urbe remanēre paterentur. In eius locō factus est L. Valerius cōnsul. Ille cognōmen Pūblicolam [24] meruit, quod, eō cōnsule, lātae sunt lēgēs dē prōvocātiōne adversus magistrātūs ad populum [25] et dē sacrandō capite [26] eius quī rēgnum occupandī cōnsilia fēcisset.[27] Hae lēgēs populō maximē grātae erant.

91. Notes

1. **Fēcit**: *caused.*

2. **Tam**: what kind of clause does **tam** indicate may be coming?

3. **Delphōs**: place whither without a preposition.

4. **Bona sua**: *his property* (lit. *his own goods*).

5. **Brūtum**: *the dull.*

6. **Lūdibrium vērius**: *more truly an object of amusement*; his apparent stupidity made him the butt of ridicule.

7. **Quī**: the antecedent is **is**, which is to be understood as the subject of **habēbit**.

8. **Cāsū dēlāpsus**: *slipping by accident.*

9. **Cum . . . cēnārent**: observe that the conjunction **cum**, *when*, is here followed by the subjunctive mood. Translate as if past indicative.

10. **Cēterīs**: of what is **praestāre** composed? Case of **cēterīs**?

11. **Lānae dēditam**: *spinning* (lit. *devoted to wool*).

12. **Lucrētiae vim attulit**: *did violence to Lucretia.*

13. **Testēs faciō**: *I call to witness.*

14. **Scelerātā**: Tullia, the wife of Tarquinius, had shocked the people by riding over the body of her slain father when she was on her way home after saluting her husband as king.

15. **In exitium**: *for the destruction.*

16. **Jūniōribus**: *the younger men*; comparative of **juvenis**.

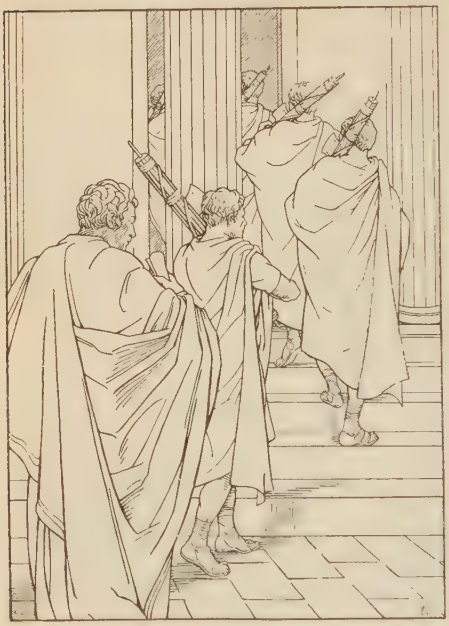
17. **Ut . . . excitāret**: *in order to arouse* or simply *to arouse* (lit. *in order that he might arouse*). This clause tells the purpose for which Brutus proceeded to Ardea. Compare with note 2, and get clearly in mind the difference in the ideas of *purpose* and *result*. A purpose clause is usually best translated into English by the infinitive.

18. **Tarquiniō**: dative of reference.

19. **Rōmānīs placuit**: *the Romans decided.* What literally? Why is **Rōmānīs** dative?

20. **Aequae potestātis**: *with equal power*; genitive of description.

21. **Nē . . . agerent:** *in order that they might not act.* This is a negative clause of purpose, telling the *purpose for which* (not the reason why) the consuls were made annual officials. What is the negative in a *result* clause?



A CONSUL WITH HIS LICTORS

The twelve lictors preceded the consul in single file, bearing fasces and (outside the city) axes. After the passage of the law forbidding the infliction of the death penalty without the right of appeal to the people, the axes, typifying the death penalty, had to be taken from the bundle of rods within the city

22. **Prīvātōs . . . sciēbant:** the power of the consuls was thus limited in two respects as compared with that of the kings. They held office for only one year, and the acts of either could be vetoed by the other. But they called and adjourned assemblies of the people at will; they alone could propose laws or nominate candidates; they filled vacancies in the senate and commanded the army in war.

23. **Lēgātōs dēprehēnsōs in vincula conjēcērunt:** *they seized the envoys and threw them into prison* (lit. *they threw the seized envoys into prison*). This condensed use of the participle needs to be expanded into a clause in English.

24. **Pūblicolam:** *Friend of the People.*

25. **Dē prōvocātiōne ad populum:** *with regard to an appeal to the people.* This right of appeal was looked upon as the Magna Charta of Roman liberty. By it any citizen accused of a capital crime, involving as its penalty loss of life or citizenship, had a right to appeal to the people from the decision of a consul or other official.

26. **Dē sacrandō capite:** *with regard to putting a curse on the head.*

27. **Fēcisset:** translate as if it were fēcerat.

92. Vocabulary

Hereafter there will be no special lesson vocabularies. When you cannot determine for yourself the meaning of a new word, consult the general vocabulary. Always decide the probable vocabulary form of a word before turning to the vocabulary. Study carefully any related Latin or English words given there. Learn thoroughly the meaning of all words starred in the vocabulary.

93. Place Ideas with *Domus* and Names of Towns

Study carefully the following summary of the ordinary and special methods of expressing place ideas both with and without prepositions.

A. Place to which (whither)

Ordinary: accusative with the preposition **ad, in,** or **sub.**
With domus and names of towns: accusative *without* a preposition. Compare in English "he went *home*."

B. Place from which (whence)

Ordinary: ablative with the preposition **ab, dē,** or **ex.**
With domus and names of towns: ablative *without* a preposition.

C. Place where

Ordinary: ablative with the preposition **in** or **sub.**
With domus and names of towns: a special case (possessed by a few nouns) called the *locative, without* a preposition.

Learn the following statement:

The locative case is like the genitive in the *singular* of nouns of the first or second declension; elsewhere it is like the ablative.

Find illustrations of these uses in section 90, and see the Appendix, sections 24, 39, 41, 47.

NOTE. The prepositions **in** and **sub** denote place *to which* (acc.) when the verb expresses *motion*; they denote place *where* (abl.) when the verb expresses *rest*.

94. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following phrases:

the *lapse* of time	a deadly *emanation*
an *oracular* utterance	*coercive* measures
an *osculatory* impulse	a *portentous* circumstance
a *palustrine* village	*afferent* veins
a strong *executive*	*avuncular* advice
ancillary documents	a *communistic* measure

2. *Constable* is derived from **comes**, *companion*, and **stabulum**, *stable*. The constable was originally the official in charge of the royal stables. *Count* meant originally a *companion*, or associate, of the ruler; eventually he was given authority over a district. A *county* was originally a district in charge of a **comes**.

3. Latin prefixes usually appear in French in the same form as in English: as, *absorber, admirer, affaire, connaître, défendre, disparaître, élever, importer, permettre, prévoir, profiter, revenir, séparer, traverser.*

95. Drill and Review

1. Decline **cāsus, īnsigne, quisque, quisquam** (App., p. 10). Conjugate **expellō** (present system, active and passive). Give a synopsis of **exsequor** (third plur.); of **dēdō** (first sing.); the infinitives of **ēiciō**; the participles of **occidō**; the locative endings (App., pp. 1, 2, 3).

2. Read and translate:

1. Ōlim quīdam rēx, quī Rōmae rēgnābat, serpente perterritus erat. 2. Tam territus est rēx ut fīliōs suōs Delphōs mittere cōnstitueret. 3. Illī, ā rēge in Graeciam proficīscī jussī, Rōmā prōgredī nōn recūsant. 4. Brūtus, quī ūnā cum fīliīs rēgis profectus erat, Delphīs ōrāculum cōnsuluit. 5. Respōnsō ōrāculī audītō, fīliī quaerunt, "Quis nostrum Rōmae rēgnābit?" 6. Posteā Rōmam omnēs revertērunt, ubi rēx domī eōs exspectāverat.

3. Write in Latin:

1. Brutus is so moved by the fate of Lucretia that he says: "I will not allow anyone to be king at Rome. Let us drive the Tarquins from Rome. Let us not allow them to return to Rome." 2. After Tarquin and his sons had been driven from the city (*express in two ways*), new magistrates called consuls were elected; each had the insignia of the king and twelve lictors. 3. While the sons of Brutus were being killed, it did not please the father to turn his eyes from the sight.

4. **The Uses of the Ablative Case.** The variety of ideas expressed by the ablative case is explained by the fact that the Latin ablative has inherited the uses of three distinct cases which our Aryan forefathers used. One case expressed the *with* idea; another, the *in* idea; and the third, the *from* idea. From the *with* case have come the ideas of accompaniment, means, manner, and cause; from the *in* case have come the ideas of place where and time when; from the *from* case have come the ideas of separation and place from which. You must not get the idea that the various uses of the ablative case represent so many pigeonholes with every example fitting neatly into one of them. We may start, for example, with the *with* case. In the sentence "He came with me," *with me* expresses the clear idea of *accompaniment*. In the sentence "I hit him with a club," the club was thought of as accompanying the subject, but it has now passed over into the idea of the *means*. In "John will do this with pleasure," pleasure was thought of originally as going with John, but it has now become the idea of *manner*. In "John is ill with diphtheria," the disease was thought of in a certain sense as accompanying John, but it is now felt as the *cause* of the illness. Many Latin phrases containing the *with* idea may be said definitely to express accompaniment, means, manner, or cause; but many lie in between, and we cannot always tell which idea predominates. We may perhaps regard these uses as large stations on a continuous railroad; but there are halfway stations, and it is not in all cases possible or desirable to decide to which large station they are nearest. The purpose of deciding upon the idea expressed by any ablative phrase is to secure assistance in getting the thought of the sentence and not to classify for the sake of classifying.

THE BRIDGE OVER THE ANIO

On the right the bridge leads to the Sacred Mount, to which the plebeians seceded

LESSON 23

THE SECESSION OF THE PLEBEIANS AND THE APPOINTMENT OF TRIBUNES OF THE PEOPLE *

From the very foundation of the city Roman citizens were divided into *patricians*, or nobles, and *plebeians*, or the common people. The kings had been inclined to protect and favor the plebeians, but after the expulsion of the kings the entire authority fell into the hands of patrician magistrates and a patrician senate, so that the plebeians were worse off than before. The plebeians were mostly tenants on small farms, and the patrician owners exacted illegal and excessive rents. Taxes and rents brought many plebeians into debt; the patrician creditors could seize a debtor and his children and hold them as slaves until the debt had been worked off, or even sell

* Adapted from Livy.

them into slavery to foreigners. The plebeians had no political power by which to redress their grievances, since all the magistrates, senators, and priests were patricians and controlled the assemblies which passed the laws. The action of the plebeians described below was the first step in their long struggle with the patricians for complete political and social equality. This was in 494 B.C.

96. Rēgibus urbe expulsīs, mox magna dissēnsiō inter patrēs [1] plēbemque orta est maximē propter aes aliēnum,[2] quō plēbs premēbātur. Dēbitōrēs enim nōn sōlum agrīs et aliīs fortūnīs ā patribus prīvābantur sed etiam in servitūtem dūcēbantur; neque eīs auxilium ā cōnsulibus dabātur. Saepe mīlitēs, quī forīs [3] prō lībertāte et imperiō pugnābant, domī ā dīvitiōribus captī et oppressī sunt propter aes aliēnum; ut lībertās plēbis tūtior in bellō quam in pāce, et inter hostēs quam inter cīvēs vidērētur.

The plight of a plebeian debtor

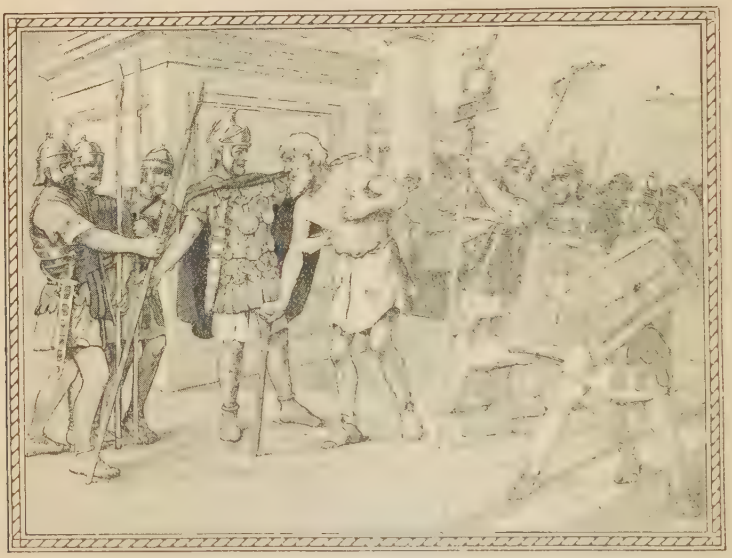
Īnsignis calamitās ūnīus mīlitis invidiam patrum [4] accendit. Senex cum omnium malōrum suōrum īnsignibus sē in forum prōjēcit.[5] Squālida erat vestis eius, squālida barba et capillī; agnōscēbātur tamen in tantā dēfōrmitāte. "Ille ōrdinēs dūcēbat!" [6] turba circumfūsa clāmant.[7] "Ecce, pugnārum cicātrīcēs in pectore fert! Miser centuriō, unde iste habitus atque dēfōrmitās?"

Tum ille respondet: "Dum in bellō absum, agrīs meīs vāstātīs, vīllā incēnsā, pecore abāctō, aes aliēnum fēcī.[8] Prīmō agrō paternō, deinde aliīs fortūnīs prīvātus sum. Postrēmō, omnibus fortūnīs āmissīs, ductus sum ab crēditōre nōn in servitūtem sed in ergastulum." Inde tergum foedum vēstīgiīs verberum recentium ostendit. Statim clāmor ingēns oritur et tumultus tōtam urbem pervādit.

The plebeians forget their ills and defend Rome

Inter haec nūntiātum est [9] Volscōs ad urbem oppugnandam [10] venīre. Hāc rē nūntiātā, plēbs gaudiō exsultant et sē

contrā hostēs nōn pugnātūrōs esse clāmant.[7] At ūnus ē cōnsulibus, plēbe convocātā, haec fātus est: "Hostēs prope portās sunt. Rem pūblicam omnēs dēfendāmus! Dum pugnāmus, nūllus plēbēius vīnctus aut clausus tenēbitur; bona nūllīus mīlitis, dum in castrīs est, capientur. Hoc polliceor:



A CENTURION APPEALS FOR SUPPORT AGAINST HIS PATRICIAN OPPRESSOR

bellō cōnfectō, senātum plēbī auxilium datūrum esse." Hāc ōrātiōne plēbī [11] persuāsit, et omnēs ad bellum tam [12] ācriter concurrērunt ut Volscī brevī tempore vincerentur.

The plebeians secede

Hostibus superātīs, plēbs prōmissa cōnsulis fidemque senātūs exspectābat; sed jūs de aere aliēnō crūdēlissimē dicēbātur.[13] Nūllus plēbēius aere aliēnō līberātus est. Tandem, auxiliō cōnsulum senātūsque dēspērātō, plēbs in Sacrum

montem sēcessit, quī trāns Aniēnem flūmen est tria ab urbe mīlia passuum. Metus ingēns in urbe erat. Post paucōs diēs patrēs, quī nūllam spem nisi in concordiā esse intellegēbant, ōrātōrem ad plēbem Menēnium Agrippam, plēbēium virum et plēbī cārum, mīsērunt ut plēbem conciliāret.[14]

By a fable Menenius Agrippa dissuades the plebeians from establishing a separate city

Is in castra introōmissus nihil aliud nisi hoc[15] nārrāvisse dīcitur: "Ōlim reliquae partēs corporis hūmānī īrātae erant quod suā cūrā, suō labōre ventrī[16] omnia quaerēbantur, et venter nihil agēns datīs voluptātibus fruēbātur.[17] Inter sē conjūrāvērunt et pollicitī sunt neque manum ad ōs cibum lātūram esse neque ōs cibum lātum acceptūrum esse neque dentēs cōnfectūrōs esse.[18] At dum ventrem famē vincere volunt, ipsae quoque ita[19] dēfēcērunt ut tōtum corpus paene ad exitium venīret. Inde intellēxērunt ventrem nōn inūtilem esse, nec magis alī quam reliquās alere."

Hāc fābulā Menēnius flexit hominum mentēs; plēbs cōnātū[19] dēstitit et in urbem regressa est. Tum plēbī permissum est[20] creāre tribūnōs sacrōsānctōs,[21] quī jūs plēbī auxilium dandī contrā cōnsulēs habēbant. Neque ūllī senātōrī licēbat[22] eum magistrātum capere. Propter hanc potestātem tribūnī plēbis posteā potentissimī factī sunt.[23]

97. Notes

1. **Patrēs:** *the patricians.*

2. **Aes aliēnum:** *debts* (lit. *some one else's copper*; a good definition of a debt).

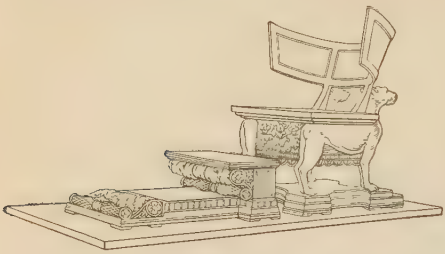
3. **Forīs:** *outside the city.* Derivative?

4. **Patrum** does not express possession, but indicates the *object* of the feeling expressed by **invidiam**. It is called an *objective genitive* (App. § 13, *a*).

5. **Sē prōjēcit:** *rushed.* What literally?

6. **Ille ōrdinēs dūcēbat:** *that man was a centurion* (lit. *that man used to lead the ranks*). The Roman centurions were the best fighting men in the army, and so were selected as leaders of the men.

7. **Clāmant:** a plural verb may be used with a singular subject, in Latin as in English, when the subject is a collective noun, if the individuals of the collection are thought of as acting separately.



THE CURULE CHAIR

The right to use the **sella curūlis**, the ivory chair of state, was inherited by the consuls from the kings. The other officials who had this privilege were the dictator, praetor, censor, and curule aediles. These were called curule magistrates. They sat on this chair in their tribunals on all public occasions

8. **Aes aliēnum fēcī:** *I fell into debt.*

9. What is the subject of **nūntiātum est**?

10. **Ad urbem oppugnandam:** *to attack the city.*

11. Add **persuādēre**, *to persuade* (lit. *to make it agreeable to*), to your list of special verbs taking the dative. See the Appendix, section 18.

12. What kind of clause does **tam** or **ita** suggest may be coming?

13. **Dīcēbātur:** *was enforced.*

14. **Ut . . . conciliāret:** this clause tells the *purpose for which* the senators sent Menenius Agrippa. Translate by an infinitive.

15. **Nihil . . . hoc:** *only this.* What literally?

16. **Ventrī:** what use of the dative? What is a *ventriloquist*?

17. **Datīs voluptātibus fruēbātur:** *was enjoying the comforts given it*; **voluptātibus** is ablative with the deponent **fruor.**

18. **Cōnfectūrōs esse:** *would chew.* Observe that after a past main verb the future infinitive is translated with *would.*

19. **Cōnātū** is ablative of separation with **dēstitit.**

20. **Plēbī permissum est:** *the plebeians were allowed* (lit. *it was permitted to the plebeians*). This *impersonal* use of the passive is best translated with a person as subject. What is the subject of **permissum est**?

21. **Sacrōsānctōs:** *inviolable.* A person who laid violent hands on a tribune could be killed by the citizens without their incurring any penalty.

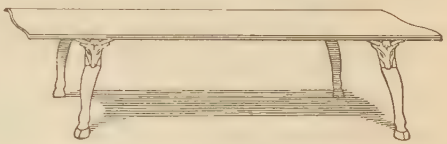
22. **Neque . . . licēbat:** *and no senator was permitted* (lit. *it was permitted to no senator*). **Licēbat** is an impersonal verb having the infinitive **capere** as subject. Such impersonal verbs are best rendered by making a person the subject. See note 20 for the impersonal use of the passive.

23. **Factī sunt:** *became* (lit. *were made*). The passive of **faciō** means

become. What is the syntax of **potentissimī**? Learn thoroughly the principal parts of **faciō** in the passive (irregular).

98. The Ablative of Separation

The idea of separation is one of the fundamental ideas of the ablative case. Place from which is simply one form of this idea, and is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**. But if the verb of the clause itself contains the prefix **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, the preposition is sometimes omitted. Translate the following sentences, noting that the ablative does not always refer literally to a place:



THE SUBSELLIUM OF THE TRIBUNES

The humble position which the tribunes of the people at first occupied is reflected in the plain bench, their official seat

1. Rēgēs *urbe* expulsī sunt.
2. Plēbs *cōnātū* dēstitit.

This use of the ablative is called *separation*. There are other verbs which, without having one of the prefixes **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, take the ablative of separation without a preposition. Translate the following sentences:

1. Dēbitōrēs *agrīs* prīvābantur.
2. *Agrō paternō* prīvātus sum.
3. Nūllus plēbēius *aere aliēnō* līberātus est.

For the rules see the Appendix, section 38.

99. The Infinitive as Subject

The infinitive as object (with or without a subject) is familiar: as, "I wish to see," **vidēre cupiō**; "They ordered the gates to be closed," **jussērunt portās claudī.**

The infinitive is also used frequently as subject, especially with impersonal passives and impersonal verbs. Translate the following sentences:

1. Vidēre est crēdere.
2. Nūntiātum est Volscōs venīre (indirect statement).
3. Bona sua ā rēge occupārī passus est.
4. Rōmānīs placuit imperium summum ā cōnsulibus tenērī.
5. Tum plēbī permissum est creāre tribūnōs.
6. Neque ūllī senātōrī licēbat eum magistrātum capere.

State how each of the infinitives above is used. See the Appendix, sections 48, 49, 81, 83.

100. Applications of Latin

1. Explain the meaning of the italicized words in the following phrases:

the *Federal* Constitution
a *tumultuous* reception
a *potent* medicine
the *alimentary* canal
a *license* plate
potential ability
an *exultant* shout
an *oral* recitation
a permanent *reconciliation*
an *oriental* custom
meticulous care
a loud *reverberation*
concurrent action
impotent rage
a *coalition* of forces
an *illicit* distillery
capillary attraction (physics)
a murderous *desperado*
a large *orifice*
a huge *deficit*
occidental ideas
the highest *magistracy*

2. The prefix **dis-** sometimes appears in French as *des-* (*déshonneur*), **inter-** as *entre-* (*entretenir*), **per-** as *par-* (*pardonner*), **prō-** as *pour-* (*pourvoir*), **sub-** as *sou-* (*souterrain*), **ultrā-** as *outre-* (*outremer*).

3. Many Latin suffixes appear in French in the same form as in English, since they have come into English through French: as *naval* (**-ālis**), *mission* (**-iō**), *terrible* (**-bilis**), *multitude* (**-tūdō**).

101. Drill and Review

1. **The Irregular Verb *Ferō*.** If you learn the principal parts of **ferō** and then examine the conjugation of this verb (App., p. 26), you will observe that the only irregularities of its conjugation are found in the present indicative, active and passive, and in the present active imperative. Learn these irregular forms. Locate **fer, fers, ferris, fert, ferat, feret, ferret, ferant, ferunt, ferent.** Give a synopsis in the third person, singular and plural.

2. Decline **centuriō, ōs, metus recēns.** Conjugate **orior** (pres. and past prog. subjv.). Give a synopsis of **faciō** (first sing. act.); participles of **dēficiō**; gerund of **ferō**; infinitives of **ferō** and **permittō.**

3. Read and translate:

1. Quod misera plēbs ā patribus ita premēbantur ut lībertāte prīvārentur, Rōmae nūntiātum est dissēnsiōnem mox oritūram esse. 2. Centuriōnibus quī domō aberant nōn licēbat agrōs villāsque retinēre. 3. Dēbitōribus agris expulsīs, patrēs potentiōrēs erant. 4. Ubi Volscī Rōmam vēnērunt et urbem ab omnibus cīvibus dēfendī necesse fuit, plēbs prīmō sē nōn pugnātūrōs esse dīxērunt; sed cōnsul tandem eīs persuāsit. 5. Urbe tumultū atque metū līberātā, patribus nōn placuit auxilium plēbī dare. 6. Plēbs auxilium ita dēspērābant ut in Sacrum montem sēcēderent.

4. Write in Latin:

1. When the plebeians had withdrawn from Rome, the fear of the patricians was greater. 2. They hoped the plebeians would give up the plan of withdrawing and would return to Rome. 3. So they sent Menenius, whose story about the human body was so pleasing that the plebeians gave up their attempt and returned home. 4. After tribunes were appointed, it was no longer permissible to deprive the plebeians of their land, their homes, or their fortunes.

LESSON 24

THE TWELVE TABLES OF THE LAW; APPIUS CLAUDIUS, THE DECEMVIR*

Until about 450 B.C. the Romans had no written laws. The patricians, who alone were acquainted with the laws, handed them down orally from father to son. This situation permitted great injustice to the plebeians, since the patrician judge could decide cases in favor of men of his own rank, while no plebeian could quote the law as proof of injustice. Hence the tribunes of the people began an agitation for the codification and publication of the laws. At length a board of ten men (**decemvirī**) was elected, with Appius Claudius, a liberal patrician, at its head, to replace the consuls and tribunes for a year and publish the laws. Thus the famous Twelve Tables were drawn up and ratified. They equalized the private rights of patricians and plebeians, and continued to be the fountain of justice for centuries. Even in Cicero's time, four centuries later, boys had to commit the Twelve Tables to memory as part of their education.

102. Tribūnīs plēbis creātīs, nōndum erat pāx inter plēbem et patrēs. Prīmīs annīs reī pūblicae nūllae lēgēs perscrīptae erant, sed omnēs ā patribus memoriā trādēbantur. Quā dē causā patrēs sōlī lēgēs cognōscēbant, et plēbs jūs ā patribus jūdicibus nōn aequē dīcī[1] querēbātur. Ut[2] plēbs lēgēs cognōscat, tribūnī scrīptās lēgēs jam postulant. Itaque lēgātī Athēnās mittuntur, ut[2] clārissimās lēgēs Solōnis[3] dēscrībant et dē īnstitūtīs et mōribus jūribusque aliārum Graeciae cīvitātum cognōscant.

The decemvirs

Postquam lēgātī Athēnīs revertērunt, decem virī, nōminātī "decemvirī," prō duōbus cōnsulibus creātī sunt, ut cīvitātī

* Adapted from Livy.

THE AVENTINE HILL

To this hill the plebeians seceded a second time. At the edge of the river at the left may be seen the mouth of the Cloaca Maxima, the largest of the Roman sewers, originally constructed in the time of the kings and still in use

lēgēs scrīberent. Cīvibus placuit[4] decemvirōs ūnum annum regere et eō annō imperium omne ab cōnsulibus ad decemvirōs trānsferrī. Inter aliōs creātus est Appius Claudius, quī prīncipātum decemvirōrum habēbat favōre plēbis.

The Twelve Tables

Decem tabulae lēgum ab hīs decemvirīs scrīptae ā senātū et comitiīs[5] probātae sunt. Posterō annō duae aliae tabulae additae sunt. Hae duodecim lēgum tabulae, ex aere factae, ex eō tempore in forō positae sunt atque fōns omnis pūblicī prīvātīque jūris ā Rōmānīs habēbantur. Puerī Rōmānī in lūdīs hās lēgēs discēbant. Cicerō dīxit ūnum librum duodecim tabulārum librōs omnium philosophōrum auctōritāte et ūtilitāte superāre.

Arbitrary acts of the decemvirs; the story of Virginia

Prīmō annō decemvirī tam bene ēgērunt ut plēbs, cum diēs comitiōrum appropinquāret,[6] decemvirōs iterum creāre dēsīderārent. Sed iterum creātus Appius ingeniō suō[7] vīvere coepit et rēx ēgit.[8] Aliquamdiū pār inter omnēs terror

THE DEATH OF VIRGINIA

fuit; paulātim tōtus[9] vertere in plēbem coepit. Appius virginem plēbēiam, nōmine Virginiam, amāvit. Pater virginis, Lūcius Virginius, quī ōrdinēs dūcēbat, exemplī rēctī[10] domī mīlitiaeque[11] erat. Eō absente, ut[2] fīliam ā patre abstrahere posset, Virginiam servam cuidam ex clientibus suīs addīcere[12] cōnstituit. Cliēns Appī igitur, ab illō jussus, virginī[13] venientī in forum (nam ibi in tabernīs līterārum lūdī[14] erant) manum injēcit, affirmāns suam esse servam, et ad tribūnal Appī jūdicis addūxit, quī dīxit sē nōn eō diē sed posterō jūs dictūrum esse. Intereā amīcī Virginī, equīs citātīs, ad castra

pergunt et nūntium ad eum ferunt, quī ā castrīs statim profectus Rōmam advenit. Posterō diē squālidā veste fīliam suam in forum dēdūxit et circumīre et opem cīvium ōrāre coepit, affirmāns sē prō lībertāte eōrum et conjugibus cotīdiē in aciē stāre. Quae omnia contemnēns, Appius, cum in tribūnal ascendisset,[15] Virginiam servam clientī suō addīxit. Tum pater, ubi nihil usquam auxilī[16] vīdit, cultrō ā laniō raptō, pectus puellae trānsfixit. "Hōc ūnō modō, fīlia," inquit, "tibi lībertātem dare possum."

The plebeians again secede and overthrow the decemvirs

Tum vērō sibi viam fēcit et respersus sanguine ad exercitum profūgit et mīlitēs ad facinus vindicandum accendit. Concitātus exercitus montem Aventīnum occupāvit; decem tribūnōs mīlitum creāvit; decemvirōs magistrātū sē abdicāre[17] coēgit eōsque aut morte aut exsiliō pūnīvit. Ipse Appius Claudius in carcerem conjectus sē interfēcit.

103. Notes

1. **Jūs dīcī:** *that the law was decided.*
2. This clause tells the *purpose* of the act in the main clause.
3. **Solōnis:** Solon was famous among the Greeks as a lawgiver.
4. **Cīvibus placuit:** *the citizens decided*; what literally? What is the subject of **placuit**?
5. **Comitiīs:** *the assembly.*
6. **Cum**, *when*, referring to past time, takes the past progressive or the past perfect subjunctive. Translate as if indicative.
7. **Ingeniō suō:** *in accordance with his character.*
8. **Rēx ēgit:** *acted the king.*
9. **Tōtus:** supply **terror.**
10. **Exemplī rēctī** is a genitive of description used in the predicate; *Virginius was (a man) of* etc.
11. **Domī mīlitiaeque:** *at home and in the field*; locative.
12. **Servam . . . addīcere:** *to award as a slave.*
13. **Virginī:** why dative?
14. **Līterārum lūdī:** *elementary schools.*

15. **Ascendisset:** past perfect subjunctive. See note 6.
16. **Auxilī:** genitive of the whole with **nihil**; *no help*. Literally ?
17. **Magistrātū sē abdicāre:** *to resign their office*. Literally ? **Magistrātū** is ablative of separation.

104. Clauses of Purpose with *ut* or *nē*

Translate again the following sentences, which you have met, expressing purpose:

Brūtus Ardeam profectus est *ut* exercitum *excitāret* (past prog. subjv.).

Magistrātūs annuī cōnsulēs factī sunt, *nē* īnsolentius *agerent* (past prog. subjv.).

Ōrātōrem mīsērunt *ut* plēbem *conciliāret* (past prog. subjv.).

Ut plēbs lēgēs *cognōscat*, tribūnī scrīptās lēgēs *postulant* (pres. subjv.).

Lēgātī Athēnās mittuntur *ut* lēgēs Solōnis *dēscrībant* (pres. subjv.).

A clause telling the *purpose* for which the main act takes place is expressed by the subjunctive mood with **ut** (affirmative) or **nē** (negative). See the Appendix, section 64.

Observe:

The negative used in a purpose clause is *nē*.

Tenses Used. A purpose clause after a *present* main verb has the *present* subjunctive; after a *past* main verb it has the *past progressive* subjunctive.

Translation of Purpose Clauses. The best English translation of a purpose clause usually has the infinitive *to* (*in order to*), which is not used in Latin to express *purpose*. When translating by a clause, use the auxiliary *may* or *might*.

NOTE 1. The negative in a *result* clause is **nōn**; in a *purpose* clause the negative is **nē**. The negative used with purpose clauses is **nē**, the same as with the independent volitive, because in both cases the act is looked upon, not as a fact, but as something *not wanted*.

NOTE 2. Distinguish carefully between *purpose* clauses with **ut** or **nē** and clauses expressing *cause* with **quod**. The former tell the *purpose for which*; the latter, the *reason why*.

105. Perfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive

The perfect subjunctive is not of frequent occurrence. It is formed like the future perfect indicative, but with the tense sign **-erī-**. The first singular active ends in **-m**. Conjugate the perfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the five type verbs (App., p. 18).

The past perfect subjunctive is of very frequent occurrence, especially in clauses introduced by **cum**, *when*. It is formed by adding the tense sign **-isse-** to the perfect stem: as, **vocāv + isse + m, monu + isse + m.** Conjugate the past perfect subjunctive of the type regular verbs, active and passive, and of the type deponent verbs (App., pp. 18, 19, 22).

Observe that, as the past progressive subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive (as, **vocāre + m**), so the past perfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive (as, **vocāvisse + m**).

For the perfect and past perfect subjunctive of **sum** and of **possum** see the Appendix, pages 24 and 25.

106. Applications of Latin

1. The suffix **-ālis** means *pertaining to*, and is used to form adjectives from nouns: as, **mortālis** (from **mors**, *death*), meaning *pertaining to death*. It appears in English as *-al*, as in *mortal*.

Give the Latin adjectives in **-ālis** from which the following English words are derived, and give the Latin nouns from which the Latin adjectives are derived:

capital	imperial	mortal	principal
causal	initial	mural	regal
conditional	legal	nominal	temporal
corporal	local	ordinal	vital
final	moral	partial	vocal

Give the Latin adjectives in **-ālis** and the English adjectives in *-al* derived from the following nouns:

beneficium	medicus	ōrdō	rādīx
fīlia	memoria	ōrnāmentum	regiō
inimīcus	nātūra	poena	tempus

2. Explain the meaning of *incarcerate, opulent, disperse, intersperse, prefix, suffix, recreation.*

3. Note the French form of the suffixes in the following Latin words:

LATIN	FRENCH	ENGLISH
lībertās (-tās)	liberté (-té)	liberty (-ty)
doctor (-tor)	docteur (-teur)	doctor (-tor)
honor (-or)	honneur (-eur)	honor (-or)
audāciōsus (-ōsus)	audacieux (-eux)	audacious (-ous)
amātus (perf. pass. part.)	aimé (-é)	——

107. Drill and Review

1. Decline **lūdus, aciēs, prīncipātus, cliēns.** Conjugate **ferō** (pres. system); **addūcō** (subjv. act. and pass.). Give a synopsis of **trādō** (third sing., indic. and subjv.); infinitives of **dēsīderō**; participles of **restituō**; gerund of **dēscrībō.**

2. Read and translate:

1. Nē lēgēs memoriā trāditae ā patribus sōlīs cognōscantur, plēbs lēgēs scrīptās postulant. 2. Lēgātī Athēnās missī sunt, ut lēgēs Solōnis dēscrīberent. 3. Duodecim lēgum tabulae in forō positae sunt, ut ab omnibus vidērentur. 4. Virginius fīliam suam occīdit, nē ea ab Appiō abstrahī posset. 5. Amīcī Virginī ad castra pergunt, ut perīculum patrī nūntient.

3. Write in Latin:

1. Virginius flees to the army in order to arouse the soldiers against Appius. 2. The army returns to Rome to seize the Aventine Hill. 3. Appius killed himself that he might not be punished with death or exile. 4. He was so frightened that he killed himself.

4. Review Word List 4, in the Appendix, page 45.

LESSON 25

CAMILLUS, THE GREAT DICTATOR, "SECOND FOUNDER OF ROME"*

In times of great emergency the double rule of the consuls was a disadvantage to the state. Accordingly, at the request of the senate, one of the consuls at such times nominated a dictator, in whom were vested all the powers of the ancient king. The consuls and other magistrates became his assistants. His term was limited to six months, but it was a matter of pride to resign the command within the fewest possible days. He was attended by twenty-four lictors, and the right of appeal from his judgments was suspended.

The most famous of the old Roman dictators was Marcus Furius Camillus. He was dictator five times; he brought to a successful end the long-drawn-out war against Veii (map, p. 183), and drove the Gauls from Rome and recovered the ransom. He was considered to have performed services second only to those of Romulus, and was called the "Second Founder of Rome." This was about 390 B.C.

Camillus, as dictator, captures Veii

108. Veiī, quod oppidum circiter duodecim mīlia passuum Rōmā aberat,[1] neque dīvitiīs neque hominibus neque fīnibus impār Rōmae erant. Ab urbe conditā[2] Veientēs inimīcō animō ergā populum Rōmānum erant[3]; saepe victī in pāce fidā cum Rōmānīs numquam manēbant; nam agrōs eōrum dēpopulābantur et sociōs sollicitābant. Dēnique colōnōs Rōmānōs et lēgātōs interfēcerant, atque omnem Etrūriam contrā Rōmānōs concitāre volēbant. Itaque bellum coörtum est et decem annōs Veiī ā Rōmānīs obsidēbantur. Veientēs, quōrum

* Adapted from Livy.

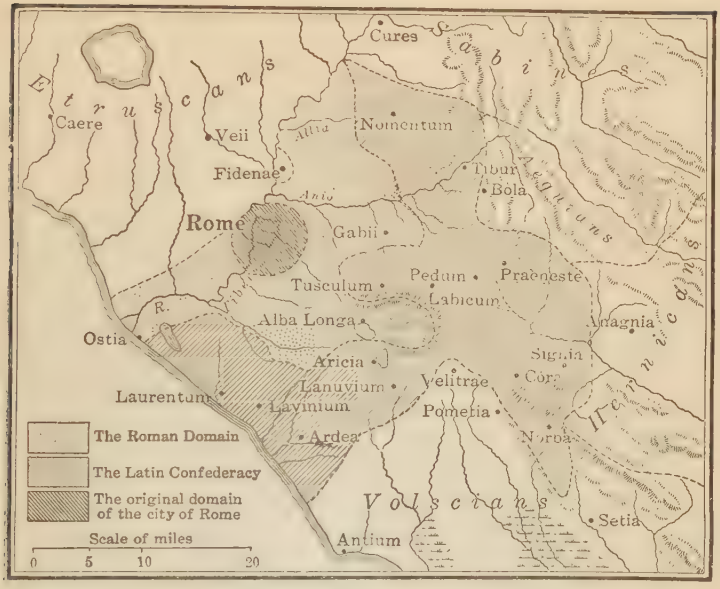
THE RIVER TIBER AND THE ISLAND

On the island in the Tiber was a temple to Aesculapius, the god of healing; and here, in connection with his worship, there developed the first hospital in Rome. The bridge at the right, which has been in use for nearly two thousand years, connects the island with Rome

ingenium bellō aptissimum erat, obsidiōnem facile sustinuērunt. Tandem necesse vidētātur prō cōnsulibus rem male gerentibus M. Fūrium Camillum dictātōrem creāre. Imperātōre mūtātō, spēs animusque Rōmānōrum et fortūna hostium mūtāta est et Camillus, novīs cōnsiliīs ūsus,[4] oppidum cēpit.

Camillus exiled by an ungrateful people

Ubi Rōmae nūntiātum est Veiōs captōs esse, immēnsum gaudium fuit et plēna omnia templa Rōmānārum mātrum[5] grātiās deīs agentium erant. Senātus supplicātiōnem quattuor diērum dēcrēvit. Adventus dictātōris celebrātior quam ūllīus imperātōris umquam anteā fuit; numquam tantus triumphus vīsus erat. Maximē īnsignis ipse currū equīs albīs jūnctō in urbem invectus est. Tum Jūnōnī templum in Aven-



MAP OF THE VICINITY OF ROME

The shaded area is Latium, the country of the Latini. Around this plain are Rome's inveterate enemies, the Etruscans, Sabines, Aequians, Hernicans, and Volscians, the last four of Italian stock but distinct from the Latins. In the center are the Alban hills with Alba Longa, the parent-city of Rome. The territory of Rome, chief city of the Latins, at the establishment of the Republic is indicated by the dark circle, through which the Tiber flows in a southerly direction. At the mouth of the Tiber is the port of Rome, Ostia, from whose ruins, recently excavated, the reconstruction pictured in the frontispiece is derived. Locate Veii, the dangerous rival of Rome, taken after a siege of ten years; Ardea, where Camillus remained in exile; the Allia, where the Gauls inflicted a terrible defeat upon the Romans; the Anio, across which the plebeians seceded; and Tusculum, the small but loyal ally of Rome. The towns of Setia, Norba, Signia, and Anagnia are colonies planted by Rome in conquered territory and picture Rome's advancing power

tīnō locāvit. Hīs dīvīnīs hūmānīsque rēbus gestīs, dictātūrā sē abdicāvit.

Īdem populus Rōmānus paucīs post annīs[6] Camillum culpāvit quod triumphāns per urbem albīs equīs vectus erat

et praedam Veiōrum inīquē dīvīserat. Ob eam causam condemnātus et expulsus Ardeam profectus est.

Camillus dictator against the Gauls

Nōn multō post, Rōmānīs ad Alliam victīs Rōmāque ā Gallīs captā, exercitus Capitōlīnus,[7] ut vidēbātur, nisi pretiō

VAE VICTĪS (WOE TO THE CONQUERED!)

The Gallic chieftain at the left has thrown his sword upon the scales, and the Roman tribune is protesting vigorously

aurī datō ab obsidiōne servārī nōn poterat. Dum Sulpicius, tribūnus mīlitum, et Brennus, dux Gallōrum, dē pretiō atque discessiōne hostium agunt, tribūnō pondera inīqua ā Gallīs allāta recūsante, Brennus īnsolēns "Vae victīs!" inquit et gladium suum ponderī[8] addit. Huic negōtiō[8] Camillus, quī ab exsiliō ā senātū revocātus erat atque absēns iterum dictā-

tor creātus erat, cum exercitū suō intervēnit; aurum dē mediō auferrī et Gallōs submovērī jussit. Īnstruit deinde aciem et ita Gallōs vīcit ut ex clāde nē nūntius quidem [9] relinquerētur. Dictātor triumphāns urbem ingressus ā mīlitibus parēns patriae conditorque alter urbis appellātus est.

Camillus persuades the Romans not to move to Veii

Quod Rōma ā barbarīs vāstāta erat et urbs vīcīna Veiōrum intācta stābat, plēbs voluit, ruīnīs Rōmae relictīs, ad urbem Veiōs migrāre. Hoc cōnsilium Camillus gravissimā ōrātiōne prohibuit: "Cūr," ex tribūnīs [10] quaesīvit, "hanc urbem servāvimus, sī servātam [11] dēserere parātī sumus? Vultisne [12] illōs [13] Rōmānōs, Veientēs vōs esse? Cūr omnēs deōs pūblicōs prīvātōsque dēsertūrī estis? [14] Nōnne tenet vōs haec terra, quam mātrem appellāmus? Nōnne movent vōs collēs campīque et Tiberis et assuēta oculīs [15] regiō et hoc caelum, sub quō nātī ēducātīque estis? Nōnne hīc Capitōlium est, quō in locō respōnsum est [16] caput rērum [17] summamque imperī futūram esse? Nōnne hīc Vestae ignēs sunt et omnēs deī propitiī manentibus vōbīs?" [18]

An omen

Eōdem ipsō tempore centuriō, quī forte per forum cum mīlitibus trānsībat, suīs dīxit, "Signifer, statue signum; hīc optimē manēbimus." Quā vōce audītā, senātus ē cūriā ēgressus sē ōmen accipere conclāmāvit et plēbs circumfūsa approbāvit.

109. Notes

1. **Quod oppidum . . . aberat:** *a town which* etc. The antecedent is pulled into the relative clause in Latin, contrary to English usage.

2. **Ab urbe conditā:** *from the founding of the city*, lit. *from the city (having been) founded.* The abbreviation A.U.C. is employed in dating events in Roman history.

SCHOOL OF THE VESTAL VIRGINS FLEEING FROM ROME

The Vestals were six in number. (The artist has not represented the number correctly.) When chosen they were between six and ten years old. The time of service was for thirty years, ten of which were devoted to learning the duties, ten to performing them, and ten to instructing the novices. They enjoyed many high distinctions and privileges. (From a painting by Leroux)

3. **Inimīcō animō erant:** *were unfriendly* (lit. *were of unfriendly disposition*). **Inimīcō animō** is an ablative of description used in the predicate.

4. **Novīs cōnsiliīs ūsus:** *adopting new devices*. Why is **cōnsiliīs** ablative? Camillus was a military genius. When he found that direct assaults of the usual type did not succeed, he had a tunnel dug to the very citadel of Veii.

5. **Mātrum:** adjectives of *fullness* govern the genitive (App. § 13).

6. **Paucīs post annīs:** *a few years afterwards* (lit. *afterwards by a few years*). Cf. **paucīs ante diēbus** (§ 76, n. 24).

7. **Exercitus Capitōlīnus:** *the army on the Capitoline*, or citadel. You will recall the story of the sacred geese.

8. **Ponderī:** dative with the compound verb.

9. **Nē . . . quidem:** *not even*; emphasizes the intervening word.

10. **Tribūnīs:** the tribunes were advising the citizens to leave Rome.

11. **Servâtam:** supply **urbem.**

12. **Vultis:** present indicative of **volō**; see the Appendix, page 28.

13. **Illōs:** the people of Veii.

14. **Dēsertūrī estis**: *are you going* (or *about*) *to forsake?* This combination of the future active participle and a form of **sum** expresses *intention.*

15. **Assuēta oculīs**: *familiar to your eyes.*

16. **Respōnsum est**: *it was predicted*, lit. *it was replied* (by an oracle). Note the *impersonal* use of the passive. What is the subject?

17. **Caput rērum**: *the Capitol.* What literally? The great temple of Jupiter, as well as the citadel, was on the Capitoline.

18. **Vōbīs**: dative with the adjective **propitiī.**

110. The Impersonal Use of Verbs

In the sentences "It appears that the message arrived" and "It is believed that he will win," the verbs *appears* and *is believed* are said to be used *impersonally*, because they have no personal subjects. The real subjects are the clauses *that . . . arrived* and *that . . . win. It* is an expletive, filling out the place of the subject, and is not expressed in Latin. Similarly in the Latin sentence **Nūntiātum est Veiōs captōs esse**, the verb **nūntiātum est** is an impersonal passive, and the infinitive clause **Veiōs captōs esse** is the subject.

111. The Dative Case with Compound Verbs

In the sentence **Virginī manum injēcit**, *he laid hands on the maiden*, the compound verb **injēcit** takes a direct object (**manum**) of the simple verb **-jēcit**, and an indirect object (**virginī**) closely associated with the prefix **in-**. Explain similarly **Fīliō magistrum praefēcī.**

You have met the same usage with **praepōnō**, **postpōnō**, and **addō** (meanings?). For the list of prefixes with which this use of the dative occurs see the Appendix, section 17.

The dative is also found with compound verbs that cannot at the same time govern a direct object: as, **Lucrētia cēterīs praestābat**, *Lucretia excelled* (lit. *stood before*) *the others.*

Some verbs when compounded with these prefixes take a direct object of the verb as a whole.

112. The Ablative with Certain Deponent Verbs

You have already learned that certain verbs take the dative case in Latin instead of the accusative, which the corresponding English usage would suggest. Similarly, certain verbs whose English translations require a direct object take the ablative case in Latin. Translate again the following sentences, noting the case of the italicized words and observing carefully how they are translated into English:

1. *Novīs cōnsiliīs* ūtitur.
2. *Magistrīs optimīs* ūsa est.
3. *Voluptātibus* fruēbātur.

The deponent verbs **ūtor** and **fruor** govern the ablative. For the five verbs of this group * see the Appendix, section 34.

113. Applications of Latin

1. **Pondus**, *weight*, is related to **pendere**, *to weigh*. A pre-*ponder*ating opinion out*weighs* the others. To *ponder* is to *weigh* carefully. A *pound* is a measure of *weight*. *Ponderous* and *weighty* are heteronyms.

2. Explain the meaning of *inept, aptitude, adept, colonial, solicitude, prohibitive, consummate, migratory, immigrant, emigrant, invective, transitory.*

3. French nouns and adjectives are derived from the accusative, not from the nominative, of Latin words. The final letters are regularly lost. Thus:

mère (**mātrem**)	ami (**amīcum**)	dur (**dūrum**)
fin (**fīnem**)	dent (**dentem**)	bon (**bonum**)
cent (**centum**)	mur (**mūrum**)	roi (**rēgem**)
sœur (**sorōrem**)	un (**ūnum**)	voie (**viam**)
patrie (**patriam**)	homme (**hominem**)	reine (**rēgīnam**)

* The five verbs taking the ablative are all deponent. They originally had a "reflexive" meaning. Thus, **ūtor** meant *I profit myself*, and the ablative case was really an ablative of means: as, **auxiliō ūtor**, *I profit myself by-means-of help, I use help*; **pāce fruī**, *to enjoy oneself by-means-of peace, to enjoy peace.*

114. Drill and Review

1. **The Irregular Verbs** *Volō*, *Nōlō*, *Mālō*. Learn the principal parts of **volō, nōlō,** and **mālō** (App., p. 28). Examine the conjugation of these verbs. You will observe that their irregularities are in the present indicative and that they lack certain forms. Learn the present indicative of the three verbs. Which verbs have participles? Which has an imperative? Locate **volet, vellet, vult, vīs, nōlunt, nōlent, nōlint, nōlīte, nōlītis.** Give a synopsis of **volō** in the third person singular; and of **nōlō** in the third person plural.

2. Give a synopsis of **ūtor** (third sing.); infinitives and participles of **ūtor**; gerund of **sustineō.**

3. Read and translate:

1. Rōmānī Veientibus neque fīnibus neque potestāte praestābant; itaque amīcitiā Veientium numquam fruēbantur. 2. Nē Etrūria contrā Rōmānōs concitārētur, necesse vidēbātur Veiōs obsidēre et Camillō dictātōre prō cōnsulibus ūtī. 3. Oppidō diū obsessō, Camillus novō cōnsiliō oppugnandī ūsus est. 4. Camillus ōrātiōne gravī ūtēns cōnsiliō plēbis intervēnit.

4. Write in Latin:

1. Though conquered, the people of Veii did not have (**ūtor**) peace with the Romans. 2. For they wished to excel Rome in wealth and territory. 3. In order to surpass the Romans, they were willing to use the aid of their neighbors. 4. It was announced that Camillus had used a strange plan of attacking. 5. After Veii was captured, the Romans did not long enjoy peace.

APPIUS CLAUDIUS AND THE AMBASSADOR OF PYRRHUS BEFORE THE SENATE

The blind and aged Appius Claudius is being guided to the front by a younger senator. Cineas, the ambassador of Pyrrhus, stands at the left. The secretaries of the senate are in the background. (From a painting by Maccari)

LESSON 26

THE ROMAN SENATE *

Throughout the great period of the Roman Republic the senate was the chief governing body in the Roman state. It had gained much power by the expulsion of the kings, since it was easier to control a one-year consul than a life-king. Even when the plebeians had won complete equality with the patricians and were themselves consuls, praetors, censors, and even dictators, they were guided in their acts by the senate, composed as it was of a small body of three hundred men appointed by consuls or censors because of their wide experience and acknowledged wisdom. Even after the assembly of the plebeians had gained the power to pass laws binding upon the entire state, only rarely did the tribunes present to them for action

* Adapted from Livy and Aulus Gellius.

laws that had not previously been discussed and approved by the senate. Not until the senate began to deteriorate in dignity and honor was its authority challenged by such popular leaders as the Gracchi.

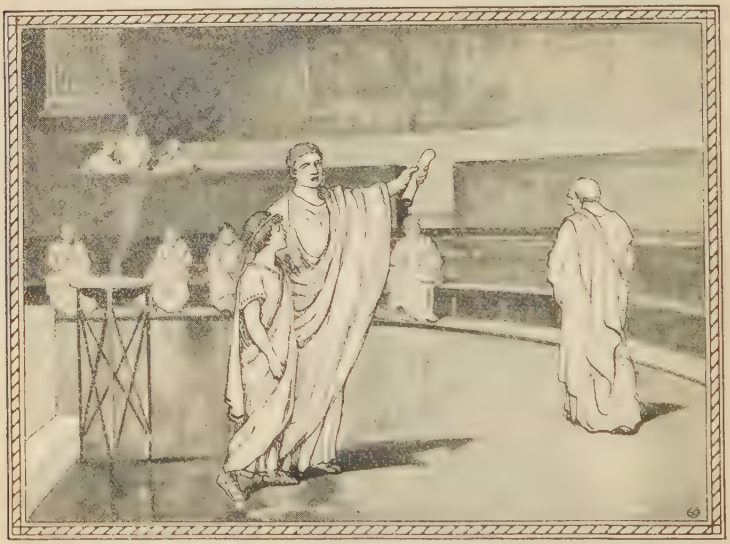
A foreigner's impression of the senate

115. Pyrrhus,[1] cum Rōmānōs proeliō vīcisset, sibi glōriōsum futūrum esse pācem et foedus cum eīs facere putāvit. Ut pācem prōpōneret, Cīneam lēgātum Rōmam mīsit. Quī cum[2] in cūriam introductus esset et rēgis virtūtem et bonum in Rōmānōs animum verbīs extolleret et dē condiciōnum aequitāte dīceret et[3] sententia senātūs ad pācem et foedus inclīnāre vidērētur, tum Appius Claudius, ob senectūtem et caecitātem abstinēre cūriā ōlim solitus,[4] statim in senātum lectīcā sē portārī jussit ibique gravissimā ōrātiōne pācem dissuāsit. Itaque respōnsum est Pyrrhō ā senātū eum, in Italiā manentem, pācem cum Rōmānīs habēre nōn posse. Cīneās ad rēgem revertit; ā quō cum[5] Pyrrhus quaereret quālem Rōmam comperisset,[6] ille respondit urbem sibi templum, senātum vērō concilium rēgum esse vīsum.

How a boy kept the secrets of the senate

Quīdam puer, nōmine Papīrius, in senātum cum patre suō cotīdiē ībat[7]; nam Rōmae mōs erat senātōrēs in cūriam cum fīliīs praetextātīs introīre. Nēmō aut senātor aut puer cōnsilia patrum cōnscrīptōrum[8] ēnūntiābat. Itaque Papīrius, cum domum revertisset et māter eius rogāvisset, "Quid hodiē in cūriā āctum est?"[9] ita respondit: "Mē tacēre necesse est. Id dīcī nōn licet."[10] Hōc audītō, māter cognōscendī[11] cupidior fit.[12] Silentium ipsum[13] puerī animum eius ad inquīrendum excitat; quaerit iterum atque iterum. Tum puer, mātre urgente, āctum esse in senātū dīxit utrum vidērētur ūtilius reī pūblicae ut[14] ūnus vir duās uxōrēs an ūna mulier duōs virōs habēret. Hoc illa simul ac audīvit, domō trepidāns ēgreditur, ut cēterās mātrōnās certiōrēs faciat.[15]

Postrīdiē ad senātum mātrum familiās caterva venit. Lacrimantēs ōrant ut ūna mulier duōbus virīs nūbat [16] potius quam ūnī duae. Senātōrēs in cūriam ingredientēs mīrantur quid mulierēs velint.[17] Tum puer Papīrius in medium cūriae prōgressus tōtam rem nārrāvit. Senātus fidem atque ingenium puerī laudāvit et jussit puerōs cum patribus



PAPIRIUS ENTERING THE SENATE HOUSE

in cūriam nōn introīre praeter ūnum Papīrium. Posteā cōnsultō senātūs cognōmen "Praetextātus" Papīriō ob tacendī loquendīque prūdentiam datum est.

"Filibustering" in the senate

Senātor sententiam rogātus jūs habēbat ut dīceret quoad vellet.[18] Ōlim C. Caesar cōnsul M. Catōnem [19] sententiam rogāvit. Catō, quī rem perficī nōlēbat, longā ōrātiōne [20] ūtēbātur diemque dīcendō cōnsūmēbat. Tum Caesar līctō-

rem vocāvit Catōnemque prehendī loquentem et in carcerem dūcī jussit. Cum tōtus senātus Catōnem ad carcerem prōsequerētur, Caesar cōnātū dēstitit et vinculīs līberārī Catōnem jussit.

116. Notes

1. **Pyrrhus:** Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, came over from Greece with an army to help the people of Tarentum in their war against Rome. He defeated the Romans at Heraclea in 280 B.C.

2. **Quī cum:** *and when he* (lit. *who when*). This combination of a relative (referring to someone mentioned in the preceding sentence) and the conjunction **cum** is very common. Learn the English translation.

3. **Et** regularly indicates a continuation of the preceding construction. **Cum**, *when*, introduces *four* verbs connected by **et . . . et . . . et**. If necessary, to keep this point clear, repeat *when* with each successive part. Forms of the four verbs?

4. **Solitus:** translate by a relative clause.

5. **Ā quō cum:** *and when from him.* See note 2.

6. **Quālem . . . comperisset:** *what sort of place he had found Rome to be.* What was the original (direct) question?

7. **Ībat:** *used to go*; an irregular form of **eō**, *I go* (App., p. 27).

8. **Patrum cōnscrīptōrum:** the senators were often spoken of as **patrēs cōnscrīptī**, *patricians enrolled* in the senate.

9. Is this a direct or an indirect question?

10. **Id . . . licet:** *that may not be mentioned.* What literally?

11. **Cognōscendī:** adjectives meaning *desirous* govern the genitive.

12. **Fit:** *becomes* (lit. *is made*); present passive of **faciō** (App., p. 27).

13. **Ipse** is frequently best rendered as *very*.

14. **Āctum esse . . . ut:** *that the subject for discussion* (lit. *it had been discussed*) *in the senate had been whether it seemed more advantageous for the state that* etc.

15. **Certiōrēs faciat:** *inform* (lit. *make more certain*).

16. **Nūbat:** *should be married.*

17. **Quid . . . velint:** *what the women mean* (lit. *wish*). This clause, the object of **mīrantur**, is an indirect question. **Velint** is present subjunctive of **volō**.

18. **Ut . . . vellet:** *to speak as long as he wished.* **Vellet** is past progressive subjunctive.

19. Cato the Younger, great-grandson of the famous Cato the Censor.

20. **Longā ōrātiōne:** why ablative?

117. *Cum* (*when*) Clauses of Description with the Subjunctive

You have already learned that clauses of result, although expressing *facts* and translated by the indicative in English, are expressed by the subjunctive mood in Latin. There are other kinds of clauses which, although expressing facts, use the subjunctive mood in Latin. Translate the following sentences containing clauses introduced by **cum**, *when*, noting carefully the mood and tense used in each **cum** clause:

1. *Cum* fīliī rēgis *cēnārent*, facta est dē uxōribus mentiō.
2. *Cum* diēs comitiōrum *appropinquāret*, decemvirōs creāre dēsīderāvērunt.
3. Appius, *cum* in tribūnal *ascendisset*, Virginiam clientī suō addīxit.
4. Pyrrhus, *cum* Rōmānōs *vīcisset*, . . . putāvit.
5. *Cum* Cīneās in cūriam *intrōductus esset*, Appius pācem dissuāsit.
6. Papīrius, *cum* domum *revertisset*, respondit . . .

Cum, *when*, takes the *past progressive* or the *past perfect* subjunctive when referring to *past* time.

A **cum**, *when*, clause in past time describes either the *circumstances* that were *going on* at the time of the main act, or the circumstances that were *completed* at the time of the main act. The tenses naturally used for these two ideas are respectively the past progressive and the past perfect.

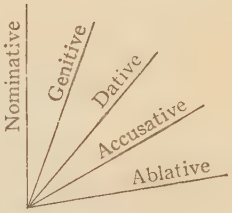
Because they describe the circumstances, these **cum** clauses are called **cum** descriptive or **cum** circumstantial clauses.

In present time **cum**, *when*, takes the present indicative, as in English.

118. Applications of Latin

1. Explain the meaning of *intrepid, trepidation, abstention.*
2. The verb **-clīnāre**, *to lean*, appears both in Latin and in English in compounds only. Explain *incline, recline, decline.*
3. The words *case, declension*, and *inflection* preserve a somewhat fanciful notion which the Romans had regarding the changes in the forms of words. The nominative case was

thought of as "upright." Each of the other forms was a "falling away" from the upright nominative, and was consequently called a *case*, which is derived from **cadere**, *to fall*, and means literally a "falling." *Declension* is derived from **dē**, *down, away*, and **-clīnāre**, *to lean*. The cases taken together were called a *declension* because it was regarded as a "leaning away" from the nominative. *Inflection* preserves the same idea. It is derived from **in**, *upon, over*, and **flectere**, *to bend*, and meant literally a "bending over." The cases other than the nominative are sometimes called "oblique" cases.



119. Drill and Review

1. **The Irregular Verb *Fīō*.** **Faciō**, *make, do*, lacks a present passive system, and uses for this system the forms of **fīō**, *be made, be done, become*. Learn the principal parts of **fīō**, and practice its conjugation (App., p. 27). Give a synopsis in the first and third persons, singular and plural. Locate **fīet, fīat, fit, fieret, fī**.

2. Conjugate **nōlō** (pres. system). Give a synopsis of **mīror** (third sing.); infinitives and participles of **nōlō**; gerund of **loquor**.

3. Read and translate:

1. Pyrrhus, cum Rōmānī victī essent, cum eīs pāce fruī volēbat. 2. Cum lēgātus rēgis Rōmam pervēnisset, in cūriam intrōductus est. 3. Cum senātus condiciōnēs pācis comperisset, Appius Claudius in cūriam vēnit, ut pācem dissuādēret. 4. Cum Appius, quī cēterīs dignitāte praestābat, dē pāce dīceret, senātōrēs, silentiō factō, verba eius mīrābantur. 5. Cum Cīneās ad Pyrrhum revertisset, dīxit sē comperisse Rōmae concilium rēgum.

4. Write in Latin:

1. While Pyrrhus remained in Italy, the Romans were unwilling to make a treaty. 2. When the senators came to the senate house, they saw many weeping women. 3. When Papirius had told the whole story, his fidelity was praised. 4. When Caesar ordered a lictor to arrest Cato, the whole senate followed Cato to the prison.

LESSON 27

HANNIBAL*

The Punic Wars were a great struggle to decide whether the civilization represented by Rome or that represented by Carthage should control the western part of Europe. On the side of the Carthaginians the preëminent figure of this struggle was Hannibal. Great as a general, great as a leader, beloved by his followers, he caused so much consternation to the Romans, both while he was in actual command of armies and while he was in exile in distant lands, that Rome never breathed easily till word came of his suicide. For the geographical references see the maps, pages 146 and 147.

HANNIBAL

120. "Pater meus," nārrāvit Hannibal senex,[1] "cum ego nōn amplius novem annōs[2] nātus essem, in Hispāniam imperātor proficīscēns, Carthāginī sacrificābat. Dum sacrificat, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne[3] sēcum in castra proficīscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret[4] dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit, apud quam

* Based on Nepos and Livy.

sacrificāre īnstituerat, et, cēterīs remōtīs, jūrāre jussit numquam mē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs futūrum esse. Id jūsjūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem cōnservāvī et reliquum tempus certē cōnservābō."

At the beginning of the Second Punic War Hannibal decides to invade Italy

Hannibal, adulēscēns quīnque et vīgintī annōrum, imperātor factus celeriter omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit et Saguntum, cīvitātem Rōmānīs amīcissimam, vī expugnāvit. Tum trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūcere cōnstituit; nam in animō habuit bellum in Italiam trānsferre, ut Rōmānī tandem prō suīs fīnibus et urbibus pugnārent.

Crossing the Alps

Ad Alpēs postquam vēnit, quae Italiam ab Galliā dīvidunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum trānsierat, incolās cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū [5] superāvit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūnīvit, ut eā elephantus ōrnātus [6] īre posset quā [7] anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Magnā cum difficultāte cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit quīntō mēnse, ut quīdam scrīpsērunt, postquam ex Hispāniā profectus est.

P. Cornēlium Scīpiōnem apud Padum et Trebiam vīcit. Inde Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere tam gravī morbō afficitur oculōrum, ut posteā numquam dextrō [8] aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum [9] premerētur, C. Flāminīnum cōnsulem apud Trasimēnum cum exercitū īnsidiīs circumventum occīdit. Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit; ibi exercitum duōrum cōnsulum proeliō Cannēnsī fugāvit. Posteā, quamdiū in Italiā fuit, nēmō eī [10] in aciē restitit; nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsem pugnam in campō castra posuit.

He hesitates to attack Rome

Rōmānīs victīs, cēterī praefectī Hannibalī [10] suādent ut mīlitibus dēfessīs quiētem det [11]; sed Maharbal, praefectus equitum, suādet ut statim Rōmam contendat. "Cum equitibus," inquit, "prōcedam. Sequere; et quīntō diē in Capitōliō

HANNIBAL CROSSING THE ALPS

cēnābis." Hannibal autem Rōmam oppugnāre dubitat. Tum Maharbal respondet: "Nōn omnia deī eīdem [12] dedērunt. Vincere scīs,[13] Hannibal. Victōriā ūtī nescīs."

Defeat and exile for Hannibal

Ab Italiā in Āfricam revocātus bellum gessit cum P. Scīpiōne, fīliō eius Scīpiōnis quem ipse prīmō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugāverat. Cum eō apud Zamam cōnflīxit et pulsus est.

Rēx factus est postquam imperātor fuerat annō secundō et vīcēsimō; ut enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc[14] Carthāginī quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit ac fuerat in bellō. Deinde Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vēnērunt. Hannibal ratus hōs suī exposcendī causā[15] missōs esse, nāvem ascendit clam atque

THE SITE OF CARTHAGE

in Syriam ad Antiochum perfūgit. Poenī nāvēs dūās, quae eum comprehendant,[16] mittunt; bona eius vēndunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiciunt, ipsum exsulem jūdicant.

His death

Post aliquot annōs patrēs cōnscrīptī, quī, Hannibale vīvō, sē numquam sine īnsidiīs futūrōs esse arbitrātī sunt, lēgātōs in Bīthȳniam mīsērunt, quī ab rēge illīus cīvitātis Hannibalem peterent.[17] Ille forte in castellō sē tenēbat, quod eī ā rēge

datum erat mūnerī,[18] idque sīc aedificāverat ut in omnibus partibus aedificī exitūs habēret. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, servus Hannibalī dīxit omnēs exitūs occupātōs esse. Ille, cum vītam diūtius retinērī nōn posse scīret, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuēverat, sūmpsit. Hic vītae exitus fuit Hannibalis.

121. Notes

1. **Senex**: *as an old man.* Hannibal told this story to King Antiochus, to impress on him his undying hatred for Rome.

2. **Nōn amplius novem annōs**: *not more than nine years.*

3. **Vellemne**: *whether I wished*; an indirect question.

4. **Nē dubitāret**: *not to hesitate.* The clause introduced by **nē** tells what he *began to ask for.* It is a noun clause telling something *not wanted,* that is, a *noun* volitive clause.

5. **Trānsitū**: *from crossing*; ablative of separation.

6. **Ōrnātus**: *fully equipped.*

7. **Eā . . . quā**: *in a place where.*

8. **Dextrō**: supply **oculō**. Why ablative?

9. **Quā . . . cum**: note the introductory relative followed by **cum**; *and when . . . by this* etc.

10. Add **resistō** and **suādeō** to the list of special verbs governing the dative.

11. **Ut . . . det**: a substantive clause, object of **suādent**, *they urge Hannibal to give* etc.

12. **Eīdem**: dative.

13. **Scīs**: *you know how.*

14. **Ut . . . sīc**: *as . . . so.*

15. **Suī exposcendī causā**: *for the sake of demanding him.*

16. **Quae comprehendant**: *to arrest*; a relative clause expressing purpose. Note the use of the infinitive in English.

17. **Quī peterent**: a relative clause of purpose. How translated?

18. **Mūnerī**: *as a gift* (lit. *for a gift*). The dative case, so used, expresses the purpose of an action.

122. Substantive (Noun) Clauses of Volition

When a classmate says, "I move that the class present a play," he is using a *noun* clause, the object of *move,* telling

what he *wants*, with the subjunctive form *present*. Translate the following similar Latin sentences:

1. Ōrant *ut* ūna mulier duōbus virīs *nūbat*.
2. Petere coepī *nē dubitāret*.
3. Praefectī Hannibalī suādent *ut* mīlitibus quiētem *det*.

The subjunctive is used in noun (substantive) clauses after verbs expressing *will*, such as **suādeō, imperō, petō**. See the Appendix, section 67.

Such clauses are called substantive volitive clauses. The negative is **nē**, because the act in that case is *not wanted*.

The tenses used are the same as in purpose clauses (App. § 59, *a* and *b*).

Uses of **ut**. Explain the four uses of **ut** illustrated by the following sentences:

1. *Ut* poēta *scrīpsit*, Juppiter in terram dēscendit.
2. Itinera mūnīvit, *ut* elephantus īre *posset*.
3. Hannibal castellum sīc aedificāverat *ut* multōs exitūs *habēret*.
4. Maharbal suādet *ut* statim Rōmam *contendat*.

123. Applications of Latin

1. The suffix **-ulum** (**-culum**, **-bulum**) is added to verbs to indicate the *means* or *place* of the action: as, **vehiculum** (from **vehere**, *to carry*), denoting the *means* of *carrying*; **stabulum** (from **stāre**, *to stand*), denoting the *place* where cattle *stand*. It appears in English as *-le* (*-cle*, *-ble*), as in *vehicle, stable*.

Explain the meaning of **vinculum, ōrāculum**.

Give the Latin original (with meaning) of *miracle, spectacle*.

2. Explain the meaning of *clandestine, reptile, ratify, vender, vendor, vendible, morbid, irresistible, nescience, conflict, afflict, inflict*.

3. Most French derivatives from Latin are easily recognized. You will be able to recognize them still more easily

if you will note carefully certain vowel changes that frequently occur. Thus:

frère (frātrem), porter (portāre), tel (tālem), sel (sāl): *e* from **ā**.
prix (pretium), six (sex), tenir (tenēre): *i* from **e**.
reine (rēgīnam), plein (plēnum), meilleur (melior): *ei* from **e**.
bien (bene), hier (heri): *ie* from **e**.
premier (prīmum), mettre (mittere), lettre (līitera): *e* from **i**.
lait (lac), main (manum), aimer (amāre), claire (clārum), faim (famem), faire (facere), plaire (placēre): *ai* from **a**.
mouvoir (movēre), tout (tōtum), vous (vōs), mourir (morī), nouveau (novum): *ou* from **o**.
heure (hōram), seul (sōlum), fleur (flōrem), neuf (novem), cœur (cor), sœur (sorōrem), jeudi (Jovis diem): *eu* (*œu*) from **o**.
nuit (noctem), puis (post): *ui* from **o**.
conduire (condūcere), luire (lūcēre), suis (sum): *ui* from **u**.
rompre (rumpere), onde (undam), nombre (numerum): *o* from **u**.
autre (alterum), vaut (valet), haut (altum): *au* from **al**.

124. Drill and Review

1. *The Irregular Verb Eō*. Learn the principal parts of **eō**, *go*, and examine carefully the conjugation of this verb (App., p. 27). Give particular attention to the present indicative and subjunctive, and to the infinitives and participles. Locate **ī, it, īt, īte, ītis, ībat, ībit, eat, īret, ierit, eunt, iērunt, ierant, iēns, iimus.**

2. Read and translate:

1. Cum Hannibal peteret ut in Hispāniam dūcerētur, pater nōn negāvit. 2. Pater ab Hannibale petit nē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs sit. 3. Hannibalī imperāvit ut Rōmānīs resisteret. 4. Cum Maharbal Rōmam prōcēdere vellet, Hannibalī persuādēre nōn potuit ut sequerētur. 5. Imperātōrī nōn suāsit ut victōriā ūterētur.

3. Write in Latin:

1. When Hannibal arrived at the Alps, he ordered his soldiers to try to lead the elephants across the mountains. 2. No one was able to persuade Hannibal to be friendly to the Romans. 3. The envoys who went to Carthage asked the Carthaginians to arrest Hannibal. 4. They ordered two ships to follow and arrest the fleeing general. 5. The Romans were unable to persuade the king to seize Hannibal.

LESSON 28

THE CAREER OF PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS*

In many respects the greatest and most distinguished Roman throughout the history of the Republic was Publius Cornelius Scipio. He saved his father's life in the first battle fought against Hannibal on Italian soil, and sixteen years later at the battle of Zama in Africa, in 202 B.C., he won the final victory over Hannibal, captured Carthage, and brought the life-and-death struggle with the Carthaginians to a glorious end. No citizen before him had reached such a pinnacle of power. For fifteen years he held the highest rank in the senate; he was consul twice and censor. It was even proposed that he be made perpetual dictator or consul, thus anticipating Julius Caesar by a century and a half. Cato was his bitter antagonist. The following narrative describes the beginning of his political career and shows the honor in which he was held.

Scipio saves his father's life

125. P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, omnium Rōmānōrum ante Caesarem nātōrum[1] clārissimus, per tōtam vītam maximae pietātis[2] fuit. Ea pietās eum vixdum duodēvīgintī annōs nātum virīlī rōbore ita armāvit ut patris cōnsulis apud Tīcīnum flūmen adversīs auspiciīs[3] cum Hannibale pugnantis vītam servāret. Cum patrem circumventum atque graviter saucium vīdisset, sōlus in mediōs hostēs summā audāciā sē injēcit et patrī auxilium tulit. Imperātōre simul et patre ex ipsā morte raptō, corōnam[4] mīlitārem meruit. Hic īdem juvenis post sēdecim annōs bellum in Āfricam trānslātum ēgregiā victōriā perfēcit.

* Based on Livy and Valerius Maximus.

THE ROMAN GAMES*

From a painting by Forti

Scipio is elected aedile

Cum Scīpiō aedīlitātem[5] peteret et tribūnī plēbis illum nōndum lēgitimam ad petendum aetātem[6] habēre dīcerent, "Sī mē," inquit Scīpiō, "omnēs cīvēs aedīlem facere volunt, satis annōrum habeō." Eōdem tempore nūntiāvit sē bis somniāvisse sē aedīlem cum Lūciō,[7] suō frātre, creātum domum redīre. Quod ōmen statim accēperat; quādam enim superstitiōne animī tam captus est[8] ut per nocturnās speciēs monitus semper ageret. Quam ob cōnsuētūdinem omnia imperia cōnsiliaque eius velut sorte ōrāculī vel dīvīnitus missa sine ūllā morā populus Rōmānus exsequēbātur.

Itaque Scīpiō aedīlis favōre omnium tribuum, nūllō tribūnō resistente, creātus est. Officium erat aedīlium lūdōs pūblicōs facere et urbem aedificiīs pulchrīs ōrnāre et certāmina gladiātōrum ēdere.

Scipio and Hannibal

Hannibal, hostis nōn minus gravis[9] in suā terrā quam in aliēnā, post sextum decimum annum bellī cum incolumī exercitū ex Italiā in Āfricam patriam dēfendendī causā[10] trānsiit. Itaque necesse erat Scīpiōnem bellum gerere cum illō duce prūdentissimō, alitō atque ēducātō inter arma, puerō mīlite,[11] vixdum juvene imperātōre, quī Hispāniās, Galliās, Italiam ab Alpibus ad Columnās Herculis[12] monumentīs ingentium rērum gestārum complēverat. Frūstrā Hannibal in colloquium cum Scīpiōne pācem petendī causā vēnit. Tandem hī ducēs, maximī nōn suae modo aetātis sed omnis aetātis vetustae velut ad suprēmum certāmen comparātī, ad Zamam proeliō contendērunt. Poenus victus est.

* The Roman Games (**lūdī Rōmānī**) were one of a number of annual celebrations held in the Circus Maximus or the theaters, all originally having a religious motive, such as the payment of a vow to the gods by a general. These annual games were in charge of the curule aedile, who personally defrayed the expense involved. Aediles who were ambitious for political honors often spent huge sums on these games, to win the favor and the votes of the people.

Hannibale superātō, dēnique Scīpiō in Siciliam, inde in Italiam trānsiit, et, turbā obsidente viās, Rōmam pervēnit triumphōque omnium clārissimō in urbem invectus est. Cognōmen "Āfricānus" eī datum est; prīmus hic imperātor nōmine gentis ab sē victae nōbilitātus est.

Honors bestowed on Scipio

Neque ingrātī prīmō meritīs[13] Scīpiōnis erant cīvēs; nam voluērunt illī statuās in comitiō, in rōstrīs, in cūriā, in ipsō Jovis templō pōnere; voluērunt illī continuum per omnēs vītae annōs cōnsulātum perpetuamque dictātūram tribuere. Quōrum honōrum nihil sibi dēcernī Scīpiō passus est. Cōnsul autem bis creātus est atque cēnsor.

Meeting of Scipio and Hannibal

Multīs post annīs Scīpiō, cum Hannibale collocūtus, quī exsul in Asiā vīvēbat, ab eō quaesīvit quem fuisse maximum imperātōrem crēderet.[14] Respondit Hannibal Alexandrum, Macedonum rēgem, maximum sibi vidērī. Cum deinde Scīpiō quaereret quem secundum pōneret,[15] respondit ille Pyrrhum. Scīpiōnī dēnique interrogantī quem tertium dūceret, sēmet ipsum[16] dīxit. Tum rīdēns Scīpiō, "Quidnam tū dīcerēs,"[17] inquit, "sī mē vīcissēs?"[18] "Tum mē vērō," respondit Hannibal, "et ante Alexandrum et ante Pyrrhum et ante omnēs aliōs imperātōrēs posuissem."[19]

126. Notes

1. **Nātōrum**: perfect participle of **nāscor**, in the genitive plural.

2. **Maximae pietātis**: descriptive genitive used as a predicate adjective.

3. **Adversīs auspiciīs**: ablative of manner. It was customary to consult the omens before a battle.

4. **Corōnam**: chaplets of various kinds were given soldiers for distinguished service in war.

5. **Aedīlitātem:** the duty of the aediles was to supervise the streets, the public buildings, the markets, and the public games. In the exercise of the last duty they often tried to gain political popularity by the extravagance of the spectacles given under their direction.

6. **Lēgitimam aetātem:** the legal age for the holding of the aedileship was thirty-seven; that of the quaestorship, twenty-seven to thirty; of the praetorship, forty; of the consulship, forty-three.

7. **Lūciō:** Lucius Scipio was a candidate at the same time and was also elected.

8. **Tam captus est:** *so much influenced.*

9. **Gravis:** *dangerous.*

10. **Patriam dēfendendī causā:** *for the purpose of defending his native land.*

11. **Puerō mīlite:** *a soldier when a boy.*

12. **Columnās Herculis:** at the Strait of Gibraltar, where Hercules was said to have set up the rocks on either side of the strait.

13. **Meritīs:** ablative of cause.

14. **Quem crēderet:** *whom he believed* etc. The clause is object of **quaesīvit.**

15. **Quem pōneret:** cf. **quem crēderet** above; so also **quem dūceret** in the following sentence.

16. **Sēmet ipsum:** *himself.*

17. **Dīcerēs:** *would you say.*

18. **Sī vīcissēs:** *if you had defeated.*

19. **Posuissem:** *I should have placed.*

AN AEDILE

The aedile is here represented as performing the duty of giving the signal for the beginning of the public games

127. The Gerund with *ad* or *causā* expressing Purpose

Translate the following sentences containing phrases with **ad** or **causā** and the *gerund*:

1. Volscī veniunt *ad oppugnandum.*
2. Hannibal in Āfricam patriam *dēfendendī causā* trānsiit.

The *accusative* of the gerund with **ad**, and the *genitive* of the gerund with **causā**, may be used to express purpose.

English has but one common way of expressing purpose, by *to* (*in order to*). Latin has several ways in common use. What two have you now studied? The Romans were a purposeful people, and the variety of ways in which they could express purpose may be a reflection of that phase of their character. Purpose expresses something as *wanted* or *not wanted*, and the Romans had no difficulty in making their wants known.

128. Applications of Latin

1. The suffixes **-īlis** (**-ilis**), **-ēlis**, **-nus** (**-ānus**, **-ēnus**, **-īnus**), **-āris**, **-ārius**, **-ius** (**-ēius**), **-īvus**, **-timus** are used with the same force as **-ālis** (*pertaining to*) to form adjectives from nouns. Give the derivation of the following words, and their English forms, when such exist:

virīlis	Rōmānus	servīlis	plēbēius
patrius	aliēnus	mīlitāris	oppidānus
dīvīnus	hūmānus	humilis	fidēlis
nefārius	rēgius	urbānus	cīvīlis
patricius	populāris	hostīlis	puerīlis
marīnus	auxiliārius	captīvus	lēgitimus

2. What are the English forms of the suffixes contained in the words given above?

3. The syllable *oi* is very frequent in French and comes from various original Latin letters. Thus:

From **e**: *soi*r (sērus), cr*oi*re (crēdere), tr*oi*s (trēs), r*oi* (rēgem).
From **i**: v*oi*e (viam), b*oi*re (bibere), v*oi*sin (vīcīnum), m*oi*ns (minus).
From **u**: j*oi*ndre (jungere), cr*oi*x (crucem), p*oi*nt (pūnctum).
From **o**: v*oi*x (vōcem), gl*oi*re (glōriam).

129. Drill and Review

1. Conjugate **eō** and **volō** (subjv.). Give a synopsis of **colloquor** (third plur.) and **trādūcō** (third sing.); infinitives of **volō** and **nōlō**; participles of **arbitror**; gerund of **eō**, **ferō**, and **fugiō**.

2. Read and translate:

1. Cum Scīpiō patrem suum in perīculō esse vidēret, in mediōs hostēs ad auxilium ferendum cucurrit. 2. Cum Scīpiō aedīlis creātus esset, certāmina gladiātōrum ēdendī causā Rōmae mānsit. 3. Rōmānīs placuit Scīpiōnī imperāre ut Hannibalem superandī causā in Āfricam trānsīret. 4. Hannibal Carthāginem patriam dēfendendī causā reverterat. 5. Tribūnīs Scīpiōnī resistentibus, ille dīxit, "Ego, populō Rōmānō volente, lēgitimam aedīlitātis aetātem habeō."

3. Write in Latin:

1. Scipio threw himself into the midst of the battle for the sake of saving the life of his father 2. Scipio narrated a dream in order to warn his friends (*express in two ways*). 3. The Roman senate commanded Scipio to set out for Africa to carry on war (*express in two ways*). 4. For the purpose of making plans Scipio always employed dreams and superstition.

4. Review Word List 5, in the Appendix, page 45.

LESSON 29

MARCUS PORCIUS CATO, THE CENSOR*

One of the important duties devolving upon the consuls when they replaced the kings was to make a complete register of Roman citizens and assign each to his proper tribe and, on the basis of his property, to the proper class. Later two censors were elected, at intervals of five years, to perform this duty. Our word *census* preserves this original idea. But since the censor also revised the lists of knights and senators, and could at will remove from either body anyone whom he thought unworthy of the dignity, he gradually came to exercise a general supervision over the morals of the community, in both private and public life. This phase of his activity is reflected in our words *censor* and *censure*. The censorship came to surpass all other magistracies in dignity and influence, and was the final goal of a political career. The most famous censorship in the history of Rome was that of Cato, described below.

130. M. Porcius Catō novus homō erat; nam sīc ā Rōmānīs nōminātī sunt eī quī humilī locō nātī ad summōs honōrēs per sē[1] pervēnērunt. Per omnēs gradūs cursūs honōrum[2] ad cōnsulātum Catō prōgressus est. Adulēscēns in agrīs Tusculānīs labōrāvit, quod ibi hērēdium ā patre relictum habēbat. Inde Rōmam migrāvit in forōque esse[3] coepit.

Cato and Scipio

Cum Scīpiōne Catō familiārissimē numquam vīxit; namque ab eō Catō, homō asperī animī et linguae acerbae, invictus cupiditātibus, contemptor grātiae et dīvitiārum, tōtā vītā dissēnsit.[4] Namque Scīpiō ingeniō[5] dissimillimus, quī Graecās artēs et disciplīnam et cultum colēbat, hūmānior et līberālior

* Based on Livy, Velleius Paterculus, and Gellius.

THE APPIAN WAY

From a painting by Forti

THE APPIAN WAY AS IT IS TODAY

Among the duties of the censor was the letting of contracts for paving and repairing the great roads that led from Rome through Italy and, in later years, throughout the Empire. The Appian Way is named for the famous censor Appius Claudius, who began this road in 312 B.C. It passed over the Alban Hills and led to Capua. Later it was extended to Brundisium (see map, p. 147). Beyond the road are the remains of one of the great aqueducts, which gave Rome a water supply equal to that of any modern city of the same size

quam Catō erat et favōre hominum atque aestimātiōne comprobātior. Quae omnia Catō dēspiciēbat. Nōn sōlum cum Scīpiōne sed cum multīs aliīs inimīcitiās habuit; circiter enim annōs octōgintā, ūsque ad extrēmam aetātem ab adulēscentiā, reī pūblicae causā suscipere inimīcitiās nōn destitit.

The censorship of Cato

Catōnem cēnsūram petentem premēbat nōbilitās; multī enim nōbilēs indignābantur novum hominem cēnsūram petere et, Catōne creātō, trīstem[6] cēnsūram atque sibi perīculōsam exspectābant. Populus Rōmānus autem M. Porcium cēnsōrem fēcērunt cum L. Valeriō Flaccō.

Cēnsōrēs inter[7] metum atque exspectātiōnem omnium senātum lēgērunt. Septem senātōrēs mōvērunt ā senātū, ex quibus ūnus, L. Quīnctius Flāminīnus cōnsulāris, et nōbilitāte et honōribus īnsignis fuerat; sed dignitāte suā prīvātus est quod ad arbitrium[8] amīcī cuiusdam in prōvinciā Gallum per caput secūrī percusserat. In equitibus recognōscendīs[9] Catō L. Scīpiōnī[10] equum adēmit. Trīstis et aspera in omnēs ōrdinēs cēnsūra eius erat; fēminārum lūxuriam et ōrnāmenta coërcēre cōnābātur.

Cato's hatred of Carthage

Tōtā vītā Catō Carthāginem timuit et ōdit. Illam urbem vāstandī auctor[11] erat perpetuus; cum ōrātiōnem habuisset,[12] semper exclāmābat, "Dēlenda est[13] Carthāgō!"

His remark about public and private thieves

M. Catō in ōrātiōne ōlim vehementibus et illūstribus verbīs dē impūnitāte[14] pecūlātūs questus est: "Fūrēs," inquit, "prīvātōrum bonōrum in carcere et vinculīs aetātem agunt,[15] fūrēs pūblicī in aurō atque in purpurā."

The censors stood no trifling

Inter cēnsōrum sevēritātēs[16] duo haec exempla sunt: Cēnsōrem mōre majōrum ex quōque quaerere oportēbat,[17] "Tūne ex animī tuī sententiā[18] uxōrem habēs?" Quīdam vir locum esse sibi[19] jocum dīcendī arbitrātus, "Habeō equidem," respondit, "uxōrem sed nōn ex animī meī sententiā." Quem cēnsor, jocō nōn probātō, statim multā pūnīvit.

Cum Scīpiō Nāsīca equitum cēnsum ageret et equum nimis strigōsum et male habitum,[20] sed equitem ūberrimum et habitissimum vīdisset, "Cūr," rogāvit, "tē cūrātiōrem[21] quam equum vidēmus?" "Quod," respondit eques, "ego mē cūrō, sed equum cūrat servus." Hoc respōnsum minus reverēns[22] vidēbātur et eques ā cēnsōre pūnītus est.

131. Notes

1. **Per sē**: *through their own efforts*, that is, unaided by family.

2. **Cursūs honōrum**: a successful politician in Rome held in turn the quaestorship, the aedileship, the praetorship, and the consulship. This succession of offices was known as the **cursus honōrum**.

3. **In forō esse**: *to take part in public affairs.*

4. **Ab eō dissēnsit**: *disagreed with him.*

5. **Ingeniō**: what use of the ablative?

6. **Trīstem**: *severe.*

7. **Inter**: *amid.*

8. **Ad arbitrium**: *at the will*, or *at the wish.*

9. **In equitibus recognōscendīs**: *in revising the list of knights*, that is, the members of the equestrian order.

10. **Scīpiōnī**: *from Scipio*; dative of separation.

11. **Auctor**: *proposer.*

12. **Habuisset**: *had delivered.*

13. **Dēlenda est**: *must be destroyed.* The future passive participle (**dēlendus, -a, -um**) with a form of **sum** states what must be done.

14. **Impūnitāte**: *failure to punish.*

15. **Agunt**: *spend.*

16. **Sevēritātēs**: *instances of severity.*

17. **Cēnsōrem . . . oportēbat**: *the censor had to ask* (lit. *it was necessary* (*that*) *the censor ask*). **Oportēbat** is an *impersonal* verb.

18. **Ex . . . sententiā**: *according to your own opinion.*

19. **Locum esse sibi**: *he had a chance*; **sibi** is dative of the possessor.

20. **Male habitum**: *badly groomed.*

21. **Cūrātiōrem**: *in better condition.*

22. **Minus reverēns**: *disrespectful.*

132. Impersonal Verbs

Latin has several impersonal verbs: as, **licet**, *it-is-permitted*; **oportet**, *it-is-necessary*, *it ought*. Such impersonal verbs should usually be translated personally: as, **Oportet mē hoc dīcere**, *I ought to say this* (lit. *it-is-necessary* (*for*) *me to say this*). English *ought* * is also used impersonally: as, "It ought to be

* *Ought* is defective in English, having only a present tense. In referring to the past, English is obliged to express the time in the infinitive: as, "It ought to be done" (present); "It ought to have been done" (past). In general, translate the past tense of **oportet** by *was obliged* (personal) or *it was necessary* (impersonal).

easy to do it." The subject in both English and Latin is a clause or an infinitive phrase.

Translate the following sentences:

1. Neque ūllī senātōrī licēbat eum magistrātum capere.
2. Cēnsōrem ex quōque quaerere oportēbat.
3. Id dīcī nōn licet.

133. Applications of Latin

1. Explain the meaning of *jocose, jocular, octogenarian, exasperate, acerbity, asperity, exacerbate, furtive, repercussion.*

2. Many English derivatives in *-nt* are formed from present active participles. The corresponding Anglo-Saxon ending is *-ing*. Explain the meanings of the following words, and give the simple Latin verbs from which they come:

abhorrent	adjacent	current
antecedent	important	dissentient
consequent	belligerent	affluent
indignant	regent	arrogant
convenient	eloquent	ignorant
evident	insolvent	prevalent
opponent	transient	permanent

3. Note the consonant changes in the following French words derived from Latin:

pau*v*re (pauperum), li*v*re (librum), a*v*ril (Aprīlem): *v* from **p** or **b**.

*ch*er (cārum), *ch*ercher (circum), *ch*âteau (castellum), *ch*ar (carrum), *ch*ose (causam): *ch* from **c**.

capti*f* (captīvum), neu*f* (novem), che*f* (caput), ser*f* (servum), bœu*f* (bovem): *f* from **v** or **p**.

raison (ratiōnem), poison (pōtiōnem): *s* from **ti**.

The French circumflex accent often indicates the loss of **s**:

maître (magistrum), croître (crēscere), naître (nāscere), château (castellum), goût (gustum), fenêtre (fenestram), nôtre (nostrum).

In French, *e* (*é*) is frequently prefixed to words beginning with **sc, sp,** or **st** in Latin. Thus:

*é*cole (**sch**ola), *é*crire (**scr**ībere), *e*space (**sp**atium), *é*tude (**st**udium).

134. Drill and Review

1. Decline **cultus līberālis** (sing.) and **respōnsum trīste.** Conjugate **ferō** (participial system). Give infinitives and participles of **suscipiō.**

2. Read and translate:

1. Nōn omnibus cīvibus Rōmānīs licēbat per omnēs gradūs cursūs honōrum prōgredī. 2. Catōnem adulēscentem in agrīs labōrāre oportuit. 3. Catōnī nōn placēbat familiārissimē cum Scīpiōne vīvere. 4. Necesse vidēbātur Catōnem et Scīpiōnem, ingeniō mōribusque dissimillimōs, tōtā vītā dissentīre. 5. Diū pugnātum est inter Catōnem, contemptōrem dīvitiārum, et dīvitēs nōbilēs. 6. Nōn licēbat ut Catō Graecīs artibus atque cultū fruerētur.

3. Write in Latin:

1. It was impossible for the nobility to defeat Cato when he was seeking the censorship. 2. It was necessary for Cato as censor to remove certain senators from the senate. 3. It pleased the Romans to institute the censorship for the purpose of choosing senators. 4. It was not permissible for men to make jokes before the censors.

LESSON 30

WOMEN IN POLITICS*

During the Second Punic War, when the resources of the state were strained to the utmost and the Romans were obliged to discourage unnecessary expense in every possible way, a law was introduced by a tribune of the people, enacting that "no woman should possess more than half an ounce of gold, or wear a garment of various colors, or ride in a carriage drawn by horses in a city or in a town or in any place nearer than one mile, except on the occasion of some public religious solemnity." After the conclusion of the war a tribune proposed that the law be repealed, since the necessity for it was passed. The women took an active part in the campaign to repeal the law and were bitterly opposed by Cato, who was one of the consuls at the time.

135. Ōlim rēs parva, quae inter bellōrum magnōrum perīcula intercessit, magnī certāminis causa Rōmae fuit. Ut accidit, duo ex tribūnīs plēbis lēgem Oppiam abrogāre voluērunt. Hanc lēgem tulerat [1] C. Oppius in mediō bellō Pūnicō, quā imperātum erat nē qua mulier[2] plūs quam sēmiūnciam aurī habēret, nec veste versicolōrī ūterētur, nec vehiculō in urbe, nisi sacrōrum pūblicōrum causā, veherētur. Illō enim tempore modus sūmptibus lūxuriaeque[3] necessārius vīsus erat.

Roman women active for the repeal of the law

Aliī[4] tribūnī sē lēgem abrogārī nōn passūrōs esse dīcēbant. Capitōlium turbā hominum faventium adversantiumque lēgī[5] complēbātur. Mātrōnae ūllā nec auctōritāte nec verēcundiā nec imperiō virōrum continērī domiciliīs suīs poterant. Omnēs viās urbis aditūsque in forum obsidēbant.[6] Flōrente

* Adapted from Livy.

rē pūblicā[7] et crēscente in diēs[8] prīvātā fortūnā, prīstinum ōrnātum postulābant. Augēbātur turba mulierum in diēs; nam etiam ex oppidīs parvīs conveniēbant. Jam et cōnsulēs praetōrēsque et aliōs magistrātūs adīre et rogāre audēbant.

Cato's speech in opposition to the repeal

Sed M. Porcius Catō cōnsul prō lēge haec verba fēcit: "Sī quisque vestrum, cīvēs, in suā uxōre[9] jūs virī retinuisset,[10] minus negōtī[11] cum hīs fēminīs habērēmus.[12] Quod singulās[13] domī sustinēre nōn potuimus, omnēs in forō mātrōnās timēmus. Majōrēs nostrī fēminās in manū[14] parentum, frātrum, virōrum esse voluērunt; nōs etiam rem pūblicam capere eās patimur. Hāc lēge abrogātā, quid nōn temptābunt? Sī eās aequās virīs esse patiēminī, tolerābilēs vōbīs eās futūrās esse crēditis? Extemplō, simul parēs esse coeperint, superiōrēs erunt. Neque bonum est fēminās aurō et purpurā fulgēre.

THE TEMPLE OF SATURN

Saturn was the god of "sowing" and the most ancient of the old Roman agricultural divinities. The eight columns of this temple make it easily recognized. It served as the chief public treasury. Here the quaestors, the financial officials of the state, had their headquarters. A secret chamber beneath the temple held the consecrated fund set apart for great emergencies and established after the destruction of Rome by the Gauls in 390 B.C. Here also were kept the standards of the legions

Saepe mē querentem dē fēminārum, saepe dē virōrum et prīvātōrum et magistrātuum sūmptibus audīvistis. Duōbus vitiīs,[15] avāritiā et lūxuriā, nostra cīvitās labōrat, quae pestēs omnia magna imperia ēvertērunt. Mē jūdice, lēx Oppia nūllō modō abrogārī dēbet."

TEMPLE OF CASTOR AND POLLUX

These three beautiful columns mark the site of the temple of Castor and Pollux, built, according to tradition, after these divinities had assisted the Romans at the battle of Lake Regillus. "White as snow their armor was; their steeds were white as snow." Before this temple the censor stood when the knights passed before him for the quinquennial inspection of their horses, one of the great pageants of the Forum. Here also the tribune had his tribunal

The law is repealed

Tum Valerius, ūnus ex tribūnīs, haec dīxit: "Vir gravissimus,[16] cōnsul M. Porcius, queritur, quod mātrōnae in pūblicō vōs rogāvērunt[17] ut lēgem, in sē[18] lātam per bellum temporibus dūrīs, in pāce et flōrentī rē pūblicā abrogārētis. Nam quid novī mātrōnae fēcērunt, quod frequentēs in causā ad sē pertinente in pūblicum prōcessērunt? Numquam ante hoc tempus in pūblicō appāruērunt? Rēgnante Rōmulō, cum Rōmānī et Sabīnī in forō pugnārent, nōnne intercursū mātrōnārum inter aciēs duās proelium sēdātum est? Cum, Coriolānō duce, legiōnēs Volscōrum ad quīntum lapidem castra

posuissent, nōnne id agmen mātrōnae āvertērunt? Rēs pūblica in meliōre statū nunc est. Nōs virī purpurā ūtimur; praetextātī [19] sumus in magistrātibus, in sacerdōtibus; līberī nostrī praetextīs togīs purpurā ūtuntur. Fēminā-
5 snē sōlās ūsū purpurae prīvābimus? Munditiae et ōrnātus et cultus, haec fēminārum īnsignia sunt; hīs gaudent et glōriantur."

Postquam haec contrā lēgem prōque lēge dicta sunt, major turba mulierum sē posterō diē in pūblicum effūdit, ūnōque ag-
10 mine jānuās obsēdērunt tribūnōrum quī sē lēgem abrogārī nōn passūrōs esse dīxerant. Nūlla deinde dubitātiō erat: lēx abrogāta est.

136. Notes

1. **Tulerat:** *had carried.*

2. **Nē qua mulier:** *that no woman* etc. The **nē** clauses are the subjects of the impersonally used verb **imperātum est**. Translate literally. After **nē** or **sī**, **quis** is indefinite, *any*.

3. **Sūmptibus lūxuriaeque:** dative.

4. **Aliī:** *other*; in contrast to those who wished the repeal.

5. **Lēgī:** dative with the special verbs **faveō** and **adversor**.

6. **Obsidēbant:** *they blocked.*

7. **Flōrente rē pūblicā:** ablative absolute expressing cause.

8. **In diēs:** *from day to day.*

9. **In suā uxōre:** *in the case of his own wife.*

10. **Jūs virī retinuisset:** *had retained the rights of a husband.*

11. **Negōtī:** genitive of the whole with **minus**. Literally ?

12. **Habērēmus:** *we should be having.*

13. **Singulās:** *individual women.*

14. **In manū:** *under the power.*

15. **Vitiīs:** ablative of cause.

16. **Gravissimus:** *very influential.*

17. **Rogāvērunt:** observe that this verb has two objects, **vōs** and the clause **ut . . . abrogārētis**.

18. **In sē:** *against them.*

19. **Praetextātī:** *clad in purple.* Senators wore a tunic with a broad purple border; curule magistrates, the toga praetexta with a purple border.

137. Semi-Deponent Verbs

The principal parts of **audeō**, *I dare*, are **audeō, audēre, ausus sum.** In other words, the present system of **audeō** has active forms, and the perfect system passive forms; both have active meanings. It is a *semi-deponent* verb. Give the synopsis. Learn the principal parts of **soleō.**

138. Genitive of the Whole

The genitive of the whole expresses the whole of which a part is taken. It occurs

(1) With nouns or pronouns meaning a part: as, **pars mīlitum, duo mīlia passuum, nihil auxilī, quis nostrum.**

(2) With the neuter singular of pronouns and adjectives used substantively: as, **minus negōtī, aliquid novī, satis causae.** English does not use *of* in such cases: as, **minus negōtī**, *less trouble*; **nihil auxilī**, *no help* (lit. *nothing of help*).

NOTE 1. With cardinal numerals and **quīdam** the ablative with **ex** or **dē** is used instead of a genitive: as, **ūnus ex captīvīs.**

NOTE 2. **Omnis** agrees with its noun and is not followed by the genitive: as, *all (of) the soldiers*, **omnēs mīlitēs**; *all of us*, **nōs omnēs.**

NOTE 3. The adjectives **medius, summus, extrēmus, reliquus** are used in agreement with their nouns where English uses a phrase with *of*: as, **in mediō colle**, *in the middle (of the) hill*; **in summō monte**, *on the top (of the) mountain.*

139. Drill and Review

1. Decline **agmen** and **aditus** (sing.). Give a synopsis of **audeō** (third sing.) and **gaudeō** (third plur.); infinitives of **crēscō**; participles of **ēvertō.**

2. Read and translate:

1. Mediīs in perīculīs bellī duo ex tribūnīs aliquid certāminis Rōmae praebuērunt. 2. Cum tribūnī lēgem Oppiam abrogāre vellent, reliquī eīs restitērunt. 3. Hāc lēge imperātum erat nē qua mulier vestem versicolōrem gereret. 4. Quaedam mulierēs in forō

convēnerant; aliae ā magistrātibus quaerere ausae erant ut aliquid auxilī darent. 5. Catō, quī lēgī favēbat, virōs satis potestātis domī habēre nōn arbitrābātur.

3. Write in Latin:

1. When the men had more authority at home, they had less trouble with the women in the Forum. 2. Part of the tribunes asked that the law be repealed. 3. As there was sufficient wealth in the state, they asked that the women should not be deprived of the use of purple. 4. When the law was repealed, it was permissible for all the women to wear (*use*) beautiful garments and ornaments of gold.

4. Translate at sight:

Scipio and Allucius. Ōlim in Hispāniā ad Scīpiōnem adducta est ā mīlitibus capta virgō adeō pulchra ut, quācumque (*wherever*) sē movēbat, converteret ad sē omnium oculōs. Ubi Scīpiō patriam parentēsque eius quaesīvit, repperit eam esse spōnsam (*from* **spondeō**) prīncipī Hispānōrum, cui nōmen erat Allucius. Extemplō, parentibus Alluciōque vocātīs, Scīpiō haec locūtus est: "Juvenis amōrī juvenis faveō. Itaque spōnsam tuam, servātam in castrīs nostrīs eādem cūrā quā apud parentēs, dōnum tibi darī cupiō. Ūnam tamen condiciōnem postulō: ut amīcus populō Rōmānō sīs et, sī mē virum bonum crēdis esse, sciās multōs mihi similēs in cīvitāte Rōmānā esse." Adulēscēns gaudiō commōtus grātiās ēgit. Atque parentēs, quī magnum pondus aurī virginem redimendī (*of ransoming*) causā attulerant, ōrāre Scīpiōnem coepērunt ut id ab sē dōnum acciperet. Scīpiō aurum ā parentibus acceptum sine morā virginī dōtī (*as a dowry*) dedit. Hīs laetus dōnīs Allucius locum implēvit laudibus Scīpiōnis; vēnisse putābat deō simillimum juvenem omnēs nōn modo armīs sed etiam beneficiīs vincentem.

LESSON 31

ROMAN IDEALS OF CITIZENSHIP *

We have already noted the high importance which the Roman family attached to kinship and to the family as the foundation of the state. But loyal as was the Roman to his duties to the family, loyalty to country ranked still higher. Subordination of the interests and lives of individuals to the welfare of the state was the dominating idea, and this was the underlying cause of the greatness of Rome.

Love of country among the Romans

140. Omnium societātum [1] nūlla Rōmānīs gravior vel cārior erat quam ea quae eīs cum rē pūblicā erat.[2] Cārī eīs erant parentēs, cārī līberī, propinquī, familiārēs; sed cārior omnibus[3] erat patria, prō quā omnēs cīvēs morī volēbant, sī morte suā eī prōfutūrī erant.[4] Nōta sunt verba poētae clārissimī, "Dulce et decōrum [5] est prō patriā morī." Rōmānīs nēmō scelerātior erat quam is quī patriam vulnerāvisset [6] aut dēlēvisset.[6] Patriae, quae parēns omnium habēbātur, maior grātia quam patrī familiās dēbēbātur, quod patria plūra beneficia continēbat. Itaque magistrātuum prīmum officium erat ita rēs gerere ut ūtilitātem omnium cīvium tuērentur et sua commoda neglegerent.

Lucius Aemilius Paulus, a patriot in bereavement

L. Aemilius Paulus, quī Macedoniam in potestātem populī Rōmānī redēgerat et triumphāns Persea (acc.) rēgem vīnctum per viās Rōmae dūxit, exemplum praeclārissimum amōris patriae[7] erat. Per diēs triumphī nōn sōlum Perseus documentum

* Adapted from Cicero, Livy, and Gellius.

hūmānārum cāsuum fuit, in catēnīs ductus ante currum victōris ducis per urbem hostium, sed etiam Paulus, aurō purpurāque fulgēns. Nam duōbus ē fīliīs, minor ferē duodecim

THE CAPITOLINE HILL (RESTORED)

The Capitoline Hill had two peaks. On the right is the citadel, or Arx, surmounted by the temple of Juno Moneta (*A*). On the left is the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus (*B*), the center of the Roman state religion. The low space between is the site of the famous asylum where persons from the surrounding country found refuge at the invitation of Romulus. The record house, or Tabularium (*C*), lay between the Capitoline and the Forum. Facing the Forum are the temple of Concord (*D*), built by Camillus, and the temple of the emperor Vespasian (*E*), of which three columns still remain. The temple of Saturn (*F*), was the treasury of Rome. In the foreground is the law court, or Basilica, of Julius Caesar, destroyed and rebuilt several times. Facing it is the arch of Septimius Severus, one of the late emperors

annōs nātus, quīnque diēbus ante triumphum, major quattuordecim annōrum[8] trīduo post triumphum decessit.

Paucis post diēbus, cum dē suīs rēbus mōre[9] cēterōrum imperātōrum dīceret, memorābilis eius ōrātiō dē suō dolōre et digna Rōmānō prīncipe fuit: "Meus triumphus duōbus fūneribus līberōrum est interpositus. Ego et Perseus exempla

sortis mortālium sumus: ille, quī captīvus ipse ante sē captīvōs līberōs dūcī vīdit, incolumēs tamen eōs [10] habet; ego, quī dē illō triumphāvī, ab alterīus fīlī fūnere ad alterum prope exspīrantem vēnī. Neque ex quattuor fīliīs superest ūnus quī L. Aemilī nōmen ferat.[11] Sed vestra fēlīcitās et secunda fortūna pūblica mē cōnsōlātur. Quod summā in victōriā [12] malum ventūrum esse exspectābam, Jovem optimum maximum [13] Jūnōnemque rēginam et Minervam precātus sum ut adversa fortūna in meam domum, nōn in populum Rōmānum verterētur. Neque deī verba mea audīre recūsāvērunt; quārē vōs hodiē meō cāsū dolētis potius quam ego vestrō doleō."

Fabricius, for patriotic reasons, supports a personal enemy for consul

Fabricius Luscinus vir magnā glōriā magnīsque rēbus gestīs fuit. P. Cornēlius Rūfīnus manū strēnuus et bellātor bonus et mīlitāris disciplīnae perītus [14] fuit, sed fūrāx homō et avārissimus erat. Hunc Fabricius nōn probābat neque amīcō ūtēbātur et propter mōrēs ōdit. Sed cum in temporibus reī pūblicae difficillimīs cōnsulēs creāre necesse esset et is Rūfīnus cōnsulātum peteret competītōrēsque eius essent imbellēs et futtilēs, summā ope [15] adnīxus est Fabricius ut Rūfīnō cōnsulātus dēferrētur. Eam rem plērīsque admīrantibus,[16] quod hominem avārum, cui erat inimīcissimus, creārī cōnsulem vellet,[17] "Mālō," inquit, "cīvis mē compīlet quam hostis vēndat."[18]

141. Notes

1. **Societātum:** *associations.*

2. **Ea quae eīs erat:** *that which they had* (lit. *that which was to them*); **eīs** is dative of possession.

3. **Omni' us:** *than all*: when **quam** is omitted in comparisons, the second of the two things compared is expressed by the ablative. This is called the ablative of comparison.

4. **Eī prōfutūrī erant:** *they were likely to benefit it* (the native land).

A SCENE ON THE SACRA VIA *

From a painting by Forti

5. **Dulce et decōrum:** *a fine and noble thing.*
6. **Vulnerāvisset. dēlēvisset:** translate as if past perfect indicative.
7. **Amōris patriae:** *patriotism* (lit. *love of country*).
8. **Quattuordecim annōrum:** *a boy of fourteen*; descriptive genitive.
9. **Mōre:** *after the manner*; ablative of accordance (App. § 31, *a*).
10. **Eōs:** *his sons.*
11. **Quī ferat:** *to bear*; a relative clause expressing purpose.
12. **Summā in victōriā:** *in my hour of victory.*
13. **Optimum maximum:** *greatest and best*; a term often applied to Jupiter.
14. **Mīlitāris disciplīnae perītus:** *skilled in military affairs*; with **perītus** the genitive with adjectives is sometimes best translated by a phrase introduced by *in.*
15. **Summā ope:** *with all his might.*
16. **Eam . . . admīrantibus:** *when many persons were surprised at this.*
17. **Vellet:** translate as if it were **volēbat.**
18. **Mālō . . . vēndat:** *I'd rather a citizen should rob me than that an enemy should sell me as a slave.*

142. Genitive with Adjectives

Translate the following phrases:

Cupidus *pecūniae.*
Forum *mātrum* plēnum.
Disciplīnae mīlitāris perītus.

Certain adjectives meaning *desirous, skillful,* or *full* take a genitive to denote the object of the action implied in the adjective; compare **cupiditās pecūniae,** *desire for money.* The English idiom frequently uses *of,* corresponding to the Latin. In some cases we use *in.*

Distinguish these adjectives, governing the genitive, from **dignus,** governing the ablative, and from those governing the dative (App. § 15).

* Along this street passed Aemilius Paulus in triumph on his way to the Capitoline Hill. This was the oldest and most famous street in Rome. It extended, with many turns, from the Colosseum to the Capitoline Hill.

143. The Dative of Possession

You have already observed that the dative is used in Latin far more widely than in English. One use which is peculiar to Latin is illustrated in the following sentences:

Liber *mihi* est, *I have a book* (lit. *a book is to me*).
Gladius *eī* est, *he has a sword* (lit. *a sword is to him*).
Societās *eīs* cum rē pūblicā erat (translate literally and in good English).

The dative is used with a form of **sum** to express possession.*

Do not confuse **Liber** (nom.) **mihi** (dat.) **est** with **Ego** (nom.) **librum** (acc.) **habeō**. The ideas expressed in these two sentences are similar, but the methods of expressing them are totally unlike.

144. Comparison

In the sentence "He is taller than I," *than* is a conjunction, and *I* is in the nominative case, subject of *am* understood. In the sentence "I like her better than *him*," *him* is objective case, object of *I like* understood. In other words, *than* has the same case after it as before it. In the same way Latin may express comparison with **quam**, *than*, with the same case after it as before it: as, **Altior est quam ego.**

Latin may also express the comparison without **quam**, in which case the *ablative of comparison* is used. The following pairs of sentences illustrate the two Latin ways of expressing comparison:

1. Patria mihi cārior *quam omnēs* est.
   Patria mihi cārior *omnibus* est.
2. Altior est *quam ego*.
   Altior *mē* est.

See the Appendix, section 35.

* The old literary expression "Woe is *me*" contains a use of the dative (*me*) similar to the Latin dative of possession.

145. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *sumptuous, intolerable, refulgent, vicious, avaricious, sedative, sacerdotal, gaudy, concatenation, deprecate, strenuous, ounce.*

2. The suffix **-idus** denotes a *condition,* and forms adjectives from verbs: as, **timidus** (from **timeō**), meaning *in a condition of fear, afraid.* It appears in English as *-id,* as in *timid.*

Give the Latin adjectives in **-idus** (with meanings) from which the following English words are derived:

languid	frigid	arid
avid	valid	rapid
splendid	candid	horrid
placid	liquid	lucid
turbid	fluid	vivid

Explain the derivation of **cupidus.**

3. Latin masculine and feminine nouns retain their gender in French; neuter nouns regularly become masculine. Thus:

LATIN	FRENCH	LATIN	FRENCH
mūrus (*m.*)	mur (*m.*)	jūstitia (*f.*)	justice (*f.*)
liber (*m.*)	livre (*m.*)	ferrum (*n.*)	fer (*m.*)
hōra (*f.*)	heure (*f.*)	castellum (*n.*)	château (*m.*)
poēta (*m.*)	poète (*m.*)	lac (*n.*)	lait (*m.*)
lībertās (*f.*)	liberté (*f.*)	lingua (*f.*)	langue (*f.*)
mors (*f.*)	mort (*f.*)	nōmen (*n.*)	nom (*m.*)
porta (*f.*)	porte (*f.*)	tempus (*n.*)	temps (*m.*)
terra (*f.*)	terre (*f.*)	manus (*f.*)	main (*f.*)
nox (*f.*)	nuit (*f.*)	dōnum (*n.*)	don (*m.*)
verbum (*n.*)	verbe (*m.*)	fidēs (*f.*)	foi (*f.*)

NOTE 1. French words ending in *-eur,* although derived from Latin masculines in **-or,** are feminine: as, *terreur* (*f.*) from **terror** (*m.*).

NOTE 2. Some Latin neuter plurals were treated as if they were singular nouns of the first declension, and became feminine in French: as, *arme* (*f.*) from **arma** (*n.*).

146. Drill and Review

1. Compare **difficilis**. What adjectives are similarly compared? Conjugate **mālō** (pres. system). Give a synopsis of **supersum** (third plur.); infinitives and participles of **dēferō**.

2. Read and translate:

1. Legimus nūllam societātem Rōmānīs cāriōrem rē pūblicā fuisse. 2. L. Aemiliō Paulō, imperātōrī reī mīlitāris perītissimō, quī Perseum vīcit, erant quattuor fīliī. 3. Cum Paulus ex Graeciā vēnisset et per viās urbis triumphāret, forum cīvium erat plēnum, quī videndī victōrem causā convēnerant. 4. Documentum hūmānārum cāsuum erat Paulus, cui, duōbus ex fīliīs mortuīs, diēs triumphī plēnī dolōris erant. 5. Sed Aemilius cupidior secundae fortūnae pūblicae quam fēlīcitātis suae erat; nam nihil eī cārius erat patriā.

3. Write in Latin:

1. Perseus also had sons, who were led before the chariot of the victor. 2. Fabricius was desirous of glory; Cornelius was skilled in war and very greedy of money. 3. To him money was more dear than glory. 4. In times full of danger it was necessary that a man skilled in leading soldiers be chosen consul.

LESSON 32

TIBERIUS GRACCHUS, TRIBUNE OF THE PEOPLE*

The supremacy of the senate in controlling the affairs of the state remained unchallenged so long as it continued to rule in the interests of all. But when the character of the senate had degenerated to the point where evils of a most serious nature were ignored because to correct them would involve the sacrifice of the personal interests of the senators, there then arose a series of popular leaders who attempted even at the risk of their lives to overthrow the selfish senatorial oligarchy. First among these men was Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, and the last was Julius Caesar. As tribune of the people, Gracchus ignored the senate and sought through the assemblies of the people to enact the laws which he deemed necessary to save the state from impending ruin. Among the most pressing of the evils which he tried to remedy was the almost complete disappearance of the small farmers of Italy, who had been the mainstay of the state through its great period.

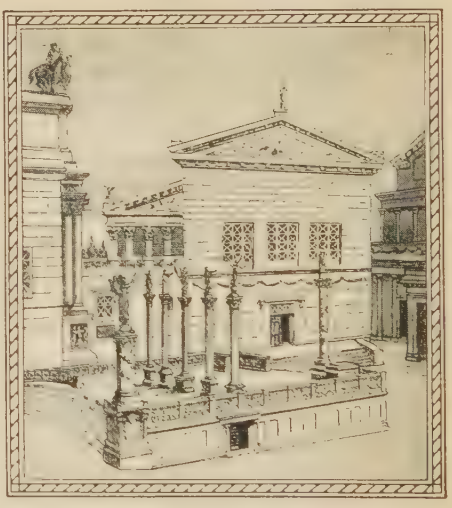
147. Tiberius Gracchus fīlius Semprōnī Gracchī erat, quī Cornēliam, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī fīliam, in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Patre mortuō, cum frātre Gāiō tantā cūrā ā mātre ēducātus est ut omnibus cēterīs Rōmānīs praeter frātrem suum ingeniō et virtūtibus praestāret. Patre et mātre dignum sē semper ostendit. Adulēscēns ad bellum Pūnicum tertium profectus in Āfricā stīpendium meruit; ibi, cum Carthāgō expugnārētur, prīmus Rōmānōrum moenia illīus urbis ascendisse dīcitur. Posteā in Hispāniā quaestor nōn sōlum ā mīlitibus amābātur sed etiam ab hostibus, quī cum eō ūnō[1] dē conditiōnibus pācis agere[2] voluērunt et, pāce factā, eum in oppidum recēpērunt.

*Based on the "Life of Tiberius Gracchus," by Plutarch.

He becomes champion of the people

Eō tempore undique per Italiam agrī lātissimī[3] ā paucīs dīvitiōribus tenēbantur, quōrum servī terram incolēbant. Cum Gracchus per Etrūriam iter faceret, magnopere dolēbat quod agrī nōn ab agricolīs Rōmānīs sed ā servīs colēbantur. Atque cōnstituit dīvitiōrēs agrīs quōs injūriā possidēbant prīvāre et agrōs inter plēbem distribuere. Tribūnus creātus sē quāsdam lēgēs[4] diū neglēctās revocātūrum esse nūntiāvit. Quam ob rem nōbilēs eum et metuērunt et ōderant.[5]

"Ō miserī cīvēs," inquit Gracchus, "fēlīciōrēs quam vōs sunt ferī et animālia Italiae; namque domum perfugiumque omnēs habent. Vōs autem jam prīdem nūllās domōs possidētis[6]; nōn jam ārās et focōs majōrum adīre potestis; per Italiam errāre necesse est cum uxōribus līberīsque. Arma fertis[7] et labōrātis; sed vestrīs labōribus dīvitiōrēs sunt nōbilēs, vōs cotīdiē miseriōrēs fītis. Quam diū superbiam nōbilium ferētis? Quam diū agrīs domiciliīsque[8] carēbitis?" Hāc ōrātiōne odium patrum auctum est.



THE CURIA, OR SENATE HOUSE

This is a reconstruction of the Senate House as it may have looked under the Empire. The Curia of the days of the Republic was a much simpler structure

Cum lēgēs Gracchī agrāriae prōmulgātae essent, Octāvius, ūnus ex tribūnīs, ā nōbilibus inductus "Vetō"[9] prōnūntiāvit. Tum (id quod[10] per lēgēs Rōmānās fierī nōn licēbat)

Gracchus populō persuāsit ut Octāvium potestāte tribūniciā prīvārent. Hōc factō, lēgēs suās prōtulit: agrōs dīvitibus adēmit et egentibus[11] dedit; dēcrēvit quot jūgera quisque possidēret et quī agrōs colerent.[12]

The death of Gracchus

Quod Gracchus omnia cōnsilia sua annō tribūnātūs efficere non pōterat, iterum magistrātum petiit. Senātōrēs, quī vehementer resistēbant, per lēgēs tribūnātum biennium[13] habērī posse negāvērunt; et dīxērunt sē verērī nē Gracchus rēx fierī vellet.[14] Ubi diēs comitiōrum[15] vēnit, tumultus in forō factus est. Interim patrēs cōnscrīptī in aedem Fideī convocāti quid in tālī tempestāte faciendum esset[16] dēlīberābant. Omnibus imperantibus ut cōnsul armīs rem pūblicam tuērētur, Scaevola cōnsul negāvit sē quicquam vī esse āctūrum. Tum Scīpiō Nāsīca "Quoniam," inquit, "cōnsul rem pūblicam armīs dēfendere nōn vult, ego mē prīvātus[17] voluntātī vestrae offerō. Vōs, quī imperium Rōmānum servāre vultis, mē sequiminī." Neque jam nōbilēs cunctantur; Nāsīcā duce, Gracchum petunt et occīdunt ante templum Fideī.

THE TEMPLE OF VESTA

This city shrine corresponded to the hearth of the individual household. Here the Vestal Virgins guarded the sacred fire day and night. Only when the Gauls captured Rome did the Vestals remove the sacred fire and the sacred utensils from Rome for safety

148. Notes

1. **Cum eō ūnō:** *with him alone.*

2. **Agere:** *to treat.*

3. **Agrī lātissimī,** *broad tracts of land.* The wealthy had gained possession of the farming land of Italy, which they were tilling by means of slave labor.

4. **Lēgēs:** these were laws which had been enacted many generations before, but had not been enforced for some time. They forbade anyone to have the use of more than three hundred acres of the public land, or to pasture on it more than one hundred cattle or five hundred sheep. But Gracchus also added a provision that a certain proportion of the laborers should be freemen, and that all surplus land should be divided among the needy in small lots. He evidently had strong socialistic leanings.

5. **Ōderant:** the perfect tense of this defective verb is translated as a present tense, the past perfect as a simple past.

6. **Jam prīdem . . . possidētis:** *for some time you have owned*; a present tense with **jam prīdem** is given a past translation.

7. Review the present tense of **ferō** (App., p. 26).

8. **Agrīs domiciliīsque:** ablative of separation.

9. **Vetō:** this was the word used by the tribunes to protest against any measure of which they disapproved.

10. **Id quod:** *an act which.*

11. **Egentibus:** *to the needy*; present participle of **egeō.**

12. **Possidēret, colerent:** *might own, might till*; verbs of two indirect questions, objects of **dēcrēvit.**

13. **Biennium:** the tribuneship could not be held a second time until after an interval of ten years.

14. **Nē . . . vellet:** *that he wished.* An affirmative clause as object of a verb of *fearing* is introduced by **nē.**

15. **Comitiōrum:** *of the election.*

16. **Quid faciendum esset:** *what ought* (lit. *was*) *to be done.* **Faciendum** is a future passive participle, which with a form of **sum** expresses obligation. The whole clause is an indirect question.

17. **Prīvātus:** *though I am a private citizen.*

149. Indirect Questions

In the sentence "I gave him *what* he wanted," *what* is a *relative* pronoun, equivalent to *that which,* introducing a *relative* clause; but in the sentence "I asked *what* he wanted,"

what is an *interrogative* pronoun, introducing a *noun* clause, the object of *asked*. It is the indirect form of the original direct question "What do you want?" We sometimes use the subjunctive in English: as, "I asked whether it *were* true."

Translate the following direct and indirect questions:

Direct. Quid senātōrēs ēgērunt?
Indirect. Quaesīvī quid senātōrēs ēgissent.

Direct. Quid dīcis?
Indirect. Mīrātus sum quid dīcerēs.

Direct. Cūr hoc facis?
Indirect. Rogō cūr hoc faciās.

Latin indirect questions require the subjunctive mood.

Tenses Used. The tenses used are the same as in purpose and result clauses.

When the main verb is in present or future time, a question referring to past time is expressed by the perfect subjunctive (simple past): as, "I understand what he said," **intellegō quid dīxerit.**

Indirect Questions and Indirect Statements. These two usages must be carefully distinguished.

Indirect *statements* (1) occur after verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving*; (2) have no introductory conjunction corresponding to English *that*; (3) are in the infinitive mood with subject accusative.

Indirect *questions* (1) occur after verbs of *asking, inquiring, wondering*; (2) are introduced by interrogative words: as, **quis, quid, cūr, ubi**; (3) are expressed by the subjunctive mood.

Indirect Questions and Relative Clauses. Note that the same words are sometimes relative, introducing relative clauses, and sometimes interrogative, introducing indirect questions. Thus, in "He lives *where* he pleases," *where* is relative, with the indicative mood in Latin; in "I inquired *where* he lived," *where* is interrogative, with the subjunctive mood in Latin.

Quis and **quid** regularly indicate either a direct or an indirect question, since they are special interrogative forms.

But after **nē** or **sī**, **quis** and **quid** are indefinite, equivalent to **aliquis, aliquid**, *anyone, anything, someone*; as, **sī qua mulier**, *if any woman.*

150. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. "Vōs certiōrēs faciam, cīvēs," inquit Gracchus, "cūr ferī fēlīciōrēs vōbīs sint; et cūr ārās majōrum vestrōrum adīre nōn possītis; et cūr necesse fuerit vōs cum uxōribus līberīsque per Italiam errāre." 2. Bene sciēbat Gracchus quam ob rem cīvēs multī nōn jam domōs possidērent et agrīs prīvātī essent. 3. Atque ā cīvibus quaesīvit num (*whether*) cognōvissent cūr cotīdiē miseriōrēs fierent. 4. Gracchus, quī jūrum perītus erat, sciēbat quid per lēgēs Rōmānās fierī nōn licēret; imperāvit tamen ut tribūnus quīdam potestāte prīvārētur.

2. Write in Latin:

1. Gracchus knows who are tilling the fields and how many slaves each man has. 2. We know why the senators vigorously resisted Gracchus. 3. They inquired how long the tribuneship might be held by law. 4. He learned what the senators, who had been called to Rome, were deliberating at that time. 5. When Nasica had been informed why the consuls were unwilling to defend the state, he offered himself as a leader.

LESSON 33

THE RELATIONS OF ROME WITH FOREIGN NATIONS*

It is a common but mistaken belief that Rome set about deliberately to conquer the world; that her wars were primarily wars of aggression; and that she was constantly watching for excuses to attack her neighbors and annex their territories. This may have been true in the case of individuals ambitious for glory and profit, but the state did not countenance this conduct. Rome stood for law and order in all relations with other nations. A treaty with another nation was a solemn religious act, invoking on the Roman people the punishments of the gods if they unjustly went to war. But Rome insisted that other nations should regard treaties in the same way; and when they violated their treaties with her, she required satisfaction or declared war.

Grounds for war

151. Rōmānī bella suscipere solēbant ob eam causam, ut sine injūriā in pāce vīverent[1]; volēbant bellum ita suscipī ut nihil nisi pāx quaesīta esse vidērētur.

Method of declaring war

Bella mōre Latīnōrum antīquōrum indīcēbantur. Lēgātus enim, ubi ad fīnes eōrum vēnit unde rēs repetēbantur,[2] capite vēlātō, "Audī, Juppiter," inquit, "audīte, fīnēs" (cuiuscumque gentis sunt nōmināvit[3]). "Ego sum pūblicus nūntius populī Rōmānī; lēgātus veniō verbīsque meīs fidēs sit."[4] Perēgit deinde postulāta. Sī nōn dēdita sunt quae postulāverat, diēbus tribus et trīgintā perāctis, bellum indīxit et hastam in fīnēs hostium mīsit.

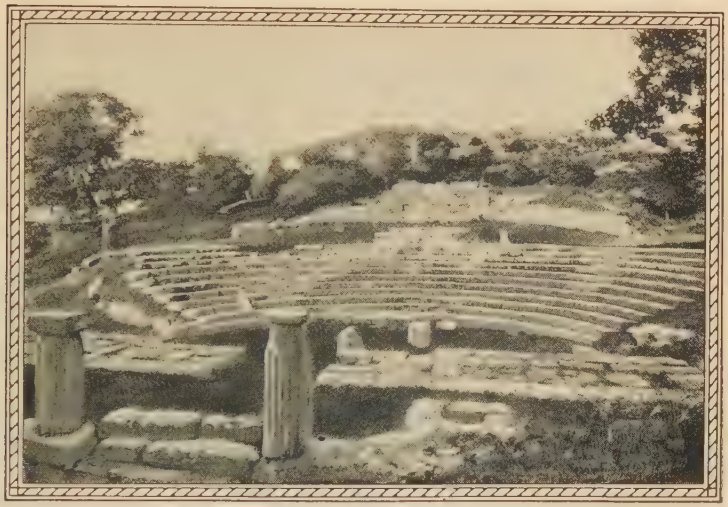
* Based on Livy and Gellius.

THE BASILICA JULIA IN THE FORUM

The Roman court houses were called **basilicae**. This is a restored view of a **basilica** originally erected by Julius Caesar out of the spoils of his Gallic wars. In such buildings the praetors and the judges had their tribunals and settled lawsuits and trials, which the Roman insistence on legal rights made rather numerous. Rome was the first nation of antiquity to recognize the legal rights of foreigners. One of the praetors, called the **praetor peregrīnus**, was especially assigned to hear cases in which foreigners were involved

The sportsmanship of the Romans toward enemies

Rōmānī putābant urbem ā fīliō Mārtis [5] conditam armīs bellum, non dolīs īnsidiīsque gerere dēbēre. Cum rēx Pyrrhus in terrā Italiā esset et ūnam atque alteram [6] pugnās prōsperē pugnāvisset, tum quīdam Tīmocharēs, rēgis Pyrrhī amīcus, ad C. Fabricium cōnsulem fūrtim vēnit ac, praemiō petītō, rēgem venēnīs necāre prōmīsit. Idque sē facile factūrum esse dīxit, quoniam fīlius suus pōcula in convīviō rēgī ministrāret.[7] Eam rem Fabricius ad senātum scrīpsit. Senātus ad rēgem lēgātōs mīsit mandāvitque ut dē Tīmochare nihil prōderent [8] sed monērent utī rēx circumspectius [9] ageret



THE SITE OF TUSCULUM

The citadel of Tusculum was on the hill beyond the theater. The ruins of this theater are almost all that now remains of the little town that was always so stanchly loyal to Rome. It was here that Cato, the famous censor, was born

atque ā proximōrum īnsidiīs salūtem tūtārētur. Lēgātīs imperātum est[10] ut rēgem certiōrem facerent senātuī[11] nōn placēre pretiō aut praemiō aut dolīs pugnāre. Tam grātus fuisse Pyrrhus dīcitur ut captīvōs omnēs quōs tum habēret grātīs reddiderit.

How Tusculum won the respect of Rome

Ōlim inter Volscōs captōs aliquot Tusculānī Rōmam ductī sunt. Quī quod dīcēbant sē pūblicō cōnsiliō contrā Rōmānōs pugnāvisse, senātuī[11] placuit Camillum cum exercitū in fīnēs Tusculānōrum mittere. Nec fuit cum eīs bellum; nam Tusculānī pāce vim Rōmānōrum arcuērunt, quam armīs nōn potuērunt.[12]

Ubi Rōmānī fīnēs eōrum intrāvērunt, Tusculānī nōn fūgērunt; cultus agrōrum nōn intermissus est, neque portae urbis clausae sunt. Virī togātī obviam Camillō[13] prōcessērunt; commeātus exercituī ex urbe et ex agrīs comportātus est. Camillus, scīre cupiēns eademne fōrma pācis intrā moenia esset,[14] in urbem ingressus est, ubi patentēs jānuās et mercēs in tabernīs prōpositās et omnēs intentōs suō quemque operī[15] et lūdōs līterārum strepere discentium vōcibus et sēmitās replētās turbā puerōrum et puellārum hūc atque illūc euntium invēnit. Circumspiciēbat omnia, inquīrēns oculīs ubi bellum fuisset.

TWO COINS SHOWING JANUS AND THE TEMPLE OF JANUS

Janus was an important Italian deity connected closely with the household; he was the god of doors and gates, and of beginnings in general. Since doors open both ways, Janus is represented with two faces. The temple of Janus in the Forum was closed in time of peace. In time of war it was opened, so as to permit the god to go forth to aid the Romans

Victus igitur patientiā hostium senātum eōrum vocārī jussit. "Sōlī adhūc," inquit, "Tusculānī, vēra arma vērāsque vīrēs invēnistis quibus vōs ab īrā Rōmānōrum dēfenderētis.[16] Īte Rōmam ad senātum. Aestimābunt patrēs utrum plūs ante poenae an[17] nunc veniae[18] meritī sītis." Postquam Rōmam Tusculānī vēnērunt, senātus jussit eōs in cūriam hospitāliter magis quam hostīliter dūcī et cum eīs pācem statim fēcit. Cīvitātem[19] etiam dedit senātus.

152. Notes

1. **Ut . . . vīverent:** in apposition with **causam.**

2. **Unde rēs repetēbantur:** *from whom satisfaction was being demanded* (lit. *whence things were being demanded back*). Read again the hints for the translation of Latin on page 156.

3. **Cuiuscumque . . . nōminābit:** *he mentioned the name of whatever people they belonged to.*

4. **Verbīsque . . . sit:** *let my words be believed* (lit. *let faith be to my words*). **Verbīs** is dative of possession.

5. **Fīliō Mārtis:** Romulus, son of Rhea Silvia and Mars.

6. **Ūnam atque alteram:** *one or two.*

7. **Ministrāret:** translate as if past indicative. The verb is subjunctive, not indicative, because it is the verb of a subordinate clause in an indirect statement (App. § 77).

8. **Prōderent:** the subject is **lēgātī**. What kind of clause?

9. **Circumspectius:** *rather cautiously.*

10. **Lēgātīs imperātum est:** *the ambassadors were ordered* (lit. *it was commanded to the ambassadors*). **Lēgātīs** is dative with the special verb **imperō**. **Imperātum est** is impersonal.

11. **Senātuī:** why dative?

12. **Potuērunt:** supply **arcēre**.

13. **Obviam Camillō:** *to meet Camillus.*

14. **Ademne . . . esset:** an indirect question; **-ne** means *if* or *whether.*

15. **Suō quemque operī:** *each on his own work*; with **intentōs**.

16. **Quibus . . . dēfenderētis:** *by which to defend*; a relative clause expressing purpose.

17. **Utrum . . . an:** *whether . . . or*; a double indirect question.

18. **Poenae, veniae:** genitives of the whole with **plūs**.

19. **Cīvitātem:** *citizenship.* By conferring citizenship on conquered or allied towns, Rome bound those communities more closely to her own government. Yet the control of that government remained in the hands of the citizens who lived in Rome itself (see page 155).

153. Applications of Latin

1. Explain the meaning of *revelation, stipend, ferocity, patent, venial, sedate.*

2. The derivatives of **mandāre** offer an excellent opportunity to trace the gradual development of meanings. The fundamental meaning is *to put* (something) *in charge of* (someone), to commission. Explain ***mandate, mandatory, commend*** (a person to another's care), ***commend*** (= praise), ***commendable, recommend, remand, command, commandant, commodore, countermand.***

3. The numerals of all the Romance languages are very similar to the original Latin forms. Thus:

LATIN	FRENCH	ITALIAN	SPANISH
ūnus	un	uno	uno
duo	deux	due	dos
trēs	trois	tre	tres
quattuor	quatre	quattro	cuatro
quīnque	cinq	cinque	cinco
sex	six	sei	seis
septem	sept	sette	siete
octō	huit	otto	ocho
novem	neuf	nove	nueve
decem	dix	dieci	diez
vīgintī	vingt	venti	veinte
trīgintā	trente	trenta	treinta
centum	cent	cento	ciento
mīlle	mille	mille	mil

154. Drill and Review

1. Decline **commeātus** (sing.) and **opus**. Conjugate **pateō** (subjv. act.). Give a synopsis of **mandō** (third sing.); infinitives of **prōdō**.

2. Read and translate:

1. Lēgātī bellum indīcendī causā ad fīnēs hostium īre solēbant. 2. Bellum ita indīcēbātur ut pāx, nōn bellum quaererētur. 3. Cum ad fīnēs hostium lēgātī vēnissent, postulāta nūntiābant. 4. Tīmocharēs cupidus praemī erat; sed Fabricius nōn quaesīvit quid praemī ille vellet. 5. Senātus monuit ut rēx sē tūtārētur. 6. Pyrrhus nōn scīvit utrum plūs amīcōrum an inimīcōrum Rōmae habēret.

3. Write in Latin:

1. The senate ordered Camillus to go to Tusculum. 2. The Romans wished to find out whether (**num**) the people of Tusculum were desirous of war. 3. When Camillus had entered their territories, the Tusculans did not resist the Romans. 4. Grain was brought from the fields, that the Roman army might have sufficient supplies. 5. Camillus desired to know where the war was.

4. Review Word List 6, in the Appendix, page 45.

LESSON 34

SUPPLEMENTARY *

A JOKE DEFEATS A ROMAN OFFICE-SEEKER

Cum Scīpiō Nāsīca aedīlitātem curūlem peteret manumque cuiusdam rūsticō labōre dūrātam mōre candidātōrum [1] tenācius apprehendisset, jocī causā interrogāvit eum num [2] manibus solitus esset ambulāre. Quod dictum ā circumstantibus [3] exceptum et ad populum nūntiātum causa repulsae Scīpiōnī fuit; nam omnēs rūsticae tribūs eum paupertātem rīdēre jūdicāvērunt.

1. **Mōre candidātōrum:** *in the way candidates have.*
2. **Num:** *whether*; introduces an indirect question.
3. **Circumstantibus:** *the bystanders.*

A DICTATOR CONDEMNS TO DEATH HIS MASTER OF HORSE

L. Papīrius Cursor cum honōre dictātōris ad bellum Samnīticum profectus est. Quī cum Rōmam redīret, Q. Fabiō Maximō, magistrō equitum, quem apud exercitum relīquit, praecēpit nē, sē absente, pugnāret.[1] Ille, occāsiōne repertā, fēlīcissimē dīmicāvit et Samnītēs dēlēvit. Quam ob rem ā dictātōre capitis damnātus,[2] quod, eō vetante, pugnāvisset,[3] ingentī favōre mīlitum et populī līberātus est, et Papīrius ipse paene interfectus est.

1. **Nē . . . pugnāret:** object of **praecēpit.**
2. **Capitis damnātus:** *condemned to death.*
3. **Pugnāvisset:** translate as if indicative.

* Selections from Valerius Maximus, Cicero, and Livy.

THE DUTIES OF MAGISTRATES, CITIZENS, AND ALIENS

Est igitur proprium mūnus magistrātūs intellegere sē gerere persōnam cīvitātis [1] dēbēreque eius dignitātem et decus sustinēre, servāre lēgēs, jūra dēscrībere,[2] ea [3] fideī suae commissa memoriā tenēre.

Prīvātum autem oportet [4] aequō et parī cum cīvibus jūre vīvere, dēnique in rē pūblicā ea velle quae tranquilla et honesta sunt; tālem enim solēmus et sentīre bonum cīvem et dīcere.

Peregrīnī autem officium est nihil praeter suum negōtium agere minimēque cūriōsum esse in aliēnā rē pūblicā.

Nihil est autem quod tam [5] deceat quam [5] in omnibus rēbus servāre cōnstantiam.

1. **Sē . . . cīvitātis:** *that he represents the State* (lit. *wears the mask of the State*).

2. **Jūra dēscrībere:** *to administer justice.*

3. Object of **meminisse.**

4. **Prīvātum oportet:** *it is the duty of a private citizen*; **prīvātum** is the subject of **vīvere** and **velle.**

5. **Tam . . . quam:** *so . . . as.*

ROME'S MAGNANIMITY TOWARD CONQUERED GREECE

After the Romans came into control of Greece through the defeat of Philip of Macedon, they showed the great respect they felt for the Greek contributions to civilization. Instead of making Greece into a Roman province, they preferred to be regarded as the restorers of liberty to the Greeks.

Omnēs exspectābant [1] quī status Graeciae, quae fortūna futūra esset [2]; nēmō spērāre audēbat Rōmānōs cessūrōs esse. Eō tempore līberālitās Rōmānōrum digna laude magnā erat. Cum enim ad Isthmicum spectāculum [3] tōta Graecia convēnisset, Flāminīnus, tubae signō silentiō factō, per

praecōnem haec verba recitārī jussit: "S. P. Q. R.[4] et T. Quīnctius Flāmininus imperātor omnēs Graeciae urbēs, quae sub diciōne Philippī rēgis fuērunt, līberās atque immūnēs esse jubent." Quibus audītīs, maximō et inopīnātō

FLAMININUS GIVING LIBERTY TO THE GREEKS AT THE ISTHMIAN GAMES

gaudiō hominēs perculsī sunt; prīmō velutī sē nōn audīvisse quae audīverant crēdentēs tacuērunt; deinde, iterātā prōnūntiātiōne praecōnis, caelum tantīs clāmōribus complēvērunt ut certē cōnstet[5] avēs quae supervolābant attonitās territāsque dēcidisse. 5

1. **Exspectābant:** *were waiting to see.*
2. **Futūra esset:** *was going to be*; an active periphrastic form.
3. **Isthmicum spectāculum:** *the Isthmian Games*; one of the famous festivals of Greece, held on the Isthmus of Corinth.
4. **S. P. Q. R.** = **senātus populusque Rōmānus.**
5. **Ut cōnstet:** *that it is a fact that* etc.

GROUNDS FOR WAR AND TREATMENT OF THE VANQUISHED

Atque in rē pūblicā oportet cōnservārī jūra bellī. Nam sunt duo genera dēcertandī, ūnum per colloquium, alterum per bellum. Illud proprium est hominum, hoc animālium est. Nōn necesse est ad bellum fugere nisi colloquiō et disputātiōne ūtī nōn licet. Quārē bella sunt suscipienda[1] ut sine injūriā in pāce vīvāmus. Nūllum bellum est jūstum nisi rēbus repetītīs[2] geritur aut anteā dēnūntiātum est.[3] Bellum autem ita suscipiātur ut nihil aliud nisi pāx petī videātur.

Post autem victōriam eī sunt cōnservandī[1] quī nōn crūdēlēs in bellō fuērunt. Sīc majōrēs nostrī Tusculānōs,[4] Aequōs, Volscōs, Sabīnōs, Hernicōs in cīvitātem nostram accēperunt; sed Carthāginem omnīnō sustulērunt. Nōllem[5] eōs Corinthum sustulisse; sed sine dubiō hoc fēcērunt nē opportūnitās locī ad bellum faciendum hortārētur. Meā quidem sententiā, pāx sine īnsidiīs semper est petenda.[1]

Sed eī quōs vī vīceris, quī, armīs positīs, ad imperātōris fidem cōnfugient,[6] etsī aciēs mūrum tetigerit, cōnservandī sunt. In quā rē apud majōrēs nostrōs tanta jūstitia culta est ut eī quī cīvitātēs aut nātiōnēs victās in fidem recēpissent[7] eārum patrōnī[8] mōre majōrum essent.

1. **Sunt suscipienda**: the future passive participle and **sunt** express necessity; *are to be*, or *must be, undertaken*. Similarly, **sunt cōnservandī**, *must be saved*; **est petenda**, *is to be sought*.

2. **Rēbus repetītīs**: *after satisfaction has been demanded*.

3. War must be formally declared.

4. Locate on the map, page 183. These states were early incorporated into the Roman state.

5. **Nōllem**: *I might wish that they had not* etc. The destruction of Corinth was regarded by the best Romans as a blot on her record.

6. **Ad . . . cōnfugient**: *take refuge in the protection of a general*.

7. **Recēpissent**: translate as if past indicative.

8. The conquerors became the protectors (**patrōnī**) of the conquered.

THE ROMAN FORUM AS IT IS TODAY

THE LAST YEARS OF SCIPIO AFRICANUS

The unparalleled success and influence of Scipio naturally aroused jealousy and enmity. This finally led to an attack upon him in the courts. His defense (as Livy tells us) was unique.

Tandem Scīpiōnī diēs dictus est[1] ab inimīcīs, quī ita eum incūsābant: ratiōnem[2] pecūniae praedaeque ā rēge Antiochō acceptae nōn reddidisse; propter eius auctōritātem discrētīs locīs[3] in spectāculō lūdōrum senātum et populum sedēre; omnibus rēbus ēgisse tamquam in eius manū pāx Rōmāna bellumque esset[4]; tam superbum esse ut sē caput columenque imperī Rōmānī habēret.[5] Ubi diēs vēnit, Scīpiō cum

magnō numerō amīcōrum ad rōstra subiit, silentiōque factō, "Hōc," inquit, "diē,[6] tribūnī plēbis vōsque cīvēs, cum Hannibale et Carthāginiēnsibus in Āfricā bene et fēlīciter pugnāvī. Hodiē jūrgiīs[7] supersedēre aequum est. Ego hinc extemplō in Capitōlium ībō, ut Jovem Jūnōnemque et Minervam cēterōsque deōs, quī Capitōliō atque arcī[8] praesident, salūtem. Mēcum īte, cīvēs, et ōrāte deōs ut mihi similēs prīncipēs habeātis." Ab rōstrīs in Capitōlium ascendit. Simul ūniversa cōntiō tribūnōs relīquit et Scīpiōnem secūta est. Illō diē majōre honōre habēbātur quam quō[9] triumphāns dē Carthāginiēnsibus per urbem vectus est. Nōn multō post Scīpiō exsul in Campāniam excessit, ubi reliquam vītam ēgit sine dēsīderiō urbis. Suō sepulcrō īnscrībī jussisse dīcitur, "Ingrāta patria, nē ossa quidem mea habēs."

1. **Scīpiōnī diēs dictus est:** *Scipio was brought to trial.*
2. **Ratiōnem:** *an accounting.* Scipio had been present when his brother Lucius defeated Antiochus at Magnesia, in 190 B. C.
3. **Discrētīs locīs:** the seating of the senators in a separate place at the games was not a popular arrangement.
4. **Tamquam . . . esset:** *as if . . . were.*
5. **Sē habēret:** *he regarded himself as* etc.
6. **Hōc diē:** it was the anniversary of the battle of Zama.
7. **Jūrgiīs:** *from quarrels*; ablative of separation.
8. **Capitōliō atque arcī:** dative with the compound verb **praesident.**
9. **Quō:** supply **diē**; *on the day on which.*

THE POLITICAL USE OF OMENS

Itaque in nostrīs librīs antīquīs scrīptum est, "Jove tonante,[1] comitia populī habēre nefās[2] est." Hoc fortasse reī pūblicae causā cōnstitūtum est; comitia enim nōn habendī causās esse voluērunt.

1. **Jove tonante:** *when Jupiter thunders.*
2. **Nefās:** *illegal* (lit. *not right*).

AN AEDILE ASKS CICERO FOR PANTHERS

While Cicero was governor of Cilicia, in Asia Minor, a friend of his, who was aedile at Rome, wrote to him, beseeching him for panthers to be exhibited at the public games.

Ferē līterīs omnibus meīs tibi dē panthērīs scrīpsī quibus ad lūdōs ūtī volō. Amābō tē,[1] imperō tibi hoc.

Cicero's playful reply

Dē panthērīs mandātō meō dīligenter agitur; sed mīra paucitās est, et eae quae sunt valdē queruntur[2]; nam nihil īnsidiārum cuiquam nisi eīs in meā prōvinciā fit. Sed tamen dīligenter agam. Mihi, mehercule, magnae cūrae[3] aedīlitās tua est.

1. **Amābō tē:** *please* (lit. *I shall love you*).

2. It was Cicero's boast that he governed his province with scrupulous regard for the welfare of the provincials. The panthers are the only exception.

3. **Magnae cūrae:** dative of purpose; *is a matter of great concern.*

LESSON 35

ROMAN WIT AND HUMOR

Every people and every age has its own peculiar humor, which is not usually appreciated by other peoples and other ages. Yet there are many jokes of Cicero and other Romans which have a universal appeal.

A lady conceals her age

Fabia dīcit sē trīgintā annōs habēre. Vērum est; nam jam vīgintī annōs illam hoc idem dīcere audiō.[1]

1. **Jam vīgintī annōs audiō:** the present tense with a phrase denoting duration of time is translated by the perfect tense.

A witness falsifies his age

"Tū," dīxit Cicerō, "multa falsa dē tuā aetāte dīcis. Sī vērum dīcis, eō tempore cum ūnā dēclāmābāmus [1] nōndum nātus erās."

1. **Unā dēclāmābāmus:** *we were in school together.*

A contagious example

Uxor cuiusdam ex fīcō sē suspenderat. Amīcus eī occurrit et querentī dē morte uxōris dīxit, "Amābō tē,[1] dā mihi sūrculōs [2] ex illā arbore ut seram."

1. **Amābō tē:** *please.* 2. **Sūrculōs:** *sprouts.*

A too careful centurion

Scīpiō Āfricānus, cēnsor, centuriōnem reprehendēbat quod pugnā quādam āfuerat. Centuriō respondit sē cūstōdiae causā in castrīs remānsisse. "Nōn amō," dīxit Scīpiō, "tantam dīligentiam."

"Not at home"

Nāsīca ad[1] poētam Ennium vēnerat eīque ab jānuā quaerentī Ennium [2] serva dīxerat Ennium domī nōn esse. Nāsīca putāvit Ennium domī esse et servam jussū dominī dīxisse; sed abiit. Paucīs post diēbus Ennius ad[1] Nāsīcam vēnit, at cum ad jānuam quaereret, Nāsīca exclāmāvit sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Tuam vōcem," inquit, "cognōscō." Nāsīca respondit, "Homō es impudēns; cum ego tē quaererem, servae tuae dīcentī tē nōn domī esse crēdidī; tū mihi ipsī nōn crēdis?"

1. **Ad:** *to the house of.* 2. **Quaerentī Ennium:** *as he was inquiring for Ennius.*

Valuable assistance

Oppidum cui praeerat Salīnātor, imperātor Rōmānus, ab hostibus captum erat. Aliquot post annīs Fabius Maximus idem oppidum recēperat, et cum Salīnātor dīxisset suō auxiliō oppidum receptum esse, Fabius respondit, "Certē; numquam enim oppidum recēpissem[1] nisi tū anteā perdidissēs."[2]

1. **Numquam recēpissem:** *I never should have recaptured.* 2. **Perdidissēs:** *you had lost.*

A vigilant consul

Canīnius cōnsul quīnque hōrās erat; dē quō Cicerō scrīpsit, "Maximā vigilantiā fuit Canīnius; nam tōtō suō cōnsulātū somnum nōn vīdit."

A big sword and a little man

Lentulus, gener Cicerōnis, homō parvae statūrae erat. Cum eum longō gladiō accīnctum Cicerō vīdisset, exclāmāvit, "Quis generum meum ad gladium alligāvit?"

MEDEA

From a painting by N. Sichel

PART IV. THE ARGONAUTS

LESSON 36

THE GOLDEN FLEECE

The adventure of the Argonauts is one of the most famous of Greek tales. The successful quest of Jason and the Argonauts for the Golden Fleece symbolizes to this day a perilous adventure into the unknown, and Medea, the heroine, has become the type of the vengeful woman.

The Golden Fleece came from a ram which Jupiter had sent to carry off two children, Phrixus and Helle, who were about to be sacrificed through the guile of an evil stepmother. Helle lost her hold on the ram and fell into the strait which was thereafter called the Hellespont. Phrixus reached Colchis on the eastern shore of the Euxine (Black) Sea, and sacrificed the ram to Jupiter. The fleece of gold he hung on a tree guarded by a sleepless dragon. Many an adventurous hero sailed in quest of this priceless treasure, but none save Jason and his companions returned alive.

The chief characters in the story need to be very familiar. Jason was sent on his quest by his wicked uncle, Pelias, who had expelled his brother Aeson, the father of Jason, from the throne of Thessaly, and had, as he believed, caused the death of the boy Jason himself. But Jason escaped and after a number of years returned to his home. Pelias, fearing vengeance at the hands of Jason, persuaded him to go in quest of the Golden Fleece, expecting that, like his predecessors, he would perish in the attempt. Jason consented, built the Argo,

from which the Argonauts derived their name, and sailed away.*

You will be able to form a clearer picture of the voyage of the Argonauts if you will first locate the following

THE VOYAGE OF THE ARGONAUTS

places on the map: Thessalia (Thessaly), Corinth, Colchis, Euxine (Black) Sea, Delphi, Cyzicus, Mysia, Salmydessus, Thracia (Thrace), Phasis river, Athenae (Athens), Attica, Hellespont.

* Fuller accounts of the story will be found in the following books:

HAWTHORNE. Tanglewood Tales, "The Golden Fleece."
GAYLEY. Classic Myths, pp. 230–235.
SABIN. Classical Myths that live Today, pp. 230–236.
BULFINCH. Age of Fable, "The Golden Fleece," pp. 129–137.
TATLOCK. Greek and Roman Mythology, pp. 269–279.
GUERBER. Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 263–274.
FAIRBANKS. The Myths of Greece and Rome, pp. 351–353.
MORRIS. Greek Historical Tales, pp. 23–32.
KINGSLEY. Greek Heroes, "Story of the Argonauts."
MORRIS. The Life and Death of Jason.

LESSON 37

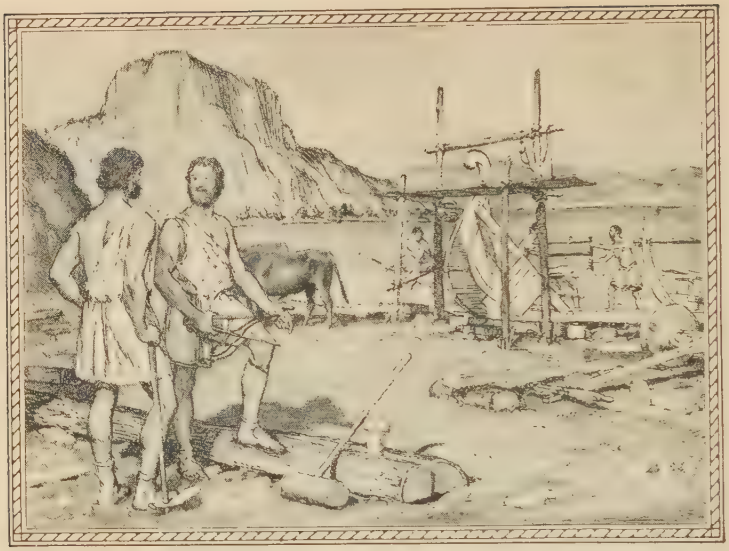
JASON AND HIS UNCLE PELIAS

Jason escapes death at the hands of his wicked uncle, Pelias

155. Erant ōlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn,[1] Peliās alter[2] appellābātur. Aesōn prīmō rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās rēgnī[3] cupiditāte adductus nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Jāsonem, Aesonis fīlium, interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amīcīs Aesonis, ubi sententiam Peliae cognōvērunt, puerum ē tantō perīculō ēripere cōnstituērunt. Noctū igitur Jāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt,[4] et cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās, cum hoc audīvisset, etsī rē vērā[5] magnum gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praebuit et quae causa esset mortis quaesīvit. Illī autem, cum[6] bene intellegerent dolōrem eius falsum esse, nesciō quam fābulam[7] dē morte puerī fīnxērunt.

Pelias is told by the oracle to beware of a man wearing one shoe

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus[8] nē rēgnum suum tantā vī et fraude occupātum āmitteret,[9] amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsit, quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret.[10] Ille igitur quam celerrimē[11] Delphōs sē contulit et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōnstrāvit. Respondit ōrāculum nūllum esse in[12] praesentiā perīculum; monuit tamen Peliam ut, sī quis ūnum calceum gerēns venīret,[13] eum cavēret. Post paucīs annīs Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus erat[14]; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat et certum diem conveniendī dīxerat. Diē



THE BUILDING OF THE ARGO

cōnstitūtō magnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs convēnit; in hīs autem vēnit etiam Jāsōn, quī ā pueritiā apud [15] centaurum quendam habitāverat. Dum tamen iter facit, ūnum ē calceīs in trānseundō [16] nesciō quō flūmine āmīsit.

Jason, wearing one shoe, returns, is recognized by Pelias, and is sent to fetch the Golden Fleece

Jāsōn igitur, cum [17] calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, ūnō pede nūdō [18] in rēgiam pervēnit. Quem cum Peliās vīdisset, subitō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset.[19] Hoc igitur cōnsilium iniit. Rēx erat quīdam Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum quod Phrixus ōlim ibi relīquerat. Cōnstituit igitur Peliās Jāsonī negōtium dare ut hōc vellere [20]

potīrētur[21]; cum[22] enim rēs esset magnī perīculī, eum in itinere peritūrum esse spērābat. Jāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit, et eum cohortātus quid fierī vellet docuit. Ille etsī sciēbat rem esse difficilem, negōtium libenter suscēpit.

Jason has the good ship Argo built for the voyage to Colchis

Quod tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō aberat, sōlus Jāsōn proficīscī nōluit. Dīmīsit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī causam itineris docērent[23] et diem certum conveniendī dicerent.[23] Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī[24] ad armandās nāvēs[25] comportārī jussit, negōtium dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam scientiam nauticārum rērum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret.[26] In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūmptī sunt; Argus enim, quī operī[27] praeerat, tantam dīligentiam adhibēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum trānsportandam[28] nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus in nostrō marī[29] ūtī cōnsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam[30] tōta[31] ē rōbore facta est.

156. Notes

1. **Aesōn:** supply **appellābātur**, to which it is a predicate noun.
2. **Alter . . . alter:** *one . . . the other.*
3. **Rēgnī:** objective genitive with **cupiditāte**, *desire for power.*
4. **Abstulērunt:** from **auferō.**
5. **Rē vērā:** *in reality.*
6. **Cum:** *although*; when **cum** has this meaning, it introduces an adversative clause, the verb of which is always subjunctive.
7. **Nesciō quam fābulam:** *some story or other* (lit. *I know not what story*).
8. **Veritus:** *fearing*; the perfect participle of certain deponent verbs is often translated like a present participle.
9. **Nē . . . āmitteret:** *that he would lose*; a substantive volitive clause, object of **veritus.** Remember that affirmative clauses with verbs of *fearing* are introduced by **nē**, and negative clauses by **ut** (App. § 68).
10. **Quī . . . cōnsuleret:** *to consult*; a relative clause of purpose.

11. **Quam celerrimē:** *as quickly as possible.*

12. **In:** *at.*

13. **Sī quis venīret:** *if anyone should come.*

14. **Factūrus erat:** *was about to make*; the future participle with a form of **sum** expresses intended action.

15. **Apud:** *with.*

16. **In . . . flūmine:** *in crossing some river or other.*

17. **Cum:** *as, since*; when **cum** has this meaning it introduces a causal clause, the verb of which is always subjunctive.

18. **Ūnō pede nūdō:** *with one foot bare*; ablative absolute.

19. **Dēmōnstrāvisset:** translate as if past perfect indicative. The verb of a subordinate clause in an indirect statement is always subjunctive.

20. **Hōc vellere:** what use of the ablative?

21. **Ut potīrētur:** translate this clause as an appositive with **negōtium**, *the task of getting possession of* etc.

22. **Cum:** see note 17.

23. **Quī docērent et dīcerent:** relative clauses showing purpose. See note 10.

24. **Ūsuī:** *of service*; dative expressing purpose.

25. **Ad armandās nāvēs:** *for equipping vessels.*

26. **Negōtium ut aedificāret:** see note 21.

27. **Operī:** dative with the compound verb **praesum.**

28. **Ad multitūdinem trānsportandam:** *for the purpose of transporting a great number.*

29. **Nostrō marī:** *our sea*, that is, the Mediterranean. The writer is supposedly a Roman.

30. **Ad vim perferendam:** *for the purpose of withstanding the force.*

31. **Tōta:** *wholly*; sometimes an adjective may best be translated as an adverb.

157. Causal Clause with *Cum*

You have often seen the cause of an action expressed in Latin by a clause introduced by **quod**, *because, as, since*: as, **Quod Colchis longē aberat, sōlus Jāsōn proficīscī nōluit**, *as Colchis was a long way off, Jason did not care to set out alone.* The verb of such a clause, as you have observed, is in the indicative mood.

The cause of an action may also be expressed by a clause introduced by **cum**, *because, as, since.* This clause has its verb in the subjunctive: as, **Jāsōn, cum calceum nūllō modō recipere posset, ūnō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit**, *as Jason was able in no way to recover his shoe, he came into the palace with one foot bare.*

158. Drill and Review

1. Decline **alter, quīdam, speciēs, vīs, quis, gerēns, nūllus, ūsus, perferendī.** Compare **celerrimē, magnus, difficilis, multus, summus, lātus.** Give the meaning of the following phrases: **post paucōs annōs, post paucīs annīs, posterō diē, rē vērā, quam celerrimē, quam ob causam, ad trānsportandum.**

2. Read, explain the use of the case of the italicized words, and translate:

1. Peliās, *Aesone* ē rēgnō *expulsō*, *Jāsonī* nocēre volēbat. 2. Sed Jāsōn, *cui* erant multī amīcī, *ē perīculō* ā quibusdam *ex amīcīs* ēreptus est. 3. Peliās, vir *rēgnī* cupidus, amīcum *Delphōs* ad cōnsulendum ōrāculum mīsit. 4. Posteā Jāsōn *Argō* imperāvit ut nāvem aedificāret. 5. Argus, quī *huic negōtiō* praeerat, in aedificandō *magnā dīligentiā* ūsus est. 6. Respōnsum, quod lēgātus *Delphīs* tulit, dignum *memoriā* rēgī vīsum est. 7. Argus *rērum nauticārum* perītior *cēterīs nautīs* erat. 8. Jāsōn *domō* prōgreditur ut *vellere aureō* potiātur.

3. Write in Latin:

1. To get possession of this fleece was a task of very great danger. 2. When he arrived home, Jason had one shoe (*use dative of possessor*). 3. It pleased Jason to be in charge of a ship and many men. 4. In order to withstand the storms, Jason made use of a wider vessel. 5. Our vessels have less width; but they surpass (**praestō**) Jason's vessel in speed.

LESSON 38

THE ARGONAUTS ARRIVE IN COLCHIS

Jason and his company of heroes set sail

159. Interea is diēs appetēbat quem Jāsōn per nūntiōs ēdīxerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī, quōs aut reī novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. Trāditum est[1] autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem, Orpheum,[2] citharoedum praeclārissimum, Thēseum,[3] Castorem,[4] multōsque aliōs quōrum nōmina sunt nōtissima. Ex hīs Jāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia perīcula subeunda[5] parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adjūnxit. Tum, paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus,[6] magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.[7]

Their unfortunate experience on the island of Cyzicus

Haud multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in istā nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cyzicum attigērunt et, ē nāvī ēgressī, ā rēge illīus regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorātī, ad sōlis occāsum rūrsus solvērunt[7]; at, postquam pauca mīlia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī erant magnō cum perīculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum[8] nox esset obscūra, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et nāvem inimīcam vēnisse arbitrātī,[9] arma rapuērunt et eōs ēgredī prohibēbant.[10] Ācriter in lītore pugnātum est,[11] et rēx ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus

est. Mox tamen, cum jam dīlūcēsceret,[12] sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre et arma abjēcērunt. Argonautae autem, cum rēgem occīsum esse vidērent, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

In Mysia they lose Hylas, one of their number

Postrīdiē eius diēī [13] Jāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās jam cōnsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca mīlia passuum prōgressus, ante noctem Mȳsiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorīs [14] exspectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam quam sēcum habērent [15] jam dēficere; quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautīs in terram ēgressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī, dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem, quae fontem colēbant, cum juvenem vīdissent, eī [16] persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, eum vī abstulērunt.

Comitēs eius, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre affectī, diū frūstrā quaerēbant. Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vēstīgia puerī longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Jāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

At Salmydessus they learn of the dreadful punishment of Phineus

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam ad oppidum Salmydēssum nāvem appulērunt, in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi cum ab incolīs quaesīvissent quis rēgnum eius regiōnis obtinēret,[17] certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dīrō quōdam suppliciō afficī, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in fīliōs suōs praebuisset.[18] Cuius supplicī hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Jove mōnstra quaedam speciē horribilī, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpȳiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam

molestiam afferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat,[19] veniēbant et cibum appositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent,[20] Phīneus famē[21] paene mortuus est.

They save Phineus from the Harpies

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant, cum Argonautae pervēnērunt. Phīneus autem, simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est.[22] Sciēbat enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quīn sibi auxilium ferrent.[23] Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit quī Jāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret.[24] Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in perīculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse, sī illī remedium repperissent.[25] Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt, et, ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpȳiae cēnāculum intrāvērunt et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum gladiīs volucrēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse,[26] Zētēs et Calais, quī ālīs īnstrūctī erant, in āera[27] sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpȳiae, reī novitāte perterritae statim aufūgērunt, neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

They pass through the Symplegades

Hōc factō, Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam referret, Jāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vītāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine, quae ā Jove positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis[28] ad Colchida pervenīret. Hae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant et, sī quid[29] in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid faciendum esset,[30] Jāsōn, sublātīs ancorīs, nāvem solvit, et, lēnī ventō prōvectus, mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit. Tum in prōrā stāns columbam quam in manū tenēbat

THE ARGONAUTS DRIVE THE HARPIES AWAY

ēmīsit. Illa rēctā viā [31] per medium spatium volāvit, et, priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsit, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concurrerent,[32] Argonautae, bene intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt et nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, deīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō perīculō ēreptī erant; omnēs enim bene sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēlīciter ēvēnisse.

160. Notes

1. **Trāditum est:** *it is said* (lit. *it has been handed down*); impersonal use of the verb (§ 110).

2. **Herculem, Orpheum:** what can you tell about these heroes?

3. **Thēseum:** the most celebrated exploit of this Athenian hero was the slaying of the Minotaur, a monster, half man and half bull, living in the Labyrinth in Crete.

4. **Castorem:** brother of Pollux, and famed as a tamer of horses.

5. **Ad omnia perīcula subeunda:** *to undergo all dangers.*

6. **Nactus:** from **nancīscor.**

7. **Solvit** (supply **nāvem**): *set sail* (lit. *set loose the ship*).

8. **Cum:** *since* (see page 258, note 17).

9. **Arbitrātī:** *thinking* (see page 257, note 8).

10. **Eōs ēgredī prohibēbant:** *prevented them from landing* (lit. *prevented them to land*).

11. **Pugnātum est:** *the fight went on* (see note 1).

12. **Cum dīlūcēsceret:** *when it was getting to be light.*

13. **Postrīdiē eius diēī:** *on the following day.*

14. **In ancorīs:** *at anchor.*

15. **Quam habērent:** translate as if past indicative (see page 258, note 19).

16. **Eī:** dative with the special verb **persuādeō**; the direct object of **persuādeō** is the clause **ut . . . manēret.**

17. **Obtinēret:** why subjunctive?

18. **Praebuisset:** translate as if past perfect indicative (see page 258, note 19).

19. **Accubuerat:** the writer attributes to the Greeks the Roman custom of taking a half-reclining position at meals.

20. **Quae cum ita essent:** *and so* (lit. *since these things were so*).

21. **Famē**: ablative of cause.

22. **Gāvīsus est**: from gaudeō, a semi-deponent verb.

23. **Quīn ferrent**: *that they would bring.*

24. **Quī . . . vocāret**: *to call* (see page 257, note 10).

25. **Sī repperissent**: *if they found.* Why does this subordinate clause have its verb in the subjunctive mood?

26. **Hoc nihil prōdesse**: *this had no effect.*

27. **Āera**: accusative singular; a Greek form for that case.

28. **Nē quis**: *that no one.*

29. **Quid**: *anything.*

30. **Quid faciendum esset**: *what had to be done.* **Faciendum** is a future passive participle used in combination with a form of **sum** to express what must be done.

31. **Rēctā viā**: *in a straight line.*

32. **Antequam concurrerent**: *before they should rush together.*

161. Drill and Review

1. Read, explain the mood of the italicized words, and translate:

1. Trāditum est multōs ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae ā Jāsone *convocātōs esse.* 2. Nymphae juvenī persuādēre cōnābantur nē ad nāvem *reverteret.* 3. Quis scit cūr Jāsōn quōsdam ex Argonautīs in terram ēgredī *jusserit?* 4. Jāsonī vīsum est pauca mīlia passuum *prōgredī.* 5. Jāsōn cognōvit quārē rēx crūdēlissimō quōdam suppliciō *affectus esset.*

2. Write in Latin:

1. The king hoped that the Argonauts would bring him help. 2. He gave orders that Jason and his companions should be called to the palace. 3. Jason at once saw in what great danger Phineus was. 4. It seemed best to the king to promise that he would give a reward. 5. Jason then ordered two of his men to attack the monsters from above.

MEDEA CHARMS THE DRAGON

LESSON 39

THE WINNING OF THE GOLDEN FLEECE

King Aeëtes assigns Jason a heavy task

162. Brevī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in fīnibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi, cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille, cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrā commōtus est, et diū negāvit sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Jāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, prōmīsit sē vellus trāditūrum esse, sī Jāsōn

labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset [1]; et cum Jāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Prīmum jungendī erant [2] duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, hīs jūnctīs, ager quīdam arandus erat et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs audītīs, Jāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem bene gerendī rem āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

Medea gives Jason a magic ointment

At Mēdēa, rēgis fīlia, Jāsonem adamāvit, et, ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat.[3] Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Jāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent,[4] Mēdēa, quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat, hoc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, ex urbe ēvāsit; et, postquam in montēs fīnitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum, sūcō expressō, unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfirmāret.[5] Hōc factō, Jāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem ut eō diē corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Jāsōn, etsī paene omnibus [6] magnitūdine et vīribus corporis praestābat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnstiterat), tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum esse [7] cēnsēbat.

Jason plows a field and sows the dragon's teeth

Ubi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīxerat, Jāsōn, ortā lūce,[8] cum sociīs ad locum cōnstitūtum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quō taurī inclūsī erant. Tum, portīs apertīs,[9] taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficultāte jugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil contrā Jāsonem valēre,[10] magnopere mīrātus est; nesciēbat enim fīliam suam auxilium eī dedisse. Tum Jāsōn,

omnibus aspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam dīligentiam praebuit ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus cōnficeret. Hōc factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit; quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā cum dīligentiā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī essent [11] virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur.

From the teeth armed men spring up and fight one another

Nōndum tamen Jāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat; imperāverat enim eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gignerentur [12] sōlus interficeret. Postquam omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Jāsōn, lassitūdine exanimātus, quiētī sē trādidit, dum virī istī gignerentur.[13] Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum tamen, ē somnō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum erat cognōvit; nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis, gladiīs galeīsque armātī, mīrum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Jāsōn cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omittendum esse [14] putābat; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim Mēdēa praecēperat) in mediōs virōs conjēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt et, cum [15] quisque sibi id saxum (nesciō cūr) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictīs gladiīs, inter sē pugnāre coepērunt et, cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī, vulneribus cōnfectī, ā Jāsone nūllō negōtiō interfectī sunt.

Medea in fear of her father flees to the Argonauts, and Jason promises to take her away with him

Rēx Aeētēs, ubi Jāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse cognōvit, īrā graviter commōtus est; intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset.[16] Mēdēa autem, cum [17] intellegeret sē in magnō perīculō futūram esse sī in rēgiā manēret,[18] fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit. Omnibus rēbus igitur ad fugam parātīs,

mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē[19] ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Jāsonis sē prōjēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit eum nē in tantō discrīmine mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuisset.[20] Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per eius auxilium ē magnō perīculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit et, postquam causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam prīmum[21] eam in nāvī suā āvectūrum esse.

Jason gets the Golden Fleece

Postrīdiē eius diēī Jāsōn cum sociīs suīs, ortā lūce, nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem idōneam nactī ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrābat. Cum eō vēnissent, Jāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et, sociīs ad mare relictīs quī praesidiō nāvī essent,[22] ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās sē contulit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam prōgressus, vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēnsum vīdit. Id tamen auferre erat summae difficultātis[23]; nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam speciē terribilī arborem cūstōdiēbat. Tum Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rāmum quem dē arbore proximā dēripuerat venēnō īnfēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum appropinquāvit et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertīs adventum exspectābat, venēnō sparsit; proinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit, Jāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.[24]

163. Notes

1. **Sī Jāsōn perfēcisset:** *if Jason performed* (see page 258, note 19).

2. **Jungendī erant:** *had to be yoked, must be yoked.* What kind of action is expressed by the future passive participle and a form of **sum** (see page 265, note 30)? How shall you translate **ager arandus erat** and **dentēs serendī (erant)** below?

3. **Rem aegrē ferēbat:** *took the matter to heart* (lit. *bore the thing sickly*).

4. **Quae cum ita essent:** see page 264, note 20.

5. **Quod aleret . . . cōnfirmāret:** *which should support and strengthen.*

6. **Omnibus:** what use of the dative?

7. **Hoc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum esse:** *that this advice ought not to be disregarded.* See note 2.

8. **Ortā lūce:** *at dawn.* What is the literal translation of this ablative absolute?

9. **Portīs apertīs:** ablative absolute.

10. **Nihil valēre:** *could do nothing, had no power.* Cf. **plūrimum valēre.**

11. **Sparsī essent:** translate as if past perfect indicative.

12. **Quī . . . gignerentur:** *who should spring from the teeth.*

13. **Dum . . . gignerentur:** *until these men should spring up.*

14. **Nōn omittendum esse:** *should not be disregarded.*

15. **Cum:** *because, as.*

16. **Quīn Mēdēa tulisset:** *that Medea had given*; clauses introduced by **quīn** after verbs of *doubting* have their verbs in the subjunctive.

17. **Cum:** does this word mean *when, since,* or *although* here?

18. **Sī manēret:** *if she remained.* Can you tell why the verb is subjunctive?

19. **Quam celerrimē:** see page 258, note 11.

20. **Quae . . . prōfuisset:** *who had helped him so much.* **Tantum** is an adverb here. Why is **eī** dative?

21. **Quam prīmum:** *as soon as possible.* Cf. **quam celerrimē** above.

22. **Quī . . . essent:** *who were to be a guard for the ship.* The clause expresses purpose. **Praesidiō** is dative of purpose, and **nāvī** dative of reference.

23. **Summae difficultātis:** (*a task*) *of great difficulty*; the descriptive genitive is here used as a predicate adjective.

24. **Pedem rettulit:** *withdrew* (lit. *bore his foot back*).

164. Drill and Review

1. Read, explain the type of clause italicized, and translate:

1. *Cum Aeētēs cognōvisset* quid Jāsōn postulāret, duōs difficillimōs labōrēs prōposuit, *ut ille morerētur.* 2. Tālis erat nātūra unguentī *ut corpus Jāsonis cōnfirmāret.* 3. *Cum rēx Jāsonem taurīs jugum impōnere posse vidēret,* nesciēbat quis illī auxilium dedisset. 4. Mēdēa

tantō in perīculō erat *ut in rēgiā nōn manēret.* 5. Mēdēa, quae artis medicīnae perīta erat, venēnum tulerat *ut dracō somnō oppressus dormīret.*

2. Write in Latin:

1. Jason proceeded a few miles through the forest in order to find the fleece. 2. When Medea had thrown herself at the feet of Jason, she begged him not to desert her. 3. She had aided him so much that he did not refuse help. 4. When he had got possession of the fleece, Jason went back as swiftly as possible to the ship.

LESSON 40

THE RETURN FROM COLCHIS AND THE DEATH OF JASON

Jason returns to the Argo

165. Dum autem ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī erant, animō anxiō reditum Jāsonis exspectābant; id enim negōtium summī esse perīculī[1] intellegēbant. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā exspectāvērunt, dē eius salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus accidisset.[2] Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum esse sibi[3] cēnsuērunt, ut auxilium ducī ferrent; sed, dum proficīscī parant, lūmen quoddam repente cōnspiciunt, mīrum in modum inter silvās refulgēns, et magnopere mīrātī quae causa esset eius reī, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum vēnissent, Jāsonī et Mēdēae[4] advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis eius causam esse cognōvērunt. Omnī timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et deīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quod rēs tam fēlīciter ēvēnerat.

The Argonauts set sail for home and are pursued by the angry king

Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscendērunt et, sublātīs ancorīs, prīmā vigiliā[5] solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī jam ante inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō,[6] ubi cognōvit fīliam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse, sed etiam ad vellus auferendum[7] auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūcī jussit et, mīlitibus impositīs, fugientēs[8] īnsecūtus est. Argonautae, quī bene sciēbant rem in discrīmine[9] esse, summīs vīribus

rēmīs contendēbant. Cum[10] tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingentī esset magnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritāte quā Colchī prōgredī poterant. Quae cum ita essent, paene ā Colchīs sequentibus captī sunt; neque enim longius intererat quam quō tēlum adicī posset.[11] At Mēdēa, cum vīdisset quō in locō rēs essent, paene omnī spē dēpositā, īnfandum hoc cōnsilium cēpit.

Medea adopts a fearful expedient

Erat in nāve Argonautārum fīlius quīdam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa, ex urbe fugiēns, sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōnstituit interficere eō cōnsiliō, ut, membrīs eius in mare conjectīs, cursum Colchōrum impedīret; certō enim sciēbat[12] Aeētam, cum membra fīlī vīdisset, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse. Neque opīniō eam fefellit. Omnia enim ita ēvēnērunt ut Mēdēa spērāverat. Aeētēs ubi prīmum membra vīdit, ea colligendī causā nāvem tenērī jussit. Dum tamen ea gerunt, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox ē cōnspectū hostium auferēbantur; neque prius[13] fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Ēridanum pervēnērunt. Aeētēs nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse[14] arbitrātus, sī longius prōgressus esset,[15] animō dēmissō domum revertit, ut fīlī corpus ad sepultūram daret.

After his return to Thessaly Jason makes a bargain with Pelias

Tandem post multa perīcula Jāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus, ad rēgem Peliam, quī rēgnum adhūc obtinēbat, statim sē contulit, et, vellere aureō mōnstrātō, ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi trāderētur; Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Jāsōn vellus rettulisset,[16] sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum esse. Postquam Jāsōn quid fierī vellet ostendit, Peliās prīmum nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem trīstitiā tacitus permānsit. Tandem ita locūtus est:

"Vidēs mē aetāte jam esse cōnfectum, neque dubium est quīn [17] diēs suprēmus mihi appropinquet. Liceat igitur mihi,[18] dum vīvam,[19] hoc rēgnum obtinēre; cum autem tandem dēcesserō, tū mihi [20] succēdēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus, Jāsōn respondit ṣē id factūrum esse quod ille rogāvisset.[21]

MEDEA'S MAGIC

Medea gives an exhibition of her magical powers

Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit, et, rēgnī cupiditāte adducta, cōnstituit mortem rēgī [22] per dolum inferre. Hōc cōnstitūtō, ad fīliās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est: "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte jam esse cōnfectum, neque ad perferendum labōrem [23] rēgnandī satis valēre.[24] Vultisne eum rūrsus juvenem fierī?" Tum fīliae rēgis, hīs audītīs, ita respondērunt: "Num hoc fierī potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene juvenis factus est?" At Mēdēa respondit: "Scītis mē medicīnae summam habēre scientiam. Nunc igitur vōbīs

dēmōnstrābō quō modō haec rēs fierī possit." Hīs dictīs, cum arietem aetāte cōnfectum interfēcisset, membra eius in vās aēneum posuit et, igne supposītō, in aquam herbās quāsdam īnfūdit. Tum, dum aqua effervēsceret,[25] carmen magicum cantābat. Mox ariēs ē vāse exsiluit et, vīribus refectīs, per agrōs currēbat.

The daughters of Pelias are led to try an experiment on their father

Dum fīliae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat[26] medicīna. Vōs igitur, sī vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās conicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbō." Quod ubi audītum est, fīliae rēgis cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn omittendum esse[27] putāvērunt. Patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt, et membra eius in vās aēneum conjēcērunt; nihil autem dubitābant quīn hoc maximē eī prōfutūrum esset.[28] At rēs omnīnō aliter ēvēnit ac[29] spērāverant; Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque postquam diū frūstrā exspectāvērunt, patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum conjuge suō rēgnum acceptūram esse; sed cīvēs, cum intellegerent quō modō Peliās periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt. Itaque, Jāsone et Mēdēā ē rēgnō expulsīs, Acastum[30] rēgem creāvērunt.

Medea makes a gift to Glauce, her rival

Post haec Jāsōn et Mēdēa, ē Thessaliā expulsī, ad urbem Corinthum vēnērunt, cuius urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum obtinēbat. Erat autem Creontī[31] fīlia ūna, nōmine Glaucē. Quam cum vīdisset, Jāsōn cōnstituit Mēdēam uxōrem suam repudiāre eō cōnsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātrimōnium dūceret. At Mēdēa, ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, īrā graviter commōta, jūre jūrandō cōnfirmāvit sē tantam in-

jūriam ultūram esse.[32] Hoc[33] igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit summā arte contextam et variīs colōribus tīnctam. Hanc mortiferō quōdam venēnō īnfēcit, cuius vīs tālis erat ut, sī quis eam vestem induisset,[34] corpus eius quasi ignī ūrerētur. Hōc factō, vestem ad Glaucēn mīsit. Illa autem, nihil malī suspicāns, dōnum libenter accēpit, et vestem novam, mōre fēminārum,[35] statim induit.

Medea escapes to Athens. Jason is accidentally killed

Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum, summō cruciātū affecta, ē vītā excessit. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa, furōre atque āmentiā impulsa, fīliōs suōs necāvit. Tum magnum sibi fore[36] perīculum arbitrāta sī diūtius ibi manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Hōc cōnstitūtō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō perīculō auxilium sibi praebēret. Sōl autem, hīs precibus commōtus, currum mīsit, cui erant jūnctī dracōnēs ālīs īnstrūctī. Mēdēa, nōn omittendam esse tantam occāsiōnem arbitrāta, currum ascendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit.

Jāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Nam, sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum, sub umbrā nāvis suae quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta[37] steterat, in eam partem ubi Jāsōn jacēbat subitō dēlāpsa, virum īnfēlīcem oppressit.

166. Notes

1. **Summī perīculī:** descriptive genitive used in the predicate. See page 270, note 23.

2. **Quīn . . . accidisset:** *that some accident had befallen him.* See page 270, note 16.

3. **Mātūrandum esse sibi:** *that they ought to hurry.*

4. **Jāsonī et Mēdēae:** dative with the compound verb **occurrō**; *they met Jason* etc.

5. **Prīmā vigiliā**: *during the first watch.* The Romans divided the night into four parts called **vigiliae**; the first watch included half the time from sunset to midnight.

6. **Inimīcō fuerat animō**: *had been ill-disposed*; descriptive ablative used as a predicate adjective.

7. **Ad vellus auferendum**: *in carrying off the fleece* (lit. *for the purpose of* etc.).

8. **Fugientēs**: *the fugitives* (lit. *the fleeing*).

9. **In discrīmine**: *at a crisis.*

10. **Cum**: which kind of clause is here introduced by **cum**?

11. **Quam . . . posset**: *than a javelin could be hurled.*

12. **Certō sciēbat**: *she was sure* or *she knew for certain.*

13. **Prius**: translate with the following **quam**.

14. **Nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse**: *that he would accomplish nothing* (lit. *that it would avail him nothing*). Why is **sibi** dative?

15. **Sī prōgressus esset**: *if he should go farther.* Why is the verb subjunctive?

16. **Sī . . . rettulisset**: *if Jason brought back.*

17. **Neque dubium est quīn**: *and there is no doubt that.* For the mood of the verb of the **quīn** clause see page 270, note 16.

18. **Liceat mihi**: *allow me.* Why is the verb subjunctive?

19. **Dum vīvam**: *as long as I live.*

20. **Mihi**: dative with the compound verb **succēdō**.

21. **Rogāvisset**: translate as if past perfect indicative.

22. **Rēgī**: the compound verb **īnferō** has both an indirect object (**rēgī**) and a direct object (**mortem**).

23. **Ad perferendum labōrem**: *to endure the effort.*

24. **Satis valēre**: *is strong enough.*

25. **Dum . . . effervēsceret**: *till the water should begin to boil.*

26. **Quantum valeat**: cf. **satis valēre** and **nihil valēre**.

27. **Nōn omittendum esse**: see page 270, note 14.

28. **Hoc prōfutūrum esset**: *this was going to benefit.*

29. **Ac**: *than.*

30. **Acastum**: a son of Pelias.

31. **Creontī**: dative of the possessor; see Appendix, section 21.

32. **Ultūram esse**: from **ulcīscor**.

33. **Hoc**: *the following.*

34. **Sī quis . . . induisset**: *if anyone put on the garment.*

35. **Mōre fēminārum**: *after the habit of women.*

36. **Fore = futūrum esse**.

37. **Ērēcta**: *upright.*

167. Drill and Review

1. Find in the Latin of this lesson at least one example of the following constructions; translate each example:

An indirect question.
A clause expressing cause.
A clause expressing time.
A present participle used adjectively; one used as the equivalent of a clause.
A perfect participle used adjectively; one used as the equivalent of a clause.
A dative with special verbs.
A dative of possession.
A genitive of the whole.
A clause of purpose.
A clause of result.
An ablative absolute.
An ablative with deponents.
An ablative of respect.
An ablative of description; a genitive of description.
An ablative of cause.
A future infinitive.
A gerund without an object; a gerund with an object.
A volitive subjunctive.
A substantive volitive clause.

2. Review Word List 7, in the Appendix, page 46.

THE IDES OF MARCH

PART V. CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL

LESSON 41

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

The influence of Julius Caesar upon the history of the world has probably been greater than that of any other man. The estimate held by men of his own day of the pinnacle of power to which he had attained is well described by Shakespeare in his "Julius Caesar":

> He doth bestride the narrow world
> Like a Colossus, and we petty men
> Walk under his huge legs and peep about
> To find ourselves dishonorable graves.

Let us trace the steps by which Caesar, a citizen of a republic, became gradually the most powerful man in it, and was able finally to overthrow it and make himself supreme ruler.

Caesar was born of patrician family in 100 B.C., at about the time that Marius, his famous uncle, the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutones, was holding the consulship for the sixth time.

Service to the state was the only career deemed appropriate for a young noble. This meant either a political or a military career. Caesar determined upon the former. When he came to enter politics, his noble birth would naturally have led him to seek advancement through the party of the nobility, the

senatorial faction, or **optimātēs**; but strong personal influences led him, even in early youth, to attach himself to the democratic party, the **populārēs**.

You have seen (Lesson 32) that the Gracchi, a generation before, were the first to create a definite party of opposition to the senate with a democratic program of reform. Marius, a soldier rather than a statesman, was the recognized leader of this popular party during Caesar's youth. He had married Julia, an aunt of Caesar's; and in the household of Marius, where he was doubtless a frequent visitor, the young Caesar early imbibed the democratic doctrines to which he adhered throughout his life.

The political parties of the period must not be thought of as having formal platforms and designated candidates like political parties of today. Yet the conflict of aims between the senatorial party, or optimates, on the one hand, and the democratic party, or populares, on the other, was a real and fundamental one. The senatorial party, with the senate as its main stronghold, aimed to keep the control of the state in the hands of a comparatively small number. They wished to keep the magistrates and assemblies of the people subservient to the senate, and to prevent the passage of laws that would interfere with their privileges or give more power to the people. The democratic party aimed to make the assembly of the people the chief governing body in the state, and to make the senate and the magistrates obey the will of that body. They desired the passage of measures favoring the common people, such as the distribution of public land, protection of the farmers against importations of cheap grain, reduction of slave labor. The optimates resisted bitterly these reforms, which not only meant the loss of control of the state by the senate, but also affected the personal interests and investments of individual senators.

Sulla was the leader of the optimates, or senatorial party, during Caesar's early years. The bitter rivalry existing be-

tween Sulla and Marius at length resulted in a terrible civil war, with bloody proscriptions by the victors. When Sulla finally got the upper hand and was made dictator, there occurred an incident which showed clearly both Caesar's political position and his personal courage.

Caesar in his seventeenth year had married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the most prominent leaders of the popular party. Sulla ordered him to divorce her. Caesar, though a mere youth, defied the great dictator and refused. In fear of his life, he made his escape from Rome in disguise. Through the influence of his friends, pardon was at last obtained from Sulla, who is said to have remarked, "In this young Caesar I see many Mariuses."

Caesar, however, could not hope for political advancement under the rule of Sulla. So he went to Asia Minor, where Rome was engaged in minor wars, and joined the army. At the siege of Mytilene he was awarded the civic crown of oak leaves, the most highly esteemed of military decorations, granted only to the soldier who had saved the life of a Roman citizen in battle, had killed his enemy, and had held his position without retreating. He won the honor at the age of twenty.

After Sulla's death Caesar returned to Rome. Desiring to perfect himself in oratory, the most effective means of political advancement in Rome, he went to Rhodes to study under the most eminent teacher of the time. It was while he was journeying to Rhodes that his famous encounter with the pirates occurred.

The ship on which he traveled was captured near Miletus, and he was kept a prisoner for over a month, until members of his party could return and bring a ransom of more than fifty thousand dollars. As a captive he joined in the sports of the pirates, and jokingly told them that some day he would come back and crucify them. As soon as he was released, he at once secured some ships at Miletus and, true to his

word, returned, captured the stronghold of the pirates, and slew them all. At the time of this exploit Caesar was twenty-four years of age.

For the next sixteen years he followed the usual career of a Roman in politics, depending, however, upon the support of the common people and neglecting no means to increase his popularity with them. He was successively elected quaestor, aedile, and praetor, and as propraetor * governed Spain.

In 60 B.C. he returned to Rome; and with the consulship, the final goal of a political career, now within sight, he entered upon the strenuous period of his life, which was to close sixteen years later with his assassination.

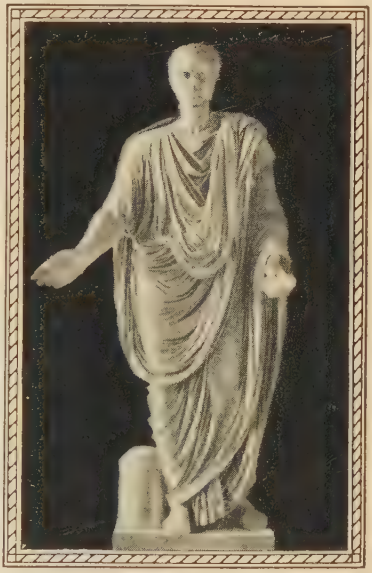
Nothing that Caesar did during the first forty years of his life would have made his name famous, but his own genius and the favor of circumstances combined to make the last sixteen years of his life of momentous consequence to himself, to Rome, and to the world.

The first and most significant circumstance was the fact that the great Pompey, whom unparalleled military successes had made the national hero, and who had just returned from conquests in the East that had increased Roman territory by a third and doubled the revenues of the state, was thoroughly disgruntled by his treatment at the hands of the senate, of which he had long been regarded as the stanch champion. He was persuaded by Caesar to support him in his candidacy for the consulship. Crassus, the wealthiest Roman of his time, was induced to join them. The political combination formed by these three men, and known as the first triumvirate, became so powerful through their united influence that for the next decade it controlled the destinies of the state. Upon it rests the amazing career of Caesar.

With the details of the way in which the triumvirate worked we are not here concerned. Suffice it to say that

* The term of office of a praetor or of a consul was regularly extended over a second year, during which he governed a province as propraetor or proconsul.

through its influence Caesar became consul, and in 58 B.C. entered upon his memorable proconsulship, or governorship, of Gaul. By an unprecedented action of the popular assembly he was given this office for five years, and later for an additional five years, so that his governorship lasted until 49 B.C. Of Caesar's activities during these ten years you will read in his own words.



CAESAR AS CONSUL

During the latter part of his proconsulship the powerful triumvirate gradually disintegrated. Crassus was killed in battle. Julia, the daughter of Caesar, whom Pompey had married to cement their friendship, died. Pompey and Caesar became more and more distrustful of each other, and the senate, under the influence of Cicero, was constantly seeking to win Pompey back to his former allegiance. Finally, as in the case of Marius and Sulla, civil war broke out between Caesar and Pompey. The victory of Caesar at Pharsalia and the death of Pompey in Egypt left Caesar master of the entire Roman world.

As dictator, Caesar undertook a complete reorganization of the Roman state. He saw clearly that the days of the republic were over. The common people of Rome were no longer the Romans of the old days; they had not the capacity to direct the affairs of state. The senate likewise had failed to impose order, the first requisite of a stable government. A democratic empire was the solution which Caesar devised.

This means a government by a single ruler, who depends for his position upon the support of the people and who rules in the interest of the many rather than of the few.

During the four years between his assumption of supreme power and his assassination Caesar's amazing genius and indefatigable energy displayed itself in many ways. He extended Roman citizenship. He regulated the government of municipalities, reorganized the senate, appointed most of its members, and developed a plan for provincial government which should cure age-long abuses. He became perpetual dictator. By law he nominated most of the magistrates and controlled the election of the others. No meeting of the senate or assembly was called except with his consent. No laws were passed except such as he approved. In addition, he reformed the calendar, began the construction of many public works, and planned other ambitious projects.

Caesar had treated his defeated opponents with unprecedented clemency. The bloody proscriptions of Marius and Sulla were not repeated. But there were many patriotic men in Rome who did not realize that the days of the republic were gone forever and who believed that, if Caesar were killed, the old republic would be restored. Among these misguided patriots were Brutus and Cassius. The story of the assassination of Caesar on the ides of March, 44 B. C., is familiar. But the outcome was another triumvirate, another civil war, the overthrow of the republican forces under Brutus, and the final establishment of an empire, with Augustus, the adopted son of Caesar, as the first emperor.

COLLATERAL READING ON CAESAR

A. Accounts of Caesar in General Histories

1. HAAREN and POLAND. Famous Men of Rome, pp. 171–202 (Pompey and Caesar).
2. HARDING. The City of the Seven Hills, pp. 184–211 (Julius Caesar, the Conqueror of Gaul).

3. CHURCH. Roman Life in the Days of Cicero, pp. 151–192 (Caesar and Pompey).
4. HAMILTON. Ancient Rome: The Lives of Great Men, pp. 141–159 (Caesar); pp. 108–121 (Pompey); pp. 121–130 (Crassus).
5. CLARKE. The Story of Caesar.
6. TAPPAN. The Story of the Roman People, pp. 136–186 (Rise of Pompey; Caesar and the Triumvirate).
7. MOREY. Outlines of Roman History, chap. 21.
8. KIPLING. Puck of Pook's Hill (stories about the Roman occupation of Britain: The Winged Hat; Centurion of the Thirtieth; On the Great Wall).
9. HAMILTON. Outlines of Roman History, chap. 9 (The Triumvirate); chap. 10 (Caesar).
10. GUERBER. Story of the Romans, pp. 170–184.

B. Lives of Caesar

1. ABBOTT. Julius Caesar.
2. FOWLER. Julius Caesar.
3. FROUDE. Julius Caesar: A Sketch.
4. OMAN. Seven Roman Statesmen, pp. 234–340.
5. WHITE. Plutarch's Lives, pp. 326–360.

C. Novels about Caesar and Gaul

1. DAVIS. A Friend of Caesar.
2. WELLS. With Caesar's Legions.
3. MITCHISON. The Conquered.
4. WHITEHEAD. The Standard Bearer.

LESSON 42

THE GAULS

The Gauls, or Celts, with whom Caesar's narrative is mainly concerned, were one of the great family of Aryan races which (as you have already learned) descended from their

THE DYING GAUL

This statue of a Gaul who has been mortally wounded was set up by the king of Pergamum to commemorate his defeat of the Gauls who had invaded Asia Minor. It is now in the Capitoline Museum at Rome

home in the northeastern part of Europe and spread over the continent in successive waves of migration. This occurred a thousand years or more before the foundation of Rome. The chief European branches of this Aryan family were the Greeks, Romans, Celts, Germans, and Slavs. At the dawn of history the branches which were the ancestors of the Greeks

and Romans had migrated to the peninsulas in which we find them. There they settled, built cities, and became civilized. But the Celts, the Germans, and the Slavs, other branches of the same Indo-European family, continued to rove about more or less, and long remained barbarian. They were naturally as capable as the Italians, but in their home in central Europe they had fewer means of learning the customs and arts of civilized life.

THE GALATIAN AND HIS WIFE

This statue, while probably set up to commemorate a victory over the Gauls in Asia Minor, is a tribute to the unconquerable love of liberty which characterized them. The Galatian prefers death to captivity, and his wife shares his fate

The Gallic Migration

The Celts (Gauls) had moved southward and westward from their early home. For a time they occupied the whole of central Europe from France to the Danube. The Gauls who penetrated into Italy and captured and burned Rome in 390 B.C. were kinsmen of the Gauls whom Caesar conquered in France over three hundred years later. Men of the same race invaded Greece, and reached Delphi; they overflowed across the Hellespont into Asia Minor, giving their name to a region afterwards called Galatia. To the descendants of these Galatians Paul

wrote one of his epistles. This barbarian invasion left its impression on the art of the Greeks, as the two preceding illustrations testify.

Cisalpine Gaul

The Gauls who invaded Italy finally settled in the northern part, on both sides of the river Po, and gave their name to this territory, which was afterwards known as **Gallia Cisalpīna**, "Gaul on this side of the Alps." They had been only partially subdued by the Romans at the time Hannibal invaded Italy, and they joined enthusiastically in his attack upon Rome. But a century and a half later, when Gallia Cisalpina was assigned to Caesar as one of his provinces, it had long been thoroughly subdued and completely Romanized.

The Gauls in France and Belgium

The Gauls, or Celts, who settled in France and Belgium (Transalpine Gaul) and in Britain still remained free, but they were pressed upon by the Germans on the east and by the Romans on the south. The Germans, under pressure from other migrating races farther east, sought to cross the Rhine, subdue or expel the Gauls, and locate in their fertile territory. In 113 B.C. (how many years before Caesar's governorship?) a vast advance horde of these Germans, the Cimbri and Teutones, crossed the Rhine, overran Gaul and neighboring countries for ten years, and were only finally defeated, in their attempted invasion of Italy, by the military genius of Marius, Caesar's uncle. Another similar movement was beginning under the German king, Ariovistus, at the very moment when Caesar arrived in the Province, and it became Caesar's settled policy to keep the Germans on the eastern side of the Rhine.

The "Province"

The Romans had already conquered a part of Transalpine Gaul. About eighty years before Caesar's governorship southern Gaul along the Mediterranean had been conquered and made into a Roman province. Military roads had been constructed, enabling Roman armies to pass by land from Italy to Spain. Caesar always refers to this territory as the Province, although Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum were also Roman provinces under his jurisdiction.

Free Gaul

All the rest of France and Belgium was **Gallia Lībera.** It is his conquest of "Free Gaul," and his expeditions into Germany and Britain, that Caesar describes in the seven books of the "Gallic War," to which he gave the title "Commentāriī dē Bellō Gallicō."

Results of the Conquest of Gaul

The conquest of Gaul was an event of supreme importance for the future history of Rome and for the development of European civilization. Gaul became completely Romanized, and, since the advance of the Germans was checked at the Rhine, the civilization of western Europe became Roman, and not Teutonic. The Gauls learned the language of their conquerors, which remains, in a changed form, the language of that part of Europe. Nowhere in the west, outside of Italy, did the civilization of Rome take a deeper hold. Roman colonies were founded; the cities were connected by Roman roads; Roman literature, law, art, and architecture throve and developed in Gaul. Roman dress and customs were adopted. Roman youth in later centuries went to schools in Gaul to study rhetoric. The ruins of ancient baths, aqueducts, amphitheaters, and bridges found in France today testify to the completeness with which Gaul was Romanized.

The Conquest of Free Gaul

Caesar's story of his Gallic campaigns is the tale of a great adventure. Not only did he run constant risk of complete destruction in unfamiliar territory in the midst of enemies who outnumbered his forces many times, but his enemies in

THE PONT DU GARD, AN OLD ROMAN AQUEDUCT AT NÎMES

Rome were constantly attacking his whole policy of conquest, and proposing that he be recalled or even be delivered to his foes in Gaul.

For it should be remembered that Caesar was not commissioned by the senate and people of Rome to engage in an offensive, aggressive war against the Gauls, with whom the Romans were at that time on peaceful terms. It had never been the recognized policy of the Roman government deliberately to embark upon wars of conquest against neighboring, independent states. Caesar's duties as governor, strictly de-

fined, consisted simply in the wise administration of the affairs of the three provinces intrusted to him. This, of course, included the protection of the frontiers and the defense of the exposed Province against attacks from without. A governor had legally no authority to undertake offensive war without a declaration of war by the Roman people, with all the formalities that went with such action.

But Caesar had learned the lesson taught by the politics of his age. He realized that the Roman state was waiting as a prize for some successful general who, like Marius or Sulla, should return to Rome with the prestige of great victories, with the glory of having increased Roman dominions, with unlimited wealth, and with the support of devoted, veteran legions. If Gaul could be conquered, it would supply him with just the resources he needed to further his ambitious hopes for the future. Gaul would provide the basis for any larger enterprise which events, and especially the goddess Fortuna, might make possible, and which he may already have vaguely contemplated.

Furthermore, Caesar's was an adventurous spirit. The expanse of unexplored territory north of the Province doubtless made a strong appeal to his imagination, and the lure of the unknown fascinated him.

With this attitude of mind it was not difficult for him, as governor of the Province, to find in various occurrences in Free Gaul possible threats to the safety of Roman territory. In view of the growing danger of a Germanic conquest of Gaul, it might have been expected that an invasion by Germans would be his first concern. But a nearer and more immediate disturbance among the Helvetians afforded him the desired opportunity for interfering in the affairs of Free Gaul. Whether this interference and the final subjugation of all Gaul, which resulted inevitably from the first interference, were justifiable, you may decide for yourself as you read Caesar's own justification for his acts.

Geography of Gaul

It will be repeatedly emphasized that Caesar's narrative of his conquest of Gaul cannot be understood unless the geographical setting is carefully studied. Begin that study now. Locate on the map following this lesson the territories and places given below.

1. ***Caesar's three provinces.*** Illyricum, Gallia Cisalpina, and the Provincia, "the Province" (technically known as **prōvincia ulterior**, "the farther province," to distinguish it from Gallia Cisalpina, which is sometimes called **prōvincia citerior**, "the nearer province," that is, "nearer" to Rome). Form a clear mental picture of the location of these three divisions of Roman territory.

2. ***The large divisions of western Europe.*** Italia, Hispania, Gallia, Germania, Britannia.

3. ***Mountains.*** Appenninus (separating Italia from Gallia Cisalpina, which was not regarded by the Romans as part of Italy until the time of Augustus); Alpes (separating Gallia Cisalpina from Gallia proper, that is, Gallia Transalpina or Gallia Libera); Pyrenaei (separating Gallia from Hispania); Jura (separating the Helvetii from the Sequani); Vosegus (Vosges.)

4. ***Trace the courses of the following rivers:***

Rhodanus (*Rhone*). Observe that it turns south at Lugdunum (Lyons) almost at right angles; the stream entering it from the north at Lugdunum is the Arar (Saône). Observe that east of Lake Geneva the Rhone forms the southern boundary of that part of Gallia occupied by the Helvetii.

Rhenus (*Rhine*). Observe that it forms the boundary between Gallia and Germania, and forms the eastern boundary of Helvetia. Observe also that the Rhine and the Rhone almost touch at their sources.

Danuvius (*Danube*). For the entire course see the map, page 146.

5. ***The three main divisions of Gallia Libera.*** Celtae or Galli, Belgae, Aquitani.

Review questions. 1. Name several of the branches of the Aryan, or Indo-European, family of races. 2. Under what circumstances did the Romans first come into contact with the Gauls? 3. To what does *Gallia Cisalpina* owe its name? 4. Around what river does it center? 5. When was it conquered by the Romans? 6. What is meant by *Gallia Transalpina*? 7. What was *the Province*? 8. How long before Caesar's time had it been conquered? 9. What were Caesar's three provinces? 10. What were the three main divisions of Free Gaul? 11. What trouble was in progress at the Rhine when Caesar came to Gaul? 12. Draw a rough sketch map of the territory covered in paragraphs 1–5.

This map shows the location of all the tribes, towns, rivers, etc. which you wi
in reading Caesar. It should become very familiar to you. The colors and d
styles of type will help you to form a mental picture. The three provinces of

are in different shades of green; the three main parts of Gaul (Aquitani, Celtae or Galli, Belgae) in three shades of pink. The type shows that Haedui is a tribe, Bibracte a town, *Rhodanus* a river. Modern names are printed in parentheses

LESSON 43

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETIANS*

The Helvetians were a Gallic people living in Switzerland. For reasons which Caesar will tell you they decided to migrate as a people and seek a less restricted territory in western Gaul. Caesar decided to prevent this movement. In this decision he could count upon support at home, for there still rankled in the hearts of the Romans the memory of the defeat and humiliation of a Roman army fifty years before by one division of the Helvetians, the Tigurini. Some of the Helvetians had even joined the Cimbri and Teutones in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 B.C. The selections which you will read describe the migration of the Helvetians, their defeat at the hands of Caesar, and their return to the territory from which they had set out.

As an indispensable step to the understanding of the narrative, locate the following places, rivers, and tribes on the map preceding this lesson. Locate them several times, if necessary, and form a clear mental picture of their relative positions.

1. ***Large divisions.*** Gallia (in the large sense), Celtae or Galli (in the narrow sense), Belgae, Aquitani, Helvetii, Hispania, Germania.

2. ***Rivers.*** Rhenus, Rhodanus, Matrona (Marne), Sequana (Seine), Garumna (Garonne), Arar (Saône). Lacus Lemannus (Lake Geneva).

3. ***Mountains.*** Pyrenaei (Pyrenees), Alpes (Alps), Jura.

4. ***Tribes.*** Helvetii (Tigurini and Verbigeni, districts of the Helvetii), Sequani, Haedui, Allobroges, Rauraci, Tulingi, Latobrigi, Boii (in 58 B.C.), Norici, Santoni, Tolosates, Vocontii, Segusiavi, Ambarri, Lingones.

5. ***Towns.*** Genava, Aquileia, Ocelum, Bibracte, Lugdunum, Narbo (the capital of the Province), Massilia, Noreia.

* Book I of Caesar's "Gallic War."

LESSON 44

THE GEOGRAPHY OF GAUL*

168. Gallia est omnis [1] dīvīsa [2] in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī,[3] tertiam eī quī ipsōrum linguā [4] Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus [5] inter sē [6] differunt. Gallōs [7] ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.[8]

The characters of the nations

Hōrum [9] omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū [10] atque hūmānitāte [11] Prōvinciae [12] longissimē absunt, minimēque saepe [13] mercātōrēs ad eōs veniunt atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs [14] pertinent important. Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs [15] virtūte superant, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs [16] fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

The territories of each

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā [17] flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab [18] Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem.[19] Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad [20] Hispāniam pertinet.

*Bk. I, chap. 1, of the "Gallic War."

169. Notes

Unless otherwise specified, references in the notes are to the Summary of Grammatical Principles (App., pp. 31–43).

1. **Omnis:** *in the wider sense.* Covering how much territory?

2. **Dīvīsa:** predicate adjective, *is divided.*

3. **Aliam Aquītānī:** what verb is omitted?

4. **Ipsōrum linguā:** *in their own language*; ablative of means.

5. **Linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus:** ablative of respect.

6. **Inter sē:** not needed in translation. What literally?

7. **Gallōs:** here used in the narrow sense, equivalent to **Celtae.**

8. **Dīvidit:** trace these boundaries on the map. The verb is singular because the two rivers make one boundary. Use the modern names instead of the Latin names for rivers, mountains, etc.

9. **Hōrum:** in reading this sentence observe that **propterea quod** introduces two causes for the bravery of the Belgians, connected by **-que**; and that the second clause is divided into two parts connected by **atque.** The force of **minimē** extends over both parts of the second clause.

CAESAR AS IMPERATOR

This statue represents Caesar in the garb in which you should imagine him as he led his troops in Gaul. In his narrative Caesar tells us little of himself directly, and in describing his own actions always refers to himself in the third person. Keep constantly in mind that it is Caesar who is telling the story

10. **Cultū:** *civilization,* that is, mode of life, dress, food, etc.

11. **Hūmānitāte:** *refinement,* that is, of mind and feelings.

12. **Prōvinciae:** southern France had for some time been under the

influence of Roman civilization. How long had it been a province of Rome?

13. **Minimē saepe:** *very seldom* (lit. *least often*). Traders, carrying their wares on pack-animals, and moving along the frontiers of the Roman world, had much to do with the spread of civilization.

14. **Ad effēminandōs animōs:** *to weaken the character.* The Romans themselves at this time were beginning to feel that excessive luxury was weakening their national character. **Effēminandōs** is not a gerund with an object. This would be **ad effēminandum animōs.** It is a *gerundive,* or *future passive participle,* agreeing with **animōs,** which is governed by **ad**; lit. *to the minds* (*about*) *to be weakened.* This gerundive construction may be *translated* like the gerund with an object.

15. **Gallōs:** Caesar is now speaking of the tribes of central Gaul.

16. **Suīs:** be very clear as to whom the words **suīs, eōs, ipsī,** and **eōrum** refer.

17. **Initium capit ā:** *begins at* (lit. *takes a beginning from*).

18. **Ab:** *on the side of* (lit. *from*).

19. **Septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem:** what direction? Caesar, of course, is speaking from the point of view of the Roman province.

20. **Ad:** *near.*

170. Drill and Review

1. Give the three stems of **dīvidō,** and a synopsis in the third person singular. Compare **fortissimī** and **longissimē.** Decline **ūna, fīnibus, flūmen.**

2. Write in Latin:

1. The three divisions of Gaul differ in size and civilization. 2. Traders did not often go into the territory of the Belgians, the bravest of all the Gauls, who are farthest away from the Roman province. 3. The Germans, who lived very near the Rhine, differed from the Gauls in customs. 4. The Helvetians often went out of their own territory to wage war with the Germans. 5. It was not easy to keep the Germans out of the territory of the Gauls.

LESSON 45

THE PROPOSED MIGRATION OF THE HELVETIANS *

Caesar arrived in his province in 58 B.C. The events described below occurred about three years previously and produced the critical situation which faced him on his arrival. Migrations of whole peoples like that of the Helvetians were not infrequent in the still unsettled state of western Europe.

171. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,[1] rēgnī [2] cupiditāte inductus conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī [3] persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent. "Perfacile est," inquit, "quod virtūte omnibus [4] praestāmus, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī." [5]

Orgetorix easily persuades his people, who need more territory

Id facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte [6] flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus minus lātē vagārī et minus facile fīnitimīs [7] bellum īnferre poterant; quā dē causā hominēs [8] bellandī [9] cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō [10] multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum [11] CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

* Bk. I, chaps. 2–3.

The Helvetians begin preparations

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinent[12] comparāre, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum[13] emere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpiam

LAKE GENEVA (ANCIENT LACUS LEMANNUS); THE JURA MOUNTAINS IN THE DISTANCE

frūmentī habērent, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās[14] biennium sibi satis esse exīstimāvērunt. In[15] tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant.[16]

172. Notes

1. **M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus:** *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*; ablative absolute expressing time (App. § 33). As the consuls were elected annually, their names furnished the Romans a convenient means for designating the year. The date here named is 61 B.C.

2. **Rēgnī:** *of royal power.*

3. **Cīvitātī:** dative of the indirect object with special verbs (App. § 18); the clause **ut . . . exīrent** is the direct object of **persuāsit** (App. § 67).

4. **Omnibus:** dative with compounds (App. § 17).

5. **Potīrī:** subject of **est**. For **imperiō** with **potīrī** see App. § 34.

6. **Ūnā ex parte:** *on one side.* Examine on the map the natural boundaries of the Helvetians.

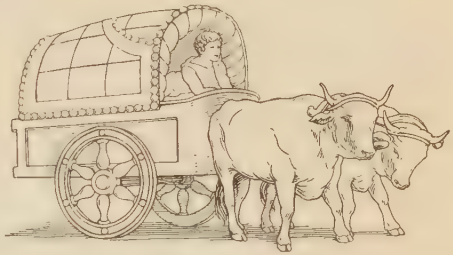
7. **Fīnitimīs:** why dative?

8. **Hominēs:** *being men*; in apposition with the subject of **afficiēbantur.**

9. **Bellandī** (gerund): depends upon **cupidī** (App. § 13).

10. **Prō:** *in proportion to.* Caesar elsewhere tells us that the number of the Helvetians previous to their migration was 368,000.

11. **Mīlia passuum:** a Roman mile was somewhat shorter than ours.



HELVETIAN WAGON AND OXEN

12. **Ad proficīscendum pertinent:** *have to do with a journey* (lit. *pertain to a setting out*).

13. **Quam . . . numerum:** *the greatest possible number*; **quam** with a superlative often denotes the highest possible degree.

14. **Ad . . . cōnficiendās:** *for the purpose of carrying out these plans* (lit. *for the purpose of these things about to be carried out*); gerundive with **ad**. Remember that **rēs** may always be translated freely; it has had two different meanings in this paragraph.

15. **In:** *for.*

16. **Cōnfirmant:** the present tense is often used in narration to describe a past act vividly, both in English and in Latin. This is called the *historical present* (App. § 51). It is so common in both languages that its presence in a sentence is usually unnoticed.

173. The Gerundive, or Future Passive Participle

You should now be very familiar with the use of the *gerund* in Latin either with or without an object, used exactly like the corresponding verbal noun, or gerund, in English: as, **ars pīla jaciendī,** *the art of throwing javelins.*

Latin has, however, another form closely resembling the gerund, and frequently substituted for it, but totally unlike any usage in English. This is the *gerundive*, or future passive participle. The gerundive has the same distinctive letters as the gerund, namely, **-nd.** The gerundive of **jaciō** is **jaciendus, -a, -um,** an *adjective* of the first and second declensions, meaning (*about*) *to be thrown.* The Latin gerundive is preserved, with some of its original meaning, in *Reverend,* (a person) *to be respected*; *dividend,* (something) *to be divided*; *subtrahend,* (something) *to be taken away*; *legend,* (something) *to be read*; *stupendous,* (something) *to be struck dumb about.* (The forms with *to be* in these translations are adjectives.)

Examine the following phrases illustrating the use of the gerundive in Latin as a substitute for the gerund:

Ars pīla jaciendī, lit. *the art of throwing javelins* (gerund with an object).

Ars pīlōrum jaciendōrum, lit. *the art of javelins* (*about*) *to be thrown* (gerund*ive* modifying **pīlōrum**).

Urbem capiendī causā, lit. *for the sake of capturing the city* (gerund with **causā** expressing purpose, with an object).

Urbis capiendae causā, lit. *for the sake of the city* (*about*) *to be captured* (gerund*ive* modifying **urbis**).

Study carefully the literal meaning of the expressions given above. The most important point to remember is:

The gerundíve is an *adjectíve* agreeing with a noun.

Observe that the gerundive cannot be used as a substitute for the gerund unless the gerund, if used, would have had an object. When the gerundive is used, the word that would have been the object of the gerund is put in the case that the gerund would have had, and the gerundive *agrees* with it.

174. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *converge, effeminate, indivisible, dividend, individual, devise* (Fr.), *initiative, pertinent, interregnum, confines, facilitate, condolence, mile, affinity, divergent, orientation, solstice, ignoble, ex parte, apartment, triple, paramount.*

2. Derivatives of **vagārī,** *to wander*: An extra*vagant* person *wanders* outside the proper limits of spending. A *vaga*bond (**-bundus,** having the force of a present active participle) is one who *wanders,* a tramp. A *vagrant* (with added *-r*) is a *wanderer. Vaga'ry* is the

present infinitive, **vagārī**, slightly changed, and means the notions one has when the mind *wanders*. *Vague* means *wandering*, uncertain.

3. Compare the Latin adjective for which *exter*nal, *exterior*, and *extreme* indicate the three degrees.

175. Drill and Review

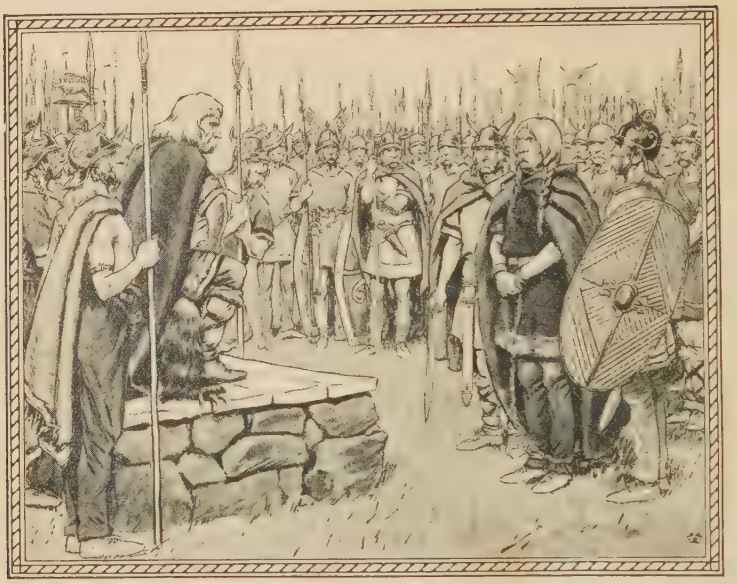
1. Decline **bellandī** and **cōnficiendās**.

2. Read, decide whether the italicized words are gerund or gerundive, and translate:

1. Orgetorīx, quī omnibus imperiō praestābat, conjūrātiōnis *faciendae* causā nōbilēs convocāvit. 2. Nōbilēs ōrātiōne eius adductī ad rēgnum *occupandum* conjūrātiōnem fēcērunt. 3. Conjūrātiōne factā, Helvētii bellī *īnferendī* causā ex fīnibus exīre parāvērunt. 4. Ad pācem *cōnfirmandam* lēgātōs in proximās cīvitātēs mīsērunt.

3. Write in Latin, using first the gerund and then the gerundive construction:

1. The Gauls gathered near the Rhine for the purpose of defending their territory. 2. A period of two years was sufficient for carrying out their plans. 3. The time for (*of*) making war was near. 4. Orgetorix was skilled in the art of influencing men.



ORGETORIX BROUGHT TO TRIAL BY THE HELVETIANS

LESSON 46

THE CONSPIRACY OF ORGETORIX, THE HELVETIAN*

The Gallic tribes had once been ruled by kings, but recently the power had passed into the hands of the chiefs and nobles. By making himself the leader of the migration, Orgetorix hoped eventually to make himself king. The common people had no voice in the government and were little better than slaves.

176. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās quae ad proficīscendum pertinēbant Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet[1] Casticō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret.[2] Itemque Dumnorīgī[3] Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī[4] eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte

* Bk. I, chaps. 3–4.

obtinēbat, ut idem cōnārētur[5] persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Eōs sīc cohortātur: "Ego ipse meae cīvitātis imperium obtinēbō. Helvētiī, quī tōtīus Galliae plūrimum possunt,[6] suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna facile conciliābunt."

Orgetorix is brought to trial, escapes, and dies mysteriously

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs[7] Orgetorīgem ex[8] vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Diē cōnstitūtā Orgetorīx ad jūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad[9] hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit. Per eōs sē ēripuit, nē[10] causam dīceret.

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs jūs suum[11] exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; atque Helvētiī arbitrantur ipsum sē interfēcisse.

177. Notes

1. **Persuādet:** what use of the tense? What is the direct object, and what the indirect object, of this verb?

2. **Occupāret:** after a historical present either the present or the past progressive subjunctive may be used in a purpose clause.

3. **Dumnorīgī:** a leader of prominence among the Haeduans, who, as an opponent of the Romans, caused Caesar no little trouble. His older brother, Diviciacus, on the other hand, was most friendly to Caesar.

4. **Quī:** Dumnorix.

5. **Ut idem cōnārētur:** *to make the same attempt* (as Casticus). What literally? What kind of clause?

6. **Plūrimum possunt:** *are most powerful.*

7. **Mōribus suīs:** *in accordance with their customs.*

8. **Ex:** *in.*

9. **Ad:** *about*; used as an adverb with numerals.

10. **Sē ēripuit, nē:** *saved himself from* (lit. *snatched himself away so as not to . . .*). His followers were so numerous that the judges did not dare to bring him to trial.

11. **Jūs suum:** the right of the state to punish traitors.

178. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *potency, plenipotentiary, compass, passport, trespass, remote, itinerant, susceptible, clientele, rapture, surreptitious, judicial, prejudice, adjudication* (a commercial term).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **emere**, *to take*, then *to buy*: *exempt, preëmpt, redeem, peremptory. Ransom* and *redemption* are "doublets."

3. Explain the following derivatives from the root **leg-**, *choose, read*: *legion, elect, elector, eligible, ineligible, select, collect, recollect, coil, cull, elegant, predilection, diligent, delectable, legend, legible, illegible, lectern, lesson.*

4. *Item* was used in English in its original sense as a commercial term prefixed to all the charges on a bill, except the first, and meant *likewise* another charge. From this arose its use as an English word meaning the separate articles or entries in a list. Note the change in the part of speech.

5. Explain the following Latin future passive participles used in English either in their original or in a modified form:

memorandum	addendum	corrigenda
multiplicand	agenda	minuend

179. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. Cum Orgetorīx ad lēgātiōnem suscipiendam dēlēctus esset, domō ēgressus est. 2. Cīvitātī suae nōn ēnūntiāvit sē ad Casticum incitandum domō ēgressum esse. 3. Illī prīncipī, quī rēgnum occupandī cupidus erat, facile persuāsit. 4. Cum Casticō persuāsisset, Orgetorīx ad idem cōnandum in fīnēs Haeduōrum contendit. 5. Imperī obtinendī causā fīliam suam in mātrimōnium Dumnorīgī dedit.

2. Write in Latin:

1. For the sake of saving himself, Orgetorix gathered together all his clansmen. 2. When the day for (*of*) pleading his case came, Orgetorix was no longer living. 3. In order to carry out the law of the state, the magistrates had collected many men. 4. His plan of seizing the power did not please the Helvetians.

LESSON 47

THE HELVETIANS CONTINUE THEIR PREPARATIONS*

Locate on the double-page map between pages 292 and 293 all peoples and places mentioned.

180. Post Orgetorīgis mortem nihilō minus[1] Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant.[2] Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim,[3] vīcōs[4] ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt. Frūmentum omne, praeter id quod sēcum portātūrī erant,[5] combūrunt, ut reditūs spē sublātā[6] parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda[7] essent.

They persuade other tribes to join them

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs fīnitimīs utī, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur. Bōiōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnābant, ad sē sociōs recipiunt.

The two routes possible for their emigration

Erant[8] omnīnō itinera duo quibus domō exīre possent[9]: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, quā vix singulī[10] carrī trahī poterant; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile paucī eōs prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant,[11]

* Bk. I, chaps. 5–6.

Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs[12] locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.

THE NARROW PASS BETWEEN THE JURA MOUNTAINS AND THE RIVER RHONE

One of the routes by which the Helvetians could leave their country was by a road running between the river and the mountains in the background. It is easy to see how a comparatively small force, located on the mountain side, would be able to stop the advancing Helvetians

They decide to go through the Roman province

Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum suīs nūntiāvērunt: "Per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter faciēmus. Allobrogibus, quī nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum videntur,[13] vel persuādēbimus vel vī cōgēmus[14] ut per suōs fīnēs nōs īre patiantur." Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.[15]

181. Notes

1. **Nihilō minus:** *nevertheless* (lit. *less by nothing*). The Helvetians accepted the plan of Orgetorix, but not his leadership.

2. **Ut . . . exeant:** *namely, to go out*; a substantive volitive clause in apposition with **id**.

3. **Numerō ad duodecim:** *about twelve in number* (App. § 43).

4. **Vīcōs:** these were groups of detached houses, whereas the **oppida** were more of the nature of strongholds.

5. **Portātūrī erant:** *they intended to carry* (lit. *they were about to carry*). This combination of the future active participle with a form of **sum** expresses future or intended action. They intended to take with them a three months' supply of ground corn. It has been computed that over 10,000 carts would have been required to move a three months' supply for 368,000 persons.

6. **Reditūs spē sublātā:** *if the hope of a return* (*home*) *were removed.*

7. **Ad . . . subeunda:** *to undergo all dangers*; gerundive with **ad**.

8. **Erant:** *there were.* Locate the two routes on the map (p. 316).

9. **Possent:** translate as if past progressive indicative.

10. **Singulī:** *in single file.*

11. **Pācātī erant:** they had been subjugated three years before.

12. **Nōn nūllīs:** *several* (lit. *not no*).

13. **Bonō animō (esse) videntur:** *seem well-disposed* (lit. *of good mind*) (App. § 37). A tribe recently conquered by the Romans might be expected to have a feeling of enmity toward their conquerors.

14. **Vī cōgēmus:** *we will force* (lit. *we will compel by force*).

15. **Quā diē . . . conveniant:** *on which all were to assemble* etc.; a relative clause of purpose. The date appointed was March 28, 58 B.C.

182. Future Active Participle with *Sum*

The future active participle may be used with a form of **sum** to express *intention*. Thus, **vocātūrus** + **eram** means "I was about to call" or "I *intended* to call." This is called the active periphrastic conjugation. *Periphrastic* means a "roundabout way" of saying something. The active periphrastic is a roundabout way of expressing intention without the use of a verb meaning *intend*.

Translate:

Rōmānī *dēsertūrī erant.*
Frūmentum *portātūrī erant.*

183. The Genitive and Ablative of Description

Both the genitive and the ablative are used to express description, both corresponding generally to English phrases with *of*: as, **cōnsulēs aequae potestātis**, *consuls of equal power*; **puella ēgregiā pulchritūdine**, *a girl of remarkable beauty*.

The ablative is most commonly used to describe physical qualities. The most common use of the genitive is in measurement: as, **puer decem annōrum**, *a boy twelve years old* (what literally?); **fossa trium pedum**, *a ditch three feet deep* (what literally?).

The use of both the ablative and the genitive of description in the *predicate* should be especially noted, as it is not like English usage. Thus, **Nōndum bonō animō erant**, *they were not yet well disposed* (lit. *they were not yet of good disposition*); **Virginius rēctī exemplī erat**, *Virginius was (a man) of upright character*. Such predicate uses should be translated either by making the phrase an adjective or by introducing a noun into the predicate.

184. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. Helvētiī, quī ē fīnibus suīs exitūrī erant, inimīcō animō in populum Rōmānum erant. 2. "Per prōvinciam," ēnūntiāvērunt prīncipēs, "iter factūrī sumus; quod magnae virtūtis sumus, tōtā Galliā mox potiēmur." 3. Ut spēs reditūs tollātur, et aedificia et frūmentum incēnsūrī sunt. 4. Fīnitimī eōrum tam cupidī bellandī erant, ut ūnā cum Helvētiīs profectūrī essent.

2. Write in Latin:

1. To go through the lands of the Sequanians was a journey of great difficulty. 2. So the Helvetians intended to persuade the Allobroges, whom they thought ill-disposed to the Romans. 3. After all preparations for setting out had been made, they were going to assemble at Geneva, on the banks of the Rhone, on a certain day.

THE HELVETIANS ON THE MARCH

LESSON 48

CAESAR PREVENTS THE HELVETIANS FROM GOING THROUGH THE PROVINCE*

Locate on the map following page 292 the territory of the Santoni, where the Helvetians desired to settle, and trace the route they would probably have taken through the Province.

185. Caesarī[1] cum id nūntiātum esset Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī,[2] mātūrat ab urbe[3] proficīscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus[4] in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad[5] Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae[6] tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat[7] (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna[8]), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam jubet rescindī.

The Helvetians ask permission to go through the Province

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dīcerent[9]: "In animō habēmus sine ūllō maleficiō iter per Prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter nūllum est. Rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte[10] id nōbīs facere liceat."

To gain time Caesar puts off his reply to their request

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum[11] exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum[12] missum, eīs iter dare nōlēbat. Neque exīstimābat hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte[13] per Prōvinciam itineris faciendī,[14] ab injūriā et maleficiō temperātūrōs esse.

* Bk. I, chaps. 7–8.

THE HELVETIANS ATTEMPT TO FORCE THEIR WAY ACROSS THE RHONE

20. **Cōnantēs**: translate by a conditional clause.
21. **Negat sē posse**: *he says he cannot.*
22. **Vim facere**: *to use force.*
23. **Eā spē dējectī**: *disappointed in this hope.*
24. **Nōn numquam**: *sometimes* (lit. *not never*).
25. **Operis mūnītiōne**: *by the strength of the works* made by Caesar.
26. **Concursū**: the rushing of soldiers to the place where the Helvetians were trying to break through.
27. **Hōc cōnātū**: ablative of separation (App. § 38).

187. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *incandescent, incendiary, in'cense, incensed', combustion, dome, experiment, duodecimal, prince, privilege, abusive, transient, dissociate, singularity, appendage, impending, expedite, expedient, compassion, compatible, arrive, quintessence, immature, penult, rescind, arrogate, homicide, temperament, temperance, castle, château* (Fr.), *denial, exemplary, ostensible, interjection, nonplus, concourse, maturity* (com.), *rescission* (com.), *subrogation* (com.), *adventitious* (sci.), *molto* (mus.).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **rumpere**, *to burst*: *abrupt, disrupt, interrupt, eruption, bankrupt, corrupt, incorruptible.*

3. Find all the derivatives you can of **ferō**, using the first and last principal parts with the prefixes *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, prae-, trans-.*

4. What is the Anglo-Saxon word, or heteronym, corresponding to *dejected*?

188. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. Cum Caesar cognōvisset quid Helvētiī factūrī essent, Rōmā profectus est et Genāvam contendit. 2. Hominibus inimīcō animō Caesar facultātem itineris faciendī nōn datūrus est. 3. Certior factus dē cōnsiliō eōrum, Caesar imperāvit ut mūrus sēdecim pedum ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram perdūcerētur. 4. Lēgātīs Helvētiōrum nūntiātum est Caesarem facultātem trānseundī Rhodanum nōn datūrum esse.

2. Write in Latin:

1. It is not permitted them to go through the Province with his approval. 2. Caesar said to them, "I am going to stop you if you attempt to use force." 3. When the Helvetians learned that Caesar would stop them, they were disappointed in their hope of crossing the river. 4. The Helvetians were so easily repulsed by the fortifications that they gave up their attempt.

LESSON 49

THE HELVETIANS DECIDE TO TRY THE ALTERNATIVE ROUTE *

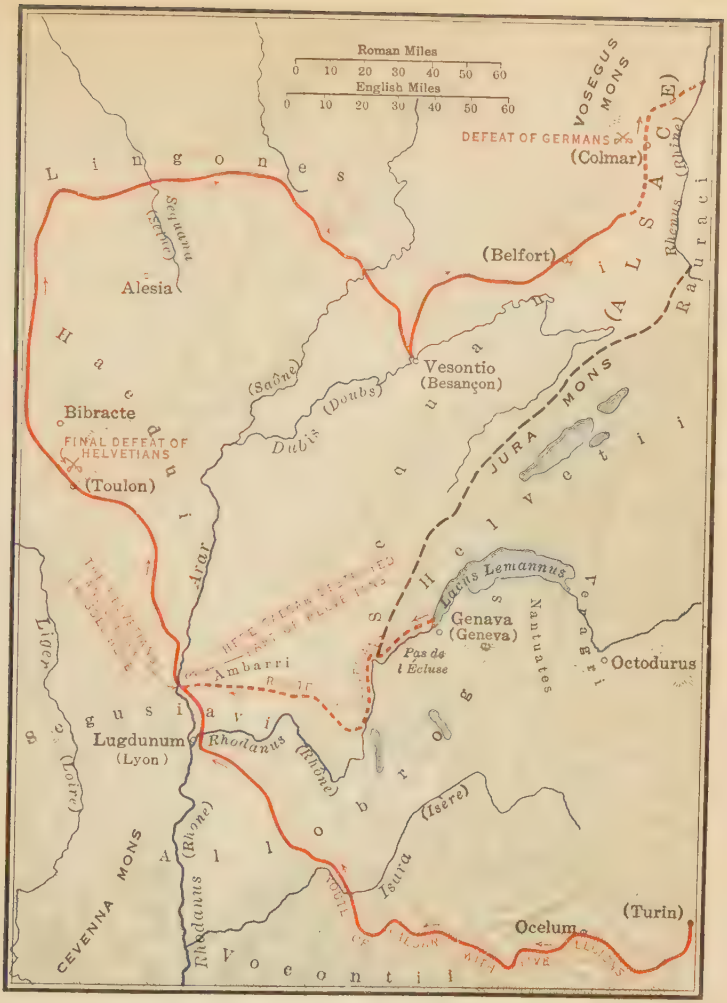
The Helvetians obtain permission from the Sequanians to take the route through their territory. Caesar's refusal to permit the Helvetians to pass through Roman territory seems fully justified, but his right to prevent their passing through territory not under Roman jurisdiction is debatable. Trace the route of the Helvetians and the journey of Caesar from Italy on the Campaign Map for 58 B. C., page 316.

189. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā, Sēquanīs invītīs,[1] propter angustiās[2] īre nōn poterant. Hīs[3] cum suā sponte[4] persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem[5] Haeduum mīsērunt, ut eō dēprecātōre[6] ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.[7] Dumnorīx apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus,[8] quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscēpit. Sēquanī, eō petente, per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiuntur.

Caesar considers it dangerous for the Helvetians to settle near the Province

Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō[9] per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in Prōvinciā. Populō Rōmānō[10] perīculōsum erit (ut Caesar putat), sī Prōvincia hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque[11] frūmentāriīs, fīnitimōs[12] habēbit.

* Bk. I, chaps. 9–10.



CAMPAIGN MAP OF 58 B.C.

Locate the Helvetians, and trace the route which they took between the Province (Allobroges) and the Sequanians along the Rhone. Locate the Ambarri, the Haeduans, the site of the first engagement with Caesar, and the site of the final battle. Follow Caesar's route from Cisalpine Gaul, through the Vocontii, Allobroges, and Segusiavi and up the Arar, to his final victory

THE TWELFTH LEGION ON THE MARCH

The Twelfth Legion, consisting of about 3600 men, has just been recruited in Cisalpine Gaul and, with four other legions, is on the march across the Alps to the Province, covering about sixteen miles a day. The mounted men are military tribunes (**tribūnī mīlitum**), six of whom were in command of each legion, although in actual battle Caesar placed a legatus in charge of the legion. The soldier facing you is Publius Sextius Baculus, the chief of the sixty centurions of the legion and one of the bravest men in Caesar's army. He carries the same equipment as the common soldiers, a shield (**scūtum**), a helmet (**galea**), and a sword (**gladius**). Instead of the javelin (**pīlum**) carried by the common soldiers, he has in his right hand a staff, as a symbol of authority. On the march he also carries, strapped to the end of a forked stick, a pack (**sarcina**) containing leather water bag, cooking utensils, several days' rations of grain, and perhaps also his share of intrenching tools, weighing altogether about forty pounds. His helmet is strapped to his chest. Fastened to his breast is a decoration in honor of some brave deed. His companion is the standard bearer of the legion and carries the eagle (**aquila**). This post was always assigned to a soldier of conspicuous bravery. In the front row of the legion can be seen a hornblower and the bearer of the standard of the first cohort of the legion. Behind the legion will come the baggage train

So he brings five more legions from Italy

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī [13] quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum [14] lēgātum praeficit. Ipse in Italiam [15] magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs [16] cōnscrībit, et trēs [17] quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs [18] ēdūcit, et in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus [19] īre contendit. Ibi quaedam gentēs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs pulsīs, ab [20] Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae [21] extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

190. Notes

1. **Sēquanīs invītīs**: use a conditional clause. What literally?
2. **Angustiās**: see Lesson 47.
3. **Hīs**: why dative?
4. **Suā sponte**: *by their own influence.*
5. **Dumnorīgem**: what was his attitude toward the Romans?
6. **Eō dēprecātōre**: *by his intercession* (lit. *he being intercessor*); ablative absolute.
7. **Impetrārent**: *gain their request.*
8. **Amīcus**: adjective, and accompanied by the dative.
9. **Helvētiīs esse in animō**: *that the Helvetians have in mind*; **Helvētiīs** is dative, showing the possessor. What is the subject of **esse**?
10. **Populō Rōmānō**: dative of reference.
11. **Maximē**: *especially.*
12. **Fīnitimōs**: *as neighbors*; in apposition with **hominēs**. Note the location of the proposed future home of the Helvetians, and decide how serious a threat to the Province their presence there would have been.
13. **Mūnītiōnī**: explain this use of the dative.
14. **Labiēnum**: one of the ablest and most trusted of Caesar's officers. The **lēgātus** was a man of senatorial rank appointed by the senate as a staff officer for a general carrying on a campaign. Caesar had ten **lēgātī**, whom he used sometimes as commanders of legions and sometimes as ambassadors.
15. **Italiam**: Cisalpine Gaul.
16. **Duās legiōnēs**: the eleventh and twelfth.

17. **Trēs** (supply **legiōnēs**): the seventh, eighth, and ninth.

18. **Hībernīs:** Roman military operations were limited to the season when there was green fodder to be taken from the country for the baggage train of the army. As soon as fodder became scarce, Caesar's legions went into winter quarters. These quarters consisted of a regular camp, with a fortified wall and barracks of a more solid sort than were made in the summer camps. The quartering of large numbers of soldiers at any place sometimes caused a town to grow at that spot. In Britain, Chester (from **castra**) and all the places with names ending in *-chester* mark the sites of Roman camps.

19. **Quīnque legiōnibus:** including the tenth legion, which was near Geneva, Caesar now had six legions, or about 22,000 men. He had also the auxiliaries he had levied from the province. With this force he was prepared to meet the great host of the Helvetians and their allies.

20. **Ab:** *from the vicinity of.*

21. **Citeriōris prōvinciae:** Cisalpine Gaul.

191. The Sequence of Tenses

In English we habitually make the form of verbs in subordinate clauses conform to the *tense* of the main verb. Thus, "He *says* that he *may* go" becomes "He *said* that he *might* go"; "He *says* that he *can* go" becomes "He *said* that he *could* go." This may be called the *sequence of tenses*. The same thing occurs in Latin.

A. When the verb of the subordinate clause is *indicative*, the subordinate verb is in whatever tense the thought requires. Latin, however, tends to bring out exact relations by using the past progressive (act going on) or the past perfect (act completed) where English is content to use a simple past: as, **Omnēs clientēs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit.** Here the tense of **habēbat** shows that the situation *was existing at the time* of the main verb, **condūxit.** We have to translate it by the simple past, *had*, neglecting the force of the tense.

Even in independent sentences the past progressive is frequently used to show that the act or situation was *going on at the time* of the verb of some other sentence. Thus the tense of **relinquēbātur** in this lesson indicates that Caesar is describing a situation *existing at the time* that the Helvetians finally sent (**mīsērunt**, simple past) envoys. Read over again the entire lesson, noting Caesar's careful use of tenses and our inability to bring out their force in translation.

B. When the verb of the subordinate clause is *subjunctive*, the same principle applies, except that subjunctive tenses are used even more exactly than indicative tenses.

1. If the main verb refers to *present* or *future* time, the *present* subjunctive is naturally used in a subordinate clause, unless it refers to past time, in which case the *perfect* (simple past) is used: as, **Allobrogibus persuādēbimus ut per suōs fīnēs nōs īre *patiantur*; Intellegō quid *dīxerit.***

2. After a *past* main verb Latin has a choice of three past subjunctive tenses: past progressive, perfect, past perfect. A subjunctive after a past main verb is regularly either past progressive (if the act is *going on* or *yet to come* * *at the time* of the main verb) or past perfect (if the act is thought of as *completed*).

Note 1. In result clauses in past time, the perfect subjunctive is sometimes used instead of the past progressive to emphasize the actual occurrence of the result.

Note 2. A historical present may be followed by either a present or a past sequence.

Explain the tenses of the italicized verbs:

1. Cum hīs persuādēre nōn *possent*, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem mīsērunt.
2. Lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem mīsērunt ut ā Sēquanīs *impetrārent*.
3. Frūmentum omne combūrunt ut parātiōrēs *essent*.
4. Helvētiī id quod cōnstituērunt facere cōnantur, ut ē suīs fīnibus *exeant*.
5. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exīre *possent*.
6. Mōns impendēbat ut facile paucī eōs prohibēre *possent*.
7. Orgetorīx Helvētiīs persuāsit ut *exīrent*.
8. Dumnorīgī persuādet ut idem *cōnārētur*.

192. Drill and Review

Read, explain the tense of the italicized words, and translate:

1. Tam angusta erat via ut Helvētiī, Sēquanīs invītīs, per agrōs Sēquanōrum īre nōn *possent*. 2. Cum lēgātī ad Sēquanōs pervēnissent, petīvērunt ut per fīnēs eōrum īre *licēret*. 3. Helvētiī bene sciēbant quis apud Sēquanōs plūrimum *potuisset*. 4. Quis scit quam longē fīnēs Santonum ā Prōvinciā *absint*? 5. Num scītis quem Caesar mūnītiōnī praefēcerit?

* Each tense of the subjunctive expresses the same idea as the corresponding indicative tense, and in addition it has a future force.

LESSON 50

CAESAR PURSUES AND ATTACKS THE HELVETIANS

Caesar's aid against the plundering Helvetians is sought by the Haeduans, who had been recognized as allies of the Roman people (**sociī populī Rōmānī**) by a treaty made forty years before. Study the map, page 316, and the descriptive matter. Note particularly the courses of the Rhone and Arar (Saône).

193. Helvētiī jam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque[1] ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt ut auxilium rogārent. "Amīcī populō Rōmānō sunt Haeduī," dīcunt lēgātī, "et omnī tempore ita meritī sunt[2] ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs vestrī agrī nostrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint."[3] Eōdem tempore Haeduī Ambarrī, cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, agrīs vāstātīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et auxilium petunt. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar statuit sociōs statim dēfendendōs esse.[4]

Caesar attacks the Helvetians when their forces are divided

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac nāvibus jūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs jam partēs[5] cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse et quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen relictam esse,

* Bk. I, chaps. 11–12.

A MODERN BRIDGE ACROSS THE ARAR (SAÔNE)

Photograph by G. R. Swain, Near East Research of the University of Michigan

dē tertiā vigiliā[6] cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

He cuts to pieces one division of the Helvetii (the Tigurini) and thus avenges a long-standing disgrace

Eōs impedītōs aggressus[7] magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās[8] abdidērunt. Hic pāgus ūnus, quī appellābātur Tigurīnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā[9] L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub jugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars[10] cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō[11] intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.[12] Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās injūriās ultus est; nam L. Pīsōnem, avum eius socerī, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

194. Notes

1. **Suaque:** *and their possessions.* **Sua** is used substantively.

2. **Ita meritī sunt:** *have deserved so well.*

3. **Dēbuerint:** in result clauses the perfect subjunctive is sometimes used after a past main verb. Remember that a present infinitive with a past tense of **dēbeō** is translated as if it were a perfect infinitive: *ought not to have been taken. Ought* is defective in English (§ 132).

4. **Sociōs dēfendendōs esse:** *that his allies must be defended.*

5. **Partēs, Helvētiōs, flūmen:** which is the subject of **trādūxisse**? Which is the object? Which depends on the **trāns** in **trādūxisse**?

6. **Dē tertiā vigiliā:** *during the third watch.* The night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four parts, called **vigiliae**. The third watch was from midnight to about 3 A.M.

7. **Aggressus:** *attacking.* The perfect participle of a deponent verb is sometimes best translated as if it were a present participle.

8. **In silvās:** *in the woods*; expressed as place whither after the idea of motion in the verb.

9. **Memoriā:** *within the memory.* The defeat mentioned happened about fifty years before (see Lesson 43).

10. **Quae pars:** observe that the relative clause precedes its antecedent (**ea pars**), and that the antecedent has been attracted into the relative clause. How do you naturally express the ideas here in English?

11. **Populō Rōmānō:** why dative?

12. **Prīnceps poenās persolvit:** *was the first to pay the penalty.*

195. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *dereliction, spontaneity, deprecate, congratulate, largess, restriction, ulterior, circumvent, hibernate, proximity, ammunition, anguish, meritorious, conspectus, deliver, consanguinity, sanguine, vigilant, ult., subjugate, opine, designate, calamitous, recondite, Q. E. D., penumbra* (sci.), *quadrilateral* (math.), *quadratic* (math.).

2. Give the principal parts of **gradī**, *to walk, step*, and explain the following derivatives: *grade, gradual, gradation, graduate, graduated, gradient, degrade, retrograde, aggressor, aggressive, congress, digression, ingredient, egress, ingress, transgressor, progressive, regression, centigrade* (sci.).

THE HAEDUAN LEADERS APPEAL TO CAESAR

3. *Pagan* is derived from **pāgus**, *a country district* or *village*, and meant a country-dweller as distinguished from a city-dweller. When Christianity was introduced, it spread first in the cities, and the old Roman religion lingered longest in the country districts. Hence *pagan*, "a villager," came to mean one who had not become a Christian. Look up the similar derivation of *heathen*.

196. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. Helvētiī, quī per fīnēs Sēquanōrum trānsierant, in agrōs Haeduōrum populandī causā pervēnerant. 2. Lēgātī, quōs Haeduī ad auxilium rogandum mīserant, ita locūtī sunt: "Helvētiī agrīs nostrīs et līberīs et oppidīs potiuntur." 3. Hostēs, quibus satis ratium nāviumque erat, flūmen trānsībant. 4. Haeduī, quōrum agrī vāstātī erant, vim hostium ab oppidīs prohibēre nōn poterant.

2. Write in Latin:

1. The Helvetians had already led three divisions of their troops across the river Arar, which is narrower than the Rhone. 2. The rest, who had hidden in the woods, were free from danger. 3. In crossing the river they used rafts and boats. 4. It pleased Caesar to avenge a private wrong. 5. By chance a great part of the Tigurini, who had done injury to the Romans, were slain. 6. Caesar journeyed so rapidly that he arrived in Gaul on the seventh day. 7. He knew what men had been most unfriendly to the Romans, and what men were warlike at that time. 8. That he might have sufficient soldiers, he led five of the legions out of winter quarters. 9. He places Labienus in command of the army, so that he himself may hurry into Italy by forced marches.

CAESAR'S CAVALRY ENGAGES THE HELVETIANS

The Helvetian cavalry may be seen in the background, on the left. The body of men in the distance on the right, retreating in a group, are the Haeduan cavalry (which formed the chief part of Caesar's cavalry), led by Dumnorix. Most of the so-called Roman cavalry were themselves Gauls; for Caesar had no Roman cavalry, but depended for this arm of the service upon allied or friendly states or else upon foreign mercenaries

LESSON 51

A PEACE CONFERENCE THAT FAILS *

Caesar crosses the Arar (Saône) in pursuit of the Helvetians, who send an embassy to him in the hope of securing a peaceful settlement. This fails. Follow the movements of the two armies on the map, page 316.

197. Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī[1] fēcit atque ita exercitum

* Bk. I, chaps. 13–15.

trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum illum ūnō diē flūmen (quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē trānsierant) trānsīsse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō[2] prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico speaks for the Helvetian embassy

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit[3]: "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt atque ībi erunt[4] Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū, Caesar, cōnstitueris atque esse volueris. Sīn bellō persequī persevērābis,[5] memoriā tenē et vetus incommodum populī Rōmānī et prīstinam virtūtem Helvētiōrum. Quā rē nōlī committere ut is locus ubi cōnstitimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat."[6]

Caesar states his conditions of peace, and Divico declines them

Hīs Caesar ita respondit: "Sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae pollicēminī vōs factūrōs esse intellegam, et sī Haeduīs[7] dē injūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam."

Dīvicō respondit: "Ita Helvētiī ā majōribus suīs īnstitūtī sunt utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuēverint[8]; eius reī populus Rōmānus est testis." Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

The Helvetians move on, followed by Caesar

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque[9] omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coēgerat, praemittit quī videant[10] quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius[11] novissimum agmen[12] īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.[13]

They proceed in this way fifteen days

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum reppulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine[14] proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac hostēs rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēbat. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum[15] nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum[16] interesset.

198. Notes

1. **In Ararī:** *over the Saône.* Caesar had use for engineers in building bridges, in the siege of walled towns, and elsewhere; but he had no separate engineering corps, such as the modern army has. There were plenty of skilled men in the legions upon whom he could call when the need arose. The Roman soldier was trained to do many things which modern war assigns to special groups.

2. **Dīvicō:** as the defeat of Cassius took place about fifty years previously, Divico must have been a very old man at this time.

3. **Ēgit:** *pleaded.*

4. **Erunt:** *will remain.*

5. **Bellō . . . persevērābis:** *you persist in carrying the war through* (lit. *in pursuing (them) with war*).

6. **Committere ut . . . nōmen capiat:** *allow this place to take a name.* Divico is boasting that the Romans will be overwhelmingly defeated and the place be known in history as the site of their defeat.

7. **Haeduīs, Allobrogibus:** verbs compounded with **satis** have their apparent object in the dative.

8. **Cōnsuēverint:** see note on **dēbuerint**, § 194, n. 3.

9. **Equitātum:** the cavalry gave Caesar little help in the actual fighting; their use was in scouting, in skirmishing, and in pursuit of a routed enemy.

10. **Quī videant:** *to see*; a relative clause of purpose. Translate literally.

11. **Cupidius:** *too eagerly.*

12. **Novissimum agmen:** *the rear* (lit. *the newest*, that is, *last, line*).

13. **Paucī cadunt:** Caesar learned later that the defeat of his cavalry

was due to the treachery of Dumnorix, who sympathized with the Helvetians.

14. **Novissimō agmine:** *at their rear*; the preposition is omitted in this expression of place where. The Helvetians kept turning and challenging the Roman advance.

15. **Prīmum** (supply **agmen**): *first line.*

16. **Nōn amplius . . . passuum:** *not more than five or six miles* (daily).

199. Relative Clauses of Purpose

Translate the following pairs of sentences, noting in each pair that the clause with **ut** and the clause with **quī** have the same mood and express the same idea:

Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt *ut dīcerent.*
Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt *quī dīcerent.*

Explōrātōrēs praemittit *ut videant.*
Explōrātōrēs praemittit *quī videant.*

You have discovered still another way in which the Romans could express purpose, namely, by a *relative clause of purpose.* For the rule see the Appendix, § 65.

The infinitive is the most common way of expressing purpose in *English.*

200. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. Caesar explōrātōrēs mīsit quī cognōscerent ubi hostēs flūmen trānsīrent. 2. Mīlitēs ad flūmen prōgrediuntur, quī pontem faciant. 3. Ponte factō, Helvētiī lēgātum ad Caesarem mīsērunt, quī cum eō ageret. 4. Equitātus praemissus est quī novissimum agmen hostium īnsequerētur. 5. Cotīdiē Caesar equitēs ex castrīs ēgredī jussit, quī hostēs populātiōnibus prohibērent.

2. Write in Latin, using a relative clause to express purpose:

1. Four thousand horsemen had been collected from the allies to aid the Romans in this war. 2. The Helvetians left five hundred horsemen to attack the Romans. 3. Caesar sent a messenger to hold our men from battle. 4. The Helvetians were unwilling to send envoys to apologize to the Haeduans.

LESSON 52

A SURPRISE ATTACK THAT FAILED*

The unsuccessful attempt of Caesar to surprise the Helvetians, described below, took place about twelve miles south of the site of his final battle with them. Locate the place on the map.

Caesar prepares a surprise attack on the enemy

201. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus[1] certior factus hostēs sub[2] monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus,[3] explōrātōrēs quī cognōscerent mīsit. Illī facilem esse ascēnsum renūntiāvērunt. Dē tertiā vigiliā[4] T. Labiēnum, lēgātum, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; et suum cōnsilium ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus[5] habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

Considius blunders and the attack fails

Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns[6] ā Labiēnō tenērētur, atque ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus[7] abesset, neque (ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit) aut ipsīus adventus aut[8] Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius ad eum accurrit. Dīcit montem nōn ā Labiēnō sed ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem[9] īnstruit.

* Bk. I, chaps. 21–22.

Labiēnus, cui Caesar imperāverat nē[10] proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope castra vīsae essent,[11] ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē[12] per

PUBLIUS CONSIDIUS REPORTS TO CAESAR

A group of mounted patrols, **explōrātōrēs**, led by Publius Considius, is approaching Caesar to bring information, in this instance incorrect. When Caesar was in an enemy's country, he kept such patrols out constantly scouring the country and reporting upon the movements of the enemy. Their work was supplemented by that of single scouts, or spies, known as **speculātōrēs**, who gathered information wherever they could

explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset[13] prō vīsō[14] sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō intervāllō[15] cōnsuēverat hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.[16]

202. Notes

1. **Explōrātōribus:** Caesar got his information about the enemy either from spies (**speculātōrēs**), who moved among the enemy secretly, or from scouts (**explōrātōrēs**), who approached as near the enemy as they dared and so found out what was going on.

2. **Sub:** *at the foot of.*

3. **Quālis . . . ascēnsus:** indirect questions, objects of **cognōscerent.**

4. **Dē tertiā vigiliā:** what time?

5. **Reī mīlitāris perītissimus:** *thoroughly skilled in military matters*; adjectives meaning *skilled* take the genitive in Latin (App. § 13). Caesar thought Considius was too experienced to be deceived.

6. **Summus mōns:** *the top of the mountain* (§ 138, N. 3).

7. **Passibus:** after a comparative adjective (**longius**) **quam** is sometimes omitted in comparisons, as here; and the second of the two things compared is then placed in the ablative case (App. § 35).

8. **Neque aut . . . aut:** *and neither . . . nor.*

9. **Aciem:** when Caesar saw that a fight with the Gauls was imminent, he usually arranged his legions in a triple line of battle (**aciēs triplex**) on a broad hillside, with the auxiliary troops or the cavalry on the flanks. The men in the first line were expected to do the heavy fighting. If they became exhausted or were thrown into disorder, the soldiers of the second line took their place. The third line formed a reserve, which took part in the battle only when the first two lines were being worsted or when the enemy attacked from the rear. The situation on a hillside made the Roman charge down the hill generally irresistible.

10. **Cui . . . imperāverat nē:** *whom Caesar had directed not to.*

11. **Vīsae essent:** *were seen.*

12. **Multō diē:** *late in the day.*

13. **Quod vīdisset:** supply **id** as antecedent of **quod**; and translate **vīdisset** as if past perfect indicative.

14. **Prō vīsō:** *as if seen* (lit. *for the thing seen*). Observe the mildness of Caesar's criticism.

15. **Quō intervāllō = eō intervāllō quō.**

16. **Castra pōnit:** the thoroughness of the Roman military organization is shown in the care with which the camp was laid out, fortified, and guarded. The same care was given, whether the enemy was near or far distant, and whether a long or a short stay was intended. When the legions were on the march, men were sent ahead every afternoon to pick out a site for the camp. They chose a slightly elevated spot, near wood and water, and staked out a sufficiently large square. As soon as the legions came up, the soldiers set to work digging a trench around this

square. This trench was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep. The earth was thrown on the inside of the trench, and made an embankment from six to ten feet high, at the top of which a row of stakes was set up. Gates were made, streets laid out, and the huts or tents for the men erected. Finally guards were posted on the wall and at the gates.

203. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *curative, consecutive, persecute, discommode, pristine, equine, tantamount, repulsive, subsist, tempo* (mus.), *qualify, circuitous, transcend, condescend, pellucid, cursory, alienate* (com.), *amplitude* (sci.), *ductility* (sci.), *deciduous* (sci.), *pabulum.*

2. Explain the following derivatives of **struere**, *to build up*: *structure, superstructure, destruction, construct, instruct, obstructionist, instrument, instructor, instructive, destroy.*

3. The suffix **-mentum** (**-men**) expresses the *means* of action: as, **īnstrūmentum** (from **struere**), *the means of building up, a tool*; **-mentum** appears in English as *-ment*: as, *instrument.*

Explain *ligament, complement, ornament, fragment, document.*

Explain **jūmentum, impedīmentum, mūnīmentum, monumentum, armāmentum.**

Explain **flūmen, nōmen, agmen.**

204. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. Explōrātōribus Caesar crēdēbat, quī renūntiāvērunt hostēs sub colle cōnsīdere. 2. Caesar explōrātōribus imperāvit ut cognōscerent quālis esset collis. 3. Caesarī placuit Labiēnum praemittere quī collem tenēret. 4. Labiēnō ā Caesare imperātum erat nē proelium committeret. 5. Multō diē Caesar hostēs cēdentēs sequī coepit, quī eī resistere nōn audēbant.

2. Write in Latin:

1. Caesar was unwilling to believe Considius, who reported that the hill was being held by the enemy. 2. That day our men were unable to harm the enemy, who had broken camp. 3. Caesar had commanded Labienus to await the arrival of our men near the camp. 4. Caesar led his troops to a hill of easy ascent; and when a line of battle was drawn up, he prepared to resist the Helvetians.

LESSON 53

THE FINAL BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS *

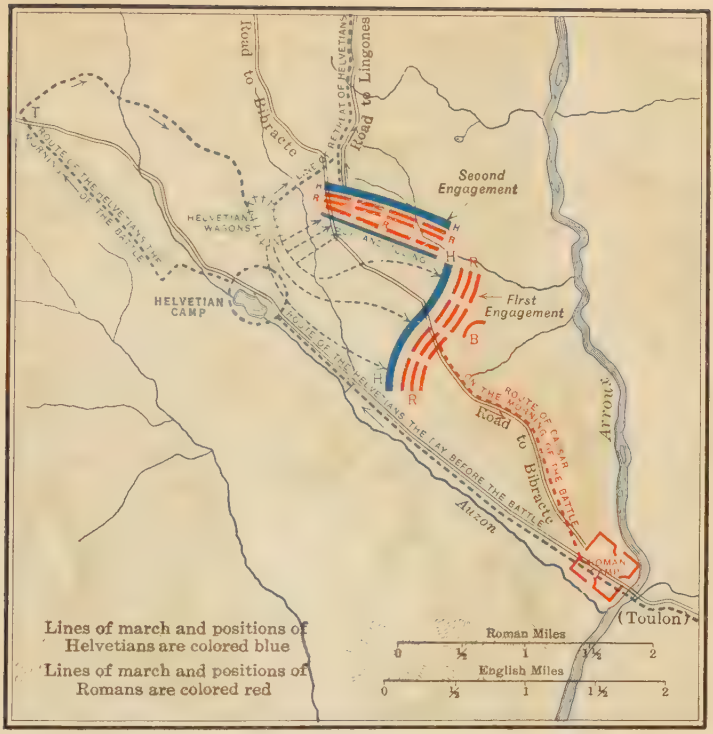
Through the failure of his allies, the Haeduans, to furnish the supplies that they had promised, Caesar found himself seriously embarrassed. Accordingly he abandoned, for the time being, his pursuit of the Helvetians and turned aside toward Bibracte, the capital of the Haeduans, where he purposed to collect through force the missing supplies. The Helvetians, thinking that he was retreating, turned, and, gathering their forces, attacked him. The decisive battle followed. As you read the account, form a clear mental picture of the events as they occur.

205. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus [1] passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae comparandae causā [2] iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte [3] īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs discēdere exīstimābant; et eōs rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīdēbant. Itaque, mūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō,[4] nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Both armies prepare for battle

Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem [5] subdūxit equitātumque [6] quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō [7] triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum.[8] In summō colle duās legiōnēs [9] quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat

* Bk. I, chaps. 23–26.



BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND THE HELVETIANS

On the day before the battle the Helvetians crossed the Arroux at Toulon, advanced up the Auzon, and encamped at the point indicated. Caesar crossed the Auzon shortly afterwards and encamped on its banks. How far apart were the two camps? The next morning the Helvetians marched northwest. Caesar, however, instead of following them, took the road to Bibracte to get supplies. The Helvetians, thinking that he was fleeing, made a sharp turn at T and returned to attack Caesar, placing their wagons at the point indicated and leaving the Boii and Tulingi to guard them. The first engagement occurred at R–R, H–H. Caesar's four veteran legions were drawn up in a triple line with his baggage at the top of a hill, B, which was quickly fortified by the two newly recruited legions. The Helvetians, defeated, retired to a second position, H H, R R, on a neighboring hill. The Romans advanced against them, but were suddenly attacked in the rear by the Boii and Tulingi, coming from the barricade of wagons. This compelled the third Roman line to face about and meet the new enemy. The Helvetians, completely defeated again, fled toward the territory of the Lingones

et omnia auxilia [10] collocāvit. Sarcinās [11] in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum locum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī jussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī,[12] impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī [13] cōnfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange [14] factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The battle begins with a Roman charge

Caesar prīmum suum, deinde equōs omnium [15] ex cōnspectū remōvit ut, aequātō omnium perīculō, spem fugae tolleret. Cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs [16] facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disjectā, gladiīs [17] dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam impedīmentō erat [18] quod plūra eōrum scūta ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxa et colligāta sunt.[19] Itaque, sinistrā manū impedītā, satis commodē pugnāre nōn poterant; et multī, diū jactātō bracchiō, scūtum manū ēmīsērunt et nūdō corpore [20] pugnāvērunt.

The Helvetians are forced back, but rally

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre [21] et ad montem quī nōn amplius mīlle passuum aberat sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs [22] praesidiō erant, ex itinere [23] nostrōs ab latere apertō [24] aggressī circumveniēbant. Id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartītō intulērunt: [25] prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs [26] resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs [27] sustinēret.

They fight long and desperately, but are defeated

Diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.[28] Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī [29] sē, ut coeperant, in

montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō (ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum est) āversum[30] hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem[31] etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs objēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant. Diū cum pugnātum esset, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

206. Notes

1. **Mīlibus:** see App., § 35.

2. **Reī frūmentāriae . . . causā:** *in order to procure a supply of grain*; gerundive with **causā** expressing purpose (§ 173).

3. **Bibracte:** accusative.

4. **Itinere conversō:** by this change in their course the Helvetians, as the pursuing army, put themselves in a position where they would have to fight the Romans whenever Caesar found a suitable place.

5. **Collem:** Caesar had come to the sort of hill he desired for the battle. It gave the line of battle a frontage of about a mile.

6. **Equitātum:** the cavalry in this battle skirmished with the enemy, but retired before the superior numbers of the main Helvetian force.

7. **In colle mediō:** *halfway up the hill* (§ 138, N. 3).

8. **Legiōnum veterānārum:** the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth.

9. **Duās legiōnēs:** the eleventh and twelfth, being raw recruits, were located on the top of the hill to guard the camp.

10. **Auxilia:** in addition to his legionary soldiers Caesar had some infantry that he had enlisted from allied or subject states. They were armed and equipped in their native fashion, though officered by Romans. Caesar speaks of them under the term **auxilia** or **levis armātūrae peditēs**. He had little confidence in them, and used them mainly for foraging and for work on the fortifications or in a siege.

11. **Sarcinās:** each soldier on the march carried his food supply, his cooking utensils, his blanket, and other personal property. This luggage was put together in a tight bundle, called **sarcina**, and was often carried on a forked pole over the shoulder. When getting ready for battle, the soldiers left the luggage in camp or in some spot where it could be guarded.

12. **Secūtī:** *following.*

13. **Ipsī:** the fighting men, in distinction from the rest of the Helvetians and their families.

14. **Phalange:** a mass of men in very close order, perhaps with shields interlocked in the front line.

15. **Omnium:** refers to the officers.

16. **Pīlīs missīs:** the men in the first line ran down the hill and hurled their javelins at the massed Helvetians. The javelin, which weighed about three pounds, could be thrown seventy-five feet with great force and skill. Not infrequently the first shower of these missiles demoralized the enemy.

17. **Gladiīs:** as soon as the charging men came up to the disordered phalanx, they drew their swords and began a series of duels along the battle line. The Roman sword was short and broad, with two edges. It could be used both for stabbing and for cutting.

18. **Gallīs magnō . . . impedīmentō erat:** *the Gauls were seriously handicapped* (lit. *it was to the Gauls for a great hindrance*). This combination of the dative of reference (**Gallīs**) and the dative of purpose (**impedīmentō**) is sometimes called the *double dative* (App. § 19). It is quite unlike any normal English usage.

19. **Colligāta sunt:** the javelins were hurled with such force that they pierced two or three of the shields at the front of the Helvetian phalanx. This had the effect of pinning the holders of the shields together.

20. **Nūdō corpore:** *with the body unprotected.*

21. **Pedem referre:** *to retreat.*

22. **Novissimīs:** see note 18.

23. **Ex itinere:** they began to fight as soon as they reached the hill.

24. **Ab latere apertō:** *on the open flank*, that is, the right side. The Boii and Tulingi did not arrive on the field until the main force of the Helvetians had been driven back a mile to a hill. When they arrived, they found the three lines of the Romans between them and the Helvetians. It was then that Caesar's third line turned to receive their attack, while the first and second lines continued the combat with the Helvetians on the top of the hill.

25. **Conversa . . . intulērunt:** *faced about and charged in two divisions* (lit. *bore reversed standards in two divisions*). The standard of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle (**aquila**) carried on a staff by the first centurion of the legion (**aquilifer**). The eagle, with its outstretched wings, was regarded as a sign, or omen, of victory. The loss of this standard was considered a great disgrace. Each of the ten divisions of the legion (**cohortēs**) had its own standard. These differed much in form and decoration.

LESSON 54

CONCLUDING EVENTS OF THE STRUGGLE *

The surviving Helvetians surrender and are forced by Caesar to return to their original home.

210. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte [1] ierunt. In fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, quod et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuerant. Caesar ad Lingonēs līterās nuntiōsque mīsit nē eōs juvārent. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetians surrender to Caesar

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōjēcissent et flentēs pācem petīssent, eōs [2] in eō locō quō tum erant suum adventum exspectāre jussit. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgerant poposcit.

Six thousand of the Helvetians try to escape, but are captured

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī [3] sīve spē salūtis inductī, prīmā nocte [4] ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum contendērunt.

Quod ubi Caesar cognōvit, hīs quōrum per fīnēs ierant imperāvit utī eōs redūcerent; eōs reductōs in hostium numerō habuit.[5] Reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

* Bk. I, chaps. 26–29.

The rest of the defeated are ordered to return home, except the Boii, who are allowed to remain among the Haeduans

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī jussit. Quod, omnibus frūgibus āmissīs, domī nihil erat cibī,[6] Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent.[7] Helvētiōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere jussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs, quī ēgregiā virtūte [8] erant cognitī, in fīnibus Haeduōrum collocāvit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quosque in eandem jūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque [9] ipsī erant recēpērunt.

The losses of the Helvetians during their migration

In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae [10] repertae sunt līterīs Graecīs [11] cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōmināt im ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset [12] eōrum quī arma ferre possent,[13] et item quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Ratiōnum summa [14] erat Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent,[13] ad mīlia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

211. Notes

1. **Eā tōtā nocte:** *during all that night.*
2. **Eōs:** the Helvetians.
3. **Perterritī, inductī, ēgressī:** these could be neuter to agree with **mīlia**, but are masculine because their logical antecedent is **hominēs.**
4. **Prīmā nocte:** *early in the night.*
5. **In hostium numerō habuit:** *he treated as enemies*; that is, he put

them to death or sold them into slavery. Caesar thought this act, which seems cruel to us, necessary as a warning to the rest of the Gauls.

6. **Cibī:** genitive of the whole with **nihil**, *no food* (App. § 11).

7. **Cōpiam facerent:** *furnish a supply.*

8. **Ēgregiā virtūte:** *to be men of exceptional valor* (App. § 37).

9. **Atque:** *as.*

10. **Tabulae:** *lists, records.*

11. **Līterīs Graecīs:** the Gauls, who had no alphabet of their own, had acquired a familiarity with the Greek alphabet through their contact with the Greek colony at Massilia (Marseilles), in southern Gaul.

12. **Quī ... exīsset:** indirect question, in apposition with **ratiō**; translate, *an account of the number which* etc.

13. **Possent:** translate as if past indicative (App. § 73).

14. **Summa:** *the sum.*

212. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *dimension, immense, commensurate, subterfuge, equation, fragile, fragment, irrefragable, affix, pervert* (force of *per-*?), *embrace, bracelet, reflexive, esquire, instant, redintegration, mediator, relative, bipartite, tripartite, denude, sepulchral, demur, animadvert, frugal, depleted, bounty, evacuate, summary, repertory, extradition, jurisdiction, refraction* (sci.), *legato* (mus.), *nocturne* (mus.).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **claudere** (**-clūdere** in compounds), *to shut*: *exclude, preclude, recluse, exclusive, inclusive, seclude.* A *clause* is so called because it is *closed* up, or complete in itself.

3. Explain the following derivatives of **fīdere**, *to trust*: *confide, confident* (adj.), *confidant* (noun), *diffident, defy, perfidy* (note the force of *per-*, *contrary to*, as in *perjury*), *infidel. Fidelity* (**fidēlitās**) and *fealty* are "doublets." *Diffident* and *defiant* are also "doublets," but with widely different meanings. Explain *affidavit.*

4. *Treason* and *tradition* are "doublets." Explain the basic meaning of each.

5. Anglo-Saxon cognates of Latin words beginning with *f* frequently begin with *b*. Thus **ferre** and *bear* are cognates; **frangere** and *break*; **fuī** and *be*; **frāter** and *brother.*

Anglo-Saxon cognates of Latin words beginning with *p* frequently begin with *f*. Thus **prīmus** and *first* are cognates; **pēs**

and *foot*; **pater** and *father*; **plēnus** and *full*; **paucī** and *few*; **pāscere** and *food*.

Anglo-Saxon cognates of Latin words beginning with *c* frequently begin with *h*. Thus **collis** and *hill* are cognates; **centum** and *hundred*; **citrā** and *hither*; **cornū** and *horn*.

Other cognates are **nox** (**noctis**) and *night*; **lūx** and *light*; **māter** and *mother*; **soror** and *sister*; **mēns** (**mentis**) and *mind*; **volō** and *will*; **vigilia** and *wake*; **vehiculum** and *wagon*; **ager** and *acre*; **nōmen** and *name*; **medius** and *middle*; **nunc** and *now*; **nōn** and *no*.

213. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. Caesar had sent men to collect and bring to him the arms and hostages of the defeated Helvetians. 2. The Helvetians used Greek letters for the purpose of making accounts. 3. Caesar learned from the census how many of the Helvetians had left home. 4. He ordered that the Boii, a tribe of remarkable valor, should be located in the territory of the Haeduans. 5. Caesar said, "Let us not allow the land of the Helvetians to be unoccupied, lest the Germans, who are desirous of new fields, should cross the Rhine." 6. The Helvetians were persuaded (§ 207) to await his arrival. 7. Influenced by a lack of men and arms, they sent envoys to seek peace (*express the idea of purpose in four different ways*).

2. Review Word List 8, in the Appendix, page 46.

them to death or sold them into slavery. Caesar thought this act, which seems cruel to us, necessary as a warning to the rest of the Gauls.

6. **Cibī:** genitive of the whole with **nihil**, *no food* (App. § 11).

7. **Cōpiam facerent:** *furnish a supply.*

8. **Ēgregiā virtūte:** *to be men of exceptional valor* (App. § 37).

9. **Atque:** *as.*

10. **Tabulae:** *lists, records.*

11. **Līterīs Graecīs:** the Gauls, who had no alphabet of their own, had acquired a familiarity with the Greek alphabet through their contact with the Greek colony at Massilia (Marseilles), in southern Gaul.

12. **Quī ... exīsset:** indirect question, in apposition with **ratiō**; translate, *an account of the number which* etc.

13. **Possent:** translate as if past indicative (App. § 73).

14. **Summa:** *the sum.*

212. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *dimension, immense, commensurate, subterfuge, equation, fragile, fragment, irrefragable, affix, pervert* (force of *per-*?), *embrace, bracelet, reflexive, esquire, instant, redintegration, mediator, relative, bipartite, tripartite, denude, sepulchral, demur, animadvert, frugal, depleted, bounty, evacuate, summary, repertory, extradition, jurisdiction, refraction* (sci.), *legato* (mus.), *nocturne* (mus.).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **claudere** (**-clūdere** in compounds), *to shut*: *exclude, preclude, recluse, exclusive, inclusive, seclude.* A *clause* is so called because it is *closed* up, or complete in itself.

3. Explain the following derivatives of **fīdere**, *to trust*: *confide, confident* (adj.), *confidant* (noun), *diffident, defy, perfidy* (note the force of *per-, contrary to*, as in *perjury*), *infidel. Fidelity* (**fidēlitās**) and *fealty* are "doublets." *Diffident* and *defiant* are also "doublets," but with widely different meanings. Explain *affidavit.*

4. *Treason* and *tradition* are "doublets." Explain the basic meaning of each.

5. Anglo-Saxon cognates of Latin words beginning with *f* frequently begin with *b*. Thus **ferre** and *bear* are cognates; **frangere** and *break*; **fuī** and *be*; **frāter** and *brother.*

Anglo-Saxon cognates of Latin words beginning with *p* frequently begin with *f*. Thus **prīmus** and *first* are cognates; **pēs**

and *foot*; **pater** and *father*; **plēnus** and *full*; **paucī** and *few*; **pāscere** and *food*.

Anglo-Saxon cognates of Latin words beginning with *c* frequently begin with *h*. Thus **collis** and *hill* are cognates; **centum** and *hundred*; **citrā** and *hither*; **cornū** and *horn*.

Other cognates are **nox** (**noctis**) and *night*; **lūx** and *light*; **māter** and *mother*; **soror** and *sister*; **mēns** (**mentis**) and *mind*; **volō** and *will*; **vigilia** and *wake*; **vehiculum** and *wagon*; **ager** and *acre*; **nōmen** and *name*; **medius** and *middle*; **nunc** and *now*; **nōn** and *no*.

213. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. Caesar had sent men to collect and bring to him the arms and hostages of the defeated Helvetians. 2. The Helvetians used Greek letters for the purpose of making accounts. 3. Caesar learned from the census how many of the Helvetians had left home. 4. He ordered that the Boii, a tribe of remarkable valor, should be located in the territory of the Haeduans. 5. Caesar said, "Let us not allow the land of the Helvetians to be unoccupied, lest the Germans, who are desirous of new fields, should cross the Rhine." 6. The Helvetians were persuaded (§ 207) to await his arrival. 7. Influenced by a lack of men and arms, they sent envoys to seek peace (*express the idea of purpose in four different ways*).

2. Review Word List 8, in the Appendix, page 46.

LESSON 55

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS AND THE GERMANS

From ancient times down to the time of the modern Germans, peoples living east of the Rhine have shown a desire to move westward across that river. Fifty years before Caesar's campaigns, the Cimbri and Teutones had moved westward across the Rhine and caused consternation to the Gauls, and to the Romans as well. When Caesar came into Gaul, he was at once made aware of the migratory tendency of the Germans, a hundred thousand of whom had recently crossed the Rhine under their king Ariovistus. He realized that one of his first acts in the interests of Rome must be the suppression of further German immigration. He justifies his action on the ground that the Gauls themselves had appealed to him for aid. It is clear, however, that he had decided definitely upon the policy of regarding the Rhine as the frontier of Roman possessions. So his second campaign (there was time for it before winter) was carried on against Ariovistus.

Thus the struggle for the possession of the Rhine and for the country directly west of it, which we now call Alsace, began in Caesar's day and has continued to the present time.

In this campaign Caesar's plans were at first seriously disturbed by a mutinous panic among his soldiers, who were terrified by the accounts of the ferocious character of the Germans and by the memory of the Cimbri and Teutones.

The following five scenes describe the appeal of the Gauls, the panic in the army, the settlement of the mutiny, the talk with Ariovistus, and the defeat of the latter.

LESSON 56

THE GALLIC STATES BESEECH CAESAR FOR AID AGAINST ARIOVISTUS *

Caesar is sitting in front of his tent in Gaul. He has just come from a meeting of representatives of the Gallic tribes, who have assured him that his victory over the Helvetians is to the advantage of Gaul as well as of the Romans. He is now dictating orders to several clerks and talking with Labienus and other officers, who stand or sit near by.

Enter a group of Gallic chiefs, among them Diviciacus,[1] *the Haeduan.*

214. CAESAR. Quid illī volunt? Nōnne sunt eīdem quī paulō ante[2] ex conciliō ēgressī sunt? Cūr revertērunt?

Labienus goes to the chiefs, holds brief conversation with them, and returns to Caesar's side

LABIĒNUS. Tēcum loquī volunt. Petunt ut dē suā omniumque salūte tēcum agere[3] liceat.[4]

CAESAR. Jubē illōs appropinquāre; nam in Gallōs bonō animō esse dēbeō.

Labienus signals to the chiefs to draw near. They are obviously much excited. When they arrive in front of Caesar, some throw themselves at his feet, and others openly shed tears

PRĪNCIPĒS. Salvē, Caesar!

CAESAR. Salvēte, vōs quoque! Quārē vōs ad pedēs meōs prōjēcistis? Quae causa hārum lacrimārum?

* Based on Book I, chaps. 30–33.

THE GAULS REQUEST CAESAR'S AID AGAINST THE GERMANS*

PRĪMUS PRĪNCEPS. Tēcum dē salūte nostrā līberē dīcere volumus.

SECUNDUS PRĪNCEPS. Ō imperātor potentissime Rōmānōrum, dē salūte nostrā verēmur.

TERTIUS PRĪNCEPS. Tēcum loquī volumus; tamen timēmus nē[5] ea quae dictūrī sīmus per cīvitātēs Galliae ēnūntientur. Sī ea ēnūntiāta erunt, nōs in cruciātum veniēmus.[6] Itaque dē tē et exercitū Rōmānō praesidium petimus.

CAESAR. Mōs Rōmānōrum semper fuit amīcīs et sociīs praesidiō esse. Līberē dīcite. Quārē verēminī?

DĪVICIĀCUS, *stepping forward*. Prō hīs dīcam. Germānōs nōs omnēs verēmur. Galliae tōtius factiōnes sunt duae; hārum alterīus prīncipātum tenent Haeduī, alterīus Arvernī. Hī dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contendērunt.

CAESAR, *a bit impatiently*. Quid dē Germānīs?

DĪVICIĀCUS. Tandem ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcessītī sunt.[7] Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsiērunt. Postquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāvērunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduī semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt.

SECUNDUS PRĪNCEPS. Sed peius victōribus[8] Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidit![9]

DĪVICIĀCUS. Rēctē ille dīxit. Nam Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum agrīs cōnsēdit tertiamque partem[10] agrī Sēquanī, quī est optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvit. Et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā[11] Sēquanōs dēcēdere jubet, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum vīgintī

---

* Caesar, **imperātor**, is seated with a clerk at his side. He wears the military cloak of the commander in chief, the **palūdāmentum**. Lictors, bearing the fasces with the axes, stand behind him. Labienus, his most trusted lieutenant-general, **lēgātus**, stands at the left. At the left of Labienus stands a military tribune. Diviciacus, the head of the Haeduan state, is spokesman for the Gauls. Observe also the horn-player and the standard bearers of the Romans and the Gauls.

quattuor ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locum et sēdēs parārī necesse est.[12] Paucīs annīs[13] omnēs nōs ex fīnibus Galliae pellēmur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsībunt.

CAESAR. Quālis est Ariovistus iste?

DĪVICIĀCUS. Crūdēlissimus est vir et Gallīs inimīcissimus. Ut semel[14] Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō[15] vīcit, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimōrum omnium līberōs poscit, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque[16] ēdit,[17] sī qua rēs[18] nōn ad nūtum aut ad[19] voluntātem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus, īrācundus, temerārius: nōn possunt eius imperia diūtius sustinērī.

PRĪNCIPĒS. Tū potes nōs dēfendere. Auxilium populī Rōmānī implōrāmus. Nōs dēfende ab cruciātū Ariovistī! Nōbīs succurre!

Being persons easily excited to emotion, the chiefs again throw themselves at Caesar's feet and weep loudly — except the representatives of the Sequanians. Caesar notices the action of the Sequanians

CAESAR. Cūr, Dīviciāce, Sēquanī nihil eārum rērum quās cēterī faciunt? Cūr trīstēs capite dēmissō[20] terram intuentur? (*To the Sequanians*) Quae causa eius reī est? (*The Sequanians remain silent.*) Cūr mihi nihil respondētis?

DĪVICIĀCUS. Sēquanī nihil respondent, quod miserior et gravior est fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum. Nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audent. Absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adsit,[21] horrent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās datur, Sēquanīs vērō,[22] quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī.[23]

CAESAR. Salūs Galliae vōbīs nōn dēspēranda est.[24] Haec rēs mihi cūrae erit.[25] Haeduōs,[26] quī frātrēs saepenumerō ā senātū appellātī sunt, in servitūte ac potestāte Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs,

mihi et reī pūblicae turpissimum esse arbitror. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum est. Neque exīstimō hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs, Galliā occupātā, dubitātūrōs esse in Prōvinciam exīre atque in Italiam contendere; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē[27] occurrendum est.[28] Magnam tamen spem habeō Ariovistum beneficiō meō et auctōritāte adductum fīnem injūriīs factūrum.

PRĪNCIPĒS. Maxima est auctōritās Rōmānōrum! Exercitus Rōmānus Germānōs ex fīnibus nostrīs expellet. Tibi, Ō Caesar, grātiās agimus. Salūs Gallīs ā Rōmānīs datur. Domum contendāmus et verba Caesaris nūntiēmus.

The chiefs, now full of hope because of Caesar's speech, leave his presence

215. Notes

1. **Diviciacus:** what was his attitude toward Caesar? (See § 177, n. 3.)

2. **Paulō ante:** *a little while ago* (lit. *before by a little*); **paulō** is ablative, showing how much before it was. This use of the case is called the *ablative of degree of difference* (App. § 36).

3. **Agere** = **loquī.**

4. **Liceat:** two of the most common impersonal verbs in Latin are **licet**, *it is permitted*, and **oportet**, *it is necessary*. When you meet either of them, ask yourself what it is in the sentence that is permitted or necessary. Usually you will find it in an infinitive or in a clause.

5. **Timēmus nē:** *we fear that*; after a verb of *fearing* **nē** is equivalent to *that* or *lest*.

6. **Nōs in cruciātum veniēmus:** translate the idea, not the words.

7. **Mercēde arcessītī sunt:** *were hired* (lit. *were summoned by pay*). The first Germans came as hired soldiers to aid the Arvernian faction.

8. **Victōribus:** translate by an adjective.

9. **Peius accidit:** *a worse fate has befallen.*

10. **Tertiam partem:** *a third*; the region now known as Alsace.

11. **Dē alterā parte tertiā:** *from a second third.*

12. **Parārī necesse est:** *must be provided.* Subject of **est**?

13. **Paucīs annīs:** *within a few years* (App. § 42).

14. **Ut semel:** *as soon as.*

15. **Proeliō:** this battle occurred two years before Caesar came to Gaul.

16. **Omnia exempla cruciātūsque:** *all kinds of tortures* (lit. *all examples and tortures*).

17. **Ēdit:** *inflicted* (lit. *gave out*).

18. **Sī qua rēs:** *in case anything*; **qua** is indefinite.

19. **Ad . . . ad:** *at . . . in accordance with.*

20. **Capite dēmissō:** *with bowed heads*; ablative absolute.

21. **Velut sī adsit:** *as if he were present.*

22. **Vērō:** *but.*

23. **Sēquanīs sunt perferendī:** *must be endured by the Sequanians.*

24. **Vōbīs nōn dēspēranda est:** *you must not despair of* (lit. *is not to be despaired of by you*). This combination of the future passive participle with **est** expresses necessity or obligation.

25. **Haec . . . erit:** *I shall look after this matter* (lit. *this thing will be for a care to me*).

26. **Haeduōs:** *for the Haeduans* etc. **Haeduōs . . . tenērī** is subject of the second **esse**.

27. **Quam mātūrrimē:** *as soon as possible.*

28. **Quibus . . . occurrendum est:** *these dangers must be prevented* (lit. *it is to be run against these things*). Explain the case of **rēbus**.

LESSON 57

A PANIC SEIZES THE ROMAN ARMY *

The Roman camp near Vesontio. As Ariovistus has refused to meet Caesar and talk over with him the Gallic situation, or to do any of the things Caesar has commanded him, the Roman army is now marching against him. They have paused a few days at Vesontio to gather food and supplies. The inexperienced men in the army, especially the tribunes [1] and prefects,[2] have become somewhat panic-stricken as they have approached nearer the Germans.

The time is toward midday. Three tribunes of the soldiers, Titinius, Curius, and Caelius, are talking together at the corner of two of the streets [3] of the camp. All have a frightened and dejected expression on their faces.

216. TITINIUS. Ubi est Cassius? Eum nūper nōn vīdī.

CURIUS. In tabernāculō sē abdidit. Perterritus ibi fātum suum queritur.

TITINIUS. Neque eum culpō. Ut dē mē cōnfitear,[4] ego propter perīculum sum miserrimus. Nōnne tū verēris?

CAELIUS. Nōs omnēs verēmur; nam majus in diēs [5] crēscit perīculum. Cūr in hanc terram longinquam vēnerīmus[6]? Cūr Rōmae nōn mānserīmus?

CURIUS. Tū, ut opīnor, amīcitiae causā ex urbe Caesarem es secūtus, quod ūsum reī mīlitāris voluistī. Titinius idem cupiēbat.

CAELIUS. Satis reī mīlitāris mihi jam est.[7] Crās ab imperātōre petam ut Rōmam mē discēdere liceat.

* Based on Book I, chap. 39.

TITINIUS. Ego quoque, Caesare volente, nōn longius cum exercitū prōgrediar, sed ad urbem[8] proficīscar. Omnēs comitēs nostrī, tribūnī praefectīque, mortem exspectāre incipiunt. Tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignantur.[9] Rōmam redībō.

Enter Torquatus, another tribune

TORQUĀTUS. Quid dīcēbās? Tē Rōmam discessūrum esse?

TITINIUS. Ego et Curius et Caelius. Diūtius in Galliā manēre nōbīs minimē placet.[10] Si hīc manēbimus, omnēs ā Germānīs occīdēmur. Nēmō cum Germānīs sine suā perniciē contendit. Hesternō diē cum mercātōribus forte locūtus sum, quī Germānōs ingentī magnitūdine[11] corporum, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant. Nē vultum quidem eōrum atque āciem oculōrum mercātōrēs ferre poterant. Cum hominibus eius modī, quī invictī atque exercitātissimī in armīs sunt et inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērunt, congredī nōlō in proeliō. Quid dē tē, Torquāte? Nōnne nōbīscum proficīscēris?

TORQUĀTUS. Nōn ita timidus sum ut Germānōs verear. Nōn hostem timeō, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēdunt inter nōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam,[12] ut satis commodē supportārī possit.

TITINIUS. Tacē, Torquāte. Spērāvistīne vēram mentem dissimulāre posse? Minus timidus quam cēterī exīstimārī vīs, sed nōs dēcipere nōn potes. Perterritus es. Vix vultum fingere[13] et lacrimās tenēre potes!

Enter Sulpicius, another tribune

SULPICIUS. Aliquid novī[14] audīvī. Rūmōribus commōtī etiam eī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habent, mīlitēs legiōnāriī centuriōnēsque[15] quīque equitātuī praesunt, maximē sunt perturbātī. Nōn nūllī nūntiant, cum Caesar castra movērī ac signa ferrī jusserit,[16] mīlitēs nōn fore dictō audientēs[17] neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

TORQUĀTUS. Nōn sine causā centuriōnēs timent. Ego quoque timeō. Ad Caesarem statim omnēs eāmus et petāmus ut eius voluntāte nōs domum discēdere liceat.

Exeunt omnēs

217. Notes

1. **Tribunes:** each legion had six military tribunes. They were young men of good family, with a desire for some military experience as a start for a political career. They got their appointment from Caesar more for social than for military reasons. Subordinate duties were assigned them, but they were of little help in commanding men.

2. These officers commanded small detachments, especially of cavalry.

3. **Streets:** the camp had one large street connecting two of the gates, and many cross streets on which were the tents of the soldiers.

4. **Ut . . . cōnfitear:** *to tell the truth about myself.*

5. **Majus in diēs:** *greater from day to day.*

6. **Vēnerīmus:** translate this perfect subjunctive as if it were perfect indicative. Do the same with **mānserīmus.**

7. **Satis . . . est:** *I've already had enough of military life* (lit. *sufficient of military things is already to me*). For case of **mihi** see App. § 21.

8. **Urbem:** what city?

9. **Obsignantur:** *are being sealed*; a seal was needed to make the will valid. The making of wills shows the despair of the men.

10. **Placet:** impersonal here (see note on **liceat**, § 215, n. 4).

11. **Ingentī magnitūdine:** *men of huge size*; ablative of description used in the predicate.

12. **Rem frūmentāriam:** translate as the subject of **posset.** Observe that the clause **ut . . . posset** follows a verb of *fearing* (App. § 68).

13. **Vultum fingere:** *to keep up a bold face* (lit. *to fashion the expression*).

14. **Aliquid novī:** *some news* (lit. *something of new*). See App. § 11.

15. **Centuriōnēs:** these were noncommissioned officers (like the modern sergeant), sixty to a legion, appointed from the ranks because of their bravery and military efficiency. They were the leaders of the soldiers in battle, and at all times a great power in the army. The success of Caesar's campaigns depended not a little on their bravery and devotion.

16. **Jusserit:** *orders*; perfect subjunctive.

17. **Mīlitēs . . . audientēs:** *the soldiers will not obey* (lit. *will not be hearing to the word*). **Fore** is another form of **futūrus esse.**

LESSON 58

CAESAR CALMS THE MUTINY *

Later the same day in another part of the camp. Caesar has heard that his soldiers are not likely to march forward at his command because of the fear and unrest pervading the ranks. So he has called his best fighting men, the centurions, into a council with the officers.

218. CAESAR. Certior factus sum mīlitēs in Ariovistum signa nōn lātūrōs esse. Vehementer vōs, centuriōnēs, reprehendō, quod cōgitātis quam in partem et quō cōnsiliō dūcāminī. Nōn mīlitis [1] sed imperātōris est dē ratiōne et cōnsiliō bellī cōnstituere.

Iter facimus ut cum Ariovistō in colloquium veniam. Quam ob rem Ariovistum vōbīs timendum esse arbitrāminī? Ille, mē cōnsule,[2] cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetiit. Neque exīstimō eum temerē ex officiō discessūrum.[3] Mihi quidem persuādētur,[4] cognitīs meīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum.

VOICES FROM THE CENTURIONS. Furōre impulsus est Ariovistus! Barbarī sunt Germānī! Quam ingentī magnitūdine corporum!

CAESAR. Quod sī [5] furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulerit, vōbīs neque verendum [6] neque dē vestrā virtūte neque dē meā dīligentiā dēspērandum erit. Factum est eōrum Germānōrum perīculum [7] patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrī et Teutonēs [8] ā C. Mariō magnā clāde pulsī

* Based on Book I, chaps. 40–41.

CAESAR REBUKES AND ENCOURAGES HIS SOLDIERS

On Caesar's right stand the most important of his legati, or lieutenant generals. Next to Caesar is Titus Labienus, his most trusted officer. The others, in order, are Servius Galba, who with Brutus later participated in the assassination of Caesar; the youthful Publius Crassus, who was mainly responsible for the victory of Caesar over Ariovistus, and who with his father, the triumvir Crassus, was killed at Carrhae; Lucius Cotta; Decimus Brutus; Titurius Sabinus; and Publius Sextius Baculus. Among the centurions Baculus is conspicuous for his enthusiastic reception of Caesar's speech

sunt. Hī sunt īdem Germānī quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superāvērunt. Num Helvētiī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī potuērunt?

A CENTURION. Neque Germānī poterunt! 5

CAESAR. Quī rem frūmentāriam et angustiās itineris verentur, arroganter faciunt, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere videantur.[9] Haec mihi sunt cū-

rae.[10] Frūmentum Sēquanī et Lingonēs subministrant; jamque sunt in agrīs frūmenta[11] mātūra. Dē itinere vōs ipsī brevī tempore jūdicābitis.

A Centurion. Ad omnia perīcula parātī sumus!

Caesar. Quod mīlitēs, mē imperante, signa nōn lātūrōs esse nūntiātur,[12] nihil[13] eā rē commoveor. Itaque quod in longiōrem diem[14] cōllātūrus fuī, repraesentābō, et proximā nocte[15] dē quārtā vigiliā castra movēbō, ut quam prīmum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an[16] timor plūs valeat.[17] Quod sī praetereā nēmō[18] sequētur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihique ea praetōria cohors[19] erit.

As Caesar finishes his speech, the centurions begin to talk all at once. It is evident that they are much impressed and that the invincible Roman spirit is again aroused in them. Presently a tribune of the tenth legion comes forward

A Tribune of the Tenth Legion. Tibi, Ō imperātor fēlīcissime, decima legiō grātiās agit, quod dē sē optimum jūdicium fēcistī.[20]

Another Tribune of the Tenth Legion. Decima legiō est ad bellum gerendum parātissima.

A Tribune of the Eighth Legion. Numquam dē tuā dīligentiā dubitāvimus.

A Centurion of the First Rank.[21] Numquam, tē duce,[22] dē ēventū bellī timēbimus.

Another Centurion. Numquam jūdicium dē summā bellī nostrum sed imperātōris[23] esse exīstimāvimus.

Another Centurion. Tuīs verbīs summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī nōbīs omnibus aucta est. Castra moveāmus et ad Ariovistum proficīscāmur!

Caesar. Satisfactiōnem vestram accipiō; tamen dē quārtā vigiliā proficīscēmur. Mīlitibus imperāte ut castra moveant.

Exeunt omnēs

219. Notes

1. **Mīlitis:** *the duty of a soldier*; possessive genitive used after the manner of a predicate noun or adjective.

2. **Mē cōnsule:** *in my consulship.* What literally?

3. **Discessūrum:** what is omitted?

4. **Mihi persuādētur:** *I am convinced* (lit. *it is persuaded to me*); those special verbs that govern the dative are impersonal when passive, and still retain the dative (App. § 18, *a*). What is the subject of **persuādētur**?

5. **Quod sī:** *but if.*

6. **Vōbīs neque verendum (erit):** *you will have no reason to fear.* How should you translate **dēspērandum erit**?

7. **Perīculum:** *a trial.*

8. **Cimbrī et Teutonēs:** about forty-five years previously these barbarian tribes had invaded Gaul from the district across the Rhine, and had planned to invade Italy through Gaul. They had been defeated at Aquae Sextiae in Transalpine Gaul and at Vercellae in Cisalpine Gaul.

9. **Cum . . . videantur:** *because they seem* (App. § 74).

10. **Cūrae:** see section 215, note 25.

11. **Frūmenta:** *the standing grain.*

12. **Quod . . . nūntiātur:** *as to the report that* etc.

13. **Nihil:** *not at all*; adverbial accusative.

14. **In longiōrem diem:** *to a later day.*

15. **Proximā nocte:** *tonight.*

16. **Utrum . . . an:** *whether . . . or*; a double indirect question.

17. **Plūs valeat:** *is the stronger.*

18. **Praetereā nēmō:** *no one else.*

19. **Praetōria cohors:** *a bodyguard*; predicate noun.

20. **Jūdicium fēcistī:** *you have expressed an opinion.*

21. **First Rank:** there were ten cohorts, or companies, in a legion; and the first centurion of the first cohort was ranked the highest.

22. **Tē duce:** *under your leadership.* What literally?

23. **Imperātōris:** see note 1.

LESSON 59

CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS HOLD A CONFERENCE *

The scene is a small hill in a plain, whither Caesar and Ariovistus have come to hold a parley. After a march of six days the Romans have approached so near to Ariovistus that the latter has requested this parley at a spot equidistant between the two armies. At the insistence of Ariovistus both leaders are accompanied only by cavalry, which is located in the distance, with the exception of ten horsemen from each side that are stationed at the foot of the hillock back of their leaders. Caesar and Ariovistus are sitting on their horses.

220. CAESAR. Libenter, tē rogante,[1] in hoc colloquium intrāvī, quoniam id quod anteā mihi petentī[2] negāvistī ultrō fēcistī.

ARIOVISTUS. Sed tū, ut ā mē postulātum est, propius ad mē accessistī.

CAESAR. Magnam in spem vēnī tē prō meīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī beneficiīs fīnem pertināciae factūrum esse. Paucīs tanta beneficia ā Rōmānīs recipere contigit.[3] Nōnne rēx ā senātū appellātus es? Nōnne amīcus? Nōnne mūnera amplissima ad tē missa sunt?

ARIOVISTUS. Amīcitiam autem populī Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō[4] et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportet, atque hāc spē petiī. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium[5] remittētur et dēditīcii subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetiī.

CAESAR. Quod stīpendium remittī dīcis,[6] istud stīpendium ab Haeduīs, amīcīs sociīsque populī Rōmānī, postulātur.

* Based on Book I, chaps. 43–46.

THE CONFERENCE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS

Caesar did not trust the cavalry of his Gallic allies; so he mounted the soldiers of his favorite Tenth Legion as an escort

Veterēs et jūstae causae necessitūdinis populō Rōmānō cum Haeduīs intercēdunt. Populī Rōmānī haec est cōnsuētūdō, ut[7] sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere,[8] sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs velit esse. Itaque exīstimō Haeduōs amīcōsque eōrum mihi dēfendendōs esse.

ARIOVISTUS. Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallīs. Nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquī. Sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs. Nōn ego Gallīs, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt. Omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superātae sunt. Sī iterum experīrī volunt, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī volunt, inīquum est dē stīpendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt.

CAESAR. Sed populus Rōmānus postulat nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferās; obsidēs reddās; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere possīs, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre patiāris.[9] Num putās haec imperāta tibi neglegenda esse?

ARIOVISTUS. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam. Neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs bellum īnferam, sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnit[10] stīpendiumque quotannīs pendent. Sī id nōn fēcerint, longē eīs frāternum nōmen[11] populī Rōmānī aberit. Quod[12] multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī[13] mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā faciō. Ego prius[14] in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressus est. Quid tibi vīs? Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra.

CAESAR. Iterum dīcō: neque mea neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdō patitur utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram; neque jūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populī Rōmānī.

ARIOVISTUS. Dēbeō suspicārī[15] tē exercitum in Galliā habēre

meī opprimendī causā. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex hīs regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod sī tē interfēcerō, multīs nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum faciam [16] (id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habeō), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam tuā morte redimere poterō. Quod sī discesseris et līberam possessiōnem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemiō remūnerābor, et quaecumque bella gerī volēs sine ūllō tuō labōre et perīculō cōnficiam.

CAESAR. Dare, nōn accipere condiciōnēs populus Rōmānus cōnsuēvit.

While the parley has been going on, the cavalry of Ariovistus have been moving toward the hill and throwing missiles at the Roman horsemen. One of the cavalrymen near Caesar now interrupts the parley to call attention to the hostile attitude of the Germans

A CAVALRYMAN. Spectāte equitēs Germānōs! Propius tumulum accēdunt! Ad nostrōs adequitant! Lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs coniciunt! (*He points toward the German cavalry.*)

CAESAR, *looking in the direction to which the cavalryman is pointing.* Sine causā nostrōs proeliō lacessere cōnantur. (*To Ariovistus*) Impetus tuōrum fīnem colloquendī fēcit. Ad meōs redībō, ut eōs certiōrēs faciam quā [17] arrogantiā in colloquiō ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānōs interdīxeris, impetumque ut [18] in nōs tuī equitēs fēcerint, eaque rēs colloquium dirēmerit. Hōc cognitō, multō major alacritās studiumque pugnandī majus exercituī Rōmānō iniciētur.

He returns with his ten horsemen to the main body of cavalry

221. Notes

1. **Tē rogante:** *at your request.* Literally?

2. **Mihi petentī:** *at my request* (lit. *to me asking*). Caesar, as soon as he heard the story of the Gauls (Lesson 56), asked Ariovistus to come

to an interview; but Ariovistus replied that, if Caesar wished anything, he should come to him.

3. **Paucīs contigit:** *few persons have had the fortune* (lit. *it has happened to few*).

4. **Mihi ōrnāmentō:** see section 208.

5. **Stīpendium:** that which the Gallic tribes paid him.

6. **Quod dīcis:** *as for your saying.*

7. **Ut:** introduces a clause of result.

8. **Suī nihil dēperdere:** *to lose none of their power* (lit. *to lose nothing of their own*).

9. **Nē quōs amplius patiāris:** *that you allow no more.*

10. **In eō quod convēnit:** *in that condition which has been agreed upon.*

11. **Frāternum nōmen:** *being called brothers*; the fact that the Romans have called these tribes brothers will not help them.

12. **Quod:** *as for the fact that*; **quod** introduces a clause of fact.

13. **Meī:** genitive singular of **ego**; the genitives of the personal pronouns **ego** and **tū** are used objectively, but not possessively.

14. **Prius:** translate with **quam**, *before.*

15. **Dēbeō suspicārī:** *I have reason to suspect.*

16. **Grātum faciam:** *I shall make myself agreeable.*

17. **Quā:** the rest of the sentence consists of indirect questions, objects of **faciam**.

18. **Ut:** *how*; introduces an indirect question.

LESSON 60

FINAL DEFEAT OF ARIOVISTUS *

Two days after the parley was abruptly broken off, Ariovistus asked Caesar either to come to another parley or to send some of his officers to the German camp. Caesar sent Caius Valerius and Marcus Metius, who he thought would be agreeable to Ariovistus because of their former acquaintance with him. These representatives Ariovistus at once threw into chains.

After this on several occasions Caesar drew up a line of battle, but the enemy refused to fight. Later he learned that the German women, who acted as soothsayers, had predicted defeat in case Ariovistus engaged in battle before the full of the moon. But at last Caesar succeeded in forcing battle.

The scene is somewhere near the battlefield on which the Romans have just defeated Ariovistus. The Germans are in flight toward the river Rhine, which is only about five miles away, and they are being pursued by the Roman cavalry. Bodies of slain Germans, both men and women, lie here and there on the ground. Caesar has paused a moment to receive reports from the battle and the pursuit.

Enter a Messenger

222. MESSENGER. Ā P. Crassō missus hunc nūntium adferō: Cum ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine Germānōrum prīmam et secundam aciem premī animadvertisset Crassus, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs in eā parte terga vertērunt.

* Based on Book I, chaps. 50–54.

CAESAR. Bene fēcit Crassus. Extrēmīs in rēbus[1] neque lēgātīs neque mīlitibus imperāta mea exspectanda sunt, sed quod est necesse faciendum est. Aliā in parte proelī, ut comperī, Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excipiēbant. Repertī sunt autem complūrēs nostrī quī[2] imperātum nōn exspectārent sed in phalanga īnsilīrent[3] et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Mīlitēs eius modī vincī nōn possunt.

Enter another Messenger

MESSENGER. Hunc nūntium adferō: Germānī prius[4] fugere nōn dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī[5] trānāre contendērunt aut, nāvibus inventīs, sibi salūtem repperērunt. Reliquōs omnēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

CAESAR. Nihil mē impediet quīn victōriam reportem.[6]

Enter a third Messenger

MESSENGER. Ariovistus ē manibus nostrīs sē ēripuit, quī cum ad Rhēnum pervēnit, nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit. Utraque uxor[7] Ariovistī in fugā periit. Duārum fīliārum eius altera occīsa, altera capta est.

Enter Valerius

VALERIUS. Cum Ariovistus in castrīs mē apud sē cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: "Quid ad mē vēnistis? An[8] speculandī causā?" Cōnantem dīcere mē prohibuit et in catēnās conjēcit. Posteā, mē praesente, dē mē ter cōnsultum est ā Germānīs, utrum ignī statim necārer an in aliud tempus reservārer. Sortium beneficiō sum incolumis. Germānīs victīs, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherer, ā nostrīs repertus ex hostibus ēreptus sum.

CAESAR. Haec rēs mihi nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit.

THE DEFEAT OF ARIOVISTUS

A tribune is reporting the decisive action of Publius Crassus, a legatus, which won for the Romans the victory over Ariovistus

Enter another Messenger

MESSENGER. Labiēnus tibi nūntiat M. Mētium repertum ad tē dūcī.

CAESAR. Deīs immortālibus grātia habenda est, quod calamitāte hōrum[9] tanta voluptās et grātulātiō nōn dēminūta est. Ad castra revertāmur et nūntiōs dē victōriā Rōmam mittāmus; nam bellum cum Germānīs cōnfectum est. Trāns Rhēnum illī repulsī sunt; ibi perpetuō remaneant.

Exeunt omnēs

223. Notes

1. **Extrēmīs in rēbus:** *in emergencies.*
2. **Quī:** translate the verbs of this clause as if indicative.
3. **Īnsilīrent:** the Germans in the phalanx placed their shields above their heads and formed a roof, on which the Roman soldiers leaped, pulling apart the shields, and using their swords on the men below.
4. **Prius:** see section 221, note 14.
5. **Vīribus cōnfīsī:** *trusting to their strength*; what case is **vīribus**?
6. **Quīn victōriam reportem:** *from gaining the victory.*
7. **Utraque uxor:** *both wives.*
8. **An:** *is it?*
9. **Hōrum:** Valerius and Metius.

LESSON 61

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIANS*

At the close of the campaigns of the first year, Caesar kept his army throughout the winter at Vesontio, in the territory of the Sequani. This action was deeply resented by the Gauls. It was the first time a Roman army had wintered north of the Roman province, and it seemed to the Gauls that this meant the permanent occupation of their country by the Romans. The Belgae feared that they would be attacked next, and formed a defensive league to resist the Romans. This is the justification which Caesar offers for his attack upon them. It should be noted that throughout his history Caesar maintains that his conquests were all more or less forced upon him, and that he merely anticipated his enemies by taking the offensive before they could carry out their plans to do so. We do not have, of course, the Gallic version of the events leading up to the war. There were at Rome many unfriendly critics of Caesar who would and did accuse him of carrying on offensive wars against nations on whom the Roman people had not declared war. Caesar's history was undoubtedly written in part as an answer to such criticisms.

The reputation of the Belgians for courage secured in this war with Caesar (57 B. C.) has been cherished by their descendants. In the World War the modern Belgians fought (A. D. 1914) with the same disregard for life against the invading Germans. In poems written about their heroic conduct Caesar's phrase **fortissimī sunt Belgae** frequently appears.

* Book II.

LESSON 62

THE BELGIANS FORM A LEAGUE AGAINST THE ROMANS *

The Belgians resented the presence of Caesar in Gaul and, fearing an attack, formed a defensive league against him. Study first the campaign map of 57 B.C., page 370, locating all the places mentioned underneath it and tracing Caesar's route.

224. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā,[1] crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur,[2] līterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quōs tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus,[3]

WRITING TABLETS

Labienus used this type of tablet for his letter to Caesar

contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Conjūrandī hae erant causae: prīmum quod verēbantur nē,[1] omnī pācātā Galliā, ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs [5] sollicitābantur, — partim ab eīs quī Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant et populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque

* Bk. II, chaps. 1–4.

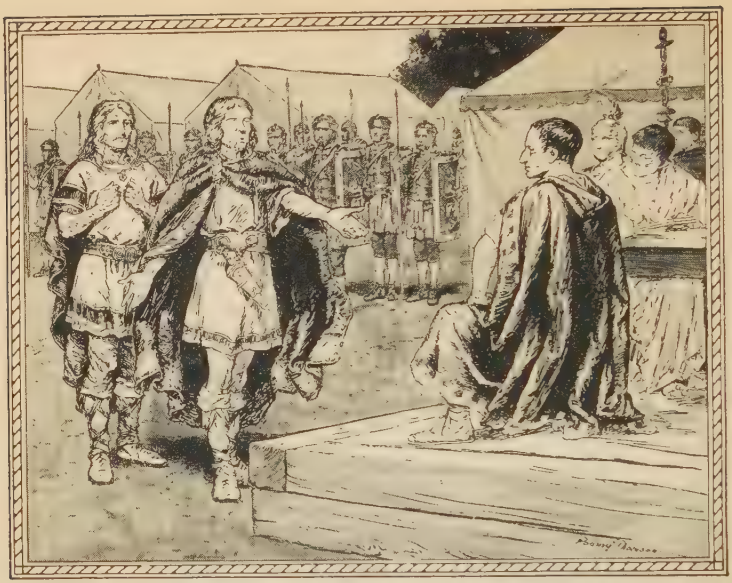
inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant[6]; partim ab eīs quī mōbilitāte et levitāte[7] animī novīs imperiīs studēbant.[8] Ā quibusdam etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus[9] atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs[10] habēbant vulgō rēgna[11] occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem[12] imperiō nostrō[13] cōnsequī poterant.[14]

Caesar makes preparations to take the offensive

Hīs nūntiīs līterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs[15] in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit, et initā aestāte[16] Q. Pedium[17] lēgātum mīsit quī eās in interiōrem Galliam dēdūceret. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia[18] esse incēpit, ad exercitum[19] vēnit. Dat negōtium[20] Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant.[21] Hī omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī,[22] exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō nōn dubitāvit ad eōs proficīscī. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet diēbusque[23] circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi submit and throughout Caesar's governorship remain faithful to the Romans

Eō cum celerius omnium opīniōne[24] vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae[25] ex Belgīs[26] sunt, ad eum lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīcerent sē[27] suaque omnia in fidem[28] atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvisse; sēque parātōs[29] esse obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et in oppidīs Rōmānōs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus juvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum[30] incolunt sēsē cum hīs[31] conjūnxisse; et Suessiōnēs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, omnium furōre commōtōs cum Belgīs cōnsentīre.

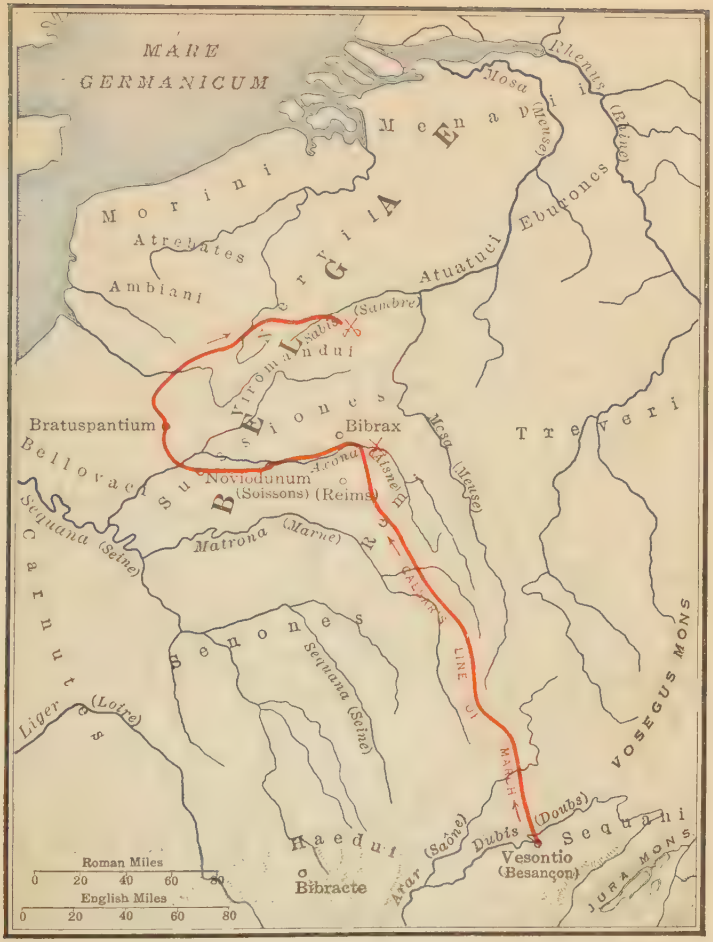


THE REMI SUBMIT TO CAESAR

The envoys of the Remi, Iccius and Andecumborius, present to Caesar the unconditional submission of the Remi. This state remained faithful to Caesar throughout his Gallic campaigns, even in the final revolt of Vercingetorix

Caesar learns from the Remi about the numbers of the Belgian army

Cum Caesar quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent,[32] lēgātī sīc respondērunt: "Plērīque Belgae ortī sunt ā Germānīs,[33] Rhēnumque [34] antīquitus trāductī propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdērunt Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant expulērunt. Sōlī ex Gallīs [35] patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque [36] intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī [37] prohibuērunt; quā ex rē magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmunt. Dē numerō eōrum omnia habēmus explōrāta,[38] propterea quod, propinquitātibus conjūnctī, quan-



CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

Caesar's six legions spent the winter among the Sequani at Vesontio. In the spring Caesar left Cisalpine Gaul, joined his legions at Vesontio, and marched north. The sites of the two battles are marked X. Locate Vesontio, Bibracte, Bibrax, Noviodunum; the Haedui, Sequani, Senones, Remi, Suessiones, Viromandui, Menapii, Bellovaci, Carnutes, Ambiani, Atrebates, Nervii, Aduatuci; the rivers Arar, Sequana, Axona, Sabis, Rhenus

tam quisque[39] multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus.

"Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent[40]; hī possunt cōnficere armāta mīlia centum[41]; pollicitī sunt ex eō numerō ēlēcta[42] mīlia sexāgintā; tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulant. Suessiōnēs nostrī sunt fīnitimī; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs habent. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācus,[43] tōtīus Galliae potentissimus, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum[44] etiam Britanniae[45] imperium obtinuit. Nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter jūstitiam prūdentiamque summa[46] tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte[47] dēfertur.

"Suessiōnēs oppida habent numerō XII, pollicentur mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā. Totidem Nerviī pollicentur, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs[48] habentur longissimēque absunt; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morinī XXV mīlia, Menapiī VII mīlia, Viromanduī X mīlia, Aduatucī decem et novem mīlia; aliae cīvitātēs quae ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, ad XL mīlia."

225. Notes

1. **In citeriōre Galliā:** after his campaign against Ariovistus, Caesar returned to Cisalpine Gaul, where he held court during the winter.

2. **Afferēbantur:** *kept coming in* (lit. *were being brought*); the past descriptive shows repeated action in this verb and in **fīēbat**.

3. **Dīxerāmus:** Caesar uses the editorial "we" in speaking of himself as the author. See Lesson 44 for the Belgians.

4. **Verēbantur nē:** *they feared that* (or *lest*).

5. **Nōn nūllīs Gallīs:** *some of the Gauls*, that is, inhabitants of the central part of Gaul. Three classes were instigating the Belgians: those who objected to having foreigners in Gaul; those who wished to have a change in government; and those powerful nobles (such as Orgetorix, Casticus, and Dumnorix) who would have little chance for their political activities under the stable rule of the Romans.

6. **Molestē ferēbant:** *took it hard, were annoyed.*

THE CATHEDRAL OF RHEIMS

The name of the Remi is preserved in that of Rheims, which occupies the site of the ancient capital of the Remi. Many modern cities of France bear names derived from the names of the tribes that dwelt in those districts

7. **Mōbilitāte, levitāte:** Caesar would have his readers understand that these qualities characterized all the Gauls.

8. **Novīs imperiīs studēbant:** *were desirous of a change in government*; see App. § 18 for the case of **imperiīs**.

9. **Potentiōribus:** *the more powerful*, that is, the nobles.

10. **Ad . . . facultātēs:** *the means for hiring soldiers.*

11. **Rēgna:** *power.*

12. **Eam rem:** that is, power.

13. **Imperiō nostrō:** *under our government*; expresses time and cause.

14. **Poterant:** *would be able.*

15. **Duās legiōnēs:** with these two new legions Caesar had eight legions, numbered VII XIV, giving him about 30,000 legionary soldiers.

16. **Initā aestāte:** *at the beginning of warm weather* (lit. *summer having been entered on*); ablative absolute.

17. **Pedium:** a nephew of Caesar.

18. **Pābulī cōpia:** a large amount of fodder was needed for the many beasts of burden which carried the baggage, and for the cavalry.

19. **Ad exercitum:** probably at Vesontio, a town of the Sequani.

20. **Dat negōtium:** *he directed* (lit. *he gives the task*). For tense see App. § 51.

21. **Utī . . . cognōscant . . . faciant:** *of finding out* etc. (lit. *that they find out*); substantive volitive clauses (App. § 67), in apposition with **negōtium.**

22. **Manūs cōgī:** *small bands were gathering* (lit. *bands to be gathered*).

23. **Diēbus:** ablative of time within which. It has been estimated that Caesar traveled over one hundred and forty miles in these fifteen days. This was not very rapid traveling for his army; on forced marches the legions sometimes traveled twenty-five miles a day.

24. **Omnium opīniōne:** *than anyone expected* (lit. *than the opinion of all*). Caesar's rapid marches frequently took the Gauls by surprise.

25. **Galliae:** the central part.

26. **Ex Belgīs:** used instead of the genitive of the whole with **proximī.**

27. **Sē:** object of **permittere**; another **sē**, omitted to avoid the awkwardness of repetition, is understood as the subject of **permittere.**

28. **In fidem:** *under the protection.*

29. **Parātōs:** an adjective, followed by four complementary infinitives, **dare . . . juvāre.**

30. **Cis Rhēnum:** the west side of the river.

31. **Hīs:** the Belgians.

32. **Quid . . . possent:** *what strength they had in war* (lit. *to what extent they were able*). **Quid** is an adverbial accusative.

33. **Ā Germānīs:** ablative indicating origin. While some of the tribes may have had German blood, the envoys were probably in error in saying that the Belgians were descended from the Germans.

34. **Rhēnum:** depends on the **trāns** in **trā(ns)ductī** (App. § 28).

35. **Sōlī ex Gallīs:** *they alone of the Gauls.*

36. **Teutonōs Cimbrōsque:** see section 219, note 8.

37. **Ingredī:** *from entering* (lit. *to enter*).

38. **Omnia habēmus explōrāta:** *we have complete information* (lit. *we have all things found out*); **habēmus explōrāta** = **explōrāvimus.**

39. **Quisque:** each delegate to the war council.

40. **Plūrimum valent:** *are the strongest*; **plūrimum** is adverbial accusative.

41. **Armāta mīlia centum:** *a hundred thousand armed men*; as if **armātōrum hominum** had been written.

42. **Ēlēcta:** *picked men.*

43. **Dīviciācus**: not the Diviciacus mentioned in Lesson 56.
44. **Cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also.*
45. **Britanniae**: the southern part of the island. This is said to be the first mention of Britain by a Roman author.
46. **Summa**: *the control.*
47. **Omnium voluntāte**: *by general consent.*
48. **Inter ipsōs**: *among them,* that is, the Belgians.

226. Clauses after Verbs of Fearing

In the sentence "I fear *lest he fail* (*that he will fail*)," the clause *lest he fail* tells something that I fear will happen but obviously do *not want* to have happen. It is a noun (substantive) clause of volition, the object of *fear*, with the subjunctive form *fail*.

Latin has exactly the same usage after verbs of *fearing*, but, since the clause tells something that is *not wanted*, the introductory conjunction is **nē**, and not **ut**. The **nē** may be translated *that*, or sometimes *lest*. Translate the following sentences:

Timēmus nē veniant.
Verēbantur nē ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur.

Observe that **nē** has a meaning apparently opposite to that which it has in other noun clauses, where it means *that not*. This is because in both cases the act is regarded as *not wanted*.* **Ut** after verbs of *fearing* means *that not*. For the rule see the Appendix, section 68.

Remember that after verbs of fearing *nē* means "that."

227. Drill and Review

1. What are the principal parts and stems of **ferō, eō, volō, nōlō,** and **faciō**? Conjugate the following in the subjunctive: **jubeō** (present, active and passive); **faciō** (past progressive, active); **pōnō** (perfect, active and passive); **habeō** (past perfect, active and passive). Decline the gerund of **incipiō**. Give the infinitives and participles of **jungō**.

* The word *lest* (= **nē**) is used very much like **nē**. Thus, in the sentence "I acted quickly lest he prevent it," *lest* means *that not* and introduces a negative *purpose* clause with the subjunctive (*prevent*). But after verbs of fearing, *lest*, like **nē**, means *that*: as, "I fear lest he come," where *lest* introduces a noun volitive clause with the subjunctive, exactly corresponding to clauses with **nē**.

2. Read and translate:

1. Cīvitātēs Galliae, quae verentur nē lībertāte prīventur, contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrant. 2. Caesar, veritus nē in suōs impetus fieret, quaesīvit quae causae conjūrandī essent. 3. Cum Caesar ex Galliā citeriōre profectūrus esset, duās legiōnēs praemīsit, quod timēbat ut satis cōpiārum ad superandōs Gallōs habēret. 4. Rēmī dīxērunt sē timēre nē omnēs Belgae in armīs essent.

3. Write in Latin:

1. Caesar did not fear that the Remi would not aid him with grain. 2. Nor did he fear that they would sympathize with the other Gauls. 3. The rest of the Gauls, fearing lest they be deprived of power, are leading an army together for the purpose of driving out the Romans.

LESSON 63

THE OPPOSING ARMIES APPROACH EACH OTHER *

In reading Caesar's account, note that his strategy illustrates a favorite policy of the Romans at all times, **dīvide et imperā**; that is, divide your enemies, prevent them from uniting against you, and thus insure an easier victory. Trace the movements of Caesar and the Belgians on the battle plan, page 370. Strive for a clear mental picture of the situation.

228. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum [1] ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī jussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet manūs hostium distinendās esse, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit.[2] "Id fierī poterit," inquit, "sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint."[3] Hīs rēbus mandātīs, eum ā sē dīmittit.

Postquam ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad sē venīre neque jam longē abesse cognōvit, flūmen [4] Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum [4] trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs [5] latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant [6] tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et efficiēbat ut commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent.[7] In [8] eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī jubet.

* Bk. II, chaps. 5–8.

The Belgians attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi

Ab nostrīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere[9] magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Gallōrum atque Belgārum oppugnātiō[10] est haec:[11] ubi undique in mūrum lapidēs[12]

GUIDES FROM THE REMI LEAD THE ARCHERS AND SLINGERS TO THE RELIEF OF BIBRAX

jacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus[13] nūdātus est, portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt.[14] Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.[15] Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī.[16] Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius, Rēmus[17] summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium[18] ad Caesarem mittit: "Nisi subsidium nōbīs submittētur, nōs diūtius sustinēre nōn poterimus."

Caesar relieves the town, and the Belgians abandon the attack

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs[19] subsidiō oppidānīs mittit. Quōrum adventū Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit,[20] et hostibus[21] eādem causā spēs potiendī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum populātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant[22] incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs[23] contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus[24] castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus[25] passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar fortifies his position with intrenchments

Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit. Cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset[26] et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur.[27] Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, colle prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā idōneō,[28] ab utrōque latere collis trānsversam fossam[29] obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum. Ad extrēmās fossās[30] castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta[31] collocāvit, nē hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant,[32] ab lateribus suōs in aciē īnstrūctōs[33] circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās[34] īnstrūxērunt.

229. Notes

1. **Senātum:** the high council of the tribe.

2. **Nē cōnflīgendum sit:** *that it may not be necessary to fight*; the future passive participle with **sit** is used impersonally here.

3. **Agrōs populārī coeperint:** it was Caesar's expectation that the Bellovaci would return to the defense of their own land if it were invaded

by the Haeduans. The future perfects in this clause are expressed in English by a present tense.

4. **Flūmen, exercitum:** **trādūcere** takes two accusatives, **flūmen**, governed by the prefix **trā-** (**trāns-**), and **exercitum**, governed by **-dūcere.**

A SLING

5. **Quae rēs:** *this movement.*

6. **Post eum quae erant:** *his rear* (lit. *those things* (supply **ea**) *which were behind him*).

7. **Efficiēbat ut commeātūs portārī possent:** *made it possible for supplies to be brought* (App. § 71).

8. **In:** *over.*

9. **Ex itinere:** *on the march*; the Belgians merely turned aside from their course to attack the town.

10. **Oppugnātiō:** *method of attack.*

11. **Haec:** *as follows*; predicate adjective.

12. **Lapidēs:** probably small stones which were thrown by slings.

13. **Dēfēnsōribus:** what use of the ablative?

14. **Subruunt:** *try to undermine.*

15. **Sustentātum est:** *the inhabitants held out.* See section 207.

16. **Potestās erat nūllī:** *no one had the power, no one was able* (to stand). **Nūllī**, used as the dative of **nēmō**, is the *dative of possession* (App. § 21).

17. **Rēmus:** *one of the Remi.*

18. **Nūntium:** *a message.*

19. **Numidās . . . Baleārēs:** among the auxiliaries that Caesar employed were bowmen from Numidia and Crete and slingers from the Balearic Isles, east of Spain. Both groups were very skillful with their weapons. **Sagittāriōs** is in apposition with **Numidās** and **Crētas.**

LEAD SLINGSTONE

20. **Rēmīs accessit:** *was aroused in the Remi*; what literally?

21. **Hostibus:** this dative, which indicates separation (App. § 22), should be translated like an ablative of separation.

22. **Quō . . . potuerant:** *which they had been able to approach.*

23. **Omnibus cōpiīs: cum** is sometimes omitted in phrases expressing accompaniment.

24. **Ā . . . duōbus:** *less than two miles away*; **ā** is used adverbially, and **mīlibus** is ablative of degree of difference (App. § 36).

25. **Mīlibus:** ablative of comparison (App. § 35).

26. **Quid . . . posset:** *the strength of the enemy* (lit. *what the enemy were able in courage*); indirect question. **Quid** is adverbial accusative.

27. **Perīclitābātur:** *tried to find out.*

28. **Colle . . . idōneō:** ablative absolute expressing cause.

29. **Trānsversam fossam:** *an intrenchment at right angles.*

30. **Ad extrēmās fossās:** *at the ends of the intrenchment* (§ 138, N. 3).

31. **Tormenta:** what may be called the artillery of the Romans consisted of various engines called **tormenta**, the force of which came from twisted (**tortus**, from **torqueō**, *twist*) ropes. They were used in the siege of a town, but ordinarily not on the battlefield. The catapult (**catapulta**) shot large arrows or javelins in a horizontal direction as far as a thousand feet. The scorpion (**scorpiō**) shot smaller missiles in the same way. The ballista (**ballista**) hurled great stones in the manner of a modern mortar.

32. **Tantum poterant:** *they were so strong* (lit. *were able so much*).

33. **Īnstrūctōs:** with **suōs.**

34. **Ēductās:** translate by a coördinate verb; *led out and drew up.*

230. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *solicitude* (note single *l*), *preposition, conversant, versatile, inveterate, molestation, divulge, cisatlantic, vexation, effective, fumigate, perfume, fumes, supersede, riparian, rent, negotiable* (com.), *demise* (law), *accessory* (law), *armature* (sci.), *accelerando* (mus.).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **levis**, *light*: *levity, alleviate, elevator, levitation, levant, leaven.*

3. The compounds of **dō** belong to the third conjugation. Give principal parts, and derivatives (where they exist), of **addō, condō, dēdō, ēdō, perdō, prōdō, reddō, trādō.** Give composition, and derivatives (where they exist), of **adeō, exeō, ineō, prōdeō, redeō, trānseō.**

4. In the phrase **omnia explōrāta habēmus**, the verb **habēmus** is used with a participle, in a manner much like the English auxiliary *have* (or *avoir* in French), instead of the usual perfect tense. This illustrates the beginning of the change of Latin from a synthetical language into the analytical Romance languages, all of which express the perfect tense by auxiliary verbs derived from **habēre**; for example, *avoir* in French.

231. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. Quod pugnandum erit, Haeduī sē armātūrī sunt. 2. Manūs hostium Dīviciācō et Haeduīs distinendae erant. 3. Summus mōns nostrīs occupandus erit. 4. Ubi diū pugnātum est, nostrī colle potītī sunt.

2. Write in Latin, using the ablative absolute wherever possible:

1. As scouts have been sent ahead, the Romans will soon learn whether (**utrum**) the Belgians are far distant. 2. When the camp had been pitched, he ordered (**imperō**) that supplies be brought to him. 3. After Sabinus and six cohorts had been left on the other bank, Caesar crossed the river with the other legions. 4. Although aid has been sent, we fear that we shall be unable to hold out longer. 5. Hope will leave the enemy, if their fields are devastated. 6. If the Belgians are attacking, Iccius, who is in command of the town, will send a messenger to Caesar to ask for aid.

A BRIDGE AT BERRY-AU-BAC, ON THE RIVER AISNE

This picture, taken in 1919, shows an emergency bridge built during the World War on the site of the former stone bridge. (Photograph by G. R. Swain, Near East Research of the University of Michigan)

LESSON 64

THE BATTLE AT THE RIVER AXONA (AISNE) *

The Belgians attempt to cross the Axona and attack Caesar's forces in the rear. Trace each movement of the opposing armies on the battle plan, page 382. The territory around the Aisne was again a battle ground during the World War. The point on the river where Caesar fought the Belgians is near Berry-au-Bac, where the French in 1914 attempted to build pontoon bridges in the face of a murderous artillery fire from the Germans.

232. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent [1] hostēs exspectābant. Nostrī autem exspectābant sī hostēs trānsīrent, et parātī in armīs erant ut eōs impedītōs aggrederentur. Interim proeliō

* Bk. II, chaps. 9–11.

BATTLE AT THE AXONA (AISNE)

Caesar marched from the south through the territory of the Remi (see campaign map, p. 370). He crossed the Axona and encamped on the north bank (Roman Camp). At the bridge, he left Sabinus with six cohorts (about 2000 men) to protect his line of communication and insure supplies. The camp was protected on the south and west by the Axona and the character of the ground; but to prevent the enemy from getting behind the camp and attacking the east side he extended the walls of the camp at opposite corners, one to the Axona and one to the marsh. Each line terminated in a small fort (**castellum**). The Belgians had been besieging Bibrax, a town of the Remi, allies of Caesar. On Caesar's approach they abandoned the siege, marched south to meet him, and encamped on the opposite side of the marsh. Both armies drew up in battle line. Neither side, however, wished to make the first attack. To do this they would have had to advance through the swamp, and this would have exposed them to a serious disadvantage. The Belgians sent forces from the western end of their line south to the Axona, to cross over and attack Sabinus in the rear. Sabinus sent cavalry and light-armed troops to prevent the Belgians from crossing, and the fight at the river (see illustration) took place

equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur.[2] Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs,[3] Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī hoc facere nōn poterant, in animō habēbant agrōs Rēmōrum populārī, quī magnō ūsuī nōbīs[4] ad bellum gerendum erant, et commeātū nostrōs prohibēre.

The Belgians are prevented from crossing. They disperse, agreeing to gather to defend whatever state is attacked first, thus doing exactly what Caesar had hoped they would do

Caesar certior factus[5] ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae[6] Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per[7] eōrum corpora reliquōs[8] audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs nostrī multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.[9]

Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse[10] intellēxērunt, neque[11] nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque[11] ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam revertī quemque,[12] ut ad eōs dēfendendōs quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent[13] undique convenīrent[14] et potius[15] in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant.[16] Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.[17]

The fleeing Belgians are pursued with great slaughter

Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā [18] magnō cum strepitū ex castrīs ēgressī sunt nūllō certō ōrdine [19] neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum

THE FIGHT AT THE RIVER AXONA

pervenīre properāret.[20] Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus,[21] quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs [22] continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī jussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum om-

nēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent.[23] Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium.[24] Sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

233. Notes

1. **Sī . . . trānsīrent:** indirect question, object of **exspectābant**; (*to see*) *whether our men would cross.*

2. **Proeliō equestrī contendēbātur:** *a cavalry skirmish went on.*

3. **Nostrīs:** dative with an adjective.

4. **Magnō ūsuī nōbīs:** double dative (§ 206, n. 18).

5. **Certior factus:** *on being informed* of what the Belgians were trying to do.

6. **Levis armātūrae:** *light-armed* (lit. *of light armament*).

7. **Per:** *over.*

8. **Reliquōs:** object of **reppulērunt.**

9. **Circumventōs interfēcērunt:** *surrounded and killed.* A coördinate verb is often a convenient means for translating a participle.

10. **Spem . . . fefellisse:** *that their hope had failed them* (lit. *had cheated them*).

11. **Neque** and (next line) **atque** show that the force of **ubi** continues. Repeat *when,* if necessary. With what word is the main clause resumed?

12. **Cōnstituērunt . . . quemque:** *they decided it was best for each one to return to his own home.*

A LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER

13. **Introdūxissent:** *should lead.*

14. **Convenīrent, dēcertārent, ūterentur:** to be taken with **ut** in a clause of purpose.

15. **Potius:** with **quam,** *rather than.*

16. **Quod . . . cognōverant:** *namely, the fact that* etc.; a clause of fact, explaining **ratiō.**

17. **Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat:** *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded* (App. § 18, *a*). Caesar's plan had thus succeeded.

18. **Secundā vigiliā:** what time of night?

19. **Nūllō certō ōrdine:** *with no definite order.*

20. **Cum . . . properāret:** *because* etc.; a causal clause (App. § 74).

21. **Veritus:** *fearing.*

22. **Castrīs:** *in camp* (lit. *by camp*); Caesar uses the construction of means rather than place where with **continēre.**

23. **Cum . . . pōnerent:** *since all* etc.; a causal clause.

24. **Quantum . . . spatium:** *as the time allowed* (lit. *as was the space of the day*). **Tantus** (*as great*) . . . **quantus** (*as*) are called *correlatives.*

234. Special Uses of Participles

1. The perfect participle of a deponent verb frequently has the force of a present active participle: as, **dēlāpsus,** *slipping*; **aggressus,** *attacking*; **secūtī,** *following*; **veritus,** *fearing.*

2. The present active and perfect passive participles are often used substantively: as, **clāmōrēs audientium,** *the shouts of the listeners* (lit. *of those listening*); **nātūra timentium,** *the nature of (people) fearing*; **victīs resistere,** *to oppose (those) defeated*; **venientēs sustinēre,** *to withstand (those) coming up*; **pugnantibus occurrit,** *he comes upon (men) fighting*; **jacentibus īnsistere,** *to stand on the fallen* (lit. *on those lying*); **armātīs occurrunt,** *they face armed (men).*

3. The perfect passive participle is often used in a condensed type of expression that is best translated as a coördinate verb: as, **Lēgātōs dēprehēnsōs in vincula conjēcērunt,** *they seized the envoys and threw them into chains* (what literally?); **Conversa signa in hostēs īnferre** (see section 206, note 25); **Hostēs cōpiās ēductās īnstrūxērunt,** *the enemy led out their forces and drew them up* (what literally?); **Prīmōs circumventōs interfēcērunt,** *they surrounded and killed the first* (what literally?).

4. Sometimes the participle contains the leading idea in the phrase: as, **ab urbe conditā,** *from the founding of the city* (what literally?); **propter superātōs Carthāginiēnsēs,** *because of the defeat of the Carthaginians* (lit. *because of the Carthaginians defeated*). The gerundive construction is of this type: as, **reī frūmentāriae comparandae causā** (lit. *for the purpose of grain about to be procured*). See section 206, note 2.

235. Drill and Review

1. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 1, Appendix, page 44.

2. Read and translate:

1. Hostēs prope palūdem exspectābant, ut in nostrōs trānseuntēs atque impedītōs impetum facerent. 2. Nostrī quoque arbitrātī sē hostēs aggressūrōs esse exspectābant. 3. Hostēs, veritī nē Rēmī magnō ūsuī Rōmānīs in bellō gerendō essent, eōs commeātū prohibēbant. 4. Post hostēs in flūmine repulsōs, equitēs nostrī, paulum tēlīs eōrum impedītī, flūmen trānsierant.

3. Write in Latin:

1. When the noise of the fugitives was heard, Caesar knew that the enemy were so much frightened that they were hurrying to reach home. 2. Fearing an ambush from (*of*) those who were departing home, Caesar kept his men in camp. 3. He put two legati in command of those who had been sent ahead. 4. Because of the defeat of their allies they could not be persuaded not to return home.

LESSON 65

CAESAR PROCEEDS AGAINST OTHER BELGIAN TRIBES *

The Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani are successively attacked. Trace the campaign on the map, page 370. Note that Caesar spares the lives of the Suessiones and Bellovaci at the request of his allies, the Remi and Haeduans. This policy was adopted to strengthen the influence of loyal allies among the other Belgian tribes.

236. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent,[1] in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere[2] oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus[3] esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus,[4] expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās[5] agere quaeque[6] ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit.

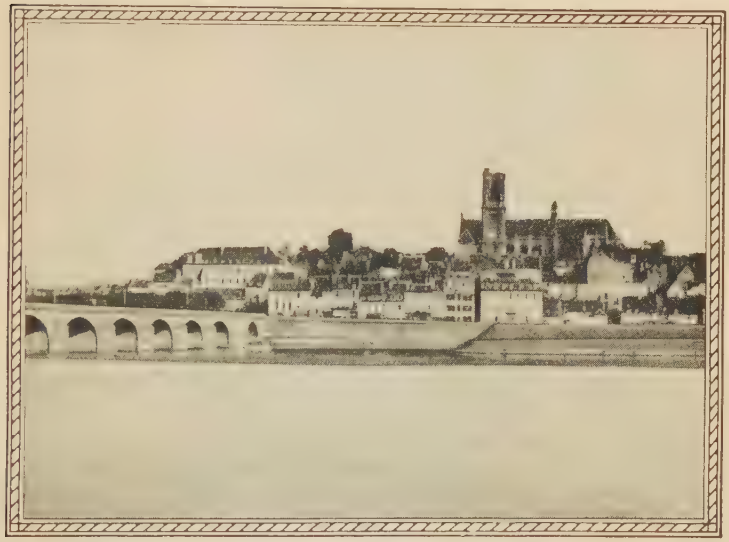
Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte[7] convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere jactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī[8] neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt. Rēmīs petentibus,[9] ā Caesare sunt cōnservātī.

Caesar proceeds against the Bellovaci, who beg for peace

Caesar, obsidibus[10] acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum

* Bk. II, chaps. 12–15.

Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs majōrēs nātū [11] ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre [12] coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. 5



THE SITE OF NOVIODUNUM, CAPITAL OF THE SUESSIONES

Photograph by G. R. Swain, Near East Research of the University of Michigan

Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret,[13] puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus [14] suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Diviciacus intercedes for the Belgians, and Caesar grants his plea

Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum [15] ad eum reverterat) facit verba: "Bellovacī omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuērunt. Impulsī autem ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcēbant Haeduōs ā Rōmānīs in servi- 10

tūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Quī[16] eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn sōlum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Haeduī ut tuā clēmentiā in eōs ūtāris."[17]

Caesar, honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā,[18] sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit, et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

237. Notes

1. **Priusquam . . . reciperent:** *before the enemy should recover*; an anticipatory subjunctive.

2. **Ex itinere:** Caesar did not trouble to make the usual preparations for an attack.

3. **Vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus:** *without defenders* (App. § 38).

4. **Paucīs dēfendentibus:** translate by a clause of concession.

5. **Vīneās:** in a regular attack by siege (**oppugnātiō**) the Romans usually built an **agger**. This was an embankment of earth and timber, which started at a distance from the town and was gradually extended to the walls. The men working on the **agger** and on other operations of the siege were protected by **plutei** and **vīneae**. The former were large standing shields which could be moved forward on wheels. The latter were arbor-like sheds, covered with raw hides as a protection against fire. Towers adapted to the height of the wall of the town were moved along on top of the **agger** or at its sides. The aim of the **agger** and the towers was to raise the soldiers high enough to allow them to send their weapons down on the defenders of the town.

6. **Quaeque** = **eaque quae.**

7. **Proximā nocte:** the Suessiones appear to have stealthily entered Noviodunum the night after Caesar arrived before the town.

8. **Quae . . . Gallī:** *which, being Gauls, they had neither seen* etc.

9. **Rēmīs petentibus:** *at the request of the Remi.*

10. **Obsidibus:** *as hostages*; in apposition with **prīmīs** and **fīliīs.**

11. **Majōrēs nātū:** *the older men* (lit. *greater in respect to birth*).

12. **Vōce significāre:** *to show by the tone of their voices*; they were not able to speak Latin.

13. **Accessisset, pōneret:** note the difference in the tense of the two verbs.

14. **Passīs manibus:** *with outstretched hands*; **passīs** is from **pandō**.

15. **Post discessum Belgārum:** after the Belgians scattered to defend their individual territories.

16. **Quī:** *those who*. Supply **eī** as subject of **profūgērunt**. See § 16, n. 1.

17. **Ut . . . ūtāris:** object of **petunt**.

18. **Honōris causā:** *out of respect for* (lit. *for the sake of the honor*).

238. Clauses of Anticipation

We still occasionally use the subjunctive mood in English in clauses introduced by *until* (*till*) or *before*: as, "Let the truth spread until it *reach* every land." In Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar" we read "Here will I stand till Caesar *pass* along." In everyday speech we use the indicative, *reaches* and *passes*.

In Latin, as usual, such uses of the subjunctive are much more common than in English. Translate the following sentences, noting carefully the subordinating conjunctions and the mood and tense used in each subordinate clause:

1. Caesar in fīnēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit priusquam hostēs sē reciperent.

2. Antequam rūpēs rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt.

3. Jāsōn quiētī sē dedit, dum virī gignerentur.

Clauses of this type introduced by **dum**, *until*, and **priusquam** or **antequam**, *before*, are called clauses of anticipation; the subjunctive may be called the anticipatory subjunctive. For the rule see the Appendix, section 78.

Tenses Used. For present (or future) time the present subjunctive is commonly used, and for past time the past progressive. But since the action of the subordinate clause must frequently be *completed* before the main act can take place, the *completed* tenses are frequently used in Latin, the *perfect* subjunctive when the main verb is present or future, and the *past completed* subjunctive when the main verb is past. We do not make such accurate distinctions in

ordinary English speech, and the completed tenses are therefore translated as if they were present or past progressive.

239. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *neutrality, obstreperous, deficit, exaggerate, vine, expand, expanse, contumely, clement, inclement, languid, fallacious, infallible, inordinate, coördinate, subtend* (math.), *centrifugal* (sci.), *centripetal* (sci.), *audit* (com.).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **gerere**, *to bear*: *congestion, congeries, digest, suggestion, gesture, belligerent.*

3. *Jest* is from **gesta**, *things carried out*, as in **rēs gestae**, *deeds, exploits. Jest* originally meant a merry tale of exploits, and now means a joke. French *geste* (*f.*) means a tale of exploits.

4. *Ambition* is derived from **ambi-**, *about*, and **īre**, *to go*. It originally had a political use and meant a *going about*, or canvassing, for votes; then a seeking for advancement in politics, the only career regarded as proper by the majority of Romans. It finally came to mean a desire for advancement in any field.

5. The word **ratiō** appears in English with three spellings: *ratio, ration* (the stem), and *reason. Ratio* meant a reckoning, and it is used in mathematics to denote a special form of reckoning, the relation between two magnitudes. A soldier's *ration* is the share of food which has been reckoned and allotted to him. *Reason* is the faculty of reckoning and of logical thinking. A *ration*al plan is one in accord with reason. *Ratio*cination is an unusual word, meaning reasoning. An ir*ration*al number in mathematics is one of which the root cannot be reckoned exactly. When a man is ar*raign*ed in court, he is brought to account, and faces his day of reckoning.

240. Drill and Review

1. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 2, Appendix, page 44.

2. Read and translate:

1. Antequam multitūdō Suessiōnum in oppidum convenīrent, Caesar vīneās ad oppugnandum agere coepit. 2. Priusquam castra posita essent, incolae pācem petiērunt. 3. Dīcunt sē, priusquam

contumēliās perferant, populō Rōmānō bellum illātūrōs esse. 4. Priusquam Caesar suā sponte clēmentiā in victōs ūterētur, Haeduī petiērunt ut eōs cōnservāret.

3. Write in Latin:

1. Before they could reach home, Caesar arrived in their territory. 2. As few were defending the town, he was able to capture it before aid could be sent. 3. The arrival of the Romans was announced before they could gather all their possessions in the town. 4. Caesar attacked the enemy before they attacked him (*use both the subjunctive and the indicative for the last verb, and state the difference in the meaning of the resulting sentences*).

LESSON 66

THE NERVII *

In his battle with the Nervii Caesar was near destruction. He pays high tribute to their conspicuous courage and makes no effort to conceal the critical nature of his struggle with them. Their strategy, described in the following selection, nearly brought the conquest of Gaul to a premature end. Locate the Nervii and Caesar's route on the map, page 370; and trace each step in the action on the battle plan, page 398.

241. Ambiānōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant. Quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus.[1] Nihil patiuntur vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimant. Sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis.[2] Culpant reliquōs Belgās, quod sē populō Rōmānō dēdidērunt patriamque virtūtem prōjēcērunt. Cōnfirmant sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

The Nervii await Caesar beyond the river Sabis

Cum per eōrum[3] fīnēs iter trīduum fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in

* Bk. II, chaps. 15–17.

itinere. Mulierēs eōsque [4] quī per aetātem [5] ad pugnam inūtilēs vidēbantur in locum remōtum Nerviī conjēcerant, quō[6] propter palūdēs exercitus noster adīre nōn poterat.

The Nervii determine to surprise Caesar while he is encamping

Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs

A LANDSCAPE IN MODERN BELGIUM

In this picture are shown the typical hedge fences of Belgium. (Photograph by G. R. Swain, Near East Research of the University of Michigan)

reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs ūnā cum Caesare iter facerent, quīdam ex eīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā,[7] nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrāvērunt inter singulās [8] legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere. "Nōn erit quicquam negōtī," [9] nūntiant, "cum prīma legiō in castra vēnerit [10] reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum

spatium aberunt, hanc sub sarcinīs[11] adorīrī. Quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs, reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audēbunt."

Adjuvābat[12] etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod in agrīs erant saepēs[13] multae et dēnsae, quās Nerviī fēcerant quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum impedīrent.[14] Hīs saepibus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur,[15] nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium[16] Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

242. Notes

1. **Mercātōribus:** dative of possession.

2. **Ferī magnaeque virtūtis:** observe the combination of descriptive adjective and descriptive genitive.

3. **Eōrum:** that is, of the Nervii.

4. **Mulierēs eōsque:** object of **conjēcerant.**

5. **Per aetātem:** the very young and the very old.

6. **Quō = in quem.**

7. **Eōrum . . . perspectā:** *when they had noticed the usual order of march of our army during those days* (lit. *the custom of march of our army of those days having been seen*).

8. **Singulās:** *individual.* When the enemy was not near, each legion was followed by its own baggage train. But when the enemy was near, Caesar varied this order, as he tells us in Lesson 67.

9. **Nōn erit quicquam negōtī:** *it will not be at all difficult* (lit. *there will not be anything at all of trouble*).

10. **Vēnerit:** *has come* (lit. *shall have come*).

11. **Sub sarcinīs:** before the soldiers have had time to disencumber themselves of the packs they carried. In addition to food, cooking utensils, etc., the soldier usually carried one or two stakes for the rampart that was built around the camp each night.

12. **Adjuvābat:** the object is **cōnsilium**; the subject is the **quod** clause.

13. **Saepēs:** the Nervii had cut into trees and bent them down to the ground, making a sort of fence, along which many bushes and briers grew. In course of time an almost impenetrable hedge was formed, so that the cavalry of the enemies of the Nervii were hindered in their forays. It might be expected that the Romans would be hindered in their march in the same way.

14. **Quō facilius . . . impedīrent:** (*in order*) *that they might more easily stop*; **quō = ut eō.** **Quō** is used instead of **ut** to introduce clauses

of purpose when there is a comparative adjective or adverb in the purpose clause (App. § 66).

15. **Cum . . . impedīrētur**: causal clause.

16. **Nōn . . . cōnsilium**: *that the advice ought not to be disregarded.*

243. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *appetite, repetition, competition.*

2. Explain the following derivatives of **quaerere**, *to seek*: *query, question, inquire, inquisitive, requisition, requisite, perquisite, acquire, inquest, quest, require, request, conquer, exquisite, acquisition.*

3. Form all the derivatives you can from the first and last principal parts of **teneō**, using the prefixes *abs-, ad-, con-, de-, dis-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-*. Use familiar suffixes. Explain *tenet.*

4. Explain the following derivatives of **sistere**, *to stand*: *resist, desist, consist, persistence, insist, subsist, exist, assist, inconsistent.*

244. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. To bring articles pertaining to luxury into the land of the Nervii is not permitted to traders. 2. The Nervii, who are wilder than the rest of the Belgians, do not use wine. 3. They are of such great courage that they declare they will not make peace with the Romans. 4. They planned to attack the first legion before the other legions should lay aside their packs. 5. As our manner of march had been shown them, they thought there would be no trouble in attacking this legion. 6. When the Romans were on the march, it was their custom to send ahead every day certain centurions to select a place suitable for a camp.

2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 3, Appendix, page 44.

LESSON 67

THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVĪI AT THE SABIS (SAMBRE) *

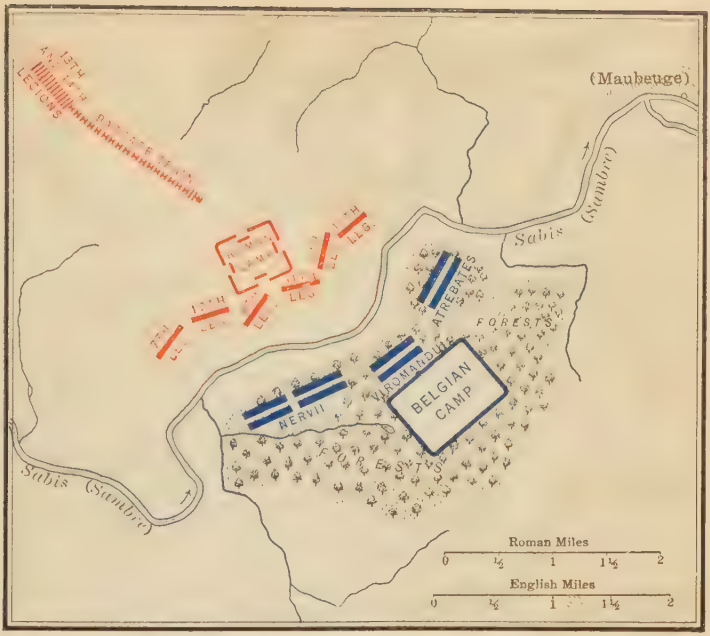
Events move rapidly in Caesar's narrative. Study the battle plan, page 398, and trace the movements described below. Be able, with the map before you, to describe the progress of the battle.

245. Locī nātūra erat haec[1] quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō[2] aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminābimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur[3] adversus huic et contrārius,[4] passūs circiter ducentōs ab īnfimā parte apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum[5] flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.[6]

Caesar's army marches in a formation different from that expected by the Belgians. The latter attack Caesar unexpectedly, and the Romans are thrown into confusion

Caesar, equitātū praemissō, subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs[7]; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac[8] Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta collocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identi-

* Bk. II, chaps. 18–21.



THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII

Caesar approached the river Sabis (Sambre) from the northwest (see campaign map, p. 370). The Nervii were south of the Sabis. They planned to attack Caesar's first legion as soon as it appeared, followed by its baggage; but Caesar had six legions ahead of his baggage; and when the Nervii attacked, they were opposed by six legions, instead of by one as they had expected. Nevertheless the entire Roman force was shaken by the vicious onset. Observe the position of the 10th legion, which Caesar first addressed. The 9th and 10th legions were on the left wing and defeated the Atrebates. In the center the 11th and 8th legions defeated the Viromandui. But the advance of these legions left the camp unprotected on the left and in the center. Accordingly the Nervii themselves attacked the right wing, defeated the 7th and 12th legions, and captured the Roman camp. Caesar rushed into the battle and fought in the ranks of the 12th legion. Labienus sent the 10th legion to the rescue, and it was joined by the rear guard, composed of the 13th and 14th legions. The Nervii were finally defeated

dem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem loca aperta pertinēbant [9] cēdentēs hostēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō,[10] castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs quī in silvīs latēbant vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiīs [7] impetum in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore ad silvās [11] et in flūmine et in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle [12] ad castra nostra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

The discipline of the Romans in the crisis

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda [13]: vēxillum [14] prōpōnendum; signum [15] tubā dandum; ab opere [16] revocandī mīlitēs; eī quī paulō longius aggeris [17] petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī; aciēs īnstruenda; mīlitēs cohortandī; signum [18] dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et adventus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs [19] erant subsidiō: scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret [20] nōn minus commodē [21] ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil jam [22] Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur [23] administrābant.

TUBAE

Caesar makes a short speech to the tenth legion

Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs ad decimam legiōnem[24] dēvēnit. Mīlitēs eius legiōnis nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus est quam utī[25] suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent nēve perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent. Quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō[26] tēlum adicī posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pugnantibus occurrit.[27] Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad pugnandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsignia[28] accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās[29] induendās scūtīsque tegimenta[30] dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem[31] cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque[32] prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec[33] cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs[34] pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

246. Notes

1. **Haec:** *as follows.*
2. **Ab summō:** *from its top.*
3. **Nāscēbātur:** *rose.*
4. **Contrārius:** that is, on the other side of the river.
5. **Secundum:** *along*; a preposition.
6. **Pedum circiter trium:** predicate genitive of description.
7. **Omnibus cōpiīs:** *with all his force* (App. § 29, *a*).
8. **Aliter sē habēbat ac:** *was different from what* (lit. *held itself otherwise than*).
9. **Longius . . . pertinēbant:** *farther than the open ground extended* (more lit. *longer than to the end to which* etc.).
10. **Opere dīmēnsō:** the plan of the camp was carefully marked out and staked before the soldiers went to work on the rampart.
11. **Ad silvās:** *near the woods.*
12. **Adversō colle:** *up the hill.*
13. **Caesarī omnia erant agenda:** *Caesar had to do everything* (lit. *all (things) were to be done by Caesar*). The future passive participle with **erant** expresses necessity. The same construction is repeated in **vēxillum prōpōnendum (erat)**; **signum dandum (erat)**; **revocandī (erant) mīlitēs**;

eī arcessendī (**erant**), etc. (**Petendī**, however, is a gerundive with **causā**.) Observe that **Caesarī** is *dative* expressing the agent.

14. **Vēxillum**: a large red banner was hoisted before the general's tent as a signal for battle.

15. **Signum**: the signal to the men to fall in for battle.

16. **Opere**: the work on the fortification of the camp.

17. **Aggeris**: material for the rampart of the camp.

18. **Signum**: the signal for action in battle.

19. **Duae rēs**: (1) **scientia atque ūsus**, (2) **quod . . . vetuerat**.

20. **Quid . . . oportēret**: indirect question, object of **praescrībere**.

21. **Nōn minus commodē**: *just as well* (lit. *not less readily*).

22. **Nihil jam**: *no longer*; **nihil** is adverbial accusative.

23. **Quae vidēbantur**: *what seemed best.*

24. **Decimam legiōnem**: Caesar's favorite legion.

25. **Utī**: the three clauses following give the gist of his address.

26. **Nōn longius quam quō**: *no farther away than the distance that* (about seventy-five feet).

27. **Pugnantibus occurrit**: *he finds them fighting*; supply **mīlitibus**.

28. **Īnsignia**: the crests of various colors that distinguished the men of the different legions. They were not worn except in battle.

29. **Galeās**: on the march the soldiers carried their helmets on their packs or hanging by a thong from the neck.

30. **Tegimenta**: except when in use the shield was covered, as a protection for its decorations.

31. **Quam in partem**: *into whatever place.*

32. **Quaeque**: *and whatever.*

33. **Ad haec**: *there.*

34. **Quaerendīs suīs**: the soldier was so well trained that he did not have to find his own cohort or maniple.

247. The Future Passive Participle with *Sum*

The future passive participle when combined with **sum** expresses obligation or necessity. Thus, **vocandus** + **sum**, lit. *I am (about) to be called*, comes to mean *I must* or *ought to be called*. This is similar to English usage: as, "If he comes, I am to be called at once"; that is, I *should, must, have to*, be called. This combination of the future passive participle and **sum** is called the *passive periphrastic conjugation*. Periphrastic means a roundabout way of saying something, and this combination is a roundabout way of expressing necessity or obligation. See the Appendix, section 88.

248. The Dative of Agent

Agent is ordinarily expressed by the ablative case with the preposition **ab**; but with the passive periphrastic the dative is used without a preposition: as, **Caesarī omnia agenda sunt**, lit. *all things are to be done by Caesar*. This combination may often best be translated by making the dative the *subject* and using the expression "have to": as, *Caesar has to do everything*. See the Appendix, section 20.

Translate the following sentences:

1. Sociī nōbīs dēfendendī sunt.
2. Quid mihi faciendum est?
3. Caesarī mīlitēs revocandī erant.
4. Aciēs lēgātīs īnstruenda erat.
5. Mīlitēs imperātōrī cohortandī sunt.
6. Mihi persuādendum est.

The best English equivalents of the passive periphrastic are *must, ought, have to.*

Observe that the deponent verb **cohortor** is passive in meaning in the passive periphrastic.

249. Drill and Review

1. Read and translate:

1. Caesar arbitrātus est equitātum sibi praemittendum esse. Ipse cum reliquīs cōpiīs secūtūrus erat. 2. Impedīmenta nostrīs in ūnum locum collocanda erant priusquam hostēs ex silvīs ēgressī essent. 3. Duae legiōnēs lēgātō relinquendae sunt, quae novissimō agminī praesidiō sint. 4. Cum hostēs impetum fēcissent, nostrīs cēdendum erat. 5. Caesar, veritus nē mīlitēs animō perturbārentur, dīxit: "Vōbīs impetus hostium sustinendus est. Virtūte majōrum ūtāmur."

2. Write in Latin:

1. Caesar had to enroll two new legions in Italy. 2. The soldiers had to take the coverings from the shields. 3. I do not need to say what ought to be done by you. 4. As the soldiers must be encouraged, he is about to set out for (*into*) another place.

LESSON 68

THE CRISIS IN THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII *

The selections below continue Caesar's account of his own part in the battle. Three omitted chapters describe the positions and movements of the Romans. These are explained in the description of the battle, page 398.

Caesar was in such desperate straits in this battle that for a time all seemed lost, and he himself saved the situation by taking a shield from a soldier and fighting in the front ranks.

His actions in this battle are thus described by Miles Standish in Longfellow's poem "The Courtship of Miles Standish":

Truly a wonderful man was Caius Julius Caesar!
Now, do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.
That's what I always say; if you wish a thing to be well done,
You must do it yourself, you must not leave it to others!

250. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus est, ubi mīlitēs duodecimae legiōnis urgērī vīdit. Quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs [1] occīsī erant, signifer [2] interfectus erat, signum erat āmissum. Reliquārum cohortium omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerātī aut occīsī erant, in hīs prīmipīlus [3] P. Sextius Baculus, fortissimus vir,

* Bk. II, chaps. 25–28.

multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectus, ut jam sē sustinēre nōn posset. Reliquī erant tardiōrēs et nōn nūllī ab novissimīs,[4] dēsertō proeliō,[5] excēdēbant ac tēla vītābant. Hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittēbant [6] et ab utrōque latere īnstābant. Caesar rem esse in angustō

CAESAR ENTERS THE FIGHT IN PERSON

vīdit neque ūllum subsidium submittī; itaque, scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētrāctō,[7] quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit. Centuriōnibus nōmināti m [8] appellātīs, reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs [9] laxāre jussit, quō [10] facilius gladiīs ūtī possent.

Cuius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē [11] quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus [12] operam nāvāre [13] cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Three legions come to the rescue of the seventh and twelfth. The tide of battle turns

Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae jūxtā cōnstiterat, item ab hoste urgērī vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sē legiōnēs conjungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent.[14] Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret[15] neque timērent nē āversī[16] ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō[17] impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et Labiēnus, castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō[17] nostrīs mīsit. Quī,[18] cum ex equitum et cālōnum[19] fugā quō in locō rēs esset[20] quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.[21]

The desperate valor of the Nervii

Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī vulneribus cōnfectī[22] proelium redintegrārent, et cālōnēs[23] perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs[24] armātīs occurrerent. Equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferēbant.[25] At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī jacentibus īnsisterent[26] atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent. Hīs dējectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī supererant[27] ut ex tumulō[28] tēla in nostrōs coniciēbant pīlaque intercepta[29] remittēbant; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs jūdicārī dēbēret[30] ausōs esse[31] trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae[32] facilia ex difficillimīs[33] animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii submit

Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, majōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs conjectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt. In commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent [34] sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus [35] misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī jussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab injūriā sē suōsque prohibērent.

251. Notes

1. **Omnēs centuriōnēs:** there were six centurions in each cohort, and sixty in each legion.

2. **Signifer:** the man who carried the standard of the cohort was an important person, as the soldiers were trained to follow the standard.

3. **Prīmipīlus:** the first centurion of the first cohort, who was always an officer of great prowess.

4. **Ab novissimīs:** *in the rear.*

5. **Dēsertō proeliō:** *deserting their posts*; **proeliō = locō.**

6. **Neque subeuntēs intermittēbant:** *did not cease coming up.*

7. **Scūtō . . . dētrāctō:** *seizing a shield from a soldier in the rear*; **mīlitī** is dative of separation (App. § 22).

8. **Nōminātim:** Caesar was able to call his best men by name.

9. **Manipulōs:** the maniple was one of the three divisions of the cohort. In Caesar's legions it contained about one hundred and twenty men.

10. **Quō** (= ut eō) introduces a relative clause of purpose (App. § 66).

11. **Prō sē:** *for his own sake.*

12. **Extrēmīs suīs rēbus:** *extreme peril to himself.*

13. **Operam nāvāre:** *to do his best.*

14. **Conversa . . . īnferrent:** *should face about and charge* (lit. *bear turned standards against*).

15. **Alius aliī . . . ferret:** *one was helping another.*

16. **Āversī:** *in the rear.*

17. **Praesidiō**: what use of the dative?

18. **Quī**: the men of the tenth legion.

19. **Cālōnum**: these were personal attendants of the Roman officers.

20. **Quō . . . esset**: *in what condition matters were.*

21. **Nihil . . . fēcērunt**: *came as fast as they could* (lit. *made nothing of remainder to themselves for speed*); **reliquī** is genitive of the whole.

22. **Cōnfectī**: concessive.

23. **Cālōnēs**: subject of **occurrerent.**

24. **Inermēs**: agrees with **cālōnēs.**

25. **Sē . . . praeferēbant**: *tried to excel the legionary soldiers.*

26. **Jacentibus īnsisterent**: *stood on the fallen.*

27. **Quī supererant**: *the survivors*; the antecedent of **quī** is **eī** understood, subject of **coniciēbant** and **remittēbant.**

28. **Ut ex tumulō**: *as from a mound.*

29. **Intercepta**: apparently it was the custom to pick up and throw back the javelins that had been hurled.

30. **Ut . . . dēbēret**: *so that we may consider* (lit. *so that it ought to be judged*).

31. **Nōn nēquīquam ausōs esse**: *did not dare without hope of success* (lit. *did not dare in vain*).

32. **Quae**: *these deeds*; object of **redēgerat.**

33. **Ex difficillimīs**: *instead of very difficult.*

34. **Possent**: translate as if past indicative. In a direct statement **possent** would have been **poterant**; but the verb of a *subordinate clause* that is indicative in a direct statement is changed to the subjunctive when the clause is used in an indirect statement (App. § 77).

35. **Ūsus (esse)**: *to have used.*

252. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *declivity, acclivity, comparative, apparel, adjutant, dimension, effrontery, frontispiece, affront, estuary, exiguous, urgent, retardation, relaxation, juxtapose, occult, casual, cadaverous, turpitude, concessive, latent, gravitation* (sci.), *retardando* (mus.).

2. Form all the derivatives you can of **-spicere**, *to look*, which appears only in compounds. Use the prefixes *ad-, con-, de-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, retro-, sub-*. Explain *conspicuous, perspicacity, suspicion.*

3. Explain the following derivatives of **trahere**, *to draw*: *abstract, attract, contract, detract, distract, extract, protract, retract, subtract, subtrahend.*

253. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. Caesar saw that he must proceed into the first line. 2. Before he set out, he ordered the soldiers to spread out the maniples, so that they might use their swords more easily. 3. When he had got possession of the camp and had seen what the cavalry and camp followers were doing, Labienus determined that a legion must be sent as aid to our men. 4. Although the Nervii had been defeated, Caesar, showing (*using*) pity toward them, ordered their neighbors not to harm them. 5. In sparing the Nervii, Caesar showed himself to be a man of great clemency.

2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 4, Appendix, page 45.

LESSON 69

THE FIRST EXPEDITIONS TO GERMANY AND BRITAIN*

The year 55 B.C., the year of Caesar's fourth campaign in Gaul, is a date worth remembering, for during that year Roman armies for the first time crossed the Rhine into Germany and the English Channel into Britain.

Caesar had shown in his war with Ariovistus that he regarded the Rhine as the natural boundary between Gaul and Germany. But the Germans, pressed onward by tribes east of them, still showed a tendency to seek relief from this pressure by crossing into the fertile fields of the Gauls, who were no longer warlike enough to resist them. Caesar's expedition into Germany was intended to show that the long arm of Rome could extend across the Rhine, if necessary, and that punishment would follow any attempt of the Germans to cross to the western side either on their own account or in response to appeals from Gallic rebels. Thus the conflict over the Rhine as the boundary between France and Germany, which has continued for two thousand years, had begun even in Caesar's day. Caesar, content to regard the Rhine as the boundary of Roman territory, made no attempt to conquer the territory east of that river. This policy was long followed.

Caesar maintains that his expedition to Britain also was mainly for defensive purposes, to keep the Britons from sending aid to rebellious Gauls. He had no serious expectation of conquering the country, but he wished to gratify his strong natural bent for exploring new regions at the same time that he was safeguarding the interests of Rome.

* Book IV.

EARLY GERMAN LIFE

LESSON 70

CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY *

German tribes, pressed onward by those farther east, attempt to cross the Rhine. Caesar, in pursuance of his policy of regarding the Rhine as the boundary, opposes them. Locate on the map, page 292, each tribe mentioned.

254. Eā quae secūta est hieme, Usipetēs et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō [1] Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs [2] complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

* Bk. IV, chaps. 1–2, 16–19.

Description of the Suebi, a German tribe

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā suīs ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs[3] alunt. Hī[4] rūrsus in vicem annō post[5] in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī[6] apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō[7] remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.

Neque multum frūmentō,[8] sed maximam partem[9] lacte ac pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs[10] et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs[11] nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā assuēfactī[12] nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem[13] addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs[14] neque vestītūs[15] praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō[16] ut quae bellō cēperint[17] quibus vēndant[18] habeant, quam quō[19] ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent.[20] Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

After the defeat of the Germans who have crossed the Rhine, Caesar decides that to prevent further migrations he must himself cross the river and inspire the German tribes with a fear of Roman power

Germānicō bellō[21] cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit jūstissima,[22] quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus[23] eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent[24] et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre.

He decides to build a bridge across the Rhine

Nāvibus autem trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis [25] esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum [26] aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

THE RHINE

Caesar ravages the fields of the nearest tribe, but does not consider it worth while to pursue the Suebi, who have withdrawn

Diēbus x quibus [27] trabēs atque alia māteria coeptae erant comportārī, opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō, in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī jubet. At

Sugambrī, ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus erat fugā comparātā, hortantibus eīs quōs [28] ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab

THE RHINE AT BONN

Caesar built his bridge across the river at this point

Suēbīs premerentur,[29] haec ab eīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent,[30] mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse,[31] utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent,[32] līberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent [33] ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē [34] regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent [35]; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat (ut [36] Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne [37] līberāret), diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum [38] arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

255. Notes

1. **Quō:** *where*; equivalent to **in quod.**
2. **Suēbīs:** a powerful German tribe.
3. **Illōs:** those at war.
4. **Hī, illī:** *the latter, the former.*
5. **Annō post:** *the following year* (lit. *afterwards by a year*): **annō** is ablative of degree of difference.
6. **Agrī:** genitive of the whole with **nihil.** The Germans had no private fields or farms, but tilled the land in common.
7. **Longius annō:** *longer than a year*; what use of the ablative?
8. **Frūmentō:** ablative of means: but we say *live on grain.*
9. **Maximam partem:** *for the most part.*
10. **Quae rēs:** *this habit of life*; subject of **alit** and **efficit.**
11. **Ā puerīs:** *from boyhood.*
12. **Nūllō officiō assuēfactī:** *accustomed to no duty* (lit. *trained by no duty*).
13. **In eam cōnsuētūdinem:** *to such hardiness* (lit. *to this custom*).
14. **Locīs frīgidissimīs:** *in their very cold climate.*
15. **Vestītūs:** genitive of the whole with **quicquam.**
16. **Magis eō:** *more for this reason*; explained by the following clause **ut . . . habeant.**
17. **Quae . . . cēperint:** object of **vēndant.**
18. **Quibus vēndant:** *persons to whom to sell.*
19. **Quam quō** = **quam eō quod**, *than for the reason that.*
20. **Dēsīderent:** translate as if indicative.
21. **Germānicō bellō:** the battle in which the German tribes that had crossed the Rhine into Gaul were defeated.
22. **Jūstissima:** *the most important, the strongest.*
23. **Suīs quoque rēbus:** *for their own affairs also.*
24. **Cum intellegerent:** *when they realized.* This clause really refers to future time; when Caesar was thinking about the effect of his crossing

the Rhine, he said to himself, "When they (shall) realize." Why is the verb subjunctive here? See App. § 77.

25. **Neque . . . dignitātis:** *in accord neither with his own dignity nor with that of the Roman people*; a predicate genitive. Subject of **esse**?

26. **Id sibi contendendum (esse):** *that he ought to make the effort* (lit. *that it ought to be tried by himself*).

27. **Quibus:** *from the time that.* The building of this bridge across the Rhine in ten days shows how remarkable was the efficiency of Caesar's engineering corps (**fabrī**).

28. **Hortantibus eīs quōs:** *at the instigation of those whom.*

29. **Sī premerentur:** *if they should be attacked.* Why is **premerentur**, which obviously refers to future time, subjunctive?

30. **Posteāquam comperissent:** clauses introduced by **postquam** (**posteāquam**), **ubi**, **ut prīmum**, or **simul atque** regularly have their verb in the perfect indicative. Why is **comperissent** subjunctive? Why is it past perfect subjunctive?

31. **Nūntiōs dīmīsisse:** *had sent word* (lit. *had sent messengers*).

32. **Utī . . . dēmigrārent:** this clause and also **(utī) . . . dēpōnerent** and **(utī) . . . convenīrent** are object clauses after the idea of commanding expressed in **nūntiōs dīmīsisse**. Translate, *that they should* etc.

33. **Possent:** translate as if it were **poterant**.

34. **Hunc . . . ferē:** *this place had been selected in about the middle.*

35. **Obtinērent:** explain the mood and tense.

36. **Ut:** the clauses introduced by **ut** are in apposition with **rēbus**.

37. **Obsidiōne:** *from having to pay tribute.*

38. **Satis . . . prōfectum (esse):** *that enough had been done*; **prōfectum** is from **prōficiō**.

256. Ablative of Degree of Difference

In the sentence "It happened a few days later," the word *later* is an adverb, and the phrase *a few days* tells *by how much* it was later. For this idea the ablative case is used in Latin: as, **annō post**, *a year later* (lit. *afterwards by a year*).* Translate the following phrases literally:

paucīs ante diēbus	paulō post
multō facilius	paucīs post annīs
nihilō minus	paulō longius

* We occasionally use the same type of expression: as, "This room is wider than that *by two feet*"; "He missed me *by a yard*."

This use is called the *ablative of degree* (or *measure*) *of difference.* See the Appendix, section 36.

NOTE. **Post** and **ante** in these phrases are adverbs. As *prepositions* they govern the accusative: as, **post paucōs annōs,** *after a few years.*

The ablative of degree of difference should be carefully distinguished from the ablative of comparison, with which it is frequently found in combination: as, **Vir duōbus pedibus puerō altior est,** *the man is two feet taller than the boy* (lit. *taller by two feet*).

257. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. A few years before two tribes of Germans had been about to cross the Rhine. 2. A little later they had come to the river for the sake of crossing. 3. According to their custom some of the Germans were led out of their territory every year to carry on war; the rest had to stay at home to till the fields. 4. When Caesar decided that a Roman army must cross the Rhine, he wished the Germans to begin to fear that the Romans would devastate their lands. 5. The difficulty of crossing was great; nevertheless he gave orders that material should be brought together. 6. The bridge was built much more easily and quickly than he had hoped.

2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 5, Appendix, page 45.

LESSON 71

CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN *

Caesar was the first Roman to visit Britain, and this expedition awakened at home all the interest that hazardous explorations always awaken. His narrative gives us our first authentic information about Britain and the Britons. He found that he could get little information about the island from the Gauls. Follow Caesar's route carefully on the map, page 418.

258. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā,[1] Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs[2] hostibus nostrīs inde[3] subministrāta auxilia[4] intellegēbat. Et, tempore ad bellum gerendum nōn datō, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore[5] arbitrābātur īnsulam adīsse, genus hominum perspexisse, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisse; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō[6] adit quisquam,[7] neque eīs[8] ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Gallīam nōtum est.

Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset[9] īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad majōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Caesar sends Volusenus to Britain to reconnoiter

Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret,[10] fidēlem et idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā

* Bk. IV, chaps. 20–23.

CAESAR COLLECTS A FLEET AT BOULOGNE

The **nāvēs longae**, or warships, which were about eight times as long as they were broad, had a mast and a single sail, and one, two, or three banks of oars. In battle they depended upon the oars. The **nāvēs onerāriae**, or transports, were shorter and broader. They were propelled by sails only. The rudders consisted of two large paddles, one on each side of the stern, controlled by the **gubernātor** (from this word the English word *governor* comes). Galleys of this general type were used on the Mediterranean until the beginning of the nineteenth century

praemittit. Huic mandat ut, explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam prīmum[11] revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem,[12] jubet convenīre. Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus quantum[13] eī facultās darī potuit quī[14] nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret,[15] quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat. Interim, cōn-

CAESAR'S TWO INVASIONS OF BRITAIN

The *black* line indicates Caesar's first invasion of Britain, in 55 B.C. Note carefully the location of Boulogne, from which the first expedition set out; Portus Ulterior, from which the cavalry embarked; Dover, where Caesar found the chalk cliffs; Deal, where Caesar first landed; Cantium (modern Kent); the Tamesis (Thames); the Morini, Nervii, Ambiani, and Atrebates. The *red* line indicates Caesar's second expedition to Britain, in 54 B.C. Locate Portus Itius (modern Wissant), from which the second expedition set out; the course followed as a result of the storm; the spot where the expedition landed; the territories of Cassivellaunus; the return route of Caesar; Cantium; Londinium; the Tamesis; the Morini; and the modern towns, Calais, Boulogne, Dover, Deal, Canterbury, Rochester, St. Albans

siliō eius per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare et imperiīs eius pārēre.

Caesar accepts the surrender of the Morini and makes his final preparations for leaving Gaul

Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent sēque ea quae imperāvisset[16] factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī[17] propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās[18] jūdicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs, eōs in fidem recipit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot[19] satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat[20] quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant[21] XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent[22]; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre jussit.

When his transports have been made ready, Caesar crosses the English Channel from Boulogne and anchors near Deal

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum[23] prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī jussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā

diēī circiter quārtā [24] cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec [25] erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur [26] utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam

© Underwood and Underwood

THE CLIFFS NEAR DOVER

These cliffs rise almost perpendicularly to a height of nearly four hundred feet. It was therefore impossible for Caesar to land at that point

idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent [27] ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs [28] exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque ut omnia ad nūtum et ad tempus [29] ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

259. Notes

1. **Parte reliquā**: ablative absolute.

2. **Omnibus bellīs**: ablative of time.

3. **Inde**: from Britain.

4. **Subministrāta auxilia**: very little help had ever been sent from Britain. Caesar uses a trivial pretext to justify his invasion.

5. **Fore** = **futūrum esse**; its subjects are **adīsse**, **perspexisse**, and **cognōvisse**.

6. **Illō**: adverb.

7. **Neque enim quisquam**: *for no one.*

8. **Eīs**: that is, **mercātōribus**.

9. **Quanta esset**: this indirect question and those following it are objects of **reperīre poterat**.

10. **Priusquam . . . faceret**: *before making the attempt* to sail.

11. **Quam prīmum**: *as soon as possible.*

12. **Quam fēcerat classem**: *the fleet he had built.*

13. **Quantum**: *as far as.*

14. **Eī quī**: *to one who.*

15. **Audēret**: translate as if it were **audēbat**.

16. **Imperāvisset**: why subjunctive? What tense of the direct discourse does it represent?

17. **Bellī gerendī**: modifies **facultātem**.

18. **Hās . . . antepōnendās (esse)**: *attention to matters of such little importance should not come before* (the invasion of) *Britain.* Why is **Britanniae** dative?

19. **Quot**: *as many as.*

20. **Quod . . . habēbat**: *the war galleys he also had* (lit. *what of war galleys he had besides*).

21. **Hūc accēdēbant**: *there were also.*

22. **Tenēbantur quōminus possent**: *prevented from being able.* For clauses with verbs of *hindering* and *preventing* see the Appendix, section 69.

23. **Ulteriōrem portum**: the harbor eight miles along the coast.

24. **Hōrā diēī quārtā**: Caesar set sail about midnight from near Boulogne, and arrived near Dover at about 10 A. M.

25. **Haec**: *such.*

26. **Ita . . . continēbātur**: *so closely was the sea bordered by the cliffs*; at Dover the cliffs rise from the shore.

27. **Dum . . . convenīrent**: *until the rest of the ships should arrive there.*

28. **In ancorīs**: *at anchor.* He lay at anchor from 10 A. M. to 3 P. M.

29. **Ad nūtum et ad tempus**: *at the nod and at the time,* that is, promptly.

260. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *victuals, venison, vice* (in *vice president*), *mollify, vicarious, vicissitude, vice versa, invest, ablution, dilute, lotion, laundry, desideratum, temerity, explanation, esplanade, piano, immaterial, pelt, peel, alimentary* (sci.), *lacteal* (sci.), *deponent* (law).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **fluere**, *to flow*: *confluence, influence, fluid, affluence, fluent, influx, reflux, refluent, superfluous, fluctuate, influenza.*

3. Explain the following derivatives of **premere**, *to press*: *compress, depress, express, impress, oppress, repress, suppress, pressure, reprimand, print, imprint.*

4. Explain the following derivatives of **sūmere**, *to take*: *assume, consume, presume, resume, presumptuous.*

5. *Opportunity* is from **portus**, *harbor*, and meant originally *nearness to a harbor*, hence a favorable situation or time. **Importūnus** meant *not near a harbor*, hard of access, then unsuitable, troublesome. To *importune* is to be troublesome, to annoy with requests.

6. **Perīculum** occurs in this lesson with its fundamental meaning, *a trial.* The root **per-** occurs in a number of other Latin and English words. Explain **perīclitārī, experīrī, perītus, imperītus**; *experiment, experience, expert.*

7. Anglo-Saxon cognates of Latin words beginning with *g* frequently begin with *k*. Thus **gēns** (**gentis**) and *kind* are cognates; **genus** and *kin.*

261. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. To go to Britain and to find out what nations dwell there will be of advantage to Caesar and the Romans. 2. Let Volusenus find out about these things and return as soon as possible. 3. The transports, which Caesar had collected for the purpose of carrying two legions into Britain, were a little wider than the other vessels. 4. As soon as he found wind and weather suitable for sailing, Caesar raised anchor and set sail. 5. When he reached Britain with the first ships, he saw that the hills were filled with armed men. 6. It was not permitted him to land in that place, because the hills were so near the sea that weapons could be easily hurled upon the men who were landing.

LESSON 72

THE DRAMATIC LANDING ON THE SHORE OF BRITAIN *

The Romans hesitate to land because of the resistance of the Britons, but are inspired by the example set by a Roman standard bearer

262. At barbarī, cōnsiliō [1] Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs,[2] quō plērumque genere [3] in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuēvērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob eās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī [4] nōn poterant; mīlitibusque [5] autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs,[6] simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum. Sed illī [7] aut ex āridō [8] aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs,[9] nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla coniciēbant et equōs īnsuēfactōs [10] incitābant. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis [11] pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs [12] cōnsuēvērunt ūtēbantur.

Nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī [13] decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret,[14] "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere [15]; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit [16] atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī inter sē [17] cohortātī nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus [18] cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

* Bk. IV, chaps. 24–28.

The Romans land and put the Britons to flight

Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere [19] neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat,[20] magnopere perturbābantur.

LANDING OF THE ROMANS ON THE COAST OF BRITAIN

An imaginative representation of the exploit of the standard bearer of the Tenth Legion in jumping boldly into the water and leading his comrades to the shore

Hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi [21] ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs [22] ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum Caesar animadvertisset, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia [23] mīlitibus complērī jussit, et quōs [24] labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul [25] in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs

in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius[26] prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere[27] nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad priōrem fortūnam[28] Caesarī dēfuit.[29]

The Britons beg for peace

Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāvisset factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulerant, ignōscere imprūdentiae[30] dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The ships bearing Caesar's cavalry are driven back to Gaul

Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, diē quārtō postquam in Britanniam Rōmānī vēnērunt, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur,[31] aliae ad dīversam partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō[32] dēicerentur; quae tamen, ancorīs jactīs, cum fluctibus complērentur,[33] necessāriō adversā nocte[34] in altum prōvectae[35] continentem petiērunt.

263. Notes

1. **Cōnsiliō:** the plan to land farther along the shore.
2. **Essedāriīs:** the Britons used in battle a two-wheeled chariot.
3. **Quō genere:** *a kind of fighting* (or *fighter*) *which.* **Genere**, the antecedent of **quō**, is attracted into the relative clause.

4. **Cōnstituī**: *to ride at anchor.* What literally?

5. **Mīlitibus**: dative of the agent with **dēsiliendum, cōnsistendum, pugnandum (erat)**.

6. **Pressīs**: modifies **mīlitibus**.

7. **Illī**: the Britons.

8. **Ex āridō**: *from dry land.*

9. **Expedītīs**: *free from armor.*

10. **Īnsuēfactōs**: the horses of the Britons were trained to go into the water.

11. **Generis**: genitive with **imperītī**, *unskilled in* (lit. *of*) *this kind.* What adjectives are followed by the genitive (App. § 13)?

12. **Pedestribus proeliīs**: *battles on land.*

13. **Quī**: supply is as an antecedent, *the man who.* Caesar is referring to the **aquilifer**, the man who carried the eagle (standard) of the legion.

14. **Obtestātus . . . ēvenīret**: *having prayed to the gods that his action might turn out favorably to the legion.* The verb of *asking* has a noun and a noun clause as its objects here.

15. **Prōdere**: the loss of the eagle was a great disgrace to a legion.

16. **Sē prōjēcit**: *leaped.*

17. **Inter sē**: *one another.*

18. **Ex proximīs nāvibus**: *the men on the nearest ships*; subject of all the verbs in the sentence.

19. **Firmiter īnsistere**: *to get firm footing.*

20. **Alius . . . aggregābat**: *one from one vessel, another from another joined whatever standard he happened on.*

21. **Ubi**: *whenever.*

22. **Singulārēs**: *individual soldiers.*

23. **Speculātōria nāvigia**: light boats used for scouting.

24. **Quōs**: the antecedent is **hīs**.

25. **Simul** = **simul atque**.

26. **Longius**: *very far.*

27. **Capere**: *to reach.*

28. **Fortūnam**: Caesar here indicates his belief in **fortūna**, *luck.*

29. **Caesarī dēfuit**: *Caesar lacked.*

30. **Imprūdentiae**: why dative? See App. § 18.

31. **Referrentur**: why subjunctive?

32. **Magnō suō perīculō**: *great danger to themselves.*

33. **Cum complērentur**: is the idea one of time or of cause?

34. **Adversā nocte**: *in the face of the night.*

35. **In altum prōvectae**: *putting out to sea* (lit. *into the deep*).

264. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. The Britons excelled the Romans in cavalry and charioteers. 2. Caesar did not lack good luck in his battles. 3. Our men, who were unskilled in fighting with an enemy of this kind, had to take their position in the water. 4. A standard bearer of the tenth legion, who was about to jump down from the ship into the waves, shouted: "Follow me. Let us all do our duty by our general." 5. Before eighteen of the vessels, which had sailed from Gaul a little later, could reach Britain, such a great storm came up that they were driven back to sea. 6. At first the Britons, as the whole shore was well known to them, resisted our men; but as soon as the soldiers set foot on dry land, they took to flight.

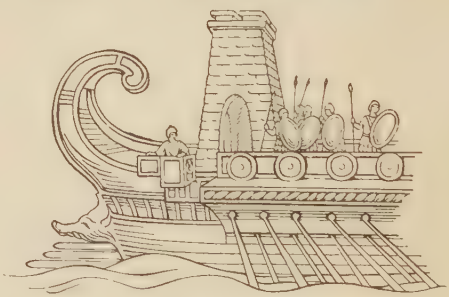
2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 6, Appendix, page 45.

LESSON 73

A TIDAL WAVE ENGULFS THE ROMAN FLEET *

The disaster to the Roman fleet greatly encouraged the Britons. Had the Romans been cut off from communication with Gaul, they could soon have been starved into surrender or destroyed piecemeal.

265. Eādem nocte accidit ut[1] esset lūna plēna, quī diēs[2] maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id[3] erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent,[4] et omnia deërant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat[5] hiemārī in Galliā oportēre,[6] frūmentum in hīs locīs prōvīsum nōn erat.



THE PROW OF A ROMAN GALLEY

This is the prow of a bireme, a galley with two banks of oars. The projecting ram near the water line was called the **rōstrum**, or beak

* Bk. IV, chaps. 29–31.

These disasters to the Romans encourage the Britons to renew the war

Quibus rēbus cognitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deësse [7] intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod [8] sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū [9] esse dūxērunt,[10] rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs,[11] nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque, rūrsus conjūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere [12] coepērunt.

Caesar suspects the plans of the Britons and makes preparations to meet them

At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen, et ex ēventū nāvium suārum [13] et ex eō, quod [14] obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur.[15] Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat, et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum [16] māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae [17] ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.[18]

266. Notes

1. **Accidit ut:** *it happened that* (App. § 71).

2. **Quī diēs:** *a time which.*

3. **Id:** *this fact.* The Romans, who were used to sailing on the Mediterranean, where there is almost no tide, were unfamiliar with the high tides of the Atlantic and their occurrence at the full of the moon. The tides off Dover rise more than twenty feet.

4. **Possent**: translate as if it were **poterant**.

5. **Omnibus cōnstābat**: *it was clear to all.*

6. **Hiemārī oportēre**: *that the winter ought to be spent.*

7. **Rōmānīs deësse**: cf. **Caesarī dēfuit**, § 263, note 29.

8. **Hōc quod**: *from the fact that.*

9. **Optimum factū**: *the best thing to do.* **Optimum** is a predicate adjective with **esse**. The subjects of **esse** are the infinitives **prohibēre** and **prōdūcere**.

10. **Dūxērunt**: *they considered.*

11. **Hīs . . . interclūsīs**: ablative absolute expressing condition.

12. **Suōs . . . dēdūcere**: they began to collect an army.

13. **Ex ēventū nāvium suārum**: *from the accident to his ships.*

14. **Ex eō, quod**: *from the fact that.*

15. **Fore (= futūrum esse) . . . suspicābātur**: *began to suspect that what actually happened would happen.*

16. **Quae nāvēs, eārum**: *of those ships which.*

17. **Quae**: supply **ea** as an antecedent and the subject of **comportārī**.

18. **Reliquīs . . . effēcit**: *he made it possible to sail very well in the others* (lit. *he brought it about that it could be sailed sufficiently well in the others*). See App. § 71.

267. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *exonerate, onerous, aridity, fluctuate, aquiline, funicular, paucity, complementary* (math.), *convection* (sci.), *allegro* (mus.).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **salīre**, *to leap*: *salient, resilient, desultory, result, exult, sally, assault.* A *salmon* is a "leaper."

3. Explain the following derivatives of **statuere**, *to set up*: *statute, constitution, restitution, institute, destitute.*

4. **Stō, sistō**, and **statuō** are closely related verbs. **Stāre** means *to stand*; **sistere**, both *to stand* and *to cause to stand, to set*; and **statuere**, *to cause to stand, to set up.*

5. Explain the following derivatives of **loquī**, *to speak*: *eloquent, elocution, soliloquy, colloquy, loquacious, circumlocution, obloquy, interlocutor, ventriloquist, colloquial, grandiloquent.*

6. To *insult* a person (**in** + **salīre**) meant originally to leap upon him. Compare the corresponding English slang "to jump on a person."

LESSON 74

A LEGION RESCUED FROM A BRITISH AMBUSCADE *

The Britons attack a legion that has been sent to forage for grain. Caesar goes to the aid of his men

268. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum[1] missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne[2] erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem majōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret[3] in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

Caesar id quod erat[4] suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī[5] et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in pābulandō et metendō occupātōs[6] subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The British method of fighting in chariots

Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum[7]

* Bk. IV, chaps. 32–34.

et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum [8] turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae [9] interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant utī illī [10] ā multitūdine

BRITISH CHARIOTEERS

Each chariot carried a charioteer (**aurīga**) and a warrior. Driving into the intervals between troops of their own cavalry, the warriors dismounted and fought on foot. In the meantime the charioteers withdrew from the thick of the fight, and whenever they saw that their warriors were being defeated, they dashed in again, took them on board, and carried them out of danger

hostium pressī expedītum ad suōs receptum [11] habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō efficiunt [12] utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre [13] et brevī [14] moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem [15] percurrere et in jugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuēverint.

Caesar rescues the men who are foraging. The Britons gather a large army

Quibus rēbus[16] perturbātīs nostrīs[17] et novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō, ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et, brevī tempore intermissō, in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī[18] erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt.

Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continēbant et hostem ā pugnā prohibēbant. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī[19] facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent,[20] dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

269. Notes

1. **Frūmentātum:** *to gather grain.* **Frūmentātum** is a form of the verb known as a supine. There are two supines, one ending in **-um**, the other in **-ū**. They are not often used. The supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose. The supine in **-ū**, which you saw in the phrase **optimum factū** (§ 265), is used like an ablative of respect.

2. **In statiōne:** *on guard*; pickets were stationed at the entrances to the camp.

3. **Quam cōnsuētūdō ferret:** *than usual*; what literally?

4. **Id quod erat:** *that which was the case, namely, that* etc. The infinitive clause **aliquid . . . initum (esse)** is in apposition with **id**.

5. **Armārī:** *to arm themselves.*

6. **Dispersōs, occupātōs:** supply **nostrōs.**

7. **Ipsō terrōre equōrum:** *by the very terror caused by the horses*; **equōrum** is objective genitive.

8. **Equitum:** their own cavalry.

9. **Aurīgae:** another man rode in the chariot in addition to the driver.

10. **Illī:** the men who have left the chariot and are fighting on foot.
11. **Expedītum receptum:** *a ready retreat.*
12. **Tantum efficiunt:** *become so expert* (lit. *accomplish so much*).
13. **Incitātōs equōs sustinēre:** *to check their horses at full speed.*
14. **Brevī** (supply **tempore**): *in an instant.*
15. **Tēmōnem:** *the pole* of the chariot. The drivers, in the dare-devil manner of riders in a circus, ran out on the pole and stood on the yoke, which rested on the necks of the horses.
16. **Quibus rēbus:** *by these tactics.*
17. **Nostrīs:** dative of indirect object.
18. **Quī:** the antecedent is **Britannī** understood.
19. **Suī līberandī:** *of freeing themselves.*
20. **Sī expulissent:** *in case they should drive.*

270. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. Fearing that some new plan was being made by the enemy, Caesar sent part of a legion to give aid to the hard-pressed soldiers. 2. For a number of days storms followed, so that men could not go out from the camp to get grain. 3. The charioteers train themselves by daily practice, in order that they may be able to turn the chariots in a steep and narrow place. 4. While these things were going on, the Britons sent envoys to all the tribes, lest the opportunity of overcoming the Romans should be lost. 5. When he had ordered the cohorts to follow him and had proceeded a little farther toward the enemy, he decided that a battle ought not to be started at an unfavorable time.

2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 7, Appendix, page 46.

LESSON 75

CAESAR RETURNS TO GAUL *

Caesar defeats the Britons and lays waste their lands

271. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore [1] vidēbat, — ut hostēs pulsī celeritāte perīculum effugerent,[2] — tamen nactus equitēs circiter XXX legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō, diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum [3] cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

The Britons sue for peace. Caesar returns to Gaul

Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī,[4] īnfirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam [5] nōn exīstimāvit. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae [6] capere [7] nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

As they are landing in Gaul, the Romans are attacked by the Morini

Quibus ex nāvibus [8] cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter CCC atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae

* Bk. IV, chaps. 35–38.

adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō[9] suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac arma pōnere jussērunt. "Sī vōs interficī nōn vultis," clāmāvērunt, "arma dēpōnite." Cum illī, orbe factō,[10] sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castrīs

ORBIS MĪLITUM

The soldiers of the two transports, who landed among the unfriendly Morini, formed themselves, for a better defense, into a circle presenting an unbroken line of shields. This corresponded to the "hollow square"

equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs, complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam[11] equitātus noster, quem Caesar ad auxilium ferendum mīserat, in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs, abjectīs armīs, terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

Caesar settles affairs among the Morini and Menapii, locates his army in winter quarters, and is honored by the senate

Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs[12] palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent[13] (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex līterīs Caesaris diērum XX supplicātiō[14] ā senātū dēcrēta est.

272. Notes

1. **Idem fore (= futūrum esse)**: *the same thing would happen.*
2. **Ut . . . effugerent**: in apposition with **idem.**
3. **Tantō spatiō quantum**: *as far as*; **spatiō** is an ablative of means.
4. **Propinquā diē aequinoctī**: *as the day of the equinox* (the September equinox) *was near.* This was a season of storms.
5. **Īnfirmīs . . . subiciendam**: *that unseaworthy ships ought not to be exposed to bad weather* (lit. *that with unseaworthy ships the voyage ought not to be exposed to winter weather*). **Esse** is omitted.
6. **Quōs reliquae**: *as the rest*; supply **capere potuērunt.**
7. **Capere**: *to reach.*
8. **Quibus ex nāvibus**: the **nāvēs onerāriae.**
9. **Nōn ita magnō**: *rather small.*
10. **Orbe factō**: *after forming a circle*; they arranged themselves somewhat as modern soldiers form a hollow square.
11. **Quam**: belongs with **posteā (posteāquam).**
12. **Siccitātēs**: translate as if singular. Caesar uses the plural because he has in mind the dryness of several marshes.
13. **Quō . . . habērent**: *they had no place to go* (lit. *they had not whither they should betake themselves*).
14. **Supplicātiō**: a **supplicātiō** of twenty days was unusually long.

273. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *pulverize, dispersion, aspersion, intersperse, sparse, insinuate, exorbitant, orbit, rotate, rotary, immoderate, precipitous, inflexible.*

2. Explain the following derivatives of **capere**, *to take*: *captive, capture, accept, receive, deceive, deception, concept, susceptible, precept, receipt, recipe, anticipate, capable, capacious, captor, except, imperceptible, incipient, intercept, receptacle, reception, recipient. Captive* and *caitiff* are "doublets."

3. Explain the following derivatives of **dicō, dicāre**, *to declare* (a verb of the first conjugation, to be distinguished from **dīcō, dīcere**): *abdicate, predicate, indicate, dedicate, index, indicative. Predicate* and *preach* are "doublets."

4. *Pilgrim* is derived from **per agrōs**, and meant originally one who roamed through the fields and hence was away from home, a wanderer.

5. The use of the dative case with special verbs (App. § 18) is not peculiar to Latin. It is an inheritance from the Indo-European parent language. Some of the same verbs originally took the dative in English; nearly all of them do in German; and in French the original dative is frequently preserved or represented by the preposition *à*.

In English, *envy, pardon*, and *spare* still take the dative: as, "to envy *me* my good fortune"; "to pardon *him* his mistake"; "to spare *me* this disgrace." *If you please* meant originally *if it please you*, where *you* was dative, as in **sī hoc *tibi* placet**, and *please* was an old subjunctive.

Note the use of the dative in the following German sentences:

Das gefällt **mir.**
Er hilft **mir.**
Er nähert sich **mir.**

Note the dative (or the equivalent phrases with *à*) in the following French sentences:

Je *lui* ai résisté.
Il obéit *à* son père.
Cette chose plaît *à* mon ami.
Il persuade *à* son fils.

LESSON 76

CAESAR'S SECOND EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN AND CICERO'S DEFENSE OF HIS CAMP *

The most important event described by Caesar in the fifth book is his second expedition to Britain. This time he made a more careful investigation, and his description of the Britons is of historical importance.

Caesar hoped to make a permanent conquest of the island, but the time was too short and his army too small for the purpose, and the permanent conquest was not effected till the time of the Emperor Claudius, a hundred years later. The Romans held Britain until about 400 A.D., when their troops had to be withdrawn to protect Rome herself from the attacks of barbarians. Soon after the withdrawal of the Romans the Angles and Saxons, ancestors of the British race, crossed the North Sea and seized the country.

Two dramatic occurrences marked the winter after Caesar's return from Britain. The patriotic desire of the Gauls not to lose their independence without a struggle led to a violent uprising under Indutiomarus, chief of the Treveri, and Ambiorix, chief of the Eburones. While the uprising this year was not finally successful, the rebels entirely destroyed a legion and a half which were wintering among the Eburones under the legati Sabinus and Cotta. This was the most serious loss which Caesar experienced in his entire conquest of Gaul. The rebels also attacked another legion wintering among the Nervii under the command of Cicero.

* Book V of the "Gallic War."

LESSON 77

CAESAR'S SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN *

Caesar decides upon a second expedition to Britain, and makes more careful preparations than he made for the first. Study the map, page 418, and locate all places mentioned in the description.

274. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus,[1] discēdēns ab hībernīs[2] Caesar in Italiam,[3] ut quotannīs facere cōnsuēverat, lēgātīs imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī quam plūrimās hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent.[4] Eārum[5] modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque[6] paulō facit humiliōrēs[7] quam quibus[8] in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus; atque id eō magis,[9] quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi[10] fluctūs fierī cognōverat; ad onera ac multitūdinem jūmentōrum trānsportandam, paulō lātiōrēs[11] quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās[12] adjuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs apportārī ex Hispāniā jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs, in Īllyricum proficīscitur.

Paulisper morātus, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur.[13] Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs, singulārī mīlitum studiō[14] in[15] summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter DC eius generis, cuius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās[16] XXVIII invēnit īnstrūctās. Collaudātīs mīlitibus atque eīs[17] quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit atque omnēs ad portum

* Bk. V, chaps. 1–2, 8–11.

Itium convenīre jubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trājectum esse cognōverat circiter mīlium passuum XXX[18] ā continentī.

Caesar sets sail and lands in Britain

Hīs rēbus gestīs,[19] Labiēnō in continente cum III legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore[20] et prō rē[21] caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem[22] in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum[23] nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō[24] prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō,[25] cursum nōn tenuit; et longius dēlātus aestū[26] ortā lūce[27] sub sinistrā[28] Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs[29] laudanda,[30] quī gravibus nāvigiīs, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, longārum nāvium cursum adaequāvērunt.[31] Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus[32] meridiānō ferē tempore; neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum prīvātīs,[33] quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat,[34] amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Caesar expositō[35] exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus X ad mare relictīs et equitibus CCC quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, — eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō[36] dēligātās ad ancorās[37] relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostēs cōnspicātus est.

Caesar has defeated the Britons, and is pursuing them when he learns that a storm has wrecked his fleet. He returns to repair the damage

Cum nostrī hostēs persequerentur, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem [38] vēnērunt quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coörtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in lītus ējectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent. Itaque ex eō concursū [39] nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs līterīsque cognōverat cōram perspicit, sīc ut, āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus, reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur.[40] Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī jubet; Labiēnō scrībit [41] ut quam plūrimās eīs legiōnibus [42] quae sunt apud eum nāvēs īnstituat.[43] Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris,[44] tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne conjungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs X cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs.

275. Notes

1. **L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus:** see section 172, note 1. The year was 54 B.C.

2. **Ab hībernīs:** among the Belgians. Caesar apparently left his army after the first of January, the date when Domitius and Claudius, consuls of 54 B.C., assumed office.

3. **Italiam:** Cisalpine Gaul. As a proconsul Caesar was obliged to remain in his territory, which ended at the Rubicon in northern Italy.

4. **Aedificandās cūrent:** *should have built* (more lit. *should cause to be built*).

5. **Eārum:** the new vessels.

6. **Subductiōnis:** in his previous expedition Caesar had found it desirable to have vessels that could be drawn up on the beach.

7. **Humiliōrēs**: the new vessels were to be more like scows, and so would draw less water than those used in the Mediterranean.

8. **Quam quibus**: *than those which.* **Quibus** is ablative with **ūtī**; its antecedent, **eae (nāvēs)**, is omitted.

9. **Atque . . . magis**: *and* (he did) *this all the more for this reason.*

10. **Ibi**: in the English Channel.

11. **Lātiōrēs**: supply **facit eās.**

12. **Humilitās**: *light draft.*

13. **Ad exercitum proficīscitur**: in late May or early June.

14. **Studiō**: ablative of cause.

15. **In**: *in spite of.*

16. **Longās**: supply **nāvēs.**

17. **Eīs**: the legati.

18. **Mīlium passuum XXX**: descriptive genitive, modifying **trājectum.**

19. **Hīs rēbus gestīs**: Caesar had decided to take to Britain with him those Gallic chiefs whom he could not trust in Gaul. Among them was Dumnorix, the Haeduan, who was a trouble-maker for the Romans, and who at this time had advised the other chiefs not to accompany Caesar. In the confusion of the embarkation Dumnorix attempted to flee, but he was soon overtaken. When he resisted arrest, he was put to death. This incident Caesar has related in chapters that are omitted here.

20. **Prō tempore**: *according to the emergency.*

21. **Prō rē**: *according to the situation.*

22. **Parī numerō quem**: *the same number as* (lit. *with an equal number which*); two thousand men.

23. **Ad sōlis occāsum**: *about sunset.*

24. **Āfricō**: the southwest wind was very favorable for this voyage.

25. **Ventō intermissō**: *as the wind went down.*

26. **Aestū**: with **dēlātus**, *carried by the tide.*

27. **Ortā lūcē**: *at daybreak* (lit. *light having risen*).

28. **Sub sinistrā**: the fleet was carried by the tide on into the North Sea, so that Britain appeared on the left of the vessels. On the change of the tide the vessels were rowed to the place near Dover where Caesar had landed on his former expedition.

29. **Virtūs**: *spirit.*

30. **Admodum laudanda**: *particularly praiseworthy.*

31. **Cursum adaequāvērunt**: *kept up with the speed.*

32. **Accessum est omnibus nāvibus**: *all the vessels reached.* What literally?

33. **Prīvātīs**: supply **nāvibus**; traders in their own vessels accompanied the Roman fleet.

34. **Quās . . . fēcerat:** *which individuals* (traders) *had made for their own advantage.* It has also been suggested that some of Caesar's officers may have combined business with warfare.

35. **Expositō:** *landed.*

36. **Apertō:** Caesar has in mind a sandy shore in distinction from a rocky shore.

37. **Dēligātās ad ancorās:** *moored* or *lying at anchor.*

38. **Ad Caesarem:** Caesar had left Quintus Atrius with a guard for the ships and had himself gone inland a few miles. Here he had come to a stronghold of the Britons and had captured it mainly through the prowess of the seventh legion.

39. **Eō concursū:** *the collision*; the vessels had broken away from their moorings.

40. **Reliquae . . . vidērentur:** *it seemed possible to repair the rest* (lit. *the rest seemed to be able to be repaired*).

41. **Scrībit:** *directs* (lit. *writes*); with this meaning the verb is followed by a substantive volitive clause.

42. **Eīs legiōnibus:** *with* (by means of) *those legions.*

43. **Īnstituat:** *construct.*

44. **Multae operae ac labōris:** it was a laborious undertaking to draw up eight hundred ships and build a wall for their protection.

276. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. After this was done, Caesar ordered Labienus to remain on the continent, so that there might be provided sufficient grain for the army. 2. He advised him that, before forming a plan, he should learn what the Gauls were doing. 3. If the labor of repairing is not interrupted, all the ships will be ready for sailing at daybreak. 4. It pleased him to summon as many workmen as possible from the continent. 5. The zeal of those who are in charge of the work will have to be praised.

2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 8, Appendix, page 46.

3. Review Word List 10, in the Appendix, page 47.

LESSON 78

THE EARLIEST DESCRIPTION OF THE BRITONS *

Caesar interrupts his narrative to describe the Britons and the natural resources and geography of their island.

277. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur quōs nātōs[1] in īnsulā ipsī[2] dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt[3]) et, bellō inlātō, ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum[4] est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque[5] aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia,[6] pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere[7] aut tāleīs ferreīs[8] ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur[9] ibi plumbum album[10] in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō.[11] Māteria cuiusque[12] generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem.[13] Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā.[14] Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.[15]

The geography of Britain as conceived by Caesar

Īnsula nātūrā[16] triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur,[17] ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula

* Bk. V, chaps. 12–14.

dīmidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam [18] Britannia, sed parī spatiō atque ex Galliā est [19] in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū [20] est īnsula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subjectae [21] īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus

CAESAR'S IDEA OF THE GEOGRAPHY OF GAUL AND BRITAIN

Caesar was exploring, both in Transalpine Gaul and in Britain, an almost wholly unknown territory. For a knowledge of geography he had to depend upon information furnished by natives, whose ideas of distant places were naturally very vague. He had no compass and no way of estimating accurately the relative positions of the lands he explored and conquered. Yet it is probable that his ideas of geography of the country were as good as those of modern travelers regarding regions of which they have seen but a small part

5 īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem.[22] Nōs nihil dē eō reperiēbāmus, nisi [23] certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs [24] breviōrēs [25] esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert [26] illōrum

opīniō, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nūlla est objecta[27] terra; sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīlium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

The customs of the Britons

Ex hīs[28] omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs[29] plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne[30] vīvunt[31] pellibusque sunt vestītī.[32] Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc[33] horridiōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō[34] atque omnī parte faciēī rāsā praeter labrum superius.

278. Notes

1. **Nātōs (esse)**: *originated*; they were the original inhabitants.
2. **Ipsī**: *the Britons themselves.*
3. **Ortī . . . pervēnērunt**: *from which* (tribes) *they were descended and from which they migrated thither.* In Britain there were to be found tribes calling themselves Atrebates, Belgae, etc.
4. **Hominum**: *population.*
5. **Crēberrima** (supply **sunt**): *are very numerous.*
6. **Ferē cōnsimilia**: *being in general quite like.*
7. **Aere**: from **aes.**
8. **Tāleīs ferreīs**: *iron bars.* In very early times the Romans had used similar bars of iron for money.
9. **Nāscitur**: *is found.*
10. **Plumbum album**: *tin,* which was found in Cornwall, and not in the inland regions, as Caesar states. It is said the Phoenicians had obtained tin from these mines as early as 900 B. C.
11. **Aere importātō**: the scantiness of copper, and the necessity of importing the supply they had, made copper precious, and thus caused it to be used as money by the Britons.
12. **Cuiusque**: *every.*

13. **Fāgum atque abietem:** Caesar is in error in this statement.

14. **Animī . . . causā:** *for pleasure* (lit. *for the sake of the mind and pleasure*).

15. **Remissiōribus frīgoribus:** *as the cold spells are less intense.* The influence of the Gulf Stream causes the temperature of England to be more even than that of France.

16. **Nātūrā:** *in shape*; ablative of respect.

17. **Quō appelluntur:** *whither almost all the vessels from Gaul sail.*

18. **Dīmidiō minor quam:** *half as large as.*

19. **Parī spatiō atque . . . est:** *as far away as it is from.*

20. **In . . . cursū:** *in mid-channel,* or *halfway across.*

21. **Subjectae** (supply **esse**): *to be close by*; probably he is referring to the Hebrides and the Orkneys.

22. **Noctem:** this statement is incorrect.

23. **Nisi:** *except that.*

24. **Certīs . . . mēnsūrīs:** *by exact measurements made by water clocks.* The water clock was somewhat like an hourglass, and measured time by the amount of water that dropped through a small hole.

25. **Breviōrēs:** in Scotland the nights in summer are several hours shorter than in Rome.

26. **Fert:** *goes.*

27. **Objecta:** *opposite.*

28. **Hīs:** the Britons.

29. **Interiōrēs:** *the inhabitants of the interior.*

30. **Carne:** from **carō.**

31. **Vīvunt:** with **lacte et carne**, *live on* etc.

32. **Sunt vestītī:** *clothe themselves* (lit. *are clothed*).

33. **Hōc:** ablative of cause.

34. **Capillō prōmissō:** *people with long hair*; ablative of description.

279. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *emollient, fabricate, plumber, examination, triangle, incarnate, carnivorous, vitrify, razor, erasure, abrasion, lenient, lenity, afflict, inflict, disgust, custom, desuetude, season, travesty, governor, forgery, aqueous, rectangle* (math.), *capillary* (sci.).

2. Explain the following derivatives of **nōscere**, *to know*: *incognito, recognize, noble, ignoble, notion, reconnoiter* (Fr.), *reconnaissance, connoisseur* (Fr.), *cognizance, ignore.*

3. Explain the following derivatives of **jungere**, *to join*: *junction, adjoin, conjunction, subjunctive, disjunctive, injunction, juncture.*

LESSON 79

CAESAR'S MILITARY OPERATIONS ON THE ISLAND AND HIS RETURN TO GAUL *

Caesar, having fought a series of battles with Cassivellaunus, leader of the Britons, who had united the British tribes against the Romans, pursues him to the river Thames and crosses, despite strong opposition, near the site of London.

280. Caesar cognitō cōnsiliō [1] eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās; rīpa autem erat dīrēctīs sudibus praefīxīsque [2] mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae [3] sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque, Caesar, praemissō equitātū, cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī jussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō [4] impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum [5] capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

The Britons make an attack upon the camp and the ships, but are defeated and submit. Caesar returns to the continent

Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs [6] imperat utī, coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs, castra nāvālia dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī, ēruptiōne factā, multīs eōrum

* Bk. V, chaps. 18, 22–23.

interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum [7] cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs,[8] neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī [9] posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs [10] vectīgālis [11] populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit.

Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās.[12] Hīs dēductīs,[13] quod et captīvōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus [14] exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigātiōnibus,[15] neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae mīlitēs portāret [16] dēsīderārētur; at ex eīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, perpaucae locum caperent [17]; reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore [18] ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius [19] mīlitēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

281. Notes

1. **Cōnsiliō:** that is, not to fight a pitched battle, but to wear out the Romans by repeated light attacks and especially by preventing them from getting supplies.

2. **Praefīxīs:** *set up on the edge of the river.* They were driven into the bank and sloped toward the middle of the stream.

3. **Dēfīxae:** *driven into the bed of the stream.*

4. **Eā, eō:** *such.*

5. **Cum:** *although.* Nothing could stop the charge of these Romans. For the mood of the verb with **cum** see App. § 75.

6. **Hīs:** the several kings, or chiefs.

7. **Cum:** *because.* For the mood of **cōnstituisset** see App. § 74.

8. **Mōtūs:** there had been no revolts as yet, but Caesar was aware that the Gauls were restive under the increasing domination of the Romans.

9. **Extrahī:** *be dragged out*, that is, prolonged in needless delays.

10. **In annōs singulōs:** *yearly.*

11. **Vectīgālis:** genitive of the whole with **quid**, *how much tribute.* No tribute was ever paid, as no Roman force returned to Britain for nearly a hundred years.

12. **Refectās:** see Lesson 77.

13. **Dēductīs:** *launched*; the vessels were dragged down to the sea from their place in the fortified camp.

14. **Commeātibus:** *trips.*

15. **Tot nāvigātiōnibus:** *although the sailings were so many.*

16. **Portāret:** translate as if it were **portābat.**

17. **Locum caperent:** *reached their destination*, that is, Britain.

18. **Annī tempore:** it was in early September, and the Romans avoided sea voyages in their open vessels in the late fall and winter. Caesar had been in Britain two months.

19. **Angustius:** *rather closely.*

282. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. It was reported that the forces of the enemy were being drawn up on the other bank of the river. 2. This river, which could be crossed on foot at only one place, was a great protection to the Britons. 3. But the Roman soldiers, being very desirous of victory and plunder, were not hindered by the depth of the water or the fortifications. 4. When not much of the summer was left, Caesar decided that tribute must be demanded and his army led back to the sea. 5. The greatest part of the tribute demanded by Caesar was never paid to the Romans.

2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 9, Appendix, page 46.

THE ATTACK OF THE NERVII UPON CICERO'S CAMP†

LESSON 80

THE GAULS ATTACK THE WINTER CAMP OF CICERO *

Study the map entitled "The Uprising of the Gauls," page 454
Read the descriptive matter carefully.

283. Hāc victōriā sublātus [1] Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur peditātumque sē subsequī jubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum [2] līberandī [3] atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs quās accēperint [4] injūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs [5] duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī [6] subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet [7] interficī [8]; sē ad eam rem profitētur [9] adjūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

* Bk. V, chaps. 38–41.

† At the left stands Ambiorix, the Gallic commander, with two other chiefs, directing the assault. The Gauls are desperately constructing a ditch and earth wall about the Roman camp. One Gaul is digging with his bare hands and using his cloak as a basket; others are cutting the sod with their swords. On the right a group of Gauls are heating red-hot balls of a special kind of earth, and one Gaul is hurling them into the Roman camp and has set fire to the huts of the soldiers. In imitation of the Romans the Gauls have constructed towers, which they are advancing toward the camp. Beyond one of the towers may be seen a testudo, or shed, which the Gauls have pushed up to the Roman wall. Under cover of this they are filling up the ditch.

The Roman camp in the background is surrounded by a ditch and wall, surmounted by a palisade and strengthened by towers in various stages of completion. On one men are engaged in making protective screens of interwoven branches. The huts of the Roman soldiers can be seen over the wall, and many are in flames. At the right-hand corner of the camp some Gauls are trying to tear down the palisade with long wall hooks.

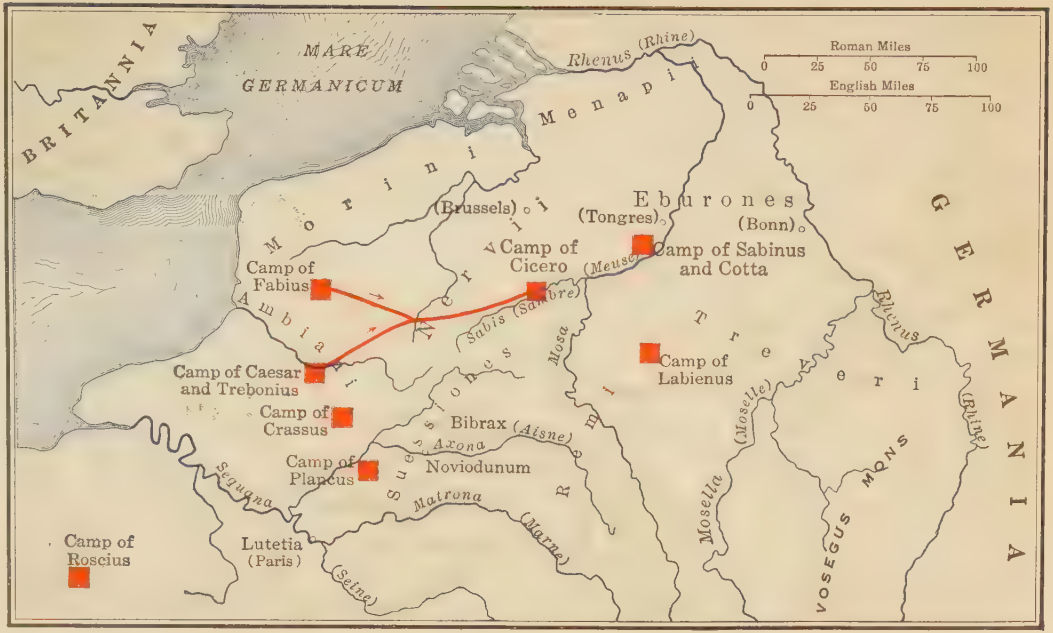
Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs, Gallī quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē imprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Sabīnī morte perlātā. Huic[10] quoque accidit, quod[11] fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent,[12] repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur,[13] quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī[14] victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

The Romans under Cicero make energetic preparations for defense

Mittuntur ad Caesarem[15] cōnfestim ab Cicerōne līterae; obsessīs omnibus viīs,[16] missī[17] intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs[18] admodum CXX excitantur[19] incrēdibilī celeritāte. Hostēs posterō diē, multō majōribus coāctīs cōpiīs, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne[20] quā prīdiē resistitur; hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad[21] labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt[22] noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae[23] sudēs, magnus mūrālium pīlōrum[24] numerus īnstituitur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset,[25] nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.[26]

The Nervii try to entice Cicero to leave the camp, using the same arguments as Ambiorix had urged in the case of Sabinus and Cotta

Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum[27] causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habē-



UPRISING OF THE GAULS IN THE FALL OF 54 B.C.

After the campaigns of 54 B.C. Caesar quartered his forces in different places, as indicated on the map. This division of the Roman forces encouraged the Gauls to revolt. The Eburones, under Ambiorix, revolted and attacked the camp of Sabinus and Cotta. The Nervii attacked the camp of Cicero. The red line shows the route of the legions from the camps of Fabius and Caesar to the rescue of Cicero

bant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Sabīnō ēgerat commemorant: Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte. Dīcunt sēsē hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō[28] ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē[29] incolumibus[30] ex hībernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo[31] respondet: "Nōn est cōnsuētūdō populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem. Sī ab armīs discēdere vultis, mē adjūtōre lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittite. Spērō vōs prō eius jūstitiā quae petierītis impetrātūrōs."

284. Notes

1. **Sublātus:** *elated* by his victory over Sabinus and Cotta.
2. **In perpetuum:** *forever.*
3. **Suī līberandī:** *of freeing themselves.*
4. **Accēperint:** translate as if it were **accēpērunt**. Verbs dependent upon a clause having its verb in the subjunctive are often themselves attracted into the subjunctive.
5. **Lēgātōs:** Sabinus and Cotta.
6. **Negōtī:** genitive of the whole with **nihil.**
7. **Hiemet:** why subjunctive?
8. **Oppressam legiōnem interficī:** *to overpower and destroy the legion* (more lit. *to put to death the overpowered legion*).
9. **Profitētur:** *promises.*
10. **Huic:** Cicero; dative with **accidit**, *it happened to him.* The subject of **accidit** is the clause **ut . . . interciperentur.**
11. **Quod:** *as.*
12. **Discessissent:** translate as if indicative (see note 4).
13. **Is diēs sustentātur:** *they held out that day.*
14. **Adeptī:** conditional.
15. **Caesarem:** he was at Samarobriva, delaying his departure for Cisalpine Gaul until the winter quarters were all arranged.
16. **Obsessīs viīs:** causal.
17. **Missī:** *those sent*, that is, the messengers.

18. **Turrēs:** these towers were so near together that the intervening space could be covered by the missiles from the men posted in them, thus making a very strong defense for the camp.

19. **Excitantur:** *were erected.*

20. **Ratiōne:** *manner.*

21. **Ad:** *from.*

22. **Quaecumque opus sunt:** *whatever was necessary*; **opus** is indeclinable and here used as a predicate noun.

23. **Praeūstae:** *charred at the end.*

24. **Mūrālium pīlōrum:** larger than the usual javelin.

25. **Cum . . . esset:** *although he was in poor health.*

26. **Cōgerētur:** all the soldiers gathered around him and forced him to rest.

27. **Sermōnis aditum:** *right to ask an interview* (lit. *approach for conversation*).

28. **Sēsē hōc esse animō:** *their attitude is such* (lit. *they are with this feeling*). **Hōc animō** is descriptive ablative.

29. **Per sē:** *so far as they* (the Nervii) *were concerned.*

30. **Incolumibus:** with **illīs.**

31. **Ūnum modo:** *only one thing.*

285. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *detect, integument, extant, extenuate, parsimony, intercept, petulant, mandamus.*

2. Explain the following derivatives of **movēre**, *to move*: *motion, motor, automobile, immobility, commotion, demotion, promotion, emotion, motive, remote, mobilize. Mob* is a shortened form of **mōbile vulgus**, *the easily moved crowd.*

3. Explain the following derivatives of **agere**, *to do, act*: *action, active, actor, agent, agile, agitate, actual, ambiguous, counteract, exact, transact.*

4. *Volatile* and *flighty* are heteronyms. Explain the derivation of each.

LESSON 81

THE GALLANT DEFENSE OF CICERO'S CAMP *

When the Gauls are unable to persuade Cicero to abandon the camp, they decide to make an attack. The desperate courage of Cicero's men makes a thrilling story.

286. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum X et fossā pedum quīndecim hīberna cingunt. Haec[1] et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā[2] quae erant ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre[3] cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum XV in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad[4] altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

The Nervii assault the Roman camp, and are repulsed after a desperate struggle

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coörtō ventō, ferventēs fūsilī ex argillā glandēs[5] fundīs et fervefacta jacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, jacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum[6] castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā jam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea[7] praesentia animī fuit ut, cum[8] undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum

* Bk. V, chaps. 42–44.

multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut[9] sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs[10] ultimī[11] nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent,[12] vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus conjectīs dēturbātī,[13] turrisque succēnsa est.

Rivalry among the Romans inspires two centurions to a striking exhibition of valor

Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur,[14] omnibusque annīs[15] dē locō[16] summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum[17] tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs jūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō[18] relictō, Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō[19] percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī[20] et pīlum in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam[21] et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī[22] dextram morātur manum impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī

THE RIVALRY OF THE TWO CENTURIONS

subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque, ūnō interfectō, reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dējectus īnferiōrem[23] concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit[24] ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dījūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.[25]

287. Notes

1. **Haec:** these methods of assault.
2. **Nūllā cōpiā:** *as there was no supply.*
3. **Manibus . . . exhaurīre:** the verb has two meanings, *to dig out the earth with their hands and to carry it in their cloaks.*

4. **Ad:** *according to.*
5. **Ferventēs . . . glandēs:** *red-hot balls of soft clay.*
6. **In omnem locum** = **in omnēs partēs.**
7. **Ea:** *such.*
8. **Cum:** *although.* What is the mood in a **cum** clause of this type?
9. **Ut:** *inasmuch as.*
10. **Prīmīs:** *those in front.*
11. **Ultimī:** *those in the rear.*
12. **Sī . . . vellent:** *in case they should wish to come in.*
13. **Dēturbātī:** supply **sunt.**
14. **Uter anteferrētur:** *as to which should be preferred to the other* in their rivalry for rank. Both men were ready to be made centurions of the first rank.
15. **Omnibus annīs:** *every year.*
16. **Dē locō:** *for promotion.*
17. **Locum:** *chance.*
18. **Spatiō:** between him and the enemy.
19. **Quō** refers to the wounded Gaul.
20. **Pullōnī:** dative of reference, but translate as if genitive.
21. **Āvertit . . . vāgīnam:** *this accident turned his scabbard aside.*
22. **Cōnantī** (supply **eī**): dative of reference.
23. **In locum dējectus īnferiōrem:** *plunging into a hollow place.*
24. **Utrumque versāvit:** *favored both* or *dealt with both.*
25. **Uter anteferendus vidērētur:** *which seemed superior.*

288. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. Taught by certain captives, the Nervii, following the Roman method of attacking, surrounded the winter quarters with a wall and ditch in less than three hours. 2. For the purpose of cutting sods they were obliged to use their swords. 3. Vorenus hoped that that day would decide which of the two men was the more worthy of praise. 4. As Pullo was attempting to draw out his sword, his shield was pierced by a javelin. 5. If the enemy surround the man, they will deprive his companion of the chance of bringing help.

2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 10, Appendix, page 47.

LESSON 82

DESPERATE EFFORTS TO COMMUNICATE WITH CAESAR*

Cicero naturally sought aid from Caesar, but only after many fruitless efforts did a messenger finally get through the enemy's lines and inform Caesar of Cicero's danger.

289. Quantō erat in diēs[1] gravior[2] oppugnātiō, et maximē quod, magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem dēfensōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs[3] līterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars comprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs ut līterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in jaculō[4] illigātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus[5] ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

A letter tied to a dart is thrown into Cicero's camp and informs him of Caesar's approach

Caesar ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam līterīs[6] mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī

* Bk. V, chaps. 45, 48–49, 52.

adīre nōn possit,[7] monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum[8] dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In līterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore[9]; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō

TRĀGULA WITH ĀMENTUM

To the thong (**āmentum**) of the **trāgula** was attached the letter (**epistula**) which Caesar sent to Cicero

diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur; dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam[10] in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls turn their attention from Cicero to Caesar

Gallī, rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō, datā facultāte, Gallum[11] ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit quī līterās ad Caesarem dēferat[12]; hunc admonet iter cautē dīligenterque faciat[13]; perscrībit in līterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum[14] multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus līterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat.[15] Cōnsīdit et quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūnit

atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum[16] quam maximē potest[17] contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs, explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

Caesar, having defeated the Nervii, joins Cicero and compliments him on his gallant defense

Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus, eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā[18] legiōne, cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere.[19] Ex hīs omnibus jūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat,[20] quōrum adeō ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat.

290. Notes

1. **In diēs:** *from day to day.*

2. **Quantō gravior:** *the more severe.* **Quantō** is correlative with **tantō.**

3. **Tantō crēbriōrēs:** *the more frequent.*

4. **In jaculō:** the message was concealed in a hollow of the javelin.

5. **Inter Gallōs versātus:** *moving about among the Gauls.*

6. **Graecīs līterīs:** probably in Greek letters, not in the Greek language.

7. **Sī . . . possit:** *should he be unable to approach* the camp of Cicero because of the missiles of the Romans.

8. **Āmentum:** the thong attached to a javelin gave a whirling motion to the weapon when it was thrown, and so increased the accuracy of aim.

9. **Adfore = adfutūrum esse.**

10. **Perlēctam** (supply **epistulam**): he read the letter himself and then read it aloud to the men.

11. **Gallum:** *the Gaul* who had carried the letter to Caesar.
12. **Dēferat:** why subjunctive?
13. **Faciat:** **ut** is omitted in this substantive volitive clause.
14. **Eum:** Caesar.
15. **Aequō . . . exīstimābat:** *he thought he might lessen his speed without worry* (lit. *with an equal mind*).
16. **Angustiīs viārum:** *by narrowing the streets.* What literally?
17. **Quam maximē potest:** *as much as he can.*
18. **Prōductā:** *drawn up in review.*
19. **Nōn . . . vulnere:** *not one soldier in ten was left unwounded.*
20. **Appellat:** *addresses.*

291. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *precinct, succinct, inexhaustible, effervesce, fervent, ferment, argillaceous, glandular, escalator, torrent, toast, flagrant, contingent, ambidextrous, rivulet, precaution, fuse, infuse, equanimity, succor, repercussion, probate* (law), *cohesion* (sci.), *adherent* (sci.).

2. *Avalanche* is derived from **ad**, *to*, and **vallem**, *valley*. An avalanche of snow was so called because it fell down from a mountain *to a valley*.

3. *Derivative* is derived from **dē**, *from*, and **rīvus**, *stream*, and is so called because it is like a small channel draining from a stream.

4. *Rival* is derived from **rīvus**, *brook*, and rivals were originally men who dwelt on the banks of the same brook. The right to draw off water from streams for irrigation purposes was very important, and disputes were certain to arise, one man turning the water into his own field earlier than he should, another leaving the sluices open longer than he should. Hence **rīvālēs** came to mean *competitors*.

5. *Defalcation* is an unusual word, derived from **falx**, *a sickle*. It meant originally a cutting away (*de-*) with a sickle. Then it came to mean a cutting down in general, a reduction or curtailment. Finally it developed the very special meaning which it has today, the theft or embezzlement of funds intrusted to one's care.

6. **Crux**, *cross*, is the source of many interesting derivatives. To *cruc*ify is to fasten upon a *cross*. Since the cross was an instrument of torture, the central point of a problem which torments or puzzles the mind is the *crux* of the problem. A *cruc*ial test is one that goes to the heart of the matter. *Cross* itself, with all its meanings, is

from **crux**. To *cross* the letter *t* is to make it *cross*-shaped, and from this come "to cross a street," "crossroads," etc. To *cross* someone's hopes is to obstruct or thwart them. From this came the idea of ill humor, as in "a cross look." To *cruise* the sea is to *cross* it back and forth; hence also *cruiser*. The *cru*saders were so called because they were marked with a *cross*. *Excruciating* preserves the original meaning of torture, as in "excruciating pain." The word has developed the idea of a high degree of something, and we hear the colloquial expression "excruciatingly funny."

LESSON 83

CAESAR'S SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY *

During the sixth year of Caesar's governorship there were few important military operations. With the object of overawing the Suevi, a German tribe that had aided the Gauls in a revolt against him, Caesar crossed the Rhine a second time with a strong force.

292. Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant[1]; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx[2] receptum habēret. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā[3] ratiōne, magnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur.

Caesar spares the Ubii, who inform him that the Suevi are assembling their forces

Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orīrētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā[4] ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem[5] laesam esse. Petunt atque ōrant ut sibi[6] parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit[7] darī, pollicentur. Cognitā causā,[8] Caesar reperit ab Suēvīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditūs viāsque in Suēvōs quaerit.

Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēvōs

* Bk. VI, chaps. 9–10.

omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum imperiō sint[9] dēnūntiāre[10] ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs, inopiā cibī adductōs, ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī. Mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēvōs mittant quaeque[11] apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

But the Suevi, learning that Caesar has crossed the Rhine, retreat into the forest of Bacenis

Illī imperāta faciunt et, paucīs diēbus intermissīs, referunt Suēvōs omnēs, certiōrēs factōs dē adventū exercitūs Rōmānī, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs penitus ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi[12] īnfīnītā magnitūdine, quae appellētur[13] Bācenis; ad eius silvae initium Suēvōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.

293. Notes

1. **Trēverīs mīserant**: the Germans had sent help for the Treveri.
2. **Ambiorīx**: Caesar has resolved to destroy Ambiorix, who, as leader of the Eburones, has slaughtered the Roman legati Sabinus and Cotta, together with their forces. He does not intend that Ambiorix shall be able to find refuge among the Germans across the Rhine.
3. **Nōtā atque īnstitūtā**: *tried and approved.*
4. **Pūrgandī suī causā**: *for the purpose of clearing themselves.*
5. **Fidem**: *word* or *pledge.*
6. **Sibi**: dative with the special verb **parcō** (App. § 18).
7. **Sī velit**: *should he desire.*
8. **Cognitā causā**: *after investigating the case.*
9. **Sint**: translate as if indicative.
10. **Dēnūntiāre**: *order.*
11. **Quaeque**: **-que** connects **mittant** and **cognōscant**; **quae** introduces the indirect question **quae . . . gerantur.**
12. **Silvam esse ibi**: (*that*) *there is a forest there.*
13. **Appellētur**: why subjunctive?

294. Drill and Review

1. Review the conjugation of **sum**, **possum**, **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō**.

2. What two kinds of phrases are introduced by **cum**? What three kinds of clauses?

3. Write in Latin:

1. The plan of building a bridge was so familiar to the soldiers that the work was quickly accomplished. 2. Caesar left men who were to be a guard for the bridge. He then led the rest of his force across the river. 3. As the Ubii had not sent assistance to the Treveri, Caesar spared them. 4. In order to learn what is going on among the Suevi, he orders many scouts to set out from the camp. 5. As soon as they were informed of Caesar's arrival, the Suevi fled to the edge of a forest of great size.

LESSON 84

THE TWO FACTIONS THROUGHOUT GAUL *

Since Caesar had but few military operations to report in the sixth book, he took the opportunity to describe the customs of the Gauls and Germans. His accounts are the earliest descriptions of these peoples written by a Roman, and are of great historical value.

295. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est,[1] nōn aliēnum[2] esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō[3] differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

The political factions of the Gauls

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt. Eārum factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum jūdiciō[4] habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium jūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.[5] Idque eius reī causā[6] antīquitus īnstitūtum esse vidētur, nē[7] quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret.[8] Haec eadem ratiō[9] est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partēs.

The struggle between the Haeduans and Sequanians as leaders of the factions

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterīus factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterīus[10] Sēquanī. Hī,[11] cum per sē minus valērent (quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs

* Bk. VI, chaps. 11–12.

magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adjūnxerant, eōsque ad sē magnīs jactūrīs [12] pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē jūrāre [13] cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs esse, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Dīviciācus [14] auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē [15] redierat.

The favor of Caesar gives the supremacy to the Haeduans and second place to the Remi

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs [16] redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī, quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā [17] intellegēbātur,[18] eī qui propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs conjungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant.[19] Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū [20] rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

296. Notes

1. **Ad . . . perventum est**: *this point has been reached.*
2. **Aliēnum**: *out of place.*
3. **Quō**: *how* or *in what respect.*
4. **Eōrum jūdiciō**: *according to their judgment.*
5. **Redeat**: *is referred.*

6. **Eius reī causā:** *for this purpose.* What literally?

7. **Nē:** introduces a substantive clause in apposition with **eius reī.**

8. **Auxilī egēret:** *be in want of help.* The verb **egeō** often governs the genitive; compare the dative with special verbs.

9. **Ratiō:** *state of affairs*; translate, *this same state of affairs is found throughout Gaul.*

10. **Alterīus . . . alterīus:** *of one . . . of the other.*

11. **Hī:** *the latter.*

12. **Magnīs jactūrīs:** *at great sacrifices.*

13. **Jūrāre:** supply **Haeduōs** as the subject.

14. **Dīviciācus:** the Haeduan leader.

15. **Īnfectā rē:** *without settling the matter.*

16. **Haeduīs:** dative.

17. **Grātiā:** ablative of respect.

18. **Quod . . . intellegēbātur:** *because it was seen that these* (**quōs**, that is, the Remi) *were equal in favor with Caesar.*

19. **Dicābant:** *gave up.*

20. **Eō statū:** *in such condition.*

297. Drill and Review

1. Review the conjugation of **ferō**, **faciō** (**fīō**), and **eō.**

2. What kinds of clauses are introduced by **ut**? by **ubi**? by **quī**?

3. Write in Latin:

1. In what way did the peoples of Gaul and Germany differ? 2. We are all grateful to Caesar, because he has told us how the peoples of Gaul and Germany differed. 3. He informs us that in every state there were two parties. 4. He also tells us that in Gaul as a whole there were two parties, and that the Haeduans and Sequanians were the leaders of the parties. 5. By reason of the coming of Caesar so great a change in affairs took place that the Sequanians lost their leadership, and the Haeduans were restored to their former favor and dignity.

LESSON 85

THE MYSTERIOUS PRIESTHOOD OF THE DRUIDS *

Caesar is our chief authority on the power, privileges, and doctrines of the Druids.

298. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō [1] atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō.[2] Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō [3] aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut injūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant [4] nōbilibus; quibus [5] in hōs [6] eadem omnia sunt jūra quae [7] dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt,[8] sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā [9] concurrit, magnōque hī [10] sunt apud eōs [11] honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod [12] est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem [13] dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī [14] aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,[15] sacrificiīs interdīcunt.[16] Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus [17] ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt,[18] aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus jūs redditur [19] neque honor ūllus commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc

* Bk. VI, chaps. 13–15.

mortuō,[20] aut, sī quī[21] ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum ūnus ēligitur; nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī

THE ANNUAL COUNCIL OF THE DRUIDS

Of the mysterious Druids little is known except what Caesar tells us. They formed the one strong influence — community of religion — that tended to make all the Gauls feel that they belonged to one nation. Druidism as a religious force affected the destiny of the whole people. The oak was especially sacred among them, and the mistletoe was particularly reverenced. In this scene the annual council is meeting in the plain where now rises the Cathedral of Chartres. The chief of the Druids, who may be called their pope, is excommunicating a Gaul for failure to obey their commands. The penalty is described in Caesar's account

certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs jūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna[22] in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur; et nunc quī

dīligentius [23] eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

The education and the teachings of the Druids

Druidēs ā bellō abesse [24] cōnsuēvērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt [25] et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum [26] ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea [27] līterīs [28] mandāre, cum [29] in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs līterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur: quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint [30] neque eōs quī discunt [31] līterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre,[32] — quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidiō [33] līterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre,[34] nōn interīre animās,[35] sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs [36]; atque hōc [37] maximē ad virtūtem excitārī [38] putant, metū mortis neglēctō.[39] Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā,[40] dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et juventūtī trādunt.

The knights

Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus [41] atque aliquod bellum incidit [42] (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere [43] cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs [44] circum sē ambactōs clientēsque [45] habet. Hanc ūnam [46] grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

299. Notes

1. **Aliquō numerō**: *of some account.*
2. **Nūllī . . . cōnsiliō**: *is invited into no deliberation.*
3. **Aere aliēnō**: *debt* (lit. *someone else's money*).

4. **Dicant:** *surrender.*

5. **Quibus:** dative of possessor; the antecedent is **nōbilibus.**

6. **In hōs:** *over them.*

7. **Quae:** *as.*

8. **Illī . . . intersunt:** *the former have charge of religious matters.*

9. **Disciplīnae causā:** *for the sake of instruction.*

10. **Hī:** the Druids.

11. **Eōs:** the people of Gaul.

12. **Quod:** modifies **facinus,** *any crime.* **Quod** is the neuter adjectival form of the indefinite pronoun **quis.**

13. **Īdem:** nominative plural, *they also.*

14. **Quī:** indefinite adjective modifying **prīvātus,** *any private citizen,* and **populus.** See note 12.

15. **Eōrum . . . stetit:** *has not stood by their decision.*

16. **Sacrificiīs interdīcunt:** *forbid them to take part in sacrifices.*

17. **Quibus:** its antecedent is **hī.**

18. **Hīs . . . dēcēdunt:** *these persons all avoid*; **hīs** is dative of separation.

19. **Jūs redditur:** the courts of justice are of no help to them.

20. **Hōc mortuō:** *when this man dies.*

21. **Sī quī:** *whoever.*

22. **Disciplīna:** *the institution* of Druidism. Caesar is wrong in saying that Druidism originated in Britain and was brought to Gaul; probably the reverse is true. But in his time the system was more flourishing in the backward civilization of Britain.

23. **Dīligentius:** *more thoroughly.*

24. **Abesse:** *to absent themselves.*

25. **In disciplīnam conveniunt:** *gather for the training.*

26. **Versuum:** in early times laws and religious rites were expressed in verse, because verse is more easily memorized than prose.

27. **Ea:** *the teachings* of the verses.

28. **Līterīs:** *to writing.*

29. **Cum:** *although.*

30. **Velint:** subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect statement, after the idea of *thinking* in **mihi videntur.**

31. **Eōs quī discunt:** *the learners.*

32. **Minus memoriae studēre:** *to give less attention to the memory.*

33. **Praesidiō:** *because of a reliance on* etc.

34. **Hoc persuādēre:** *to teach this belief*; explained by the following infinitive clauses in apposition with **hoc.**

35. **Animās:** *the soul.*

36. **Ab aliīs . . . ad aliōs**: this is the doctrine known as the transmigration of souls.

37. **Hōc**: *by this belief.*

38. **Excitārī**: supply **hominēs** as subject.

39. **Metū . . . neglēctō**: causal ablative absolute.

40. **Dē rērum nātūrā**: *about nature.*

41. **Cum est ūsus**: *whenever it is necessary.*

42. **Incidit**: *breaks out.*

43. **Genere**: *in family.*

44. **Ut . . . amplissimus, ita plūrimōs**: *the more distinguished, the more.*

45. **Plūrimōs clientēs**: Orgetorix is said to have had 10,000 retainers.

46. **Hanc ūnam** etc.: *this is the only influence and power that they recognize.*

300. Drill and Review

1. Write in Latin:

1. Boys desirous of the training of the Druids were accustomed to be sent by their relatives to Britain to study. 2. Learning (infin.) a great number of verses was a part of the training given by the Druids. 3. If the leader of the Druids died, a man had to be chosen by ballot to be in charge of the rest of the Druids. 4. Boys were so taught by the Druids that they trusted their memories rather than books. 5. The Druids persuaded their pupils that the soul after death passes from one body to another. 6. The Britons obeyed the decisions of the Druids, who assembled yearly for the sake of hearing public and private controversies.

2. Review the principal parts of the verbs in Word List 11, Appendix, page 47.

LESSON 86

THE RELIGIOUS IDEAS AND PRACTICES OF THE GAULS *

The Gauls practice human sacrifices

301. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita[1] religiōnibus[2]; atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs, quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō[3] victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque[4] ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, — quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque[5] eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra[6] habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra[7] vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus[8] succēnsīs, circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs[9] immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.[10]

The gods of the Gauls

Deōrum maximē Mercurium[11] colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,[12] hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Jovem et Minervam.[13] Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artifi-

* Bk. VI, chaps. 16-20.

ciōrum initia trādere, Jovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint [14] plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet. Neque ob timōrem cruciātūs praedam bellō captam occultāre audent.

© Ewing Galloway

A DRUID STONE

One of the so-called "Druid stones" in France, now used as a shrine. These huge stones, some of which are nearly twenty feet high, are found in France and Britain. In spite of their name they probably had no connection with the Druids, but go back to an earlier origin

The Gauls claim descent from Pluto. Treatment of boys

Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre [15] prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam [16] spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium [17] fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.[18] In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc [19] ferē ab reliquīs [20] differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur; fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō [21] in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.[22]

Marriage laws and funeral rites

Virī,[23] quantās pecūniās [24] ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine [25] accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs,[26] aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae conjūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque [27] servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit,[28] ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in [29] uxōrēs sīcut in līberōs vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō [30] nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus [31] in servīlem modum [32] quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est,[33] ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū [34] Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse [35] arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam [36] servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat,[37] jūstīs [38] fūnebribus cōnfectīs, ūnā cremābantur.

All news must first be reported to the magistrates

Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,[39] sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt [40] occultant; quae esse ex ūsū [41] jūdicāvērunt, multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium [42] loquī nōn concēditur.

302. Notes

1. **Dēdita:** *devoted.*
2. **Religiōnibus:** *religious observances.*
3. **Prō:** *as.*
4. **Administrīs:** *as priests*; in apposition with **druidibus.**

5. **Pūblicē:** *in the name of the tribe.*

6. **Simulācra:** huge images made in the likeness of the human form.

7. **Membra:** object of complent. The limbs were made of wicker-work so that the whole image would burn.

8. **Quibus:** the antecedent is **simulācra.**

9. **Dīs** = **deīs.**

10. **Dēscendunt:** *they resort to.*

11. **Mercurium:** Caesar gives Roman names to the Gallic deities, in the same way that his ancestors had given Roman names to the Greek deities when they became acquainted with them. The Gallic gods had points of similarity to the Roman, but they were not exactly the same.

12. **Ferunt:** *they say.*

13. **Minervam:** supply **colunt** as the verb.

14. **Cēperint:** perfect subjunctive; translate as if future perfect indicative.

15. **Patre:** *as their ancestor.*

16. **Ob eam causam:** because they are descended from the god of the Lower World, the realm of *darkness.*

17. **Noctium:** so we measure time in the expression "fortnight" (fourteen nights).

18. **Ut . . . subsequātur:** they counted from the first night of the month and year instead of from the first day. The custom may have originated in the phases of the moon, as it was easy for primitive peoples to calculate time from the full moon.

19. **Hōc:** ablative of respect; explained by the **quod** clause.

20. **Ab reliquīs:** *from other peoples* (lit. *from the rest* of mankind).

21. **In pūblicō** (supply **locō**): *in public.*

22. **Turpe dūcunt:** *they consider it disgraceful.*

23. **Virī:** *husbands.*

24. **Pecūniās:** *property.* Supply **pecūniās** with **tantās**; *as much* (**tantās**) *property as* (**quantās**) *they have received* etc.

25. **Dōtis nōmine:** *by way of dowry.* The wife brought her husband a dowry. The husband set aside from his own property an amount equal to that of the dowry, and made from the two a common fund. The income of this fund was saved, and when the husband or wife died, both the fund and its income went to the survivor.

26. **Bonīs:** *property.*

27. **Frūctūs:** *income* or *profits.*

28. **Uter . . . superāvit:** *whichever of them survives* (lit. *has surpassed in respect to life*).

29. **In:** *over.*

30. **Illūstriōre locō:** *of higher rank*; ablative of source.

31. **Uxōribus:** polygamy was common among the higher class.

32. **In servīlem modum:** *as is done in the case of slaves*; the Romans did not hesitate to torture slaves to secure a confession of guilt.

33. **Sī compertum est:** *if guilt is discovered.*

34. **Prō cultū:** *considering the state of civilization.*

35. **Vīvīs cordī fuisse:** *were dear to them when alive*; **cordī** is dative of purpose.

36. **Suprā hanc memoriam:** *before our time.*

37. **Quōs . . . cōnstābat:** *who appeared to have been beloved by them*; **cōnstābat** is used impersonally.

38. **Jūstīs:** *regular.*

39. **Habent lēgibus sānctum:** *they have a legal restriction.*

40. **Quae vīsa sunt:** *what seems (has seemed) best.*

41. **Ex ūsū:** *advantageous.*

42. **Per concilium:** *in an assembly.*

303. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *immolate, devotion, implacable, context, pretext, textile, noxious, innocuous, tributary, accumulate, cumulative, morbid, proxy, disinherit, excellent.*

2. Explain the following derivatives of **merx**, *merchandise*: *merchant, mercenary, mercantile, mercury, commercial. Mercy* reached its present meaning through the intervening stages of *pay, reward, pity.*

3. *Pine* in "to pine away" is a very early borrowing from **poena**. *Pain* in "under pain of dismissal" is a later borrowing, preserving the original meaning. *Penal* is a still later borrowing, directly from Latin. *Subpoena* preserves the original Latin form.

4. *Consider* is derived from **sīdus** (**-eris**), *star*, and meant originally to contemplate the stars, and then to reflect with thoughtfulness. Compare the similar derivation of *contemplate. Desire*, from **dēsīderāre**, meant originally to turn the eyes from the stars; hence to miss, regret, and long for.

5. **Interest** is the third singular of **intersum** and means literally *it concerns* or *is of advantage.* It is now used as a noun, meaning something that is of advantage.

6. Explain the following derivatives of **regere**, *to rule* (more exactly, *to make go straight*): *regent, régime, regiment, direct, dirge, dirigible, erect, correct, incorrigible, rectitude.*

LESSON 87

THE CUSTOMS OF THE GERMANS *

This account is our first authentic source of information regarding the early Germans.

304. Germānī multum ā cōnsuētūdine Gallōrum differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesunt neque sacrificiīs student.[1] Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt [2] quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus juvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs [3] labōrī ac dūritiae student. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, majorque pars eōrum victūs in [4] lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit.

The Germans own their land in common

Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs [5] gentibus cognātiōnibusque [6] hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt,[7] quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī [8] attribuunt, atque annō post aliō [9] trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās afferunt causās [10]: nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine [11] captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā [12] commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs [13] possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius [14] ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās,[15] quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte [16] plēbem contineant, cum [17] suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

* Bk. VI, chaps. 21–23.

GERMAN LIFE IN CAESAR'S DAY

The policy of the Germans toward neighboring tribes; their leaders in war and peace; their treatment of strangers

Cīvitātibus[18] maxima laus est[19] quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātīs fīnibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis[20] exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit[21] aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant[22] potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis[23] magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs jūs dīcunt[24] contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt,[25] atque ea[26] juventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,[27] — cōnsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs[28] secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab injūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

305. Notes

1. **Student:** *pay attention to.*
2. **Dūcunt:** *consider.*
3. **A parvīs:** *from boyhood.*
4. **In:** *of.*
5. **In annōs singulōs:** *yearly* or *for a year.*
6. **Gentibus cognātiōnibusque:** *to families and clans.*
7. **Quīque . . . coiērunt:** *and to those who have banded together.*
8. **Quantum . . . agrī:** *as much land as seems best and in what place seems best.*
9. **Aliō:** *elsewhere.*
10. **Causās:** the reasons are given in the succeeding **nē** and **ut** clauses.

11. **Cōnsuētūdine:** *residence.* Continued residence in any one place might make the men farmers instead of soldiers.

12. **Agrī cultūrā:** *for agriculture.*

13. **Humiliōrēs:** object of **expellant.**

14. **Accūrātius:** *with greater care.* The change from temporary habitations would bring attachment to a place.

15. **Nē qua cupiditās:** *that no desire.*

16. **Aequitāte:** *contentment.*

17. **Cum:** causal.

18. **Cīvitātibus:** dative of reference.

19. **Maxima laus est:** *it is a great credit*; the subject of **est** is **habēre.**

20. **Proprium virtūtis:** *a proof of their courage.*

21. **Bellum illātum dēfendit:** *repels an invasion.* What must **bellum īnfert** mean here?

22. **Quī . . . praesint et habeant:** relative clauses of purpose.

23. **Commūnis:** that is, common to a whole tribe.

24. **Jūs dīcunt:** *administer justice.*

25. **Fīunt:** *take place.*

26. **Ea:** supply **latrōcinia.**

27. **Quī . . . profiteantur:** *and that those who wish to follow should volunteer* (lit. *declare publicly*).

28. **Hīs:** the volunteers.

306. Application of Latin to English

1. Explain the meaning of *professor, confess, insurrection, resurrection, attributive, inviolable, diminution, min'ute, minute', assiduity, hospital, hospitality, transitive, saint, sanctuary.*

2. Explain the following derivatives of **cernere,** *to separate, distinguish, see*: *decide, discern, discernible, discernment, discreet, discretion, secret, secretary, secretion, discriminate, concrete, decree.*

3. In Latin, as in English,* new words are frequently formed by combining two words: as, **agricola,** from **ager,** *field,* and **colere,** *to till*; **aedificāre,** from **aedēs,** *building,* and **-ficāre,** the form frequently taken by **facere** in compounds. Explain the composition of the following compounds, and give an English derivative (where one exists):

adeō	aequinoctium	animadvertere	beneficium
adhūc	amplificāre	anteā	bīduum

* For example, *blacksmith, street-car, sixteen.*

bipartītō	lēgislātor	merīdiēs	omnipotēns
dēsuper	magnanimitās	nāvigāre	postrīdiē
duodecim	magnopere	nescīre	sacrōsānctus
ēgregius	maleficium	nisi	saepenumerō
jūsjūrandum	mediterrāneus	nōlle	signifer

a. **Negōtium** is derived from **nec**, *not*, and **ōtium**, *leisure*.

b. **Facere** and **-ficāre** form many compounds: as, **fervefacere**, *to make hot*; **significāre**, *to indicate*; **amplificāre**, *to enlarge*; **assuēfacere**, *to make accustomed, to accustom*. From the forms in **-ficāre** come many English derivatives in *-fy*: as, *liquefy*, *edify*, *certify*. See how many others you can discover.

c. Certain phrases not united into one word in Latin have been combined in English: as, **agrī cultūra** (*agriculture*), **aequō animō** (*equanimity*).

LESSON 88

THE UPRISING UNDER VERCINGETORIX*

In Book VII we have reached the most dramatic part of Caesar's narrative. He tells us here in the frankest language of the last — and all but successful — attempt of the Gauls under the leadership of Vercingetorix to drive him out of Gaul and throw off the Roman yoke. Caesar makes no effort to conceal the desperate straits to which he was himself reduced, and he describes his foe Vercingetorix in generous terms as a patriot giving his life for his country.

Vercingetorix is to this day venerated in France as her first great national hero. When we realize that this homage is paid to a man who lived nearly two thousand years ago and who was the leader of a lost cause, we may be sure that it was no ordinary man to whom this tribute is given. On the plain of Alesia stands a colossal statue, erected to his memory by the modern descendants of the Gauls whom he led with such chivalrous patriotism and such self-sacrificing devotion.

Vercingetorix lived at Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni, a tribe situated just north of the Roman Province. His father was one of the chief men of Gaul, but had been put to death because he attempted to make himself king. Vercingetorix was himself educated by the Druids. We can imagine the impatience with which he waited, during the six years that Caesar had been in Gaul, for his native city to take up arms against Rome and fight to retain its independence. At length his opportunity came, and we shall read Caesar's account of his heroic resistance to Rome.

* Book VII of the "Gallic War."

The task confronting Vercingetorix was well-nigh insuperable. All the discordant and quarreling nations of Gaul had to be united in a common cause. Diverse levies from these various states had to be armed, equipped, organized, and trained. An enormous supply department had to be organized and maintained, since food is the most important item in war. Campaigns had to be planned and battles directed. The tendency to easy discouragement characteristic of the Gauls had to be overcome, and the habit of persistent effort created. These and many other things he accomplished so successfully that he drove one of the greatest generals of the world, supported though he was by the best of Rome's veteran legions, to the point of retiring from the theater of war. You will find it of absorbing interest, as you read Caesar's account, to try to see what might have turned the almost evenly balanced scales in the other direction and have given Vercingetorix the final victory. It is interesting also to speculate on what would have been the history of western Europe if Caesar and the Romans had been driven from Gaul, and what would have been the effect upon Caesar's later career.

THE STATUE OF VERCINGETORIX, WHICH STANDS ON THE PLAIN OF ALESIA

One of the best stories about Caesar's Gallic campaigns

is "The Conquered," by Mitchison, written from the Gallic point of view, with a young Gaul as its hero. Vercingetorix is an important character in the last part. Pupils are advised to read it at this time.

Your understanding of the narrative will depend upon your possessing a clear picture of the geography involved. Study the map, page 292, thoroughly and locate the following tribes and cities repeatedly, until you have formed a mental picture of their location (names of cities are in parentheses): Arverni, (Gergovia), Carnutes, (Cenabum), Senones, (Agedincum), Bituriges, (Avaricum), Haedui, (Bibracte), Boii, Remi. Bellovaci, Mandubii, (Alesia).

LESSON 89

THE OUTBREAK OF THE REBELLION *

Conditions favoring a revolt of the Gauls

307. Quiētā Galliā, Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam[1] ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi dē senātūs cōnsultō[2] certior factus ut omnēs jūniōrēs[3] Italiae conjūrārent,[4] dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā[5] habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Putant Gallī (quod[6] rēs[7] poscere vidēbātur) retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī[8] jam ante[9] sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subjectōs dolēbant līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Inter sē prīncipēs Galliae silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis[10] morte; posse hunc cāsum[11] ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et Galliam in lībertātem vindicent.[12] In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam[13] dīcunt, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs[14] audeant, absente imperātōre, ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit; postrēmō, in aciē praestāre[15] interficī quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque quam ā majōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes begin the revolt

Hīs rēbus agitātīs, profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque[16] ex

* Bk. VII, chaps. 1–5.

GERGOVIA, THE CAPITAL OF THE ARVERNI

At his home at Gergovia, Vercingetorix heard the news that the Carnutes had raised the standard of revolt. Since his state would not immediately join the insurrection, he collected troops, made himself king, and at once took the leadership of the rebellion. (Photograph by G. R Swain, Near East Research of the University of Michigan)

omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur. Tum collaudātīs Carnutibus, datō jūre jūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius reī cōnstitūtō, ā conciliō discēditur.[17]

Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt, cīvēsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī[18] causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae jussū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque[19] eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae[20] major atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent

ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

Vercingetorix takes the lead in the revolt

Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns (cuius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae[21] obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā cīvitāte erat interfectus), convocātīs suīs clientibus, facile incendit.[22] Cognitō eius cōnsiliō, ad arma concurritur.[23] Prohibētur ā patruō suō reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dēlēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit[24] ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant; magnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs, adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ējectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōqueversus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi multās cīvitātēs adjungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte, omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī jubet; armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī, quodque ante tempus[25] efficiat, cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet.

Summae dīligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplicī dubitantēs[26] cōgit; nam, majōre commissō dēlictō, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

He invades the country of the Bituriges, who join his revolt when they fail to get the help of the Haeduans

Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū, Lucterium, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit;

VERCINGETORIX IS MADE KING OF THE ARVERNI

Vercingetorix had been expelled from Gergovia because of his efforts to stir up the people to revolt against Rome. Afterwards he returned with his followers and was made king

ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē[27]) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum,[28] quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint.

Haeduī dē cōnsiliō[29] lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī, domum revertuntur, lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiāvērunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint,[30] nōn vidētur prō certō[31] esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs jungunt.

308. Notes

1. **Italiam:** Cisalpine Gaul.

2. **Senātūs cōnsultō:** explained by the appositional clause **ut . . . conjūrārent.**

3. **Jūniōrēs:** *the younger soldiers*, men under forty-five.

4. **Conjūrārent:** *take the military oath.* Riots in Rome, the result of politics, were the cause of calling out these men.

5. **Tōtā prōvinciā:** only Cisalpine Gaul is meant.

6. **Quod:** the antecedent is **retinērī . . . posse.**

7. **Rēs:** *the condition of affairs* in Italy. The Gauls thought the disturbances in Rome (**urbānō mōtū**) would detain Caesar in Italy.

8. **Quī:** the antecedent, **eī**, is omitted.

9. **Ante:** adverb, modifying **dolēbant.**

10. **Accōnis:** leader of a revolt among the Senones the previous year, whom Caesar had put to death.

11. **Hunc cāsum:** the same fate as befell Acco.

12. **Quī . . . vindicent:** relative clauses of purpose referring to **eōs** understood; *persons to start the war and to gain liberty for Gaul.*

13. **Ratiōnem esse habendam:** *a plan must be formed.*

14. **Legiōnēs:** the legions had been scattered, six at Agedincum, two among the Lingones, and two near the Treveri.

15. **Praestāre:** *it is better*; the subject is **interficī.**

16. **Prīncipēs** = **prīmōs**, *the first.*

17. **Ā conciliō discēditur:** *the council broke up.*

18. **Negōtiandī:** their business was buying grain and slaves, farming the revenues, lending money, etc.

19. **Bona:** *property.*

20. **Quae:** *any.*

21. **Galliae:** Celtic Gaul.

22. **Incendit:** supply **eōs.**

23. **Concurritur:** *there is a rush.*

24. **Adit:** *he can approach.*

25. **Quodque ante tempus:** *and before what time.*

26. **Dubitantēs:** *the hesitating*; participle used as a noun.

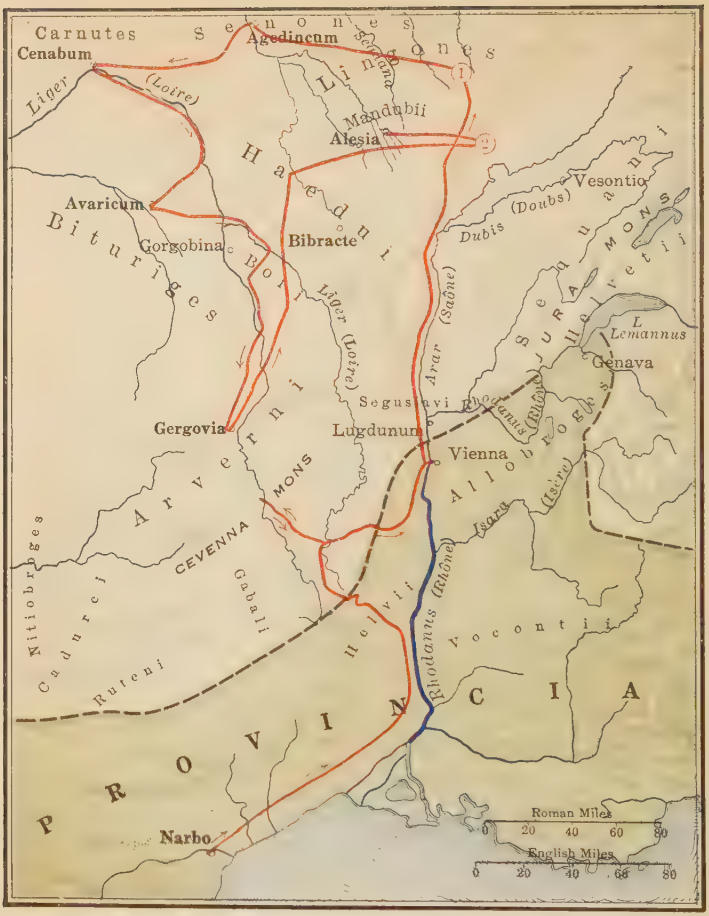
27. **Fidē:** *protection.*

28. **Rogātum:** *to ask*; a supine expressing purpose.

29. **Dē cōnsiliō:** *on the advice.*

30. **Eāne . . . fēcerint:** *whether they did this for the reason* etc.; **-ne** = **utrum** in this double indirect question.

31. **Prō certō:** *for certain.*



CAMPAIGN OF 52 B.C.

Caesar, informed of the revolt, hastened from Cisalpine Gaul to Narbo, the capital of the Province. He crossed the Cevenna Range as if to invade the territory of the Arverni, hoping to draw Vercingetorix from the north to defend it. Succeeding in this, he left his troops, rode rapidly to Vienna, and up the Rhone to the Lingones, where two legions were quartered ①. Joining the other legions at Agedincum, he destroyed Cenabum and Avaricum, but was defeated at Gergovia. Vercingetorix attacked his retreating army at ②, but was driven into Alesia

LESSON 90

CAESAR REJOINS HIS LEGIONS *

Upon arriving in the Province, Caesar found that Vercingetorix, who had reached the territory of the Bituriges, was in a position to cut him off from his legions in the north of Gaul, and possibly to capture him if he should attempt to rejoin them. For Caesar's successful stratagem, study the map opposite. Vercingetorix returns to defend his home country, and Caesar slips through.

309. Hīs rēbus in Italiam [1] Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum jam ille urbānās rēs commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte afficiēbātur, quā ratiōne [2] ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in Prōvinciam arcesseret,[3] sē absente [4] in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās [5] intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem [6] rēctē committī vidēbat.

Caesar checks the plan of Lucterius to attack Narbo

Interim Lucterius in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit et, magnā coāctā manū, in Prōvinciam Narbōnem versus [7] irruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur.[8] Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs [9] cōnfirmat, praesidia in cīvitātibus fīnitimīs circumque Narbōnem cōnstituit. Partem cōpiārum ex Prōvinciā supplēmentumque quod ex Italiā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre jubet.

* Bk. VII, chaps. 6–10.

Caesar crosses the Cévennes mountains through the snow and attacks the country of Vercingetorix

Etsī mōns Cevenna,[10] quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī[11] altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā[12] nive in altitūdinem pedum VI atque ita viīs patefactīs, summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō[13] mūnītōs exīstimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī[14] eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant.

Celeriter haec fāma[15] ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem[16] perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur; praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum.[17] Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.[18]

At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, per causam[19] supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum[20] adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit.[21] Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam[22] pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem[23] equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant; ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur cōnsilī,[24] celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs[25] mittit,[26] priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset.[27] Hāc rē cognitā, Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat,[28] oppugnāre īnstituit.

Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem [29] ad cōnsilium capiendum afferēbat. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī quam, tantā contumēliā [30] acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs [31] aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtius exercitūs relictīs, ad Bōiōs proficīscitur.

310. Notes

1. **In Italiam:** *in Italy*; why not ablative?

2. **Quā ratiōne:** *as to how* etc.; indirect question depending on difficultāte.

3. **Arcesseret:** why imperfect subjunctive and not future indicative?

4. **Sē absente:** ablative absolute. Caesar felt that his men would not fight so well in his absence as they did when he was present.

5. **Dīmicātūrās (esse):** supply eās as the subject.

6. **Salūtem:** he realized how quick the treacherous Gauls would be to capture him, were the opportunity given them.

7. **Narbōnem versus:** *in the direction of Narbo.*

8. **Omnibus . . . proficīscerētur:** *thought that his departure for Narbo ought to be given precedence over* (lit. *be placed before*) *all his other plans.*

9. **Timentēs:** *the timid.*

10. **Mōns Cevenna:** Caesar had gathered what troops were available in the Province and marched north into the land of the Helvii, who lived south of the Cévennes.

11. **Dūrissimō tempore annī:** about the middle of January.

12. **Discussā:** *cleared away.*

13. **Ut mūrō:** *as by a wall.*

14. **Nē . . . hominī:** *not even to a single traveler.*

15. **Haec fāma:** *the report of this movement* of the cavalry.

16. **Vercingetorīgem:** he was still in the territory of the Bituriges.

17. **Ad sē trānslātum (esse):** *had been turned against them.* Suīs and sē refer to the main subject, Arvernī.

18. **In Arvernōs versus:** *in the direction of the Arverni*, that is, southward, just as Caesar had wished.

19. **Per causam:** *on the pretext of.* His object was to keep everyone in the dark as to his real plan of getting to his legions as soon as possible.

20. **Brūtum:** Decimus Brutus, who afterwards helped to assassinate Caesar.

21. **Datūrum . . . absit:** he had no intention of being back in three days, but he did not let even his own officers know his real plans.

22. **Viennam:** trace Caesar's course on a map.

23. **Recentem:** fresh and ready for a forced march.

24. **Sī . . . cōnsilī:** *in case even the Haeduans were making any plans affecting his safety.*

25. **Reliquās legiōnēs:** at Agedincum.

26. **Mittit:** *sent word.*

27. **Prius . . . quam . . . posset:** *before the news could reach the Arverni.*

28. **Ibi collocāverat:** see section 210.

29. **Difficultātem:** if he left the legions in winter quarters the rest of the winter, Vercingetorix would capture Gorgobina, and the Gauls would see that Caesar could not protect his allies. But if he led the legions into the field at once, they would probably suffer greatly from a want of supplies. He chose to act rather than to wait for spring.

30. **Contumēliā:** the capture of Gorgobina and the consequent disgrace.

31. **Voluntātēs:** *the good will.*

LESSON 91

THE DEFEAT OF CAESAR AT GERGOVIA*

After having captured Avaricum, Caesar marched south against Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni and home of Vercingetorix. The town proved impregnable, and Caesar experienced here one of his few defeats. The following passage describes the concluding events of the unsuccessful siege, and particularly the heroic self-sacrifice of Petronius. The success of Vercingetorix at Gergovia inspired the remaining Gauls to join him. Locate Gergovia.

311. Cum ācerrimē comminus pugnārētur,[1] hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Haeduī [2] vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō,[3] quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā [4] mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum [5] vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt; ac, tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod īnsigne pācātōrum [6] esse cōnsuēverat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque [7] ūnā mūrum ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petrōnius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns, multīs jam vulneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs quī illum secūtī erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mē ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae prōspiciam, quōs [8] cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs, datā facultāte,[9] vōbīs cōnsulite." Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suīs, "Frūstrā," inquit, "meae vītae

* Bk. VII, chaps. 50–53.

subvenīre cōnāminī, quem jam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte dum est facultās vōsque ad legiōnem recipite." Ita pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suīs salūtī fuit.[10]

Nostrī cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmissīs, dējectī sunt locō[11]; sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentēs legiō X tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre[12]

THE SELF-SACRIFICE OF PETRONIUS

"It is no use for you to try to save me. Retreat to the legion."

locō cōnstiterat. Hanc rūrsus XIII legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi prīmum plānitiem attigērunt, īnfestīs contrā hostem signīs cōnstitērunt.[13] Vercingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsīderātī.[14]

Caesar lectures his soldiers and abandons his siege of Gergovia

Posterō diē Caesar, cōntiōne advocātā, temeritātem cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī jūdicāvissent[15] quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur,[16] neque, signō recipiendī[17] datō, cōnstitissent neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī potuissent. Dīxit nōn minus sē ā mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī magnitūdinem dēsīderāre.

Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmam ōrātiōnem[18] cōnfirmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam[19] animō permovērentur, neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset,[20] id virtūtī hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne[21] cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō, atque eō secundō,[22] in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hoc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōnfirmandōs factum exīstimāns, in Haeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īnsecūtīs hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontēs refēcit atque exercitum trādūxit.

312. Notes

1. **Cum . . . pugnārētur:** *while a very sharp conflict at close range was going on.*

2. **Haeduī:** they had been ordered to attack the town from the east.

3. **Ab latere nostrīs apertō:** *on our exposed* (right) *flank.*

4. **Manūs distinendae causā:** *to separate the forces of the enemy.*

5. **Similitūdine armōrum:** as Gauls, they were armed in the Gallic manner, and so were not easily distinguished from the men of Vercingetorix's army.

6. **Īnsigne pācātōrum:** *a sign of friends.*

7. **Quīque:** *and those who.*

8. **Vestrae . . . vītae prōspiciam, quōs:** *I shall look out for your lives at least, you whom* etc.

9. **Datā facultāte:** *while the chance is given.*

10. **Suīs salūtī fuit:** *he saved his men.* What literally?

11. **Dējectī sunt locō:** *were forced down from their position* in the enemy's camp.

12. **Aequiōre:** *more level.*

13. **Cōnstitērunt:** on level ground the legions formed and repelled the advancing Gauls. Caesar's withdrawal from the camp had turned out to be a forced, rather than a voluntary, retreat.

14. **Dēsīderātī:** *missing.*

15. **Jūdicāvissent:** subjunctive because of the implied indirect statement after **reprehendit**; so also **cōnstitissent** and **potuissent**. Caesar had seen the hopelessness of taking the town by storm and had ordered a retreat; but his men, elated by their preliminary success, had not obeyed orders.

16. **Quō prōcēdendum (esse) vidērētur:** *whither it seemed best to proceed.*

17. **Recipiendī:** *for retreating.*

18. **Ad extrēmam ōrātiōnem:** *at the close of his speech.*

19. **Causam:** the realization that their headstrong act had caused a somewhat disastrous retreat.

20. **Quod . . . attulisset:** translate this clause after the antecedent **id.**

21. **Eadem dē profectiōne:** he was determined that the Gauls should not look upon his withdrawal from Gergovia as a flight from them; so he was prepared to fight a battle, if necessary.

22. **Atque eō (proeliō) secundō:** *and that a favorable one.*

LESSON 92

THE REVOLT SPREADS *

Almost all the Gallic states, including even the Haeduans, join the revolt. Vercingetorix is named commander in chief of the united forces.

313. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum[1] cognitā, bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur[2]; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent,[3] ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur. Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs[4] dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet.[5] Rē impetrātā, contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs[6] permittitur; ad ūnum[7] omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī,[8] quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quā rē[9] tōtō abessent bellō[10] et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt[11] sē dējectōs prīncipātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt[12]; neque tamen, susceptō bellō, suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent.

Ille[13] imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs diemque eī reī[14] cōnstituit. Omnēs equitēs, quīndecim mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre jubet. Peditātū quem anteā habuerit sē fore contentum[15] dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dī-

* Bk. VII, chaps. 63–65.

micātūrum; sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre. Hortātur ut aequō animō[16] sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant. Quā reī familiāris jactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque eōs cōnsecūtūrōs esse dīcit. Hīs

THE COUNCIL OF THE GAULS ELECTS VERCINGETORIX COMMANDER IN CHIEF

For the first and only time almost all the states of Gaul were united. This was the supreme moment in the life of Vercingetorix

rēbus cōnstitūtīs, Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī Prōvinciae, decem mīlia peditum imperat; hūc[17] addit equitēs octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferre Allobrogibus jubet. Clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō[18] resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur.

Caesar takes account of his resources and sends for German cavalry

Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta Prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Allobrogēs,

VERCINGETORIX WATCHING THE BURNING OF THE GALLIC TOWNS

Vercingetorix persuaded the Gauls to burn their houses and towns in order that Caesar might be unable to secure supplies for his troops and be forced to withdraw to the Province. This desperate measure nearly succeeded. Had it succeeded, the history of western Europe might have been very different

crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs, magnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et, interclūsīs omnibus itineribus, nūllā rē[19] ex Prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis

2

armātūrae peditēs quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuēverant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs[20] ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs[21] equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

314. Notes

1. **Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum:** as soon as Caesar gave up his position before Gergovia, the Haeduans revolted and plundered Noviodunum, one of their towns. In this way they got into their possession the supplies Caesar had collected in Noviodunum and also the Gallic hostages he had under guard there.

2. **Circummittuntur:** that is, by the Gauls.

3. **Quantum valent:** *as far as they are able.*

4. **Apud eōs:** at Noviodunum.

5. **Commūnicet:** supply **sēcum**. The Haeduans felt that their prominence among the Gallic tribes entitled them at least to a share in the leadership of the rebellion. The other tribes felt that Vercingetorix should alone lead.

6. **Rēs:** *the question* of leadership.

7. **Ad ūnum:** *to a man.*

8. **Illī:** *the former*, that is, the Remi and the Lingones.

9. **Causa quā rē:** *the reason why.*

10. **Tōtō bellō:** *throughout the war.*

11. **Magnō dolōre ferunt:** *are very much displeased.*

12. **Requīrunt:** *wish they had back.*

13. **Ille:** Vercingetorix.

14. **Eī reī:** that is, delivering the hostages.

15. **Peditātū contentum:** *satisfied with the infantry*; the adjective **contentus**, like **dignus**, governs the ablative case.

16. **Aequō animō:** *contentedly, without worry.*

17. **Hūc = ad eōs.**

18. **Superiōre bellō:** Vercingetorix hoped that the Allobroges, who had been punished for their uprising against the Romans in 61 B.C., were not yet wholly well-disposed toward their conquerors. The Helvetians had a similar hope at one time.

19. **Nūllā rē:** *in no way.*

20. **Minus idōneīs equīs:** because they were smaller.

21. **Ēvocātīs:** these were veterans, who continued to serve after the completion of their term of service.

LESSON 93

VERCINGETORIX ATTACKS CAESAR AND IS DEFEATED*

Caesar starts to march south toward the Province, and this retreat encourages Vercingetorix to attack him.

315. Intereā hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae [1] erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium Prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit; convocātīsque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum, vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: "Fugiunt in Prōvinciam Rōmānī Galliāque [2] excēdunt. Id [3] nōbīs ad praesentem [4] obtinendam lībertātem satis est. Ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficiētur [5]; majōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs, revertentur neque fīnem bellandī facient. Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriāmur. Sī [6] peditēs suīs auxilium ferent atque in eō morābuntur, iter facere nōn poterunt; sī (id quod magis futūrum esse cōnfīdō), relictīs impedīmentīs, suae salūtī cōnsulent, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliābuntur. Nam equitēs hostium extrā agmen prōgredī nōn audēbunt. Id quō majōre faciātis animō,[7] cōpiās omnēs nostrās prō castrīs habēbō et terrōrī hostibus erō." Conclāmant equitēs: "Sānctissimō jūre jūrandō cōnfirmārī oportet nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē aḍ uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitāverit." [8]

Probātā rē atque omnibus ad jūs jūrandum [9] adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū, duae sē aciēs

* Bk. VII, chaps. 66–68.

ab[10] duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripartītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre jubet. Pugnātur ūnā[11] omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit[12] agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa īnferrī Caesar aciemque cōnvertī jubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilī cōnfirmābat. Tandem Germānī[13] ab dextrō latere summum jugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt: fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā, reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs.

Vercingetorix is cooped up in Alesia and besieged by Caesar

Fugātō omnī equitātū, Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī jussit. Caesar, impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum[14] diēī tempus est passum,[15] circiter III mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū[16] (quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant) erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

316. Notes

1. **Tōtī Galliae**: *from the whole of Gaul*; why dative?
2. **Galliā**: the central part of Gaul.
3. **Id**: *this retreat* to the Province.
4. **Praesentem**: *for the present*; in contrast to **reliquī temporis**, *for the future.*

5. **Parum prōficiētur**: *too little will be gained* if the Romans get to the Province in safety.

6. **Sī** etc.: Vercingetorix hoped to hinder the Romans on the march or to cut them off from their baggage train.

7. **Majōre animō**: *with more courage.*

8. **Quī . . . perequitāverit**: *the man who has not* etc.; subject of **recipiātur** and **habeat.**

9. **Jūs jūrandum**: that given at the end of the preceding paragraph.

10. **Ab**: *on* (so also **ā**).

11. **Ūnā**: *at one and the same time.*

12. **Cōnsistit**: *stood* (lit. *stands*) *firm.*

13. **Germānī**: Caesar had hired a number of German cavalry (Lesson 92) just before he began his retreat toward the Province.

14. **Quantum**: *so far as.*

15. **Est passum**: *allowed.*

16. **Equitātū**: as Caesar could not now call on the Gauls for cavalry, he was weak in this arm of the service, with the exception of the German auxiliary cavalry mentioned above. He had ten legions, consisting of not more than 40,000 men. Vercingetorix at this time had twice as many infantry and 15,000 cavalry. Later in the siege he had the help of a quarter of a million other Gauls.

THE PLAIN OF ALESIA

The statue of Vercingetorix stands on the hilltop at the left, and can be dimly seen in this picture. (Photograph by G. R. Swain, Near East Research of the University of Michigan)

LESSON 94

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA*

317. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō[1] admodum ēditō locō,[2] ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interjectō spatiō,[3] parī altitūdinis fastīgiō[4] oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum[5] cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem VI pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur

*Bk. VII, chaps. 69–71.

circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat.[6] Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

Opere[7] īnstitūtō, fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs[9] submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs[10] cōnstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō[11] legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam conjectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs[12] coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs[13] sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī, relictīs equīs, fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō[14] cōnstituerat prōmovērī jubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē[15] cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx jubet portās[16] claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix appeals to the Gauls to come to his rescue

Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur,[17] cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum[18] noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque[19] quī per aetātem arma ferre possint[20] ad bellum cōgant. Sua[21] in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum[22] in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint,[23] mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā,[24] frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA *

etiam longius tolerāre posse[25] parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referrī jubet; capitis poenam[26] eīs quī nōn pāruerint[27] cōnstituit; pecus,[28] cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre[29] et bellum administrāre parat.

318. Notes

1. **In colle summō:** *on the summit of a hill.*

2. **Admodum ēditō locō:** *in a rather elevated position.* The hill on which Alesia was situated was about five hundred feet above the two little streams that ran on each side of it. The slopes of the hill, which was about six miles in circumference, were precipitous for the most part. The top was flat, and extended a mile and a quarter in length and half a mile in width.

3. **Spatiō:** these hills were about a mile from the hill on which was Alesia.

4. **Fastīgiō:** the surrounding hills were of the same height as the hill on which Alesia was situated.

5. **Sub mūrō hunc omnem locum:** *all that part which was at the foot of the wall* on the east side of the town.

6. **Tenēbat:** *extended.* The whole distance was not fortified; but the line of forts and redoubts extended for eleven miles. Remains of many of the fortifications made by Caesar have been unearthed.

7. **Opere:** the building of the forts and redoubts.

8. **Intermissam collibus:** *unbroken by hills.*

9. **Germānōs:** the German cavalry.

10. **Prō castrīs:** those near the plain.

11. **Praesidiō:** *support.*

---

* On the hill in the center (*A*) is Alesia. There are also Gallic encampments (*B*) below the hill. In the middle ground is the plain (*C*), where much of the fighting took place. Cavalry may be seen fighting on the higher ground near the town. A stream flows across the plain, and another appears from behind the town. Caesar has two lines of fortifications. The inner line is to protect the army from sorties from the town. The outer is to protect his men from the Gallic army of relief. In the right background (*D*) this army's approach may be dimly seen.

12. **Angustiōribus . . . relictīs:** *since the gates had been left too narrow* when made.

13. **Mūnītiōnēs:** those of the enemy.

14. **Prō vāllō = prō castrīs.**

15. **Venīrī ad sē:** *that the enemy were coming to them* (§ 207). The Gallic infantry inside the fortifications were as frightened as the cavalry which had fled thither.

16. **Portās:** the gates of the town. Vercingetorix was afraid that his men in their fear would all rush inside the town and leave the camp undefended.

17. **Perficiantur:** *are finished.* When the Roman lines were finished, he would be shut in between the lines and the town.

18. **Equitātum:** the cavalry would be of no use to him once he was shut inside the Roman lines.

19. **Omnēs:** object of **cōgant.**

20. **Possint:** translate as if indicative.

21. **Sua, suae, sē:** all refer to Vercingetorix.

22. **Sē optimē meritum:** *him, the person who had done most for* etc.

23. **Sī fuerint:** *if they should be*; **fuerint** is perfect subjunctive for a future perfect indicative of the direct discourse.

24. **Ratiōne initā:** *according to his calculation.* What literally?

25. **Tolerāre posse:** *he could hold out.*

26. **Capitis poenam:** *the death penalty.*

27. **Quī nōn pāruerint:** *who did not obey.*

28. **Pecus:** the cattle had to be eaten first, because there was no fodder in the town for them.

29. **Auxilia Galliae exspectāre:** while Vercingetorix was waiting for the rest of the Gauls to come to his aid, Caesar constructed elaborate works; one part of these works was in front of his camp toward the town, and the other in his rear toward the enemy who was approaching from outside. Thus the Roman army was between the two lines of defense.

LESSON 95

THE ARMY OF RESCUE FAILS AND VERCINGETORIX SURRENDERS*

The Gallic forces assemble to raise the siege and rescue Vercingetorix

319. Dum haec [1] apud Alesiam geruntur, Gallī, conciliō prīncipum indictō, nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum; nē, tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā, nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī rationem habēre [2] possent.

Tanta ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae [3] et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae ut omnēs et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctīs equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec [4] in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur praefectīque constituēbantur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam [5] quī aspectum modo [6] tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur,[7] praesertim ancipitī proeliō,[8] cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs [9] tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

The Gauls who are besieged in Alesia are in despair

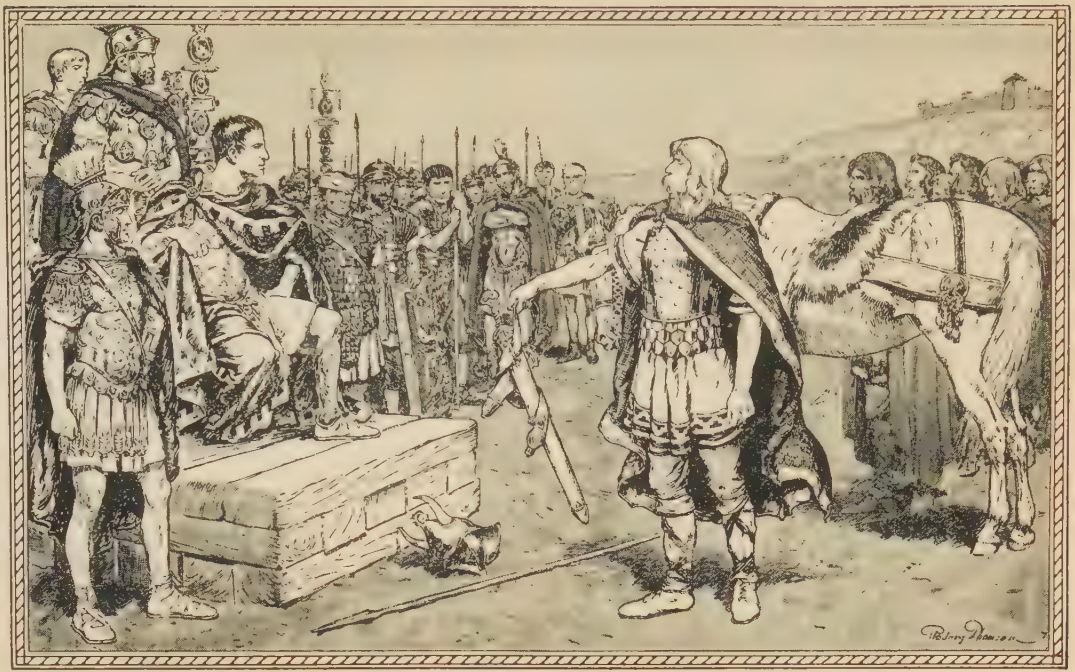
At eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnscīi quid in Haeduīs [10] gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat,[11] nōn praetere-

* Bk. VII, chaps. 75–77, 79, 89.

unda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur [12] propter eius singulārem ac nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis, "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō [13] neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est [14] quī ēruptiōnem probant. Animī est ista [15] mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant [16] facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant.[17] Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās [18] potest [19]), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae jactūram fierī vidērem [20]; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid, hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque [21] nostrīs animī [22] fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte [23] hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt [24]; nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā, aut animī imbēcillitāte, omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem [25] nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā [26] cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs [27] cōnfirmārī nōn potestis, omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs [28] ūtiminī [29] testibus [30] appropinquāre [31] eōrum adventum; cuius reī [32] timōre perterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

"Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? [33] Facere quod nostrī majōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus,[34] tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum jūdicārem.[35] Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? [36] Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī, magnāque illātā calami-



THE SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX

tāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt[37]; jūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam injungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam,[38] quae in prōvinciam redācta, jūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, sēcūribus[39] subjecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!"

The army of rescue arrives

Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et, colle exteriōre[40] occupātō, nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt.

There followed three battles, in all of which the Gauls were defeated; for, though their numbers were overwhelming, their leadership was very poor.

In the first battle, which took place the day after the relieving force arrived, the Gallic cavalry engaged the Roman cavalry in the plain near Alesia, while the troops of Vercingetorix came out of the town and attacked Caesar's inner line of defenses. Caesar's German cavalry again saved the day and drove the Gauls back to their camp. Vercingetorix and his men, who did little more than look on from their elevated place at the cavalry fight in the plain, returned to the town.

The second battle was a night attack by both forces of the Gauls against a part of the Roman works west of the town. But the Romans were not caught napping, and the Gauls found it impossible to cross the elaborate defenses Caesar had made. Again Vercingetorix and his besieged men were forced to return crestfallen into Alesia.

In the third battle 60,000 picked Gauls from outside attacked the weakest point in Caesar's outer lines, and the troops from the town attacked at several places in the inner lines. With his usual

THE MAMERTINE PRISON AT ROME

Vercingetorix was taken to Rome as a prisoner and confined in this dungeon for six years. He was then exhibited in Caesar's triumph, after which he was put to death

generalship, Caesar sent reënforcements to the points attacked, and the rest of the Gallic host did nothing to aid their men. The result was that most of the 60,000 were killed, and the other Gauls fled at once toward their homes. Vercingetorix was still cooped up in Alesia.

The submission of Vercingetorix

Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum,[41] ad utramque rem[42] sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Jubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur[43]; arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs

atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset,[44] ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula[45] praedae nōmine[46] distribuit.

320. Notes

1. **Haec**: the building of Caesar's lines of circumvallation.
2. **Ratiōnem habēre**: *have any means.*
3. **Cōnsēnsiō lībertātis vindicandae**: *agreement in demanding liberty.*
4. **Haec**: *these forces*; neuter because referring to **mīlia.**
5. **Neque erat quisquam**: *and there was no one* (lit. *nor was there anyone*).
6. **Aspectum modo**: *even the appearance.*
7. **Arbitrārētur**: translate as if past indicative.
8. **Ancipitī proeliō**: the Romans would have to fight with the troops of Vercingetorix on one side, and with this new force of Gauls on the other.
9. **Forīs**: *on the outer side.*
10. **In Haeduīs**: the great force of Gauls had gathered in the territory of the Haeduans.
11. **Cēnsēbat**: *favored.*
12. **Nōn praetereunda vidētur**: *should not, as it seems, be passed over.*
13. **Cīvium locō**: *as citizens.*
14. **Cum . . . est**: *my speech is concerned with those.*
15. **Ista**: explained by **paulisper . . . posse**, *that feeling of yours* (he is, as it were, replying to those who have advised a sortie), *that you cannot stand want a little while.*
16. **Quī offerant**: *men who will offer.*
17. **Quī ferant**: *men who will bear.*
18. **Dignitās**: the authority of those proposing a sortie.
19. **Tantum potest**: *has so much influence.*
20. **Probārem, sī vidērem**: *I should approve, if I saw.*
21. **Propinquīs, cōnsanguineīs**: datives of possession.
22. **Quid animī**: *what courage.*
23. **Nōlīte**: governs **exspoliāre, prōsternere,** and **subicere.**
24. **Quī . . . neglēxērunt**: the force of Gauls that they hoped would come to their aid.
25. **Ad diem**: *promptly*, or *at the expected time.*
26. **Animī causā**: *for the pleasure of it*; **-ne**, of course, introduces the question.

27. **Illōrum nūntiīs:** *by news from them,* that is, from the Gauls who were on the way to Alesia.

28. **Hīs:** *these Romans,* whom the Gauls could see busy at work on their outer defenses.

29. **Ūtiminī:** imperative.

30. **Testibus:** *as evidence*; in apposition with **hīs.**

31. **Appropinquāre:** explains **testibus,** *as evidence that their approach is near.*

32. **Cuius reī:** the arrival of the Gauls.

33. **Quid . . . est:** *what, then, is my advice?* (lit. *what is of my advice?*)

34. **Sī nōn habērēmus:** *if we did not have.*

35. **Īnstituī . . . jūdicārem:** *I should consider it most glorious for this precedent to be established and to be handed down to our descendants.*

36. **Quid . . . fuit:** *what similarity had that war to this?* **Illī bellō** is dative of possessor.

37. **Aliās terrās petiērunt:** the Cimbri went on to Spain.

38. **Fīnitimam Galliam:** the Province.

39. **Secūribus:** *authority* (lit. *axes*). The *fasces,* consisting of a bundle of rods gathered around an ax, were symbolic of the authority of a Roman official.

40. **Exteriōre:** one of the hills surrounding the town.

41. **Sit cēdendum:** *they must yield.* Why subjunctive?

42. **Ad utramque rem:** *for either purpose*; explained by **seu . . . velint.** The character of Vercingetorix is proved by his conduct in defeat.

43. **Vercingetorīx dēditur:** according to Plutarch, Vercingetorix rode out from Alesia to the place where Caesar was sitting to receive the prisoners. There he dismounted from his horse, took off his armor, and seated himself at Caesar's feet. He was taken to Rome, where he was kept six years in prison; then, after being led through the streets in Caesar's triumph, he was beheaded.

44. **Sī posset:** *to see whether*; Caesar wished to break up the rebellion by securing the submission of the powerful Haeduans and Arverni.

45. **Capita singula:** *a man apiece.*

46. **Praedae nōmine:** *as booty.*

APPENDIX

SUMMARY OF INFLECTIONS

Those inflections which are new in the second year are printed in large type.

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom.	porta	portae
Gen.	portae	portārum
Dat.	portae	portīs
Acc.	portam	portās
Abl.	portā	portīs

Gender. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, with the exception of words denoting males.

Vocative. The vocative is the same as the nominative.

Locative. The locative ends in the singular in **-ae**, and in the plural in **-īs**: as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **Athēnīs**, *at Athens*.

SECOND DECLENSION

	Singular				
Nom.	servus	ager	puer	vir	bellum
Gen.	servī	agrī	puerī	virī	bellī
Dat.	servō	agrō	puerō	virō	bellō
Acc.	servum	agrum	puerum	virum	bellum
Abl.	servō	agrō	puerō	virō	bellō

	Plural				
Nom.	servī	agrī	puerī	virī	bella
Gen.	servōrum	agrōrum	puerōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
Dat.	servīs	agrīs	puerīs	virīs	bellīs
Acc.	servōs	agrōs	puerōs	virōs	bella
Abl.	servīs	agrīs	puerīs	virīs	bellīs

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom. fīlius	fīliī	proelium	proelia
Gen. fīlī	fīliōrum	proelī	proeliōrum
Dat. fīliō	fīliīs	proeliō	proeliīs
Acc. fīlium	fīliōs	proelium	proelia
Abl. fīliō	fīliīs	proeliō	proeliīs

Gender. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us**, **-er**, or **-ir** are masculine; those in **-um** are neuter.

Vocative. The vocative is the same as the nominative; but nouns in **-us** have their vocative singular ending in **-e**: as, **amīce**, *O friend*; and those in **-ius** have their vocative singular ending in **-ī**: as, **fīlī**, *O son*.

Locative. The locative ends in the singular in **-ī**, and in the plural in **-īs**: as, **Avaricī**, *at Avaricum*; **humī**, *on the ground*.

THIRD DECLENSION

Singular

Nom.	mīles	cōnsul	caput	cīvitās
Gen.	mīlitis	cōnsulis	capitis	cīvitātis
Dat.	mīlitī	cōnsulī	capitī	cīvitātī
Acc.	mīlitem	cōnsulem	caput	cīvitātem
Abl.	mīlite	cōnsule	capite	cīvitāte

Plural

Nom.	mīlitēs	cōnsulēs	capita	cīvitātēs
Gen.	mīlitum	cōnsulum	capitum	cīvitātum
Dat.	mīlitibus	cōnsulibus	capitibus	cīvitātibus
Acc.	mīlitēs	cōnsulēs	capita	cīvitātēs
Abl.	mīlitibus	cōnsulibus	capitibus	cīvitātibus

I-STEMS

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom. cīvis	cīvēs	īnsigne	īnsignia
Gen. cīvis	cīvium	īnsignis	īnsignium
Dat. cīvī	cīvibus	īnsignī	īnsignibus
Acc. cīvem	cīvēs (-īs)	īnsigne	īnsignia
Abl. cīve	cīvibus	īnsignī	īnsignibus

Gender. No satisfactory rule can be given for the third declension; the gender of each noun must be memorized.

Vocative. The vocative is the same as the nominative.

Locative. The ending of the locative in the singular is **-ī**, and in the plural **-ibus**: as, **Carthāginī**, *at Carthage*; **rūrī**, *in the country*.

***I*-Stems.** The following are **i**-stems:

Nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs** and not increasing in the genitive: as, **cīvis**.

Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant: as, **mōns, urbs**.

Nouns ending in **-ns** or **-rs**: as, **cohors**.

Neuters ending in **-e, -al**, or **-ar**: as, **mare**.

FOURTH DECLENSION

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	manus	manūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	manūs	manuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	manuī	manibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	manum	manūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	manū	manibus	cornū	cornibus

Gender. Nouns of the fourth declension ending in **-us** are masculine, except **manus** and **domus**; those ending in **-ū** are neuter.

FIFTH DECLENSION

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

Gender. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except **diēs**, which is usually masculine in the singular and always in the plural.

IRREGULAR NOUNS

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	vīs	vīrēs	domus	domūs
Gen.	——	vīrium	domūs (-ī)	domuum (-ōrum)
Dat.	——	vīribus	domuī (-ō)	domibus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs (-īs)	domum	domōs (-ūs)
Abl.	vī	vīribus	domō (-ū)	domibus

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Singular

Nom.	bonus, *m.*	bona, *f.*	bonum, *n.*
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

ADJECTIVES IN -er THAT RETAIN THE -e

Singular

Nom.	miser, *m.*	misera, *f.*	miserum, *n.*
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō

Plural

Nom.	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserōs	miserās	misera
Abl.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

ADJECTIVES IN -er THAT DROP THE -e

Singular

Nom.	noster,* *m.*	nostra, *f.*	nostrum, *n.*
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
Acc.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

* Noster is declined in the plural like miser, except that e before r is dropped.

THIRD DECLENSION

TWO TERMINATIONS

	Singular		*Plural*	
Nom.	omnis, *m., f.*	omne, *n.*	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnēs (-īs)	omnia
Abl.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

THREE TERMINATIONS

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	ācer, *m.*	ācris, *f.*	ācre, *n.*	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

ONE TERMINATION

	Singular		*Plural*	
Nom.	audāx, *m., f.*	audāx, *n.*	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācēs (-īs)	audācia
Abl.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Singular		*Plural*	
vocāns, *m., f.*	vocāns, *n.*	vocantēs	vocantia
vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantium
vocantī	vocantī	vocantibus	vocantibus
vocantem	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantia
vocante (-ī)	vocante (-ī)	vocantibus	vocantibus

When a participle is used as an adjective, the ablative ending is **-ī**.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Singular

Nom.	ūnus, *m.*	ūna, *f.*	ūnum, *n.*
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

The following adjectives are declined in the singular like **ūnus,** and in the plural like **bonus**:

alius, alia, aliud, *other, another*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other*
ūllus, -a, -um, *any*
nūllus, -a, -um, *not any, no*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone*
tōtus, -a, -um, *all, the whole*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one*
uter, -tra, -trum, *which?* (of two)
uterque, -traque, -trumque, *each, both*

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

	Plural			*Plural*
Nom.	duo, *m.*	duae, *f.*	duo, *n.*	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs	duās	duo	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlibus

Plural

Nom.	trēs, *m., f.*	tria, *n.*
Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	trēs (-īs)	tria
Abl.	tribus	tribus

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVE OF ADJECTIVES

	Singular		*Plural*	
Nom.	lātior, *m., f.*	lātius, *n.*	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Gen.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
Dat.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Acc.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Abl.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

	Singular		*Plural*	
Nom.	——	plūs, *n.*	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Singular

Nom.	ego, *I*	tū, *you*	is, *he*	ea, *she*	id, *it*
Gen.	(meī)	(tuī)	eius	eius	eius
Dat.	mihi	tibi	eī	eī	eī
Acc.	mē	tē	eum	eam	id
Abl.	mē	tē	eō	eā	eō

Plural

Nom.	nōs	vōs	eī (iī)	eae	ea
Gen.	nostrum	vestrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Acc.	nōs	vōs	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Singular

Nom.	——	——	——
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī
Dat.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	mē	tē	sē (sēsē)

Plural

Nom.	——	——	——
Gen.	nostrum	vestrum	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

hic, *this*

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	hic, *m.*	haec, *f.*	hoc, *n.*	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, *that*

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	ille, *m.*	illa, *f.*	illud, *n.*	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

is, *this, that*

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	is, *m.*	ea, *f.*	id, *n.*	eī (iī)	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

īdem, *the same*

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	īdem, *m.*	eadem, *f.*	idem, *n.*	eīdem (īdem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	ipse, *m.*	ipsa, *f.*	ipsum, *n.*	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

quis, *who? what?*

	Singular		*Plural*		
Nom.	quis, *m., f.*	quid, *n.*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

quī, *what? which?*

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	quī, *m.*	quae, *f.*	quod, *n.*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	Singular			*Plural*		
Nom.	qui, *m.*	quae, *f.*	quod, *n.*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

quis (**quī**, adj.), *anyone, any*

Indefinite **quis** is declined like interrogative **quis.**

aliquis, *someone, some*

Singular		*Plural*		
aliquis, *m., f.*	aliquid, *n.*	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

When used as an adjective, the form in the singular is **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** etc.

quīdam, *a certain one, a certain*

Singular

quīdam, *m.*	quaedam, *f.*	quiddam (quoddam), *n.*
cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

The forms in parentheses are used as adjectives.

quisque, *each*

Pronoun		*Adjective*		
quisque, *m.*, *f.*	quidque, *n.*	quisque	quaeque	quodque
cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

quisquam, *anyone* (*at all*)

Singular

quisquam, *m.*, *f.*	quicquam (quidquam), *n.*
cuiusquam	cuiusquam
cuiquam	cuiquam
quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
quōquam	quōquam

Plural (lacking)

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

REGULAR ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
lātus, -a, -um	lātior, -ius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
audāx, audāx	audācior, -ius	audācissimus, -a, -um
miser, -era, -erum	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um

Difficilis, similis, dissimilis, and **humilis** are compared like **facilis.**

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um (*bonus*)	melior, -ius (*ameliorate*)	optimus, -a, -um (*optimist*)
malus, -a, -um (*malaria*)	peior, -ius (*impair*)	pessimus, -a, -um (*pessimist*)
magnus, -a, -um (*magnify*)	maior, -ius (*majority*)	maximus, -a, -um (*maximum*)
parvus, -a, -um	minor, -us (*minor, minus*)	minimus, -a, -um (*minimum*)
multus, -a, -um (*multiply*)	——, plūs (*plus*)	plūrimus, -a, -um
īnferus, -a, -um	īnferior, -ius	īnfimus *or* īmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um	superior, -ius	suprēmus *or* summus, -a, -um
——	prior, -ius	prīmus, -a, -um
——	propior, -ius	proximus, -a, -um
——	ulterior, -ius	ultimus, -a, -um

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

REGULAR ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē

IRREGULAR ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
parum	minus	minimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum

NUMERALS

	Roman Numerals	Cardinals	Ordinals
1	I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2	II	duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3	III	trēs, tria	tertius
4	IV	quattuor	quārtus
5	V	quīnque	quīntus
6	VI	sex	sextus
7	VII	septem	septimus
8	VIII	octō	octāvus
9	IX	novem	nōnus
10	X	decem	decimus
11	XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus
13	XIII	tredecim	
14	XIV	quattuordecim	
15	XV	quīndecim	
16	XVI	sēdecim	
17	XVII	septendecim	
18	XVIII	duodēvīgintī	
19	XIX	ūndēvīgintī	
20	XX	vīgintī	
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	
30	XXX	trīgintā	
40	XL	quadrāgintā	
50	L	quīnquāgintā	
60	LX	sexāgintā	
70	LXX	septuāgintā	
80	LXXX	octōgintā	
90	XC	nōnāgintā	
100	C	centum	
101	CI	centum (et) ūnus	
200	CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	
300	CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	
400	CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -a	
500	D	quīngentī, -ae, -a	
600	DC	sescentī, -ae, -a	
700	DCC	septingentī, -ae, -a	
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -a	
900	DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -a	
1000	M	mīlle	
2000	MM	duo mīlia	

VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	3d Conj. (-iō)
vocō	moneō	dūcō	audiō	capiō
vocāre	monēre	dūcere	audīre	capere
vocāvī	monuī	dūxī	audīvī	cēpī
vocātus	monitus	ductus	audītus	captus

Stems

vocā-	monē-	dūce-	audī-	cape-
vocāv-	monu-	dūx-	audīv-	cēp-
vocāt-	monit-	duct-	audīt-	capt-

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Active

Singular

vocō	moneō	dūcō	audiō	capiō
vocās	monēs	dūcis	audīs	capis
vocat	monet	dūcit	audit	capit

Plural

vocāmus	monēmus	dūcimus	audīmus	capimus
vocātis	monētis	dūcitis	audītis	capitis
vocant	monent	dūcunt	audiunt	capiunt

Passive

Singular

vocor	moneor	dūcor	audior	capior
vocāris	monēris	dūceris	audīris	caperis
vocātur	monētur	dūcitur	audītur	capitur

Plural

vocāmur	monēmur	dūcimur	audīmur	capimur
vocāminī	monēminī	dūciminī	audīminī	capiminī
vocantur	monentur	dūcuntur	audiuntur	capiuntur

PAST PROGRESSIVE INDICATIVE

Active

Singular

vocābam	monēbam	dūcēbam	audiēbam	capiēbam
vocābās	monēbās	dūcēbās	audiēbās	capiēbās
vocābat	monēbat	dūcēbat	audiēbat	capiēbat

Plural

vocābāmus	monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus
vocābātis	monēbātis	dūcēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbātis
vocābant	monēbant	dūcēbant	audiēbant	capiēbant

PASSIVE

Singular

vocābar	monēbar	dūcēbar	audiēbar	capiēbar
vocābāris	monēbāris	dūcēbāris	audiēbāris	capiēbāris
vocābātur	monēbātur	dūcēbātur	audiēbātur	capiēbātur

Plural

vocābāmur	monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	audiēbāmur	capiēbāmur
vocābāminī	monēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	audiēbāminī	capiēbāminī
vocābantur	monēbantur	dūcēbantur	audiēbantur	capiēbantur

FUTURE INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

Singular

vocābō	monēbō	dūcam	audiam	capiam
vocābis	monēbis	dūcēs	audiēs	capiēs
vocābit	monēbit	dūcet	audiet	capiet

Plural

vocābimus	monēbimus	dūcēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus
vocābitis	monēbitis	dūcētis	audiētis	capiētis
vocābunt	monēbunt	dūcent	audient	capient

PASSIVE

Singular

vocābor	monēbor	dūcar	audiar	capiar
vocāberis	monēberis	dūcēris	audiēris	capiēris
vocābitur	monēbitur	dūcētur	audiētur	capiētur

Plural

vocābimur	monēbimur	dūcēmur	audiēmur	capiēmur
vocābiminī	monēbiminī	dūcēminī	audiēminī	capiēminī
vocābuntur	monēbuntur	dūcentur	audientur	capientur

PERFECT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

Singular

vocāvī	monuī	dūxī	audīvī	cēpī
vocāvistī	monuistī	dūxistī	audīvistī	cēpistī
vocāvit	monuit	dūxit	audīvit	cēpit

Plural

vocāvimus	monuimus	dūximus	audīvimus	cēpimus
vocāvistis	monuistis	dūxistis	audīvistis	cēpistis
vocāvērunt	monuērunt	dūxērunt	audīvērunt	cēpērunt

PASSIVE

Singular

vocātus, -a, -um sum	monitus, -a, -um sum	ductus, -a, -um sum	auditus, -a, -um sum	captus, -a, -um sum
vocātus, -a, -um es	monitus, -a, -um es	ductus, -a, -um es	auditus, -a, -um es	captus, -a, -um es
vocātus, -a, -um est	monitus, -a, -um est	ductus, -a, -um est	auditus, -a, -um est	captus, -a, -um est

Plural

vocātī, -ae, -a sumus	monitī, -ae, -a sumus	ductī, -ae, -a sumus	auditī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sumus
vocātī, -ae, -a estis	monitī, -ae, -a estis	ductī, -ae, -a estis	auditī, -ae, -a estis	captī, -ae, -a estis
vocātī, -ae, -a sunt	monitī, -ae, -a sunt	ductī, -ae, -a sunt	auditī, -ae, -a sunt	captī, -ae, -a sunt

PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

Singular

vocāveram	monueram	dūxeram	audīveram	cēperam
vocāverās	monuerās	dūxerās	audīverās	cēperās
vocāverat	monuerat	dūxerat	audīverat	cēperat

Plural

vocāverāmus	monuerāmus	dūxerāmus	audīverāmus	cēperāmus
vocāverātis	monuerātis	dūxerātis	audīverātis	cēperātis
vocāverant	monuerant	dūxerant	audīverant	cēperant

PASSIVE

Singular

vocātus, -a, -um eram	monitus, -a, -um eram	ductus, -a, -um eram	auditus, -a, -um eram	captus, -a, -um eram
vocātus, -a, -um erās	monitus, -a, -um erās	ductus, -a, -um erās	auditus, -a, -um erās	captus, -a, -um erās
vocātus, -a, -um erat	monitus, -a, -um erat	ductus, -a, -um erat	auditus, -a, -um erat	captus, -a, -um erat

Plural

vocātī, -ae, -a	monitī, -ae, -a	ductī, -ae, -a	auditī, -ae, -a	captī, -ae, -a
erāmus	erāmus	erāmus	erāmus	erāmus
erātis	erātis	erātis	erātis	erātis
erant	erant	erant	erant	erant

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

Singular

vocāverō	monuerō	dūxerō	audīverō	cēperō
vocāveris	monueris	dūxeris	audīveris	cēperis
vocāverit	monuerit	dūxerit	audīverit	cēperit

Plural

vocāverimus	monuerimus	dūxerimus	audīverimus	cēperimus
vocāveritis	monueritis	dūxeritis	audīveritis	cēperitis
vocāverint	monuerint	dūxerint	audīverint	cēperint

PASSIVE

Singular

vocātus, -a, -um	monitus, -a, -um	ductus, -a, -um	auditus, -a, -um	captus, -a, -um
erō	erō	erō	erō	erō
eris	eris	eris	eris	eris
erit	erit	erit	erit	erit

Plural

vocātī, -ae, -a	monitī, -ae, -a	ductī, -ae, -a	auditī, -ae, -a	captī, -ae, -a
erimus	erimus	erimus	erimus	erimus
eritis	eritis	eritis	eritis	eritis
erunt	erunt	erunt	erunt	erunt

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

Singular

vocem	moneam	dūcam	audiam	capiam
vocēs	moneās	dūcās	audiās	capiās
vocet	moneat	dūcat	audiat	capiat

Plural

vocēmus	moneāmus	dūcāmus	audiāmus	capiāmus
vocētis	moneātis	dūcātis	audiātis	capiātis
vocent	moneant	dūcant	audiant	capiant

PASSIVE

Singular

vocer	monear	dūcar	audiar	capiar
vocēris	moneāris	dūcāris	audiāris	capiāris
vocētur	moneātur	dūcātur	audiātur	capiātur

Plural

vocēmur	moneāmur	dūcāmur	audiāmur	capiāmur
vocēminī	moneāminī	dūcāminī	audiāminī	capiāminī
vocentur	moneantur	dūcantur	audiantur	capiantur

PAST PROGRESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

Singular

vocārem	monērem	dūcerem	audīrem	caperem
vocārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	audīrēs	caperēs
vocāret	monēret	dūceret	audīret	caperet

Plural

vocārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	audīrēmus	caperēmus
vocārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	audīrētis	caperētis
vocārent	monērent	dūcerent	audīrent	caperent

PASSIVE

Singular

vocārer	monērer	dūcerer	audīrer	caperer
vocārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	audīrēris	caperēris
vocārētur	monērētur	dūcerētur	audīrētur	caperētur

Plural

vocārēmur	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	audīrēmur	caperēmur
vocārēminī	monērēminī	dūcerēminī	audīrēminī	caperēminī
vocārentur	monērentur	dūcerentur	audīrentur	caperentur

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

Singular

vocāverim	monuerim	dūxerim	audīverim	cēperim
vocāverīs	monuerīs	dūxerīs	audīverīs	cēperīs
vocāverit	monuerit	dūxerit	audīverit	cēperit

Plural

vocāverīmus	monuerīmus	dūxerīmus	audīverīmus	cēperīmus
vocāverītis	monuerītis	dūxerītis	audīverītis	cēperītis
vocāverint	monuerint	dūxerint	audīverint	cēperint

PASSIVE

Singular

vocātus, -a, -um sim	monitus, -a, -um sim	ductus, -a, -um sim	audītus, -a, -um sim	captus, -a, -um sim
vocātus, -a, -um sīs	monitus, -a, -um sīs	ductus, -a, -um sīs	audītus, -a, -um sīs	captus, -a, -um sīs
vocātus, -a, -um sit	monitus, -a, -um sit	ductus, -a, -um sit	audītus, -a, -um sit	captus, -a, -um sit

Plural

vocātī, -ae, -a sīmus	monitī, -ae, -a sīmus	ductī, -ae, -a sīmus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus
vocātī, -ae, -a sītis	monitī, -ae, -a sītis	ductī, -ae, -a sītis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis	captī, -ae, -a sītis
vocātī, -ae, -a sint	monitī, -ae, -a sint	ductī, -ae, -a sint	audītī, -ae, -a sint	captī, -ae, -a sint

PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

Singular

vocāvissem	monuissem	dūxissem
vocāvissēs	monuissēs	dūxissēs
vocāvisset	monuisset	dūxisset

audīvissem	cēpissem
audīvissēs	cēpissēs
audīvisset	cēpisset

Plural

vocāvissēmus	monuissēmus	dūxissēmus
vocāvissētis	monuissētis	dūxissētis
vocāvissent	monuissent	dūxissent

audīvissēmus	cēpissēmus
audīvissētis	cēpissētis
audīvissent	cēpissent

PASSIVE

Singular

vocātus, -a, -um	essem	monitus, -a, -um	essem	ductus, -a, -um	essem
	essēs		essēs		essēs
	esset		esset		esset

auditus, -a, -um	essem	captus, -a, -um	essem
	essēs		essēs
	esset		esset

Plural

vocātī, -ae, -a	essēmus	monitī, -ae, -a	essēmus	ductī, -ae, -a	essēmus
	essētis		essētis		essētis
	essent		essent		essent

auditī, -ae, -a	essēmus	captī, -ae, -a	essēmus
	essētis		essētis
	essent		essent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE

Sing. vocā	monē	dūc	audī	cape
Plur. vocāte	monēte	dūcite	audīte	capite

PASSIVE

Sing.	vocāre	monēre	dūcere	audīre	capere
Plur.	vocāminī	monēminī	dūciminī	audīminī	capimini

PRESENT INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

vocāre	monēre	dūcere	audīre	capere

PASSIVE

vocārī	monērī	dūcī	audīrī	capī

PERFECT INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

vocāvisse	monuisse	dūxisse	audīvisse	cēpisse

PASSIVE

vocātus esse	monitus esse	ductus esse	audītus esse	captus esse

FUTURE INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

vocātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	audītūrus esse	captūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE

Pres.	vocāns	monēns	dūcēns
	audiēns	capiēns	
Fut.	vocātūrus, *etc.*	monitūrus, *etc.*	ductūrus, *etc.*
	audītūrus, *etc.*	captūrus, *etc.*	

PASSIVE

Perf.	vocātus, *etc.*	monitus, *etc.*	ductus, *etc.*
	audītus, *etc.*	captus, *etc.*	
Fut.	vocandus, *etc.*	monendus, *etc.*	dūcendus, *etc.*
	audiendus, *etc.*	capiendus, *etc.*	

GERUND

Gen.	vocandī	monendī	dūcendī
Dat.	vocandō	monendō	dūcendō
Acc.	vocandum	monendum	dūcendum
Abl.	vocandō	monendō	dūcendō

audiendī, *etc.* capiendī, *etc.*

DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	3d Conj. (-iō)
hortor	vereor	sequor	orior	gradior
hortārī	verērī	sequī	orīrī	gradī
hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	ortus sum	gressus sum

STEMS

hortā-	verē-	seque-	orī-	grade-
hortāt-	verit-	secūt-	ort-	gress-

PRESENT INDICATIVE

hortor	vereor	sequor	orior	gradior
I urge	*I fear*	*I follow*	*I rise*	*I walk*

PAST PROGRESSIVE INDICATIVE

hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	oriēbar	gradiēbar

FUTURE INDICATIVE

hortābor	verēbor	sequar	oriar	gradiar

PERFECT INDICATIVE

hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	ortus sum	gressus sum

PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE

hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	ortus eram	gressus eram

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	ortus erō	gressus erō

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

horter	verear	sequar	oriar	gradiar

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

hortārer	verērer	sequerer	orīrer	graderer

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	ortus sim	gressus sim

PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	ortus essem	gressus essem

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sing. hortāre	verēre	sequere	orīre	gradere
urge	*fear*	*follow*	*rise*	*walk*
Plur. hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	orīminī	gradiminī

PRESENT INFINITIVE

hortārī	verērī	sequī	orīrī	gradī

PERFECT INFINITIVE

hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	ortus esse	gressus esse

FUTURE INFINITIVE

hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	oritūrus esse	gressūrus esse

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

hortāns	verēns	sequēns	oriēns	gradiēns

FUTURE PARTICIPLE

hortātūrus, -a, -um veritūrus, -a, -um secūtūrus, -a, -um
oritūrus, -a, -um gressūrus, -a, -um

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

hortātus, -a, -um veritus, -a, -um secūtus, -a, -um
ortus, -a, -um gressus, -a, -um

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

hortandus, -a, -um verendus, -a, -um sequendus, -a, -um
oriendus, -a, -um gradiendus, -a, -um

GERUND

hortandī verendī sequendī oriendī gradiendī

IRREGULAR VERBS

Sum, *I am*

PRIN. PARTS: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST PROGRESSIVE	FUTURE
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
sum	eram	erō
I am	*I was*	*I shall be*
es	erās	eris
est	erat	erit
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
sumus	erāmus	erimus
estis	erātis	eritis
sunt	erant	erunt

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
fuī	fueram	fuerō
I have been, I was	*I had been*	*I shall have been*
fuistī	fuerās	fueris
fuit	fuerat	fuerit

Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus
fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
fuērunt	fuerant	fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
sim	essem	fuerim
sīs	essēs	fuerīs
sit	esset	fuerit
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
sīmus	essēmus	fuerīmus
sītis	essētis	fuerītis
sint	essent	fuerint

PAST PERFECT

Singular	*Plural*
fuissem	fuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis
fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

Sing. es, *be*
Plur. este, *be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, *to be*
Perf. fuisse, *to have been*
Fut. futūrus esse, *to be about to be*

Possum, *I am able, I can*

PRIN. PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST PROGRESSIVE	FUTURE
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
possum	poteram	poterō
I am able, I can	*I was able, I could*	*I shall be able*
potes	poterās	poteris
potest	poterat	poterit

Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
possumus	poterāmus	poterimus
potestis	poterātis	poteritis
possunt	poterant	poterunt

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*
potuī	potueram	potuerō
I have been able, I could	*I had been able*	*I shall have been able*
potuistī	potuerās	potueris
potuit	potuerat	potuerit
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*
potuimus	potuerāmus	potuerimus
potuistis	potuerātis	potueritis
potuērunt	potuerant	potuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
Singular	*Singular*	*Singular*	*Singular*
possim	possem	potuerim	potuissem
possīs	possēs	potuerīs	potuissēs
possit	posset	potuerit	potuisset
Plural	*Plural*	*Plural*	*Plural*
possīmus	possēmus	potuerīmus	potuissēmus
possītis	possētis	potuerītis	potuissētis
possint	possent	potuerint	potuissent

INFINITIVE

Pres. posse, *to be able*
Perf. potuisse, *to have been able*

PARTICIPLE

Pres. potēns (adj.), *powerful*

Ferō, *I bear, bring*

PRIN. PARTS: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus STEMS: fer-, tul-, lāt-

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Past Pr.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
Fut.	feram, ferēs, *etc.*		ferar, ferēris, *etc.*	
Perf.	tulī		lātus sum	
Past P.	tuleram		lātus eram	
Fut. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	feram, ferās, *etc.*	ferar, ferāris, *etc.*
Impf.	ferrem	ferrer
Perf.	tulerim	lātus sim
Past P.	tulissem	lātus essem

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sing.	fer	ferre
Plur.	ferte	feriminī

INFINITIVE

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	ferēns	
Perf.		lātus
Fut.	lātūrus	ferendus

GERUND

ferendī, *etc.*

Eō, *I go*

PRIN. PARTS: eō, īre, iī, itus STEMS: ī-, i-, it-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PAST PROGRESSIVE	FUTURE		PERFECT	
eō	īmus	ībam, *etc.*	ībō	ībimus	iī	iimus
īs	ītis		ībis	ībitis	īstī	īstis
it	eunt		ībit	ībunt	iit	iērunt

PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
ieram	ierō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
eam	īrem	ierim	īssem

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sing. ī *Plur.* īte

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. īre	*Pres. Act.* iēns, euntis
Perf. īsse	*Fut. Act.* itūrus
Fut. itūrus esse	*Perf. Pass.* itus
	Fut. Pass. eundus

GERUND

eundi, *etc.*

Fīō, *I am made* (passive of faciō)

PRIN. PARTS: fīō, fierī, factus sum STEMS: fī-, fact-

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	fīō	fīmus	fīam	fīāmus
	fīs	fītis	fīās	fīātis
	fit	fīunt	fīat	fīant
Past Pr.	fīēbam		fierem	
Fut.	fīam			
Perf.	factus sum		factus sim	
Past P.	factus eram		factus essem	
Fut. P.	factus erō			

PRESENT IMPERATIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Sing.	fī	*Perf.*	factus
Plur.	fīte	*Fut.*	faciendus

INFINITIVE		GERUND	
Pres.	fierī	faciendī, *etc.*	
Perf.	factus esse		

Volō, Nōlō, Mālō

PRIN. PARTS: **volō, velle, voluī**, *I am willing, wish*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *I am unwilling*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *I prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Past Pr.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Past. P.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
Impf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Past P.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

Sing.	nōlī	
Plur.	nōlīte	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

WORDS TO BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED

Study the following groups of words, distinguishing each word carefully from the others in the same group. Associate English derivatives with them when they exist.

1. accēdō, accidit, arcessō.
2. ācer, aciēs, aeger, ager, agger, agmen.
3. aetās, aestās, aestus.
4. alius, alter, altus.
5. ante, anteā, antequam.
6. audiō, audeō.
7. aurum, auris.
8. caedō, cadō, cēdō.
9. certus, cēterī.
10. cīvis, cīvitās.
11. cōgō, cognōscō, cōgitō.
12. cōnsilium, concilium, cōnsul.
13. cūr, cūra, cūrō.
14. dolor, dolus.
15. eques, equus, equitātus, equester.
16. forte, fortiter, fortis.
17. fugiō, fugō.
18. hīc, hinc, hūc, eō, ibi, inde, unde, quō, ubi.
19. impediō, expediō.
20. imperō, impetrō, petō.
21. incīdō, incidō.
22. ipse, īdem, item, autem, etiam.
23. ita, itaque, atque.
24. jaciō, jaceō.
25. legiō, lēgātiō, lēgātus.
26. liber, līber, līberī.
27. moneō, moveō, maneō.
28. morior, moror.
29. mōs, mors, mora.
30. nam, enim, nunc.
31. nāscor, nancīscor.
32. nē, -ne, nē . . . quidem.
33. nōn, nihil, nūllus, nēmō, neque.
34. ōmen, omnis, omnīnō.
35. ōtium, odium.
36. parō, pāreō, pariō.
37. pars, pār.
38. pateō, patior.
39. paulum, paulō, paulātim, paulisper.
40. pēs, pedes, peditātus.
41. pōnō, possum, potior.
42. porta, portus, portō.
43. post, posteā, postquam, posthāc.
44. praeficiō, praesum.
45. propter, proptereā.
46. pugnō, oppugnō, expugnō.
47. quaerō, queror.
48. quīdam, quidem.
49. quis, quisque, quisquam, quoque.
50. reddō, redeō.
51. sī, sīc, sīcut.
52. simul, statim, semper, saepe.
53. sōl, sōlus, sōlum.
54. subsidium, praesidium.
55. tam, tamen, tantus, tandem, tum, dum.
56. tot, tōtus.
57. trānseō, trādūcō.
58. umquam, usquam, ūsque, nusquam, numquam, undique.
59. vallis, vāllum.
60. vincō, vinciō, vītō, vīvō, veniō.
61. vīs, vir, vix.
62. volō (velle), volō (volāre).

SUMMARY OF GRAMMATICAL PRINCIPLES

Those case uses that were not taught in the first year are printed in large type. In the case of new topics references are usually given to the more complete treatment in the body of the book

AGREEMENT

1. *Verb and Subject.* A verb agrees with its subject in person and number: **Poētae nārrāvērunt,** *poets told.*

a. A plural verb may be used with a collective noun when the action of the individuals of the collection is emphasized: **Turba clāmant,** *the crowd* (the individuals) *shout.*

b. When two or more singular subjects are connected by **aut** or **neque** (**nec**), the verb is singular.

2. *Adjective and Noun.* An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case: **Poētae antīquī,** *ancient poets.*

a. Participles, being adjectives, similarly agree with nouns.

3. *Predicate Noun or Adjective.* A noun or adjective in predication agrees with the subject in case: **Fābulae sunt grātae,** *the stories are pleasing.*

4. *Appositive.* A noun in apposition agrees in case with the word it defines: **Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum,** *Juno, queen of the gods.*

5. *Relative Pronoun and Antecedent.* A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case is determined by the way it is used in its clause: **Herculēs, quī adhūc īnfāns erat,** *Hercules, who was still a child.*

a. The antecedent is sometimes omitted: **Quī dubitat, vincitur,** (*he*) *who hesitates is conquered.*

6. Adjectives and participles are sometimes used substantively: **Nostrī,** *our* (*men*); **Vae victīs,** *woe to the conquered* (*men*).

7. *Introductory Relative.* In Latin a relative pronoun is frequently used at the beginning of a sentence to refer to something mentioned in the preceding sentence. In English a demonstrative or personal pronoun is used, with or without *and*: **Quae mediā nocte in cubiculum vēnērunt,** (*and*) *these* (lit. *which*) *came into the chamber in the middle of the night.*

NOUN SYNTAX

Nominative

8. ***Nominative as Subject.*** The subject of a sentence is in the nominative case: **Poētae nārrāvērunt,** *poets told.*

9. ***Predicate Noun or Adjective.*** A predicate noun or adjective is in the nominative case: **Herculēs fīlius Alcmēnae erat,** *Hercules was the son of Alcmena.*

a. Predicate nouns or adjectives are used with the linking verbs *is, are, seem*: **Puer dēfessus vidētur,** *the boy seems tired.*

b. Predicate nouns or adjectives are used with the passive of **faciō,** and of verbs meaning *call, elect, name, choose, appoint,* etc.: **Brūtus cōnsul creātus est,** *Brutus was elected consul.* These verbs in the active voice take two accusatives (App. § 28).

Genitive

10. ***Possessive Genitive.*** The genitive is used to express possession: **Fīlius Alcmēnae,** *the son of Alcmena.*

11. ***Genitive of the Whole.*** The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken: **Omnium hominum validissimus,** *strongest of all men*; **Nihil auxilī,** *no* (lit. *nothing of*) *help.*

a. With cardinal numerals and **quīdam,** the ablative with **ex** or **dē** is regularly used instead of the genitive of the whole: **Duo ex puerīs,** *two of the boys*; **Quīdam ex amīcīs nostrīs,** *certain of our friends.* See section 138.

12. ***Descriptive Genitive.*** The genitive, with a modifying adjective, is used to describe a noun: **Puer magnae virtūtis,** *a boy of great courage.* See section 183.

a. The descriptive genitive is used in expressions of measure and number: **Septendecim annōrum adulēscēns,** *a young man of seventeen years.*

13. ***Genitive with Adjectives.*** Certain adjectives (as, those meaning *full, desirous, mindful,* etc.) take the genitive: **Bellandī cupidī,** *desirous of fighting.* See section 142.

a. This is an objective use of the genitive; that is, the genitive denotes the object of the action implied in the adjective. The objective genitive occurs also with nouns: **Reverentia patris,** *respect for a father.*

Dative

14. ***Dative of Indirect Object.*** The dative is used to denote the indirect object with verbs meaning *give, show, tell,* etc.: **Magistrī puerīs fābulās nārrābant,** *teachers told stories to the boys.*

15. ***Dative with Adjectives.*** The dative is used with adjectives meaning *near, fit, friendly, pleasing, like,* etc.: **Fābulae puerīs sunt grātae,** *the stories are pleasing to the boys.*

16. ***Dative of Reference.*** The dative is used to state the person referred to: **Patrī factum forte vidēbātur,** *to the father the deed seemed brave.*

17. ***Dative with Compounds.*** Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** take the dative of the indirect object: **Lēgātus exercituī praeest,** *a lieutenant is in charge of the army.* See section 111.

a. Sometimes a direct object in the accusative is also used, if the simple verb is transitive: **Rōmānīs bellum īnferunt,** *they are making war on the Romans.*

18. ***Dative with Special Verbs.*** Certain verbs that are transitive in English, as **cōnfīdō, crēdō, dēsum, faveō, ignōscō, imperō, invideō, noceō, parcō, pāreō, persuādeō, placeō, resistō, serviō,** and **studeō,** take the dative of the indirect object instead of a direct object: **Puer patrī pāret,** *the boy obeys his father.* See section 71.

a. In the passive these verbs become impersonal and retain the dative: **Mihi persuāsum est,** *I was persuaded* (lit. *it was persuaded to me*).

b. In the active voice these verbs sometimes take a neuter pronoun or an **ut** clause as a direct object: **Hoc mihi persuādet,** *he persuades me* (*of*) *this.*

19. ***Dative of Purpose.*** The dative is used to denote the purpose of an action: **Librōs mūnerī mīsit,** *he sent the books as a gift.* See section 208.

a. The dative of purpose is often accompanied by a dative of reference. This combination is called the "double dative": **Mīlitēs oppidō praesidiō erant,** *the soldiers were* (for) *a protection for the town.* See section 208.

20. ***Dative of Agent.*** The dative is used with the future passive participle to denote the agent: **Puerō multī librī portandī erant,** *the boy had to carry many books* (lit. *many books were to be carried by the boy*). See section 248.

21. ***Dative of Possession.*** The dative is used with **sum** to express possession: **Mihi liber est,** *I have a book* (lit. *a book is to me*). See section 143.

22. ***Dative of Separation.*** Some verbs meaning *take away*, especially those compounded with **ab, dē,** and **ex,** take the dative of separation when a person is deprived of something: **Mīlitī scūtum Caesar dētrāxit,** *Caesar took a shield from a soldier.*

Accusative

23. *Accusative of Direct Object.* The accusative is used to denote the direct object of a verb: **Poētae fābulās nārrāvērunt,** *poets told stories.*

24. *Accusative of Place Whither.* The accusative is used with **ad** or **in** to express place whither: **In domicilium properat,** *he hastens into the house.*

a. The preposition is omitted with **domum** and names of towns: **Domum properābit,** *he will hurry home.*

25. *Accusative with Prepositions.* The accusative is used with the prepositions **ad, ante, circum, contrā, inter, intrā, ob, per, post, prope, propter, super, trāns, ultrā: Per hōs annōs,** *during these years.*

26. *Accusative of Extent.* The accusative is used to express extent of time or space: **Duodecim annōs in servitūte habēbātur,** *he was held in slavery twelve years.*

27. *Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive.* The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive: **Poētae nārrant Herculem in Graeciā habitāvisse,** *poets say that Hercules lived in Greece.*

28. ***Two Accusatives.*** Two accusatives may be used as the objects of verbs meaning *call, elect, choose, appoint,* etc.; also of **trādūcō** and **trānsportō**: **Brūtum cōnsulem creāvērunt,** *they elected Brutus consul.*

Ablative

(For the general ideas expressed by the ablative see page 165.)

29. ***Ablative of Accompaniment.*** The ablative is used with **cum** to express accompaniment: **Cum frātre,** *with his brother.*

a. **Cum** may be omitted if the phrase contains an adjective that is not a numeral.

30. ***Ablative of Means.*** The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument: **Parvīs manibus serpentēs prehendit,** *with his little hands he seized the snakes.*

31. ***Ablative of Manner.*** The ablative with **cum** is used to express manner, but **cum** may be omitted if there is an adjective in the phrase: **Magnā vōce clāmābat,** *he cried out with a loud voice.*

a. The ablative may express accordance: **Mōre suō,** *in accordance with his custom.*

32. ***Ablative of Cause.*** The ablative is used to express cause: **Alcmēna, perīculō līberōrum commōta,** *Alcmena, alarmed because of the danger of her children.*

33. ***Ablative Absolute.*** A noun or a pronoun, with a modifying participle or adjective, may be used in a construction grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence to express *time, cause, condition, means,* or *concession*: **Urbe captā,** *when the city was captured, because the city was captured, if the city was captured, by capturing the city, although the city was captured.* See section 33.

34. ***Ablative with Deponents.*** The ablative is used with the deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,** and their compounds: **Gladiīs ūtī nōn poterant,** *they were not able to use their swords.* See section 112.

35. ***Ablative of Comparison.*** When two objects are compared, the second is in the ablative if **quam**, *than*, is omitted: **Nihil cārius patriā esse dēbet**, *nothing ought to be dearer than our native land.* See section 144.

a. When **quam**, *than*, is used, the objects compared are in the same case.

36. ***Ablative of Degree of Difference.*** The ablative is used to express the degree of difference between two objects: **Tribus post diēbus**, *three days later* (lit. *afterwards by three days*). See section 256.

37. ***Ablative of Description.*** The ablative is used with an adjective to describe a noun. See section 183.

38. ***Ablative of Separation.*** The ablative, with or without **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, is used to express separation: **Puerī ē somnō excitātī sunt**, *the boys were awakened from sleep*; **Agrīs prīvātus est**, *he was deprived of his fields.* See section 98.

39. ***Ablative of Place Whence.*** The ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** is used to express place from which: **Alcmēna ex cubiculō properāvit**, *Alcmena hurried out of the chamber.*

a. The preposition is omitted with **domō** and names of towns: **Domō fūgit**, *he fled from home.*

40. ***Ablative of Agent.*** The ablative with **ā** or **ab** is used with a passive verb to denote the agent: **Fābulae ā poētīs nārrābantur**, *stories were told by the poets.*

41. ***Ablative of Place Where.*** The ablative is used with **in** to express place where: **In librīs nostrīs legimus**, *we read in our books.*

a. The preposition is omitted with **locō** and **parte**.

b. For place where with **domus** and names of towns see "Locative" (App. § 47).

42. ***Ablative of Time.*** The ablative is used to express time when or within which: **Mediā nocte**, *in the middle of the night.*

43. ***Ablative of Respect.*** The ablative is used to state in what respect a thing is true: **Nōmine Īphiclēs**, *Iphicles by* (in respect to) *name.*

44. ***Ablative with* Dignus.** The ablative is used with the adjectives **dignus** and **indignus**: **Exemplum Catōne dignum,** *an example worthy of Cato.*

45. ***Ablative with Prepositions.*** The ablative is used with the prepositions **ab, cum, dē, ex, prae, prō, sine**: **Dē Hercule,** *concerning Hercules.*

Vocative

46. The vocative is used to address a person: **Māter,** *O mother.*

Locative

47. The locative is used in names of towns and a few other words to express place where: **Thēbīs habitābat,** *he lived in Thebes*; **Domī est,** *he is at home.*

a. The locative is like the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions; elsewhere it is like the ablative.

VERB SYNTAX

Impersonal Verbs

48. The passive of many transitive verbs is used impersonally with an infinitive as subject (§ 110). In Latin, intransitive verbs are also used impersonally in the passive: **Ventum est,** *they came* (lit. *it was come*); **Mihi persuādētur,** *I am persuaded* (lit. *it is persuaded to me*); **Mīlitibus currendum est,** *the soldiers must run* (lit. *it must be run by the soldiers*). See sections 207 and 248.

49. The verbs **licet,** *it is permitted,* and **oportet,** *it is necessary,* are used only impersonally with an infinitive as subject: as, **Mihi licet īre,** *I may go* (lit. *it is permitted to me to go*). See section 132.

Tenses of the Indicative

50. ***Present.*** The present tense expresses a simple act in present time or an act going on in present time: **Dūcit,** *he leads* or *he is leading.*

51. ***Historical Present.*** In vivid narration the present tense is often used for a past tense: **Domum properat,** *he hurried home.* This is called the "historical present."

52. ***Clauses with* Dum.** The historical present is used in time clauses introduced by **dum**, *while*: **Dum haec geruntur**, *while these things were going on.*

53. ***Past Progressive.*** The past progressive tense expresses an act as *going on* at the time of some other act in past time. It sometimes expresses repeated action in past time: **Dūcēbam**, *I was leading*, (sometimes) *I used to lead.*

54. ***Future.*** The future tense expresses a simple act in future time or an act going on in future time: **Dūcam**, *I shall lead* or *I shall be leading.*

55. ***Perfect.*** The perfect expresses a simple act in past time or an act completed in present time: **Dūxī**, *I led* or *I have led.*

56. ***Past Perfect.*** The past perfect expresses an act completed at the time of some other act in past time: **Dūxeram**, *I had led.*

57. ***Future Perfect.*** The future perfect expresses an act completed at the time of some other act in future time: **Dūxerō**, *I shall have led.*

Tenses of the Subjunctive

58. The four subjunctive tenses have the same force as the corresponding tenses of the indicative. In addition, each has a future force.

59. The subjunctive is most common in dependent clauses, and the tense used is determined by the time of the verb upon which it depends. This is called the "sequence of tenses." See section 191.

a. After a verb referring to present or future time, the present subjunctive is commonly used.

b. After a verb referring to past time, the past progressive or the past perfect subjunctive is used (the latter when the act is regarded as completed).

c. The perfect subjunctive is not used frequently. It may occur in an indirect question to refer to past time (past simple) when the main verb refers to present or future time. It also occurs occasionally, instead of the past progressive, in result clauses after a past main verb to emphasize the actual occurrence of the result.

Indicative Mood

60. Relative clauses are usually in the indicative mood, as in English (App. § 73, *a*, *b*).

61. ***Temporal Clauses with* Postquam, *etc.*** Temporal clauses introduced by **postquam**, *after*; **ubi**, *when*; **ut**, *when*; **cum prīmum, simul,** or **simul atque** (**ac**), *as soon as*, take the indicative, usually in the perfect tense: **Postquam pervēnit, in vīllam properāvit,** *after he arrived, he hurried into the villa.*

62. ***Adversative Clauses with* Quamquam *or* Etsī.** Adversative clauses introduced by **quamquam** or **etsī**, *although*, take the indicative: **Quamquam fīlium suum necāvit, cōnsul nōn culpātus est,** *although he put his own son to death, the consul was not blamed.*

Subjunctive Mood

63. ***Volitive Subjunctive.*** The subjunctive is used independently to express an act as *wanted* or *willed*: **Ad lītus currāmus,** *let us run to the shore.* The negative is **nē** instead of **nōn**: **Nē morēmur,** *let us not delay.* See sections 62–63.

64. ***Purpose Clauses.*** The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause that expresses the purpose of the act of the main clause. It is introduced by **ut** (**utī**) when affirmative, and by **nē** when negative: **Venit ut tē videat,** *he comes to see you*; **Dīligenter labōrābant, nē culpārentur,** *they worked diligently, that they might not be blamed.* See section 104.

65. ***Relative Clause of Purpose.*** The subjunctive is used in a relative clause to express purpose: **Servōs mīsit quī cibum emerent,** *he sent servants to buy food.* See section 199.

a. As the idea of purpose is closely associated with some person mentioned in the main clause, **quī** is equivalent to **ut is** or **ut eī.**

66. ***Purpose Clause with* Quō.** A purpose clause may be introduced by **quō** instead of **ut** if it contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree: **Castella mūnīvit quō facilius eōs prohibēret,** *he fortified the redoubts in order to stop them more easily.*

67. ***Substantive Volitive Clauses.*** The subjunctive is used with **ut** (negative **nē**) in substantive clauses that are the objects of verbs meaning *warn, ask, persuade, urge, command*: **Cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent,** *he persuaded the nation to go out.* See section 122.

68. ***Substantive Clauses with Verbs of* Fearing.** The subjunctive is used with **nē**, *that, lest*, and **ut**, *that not*, in substantive clauses that are objects of verbs meaning *fear*: **Vereor nē veniās,** *I fear that you will come*; **Vereor ut veniās,** *I fear that you will not come.* See section 226.

69. ***Substantive Clauses with Verbs of* Hindering.** The subjunctive is used in substantive clauses that are objects of verbs of *hindering* and *preventing*. The clause is introduced by **nē** or **quōminus** if the main verb is affirmative, and by **quīn** if the main verb is negative: **Tē dēterrēre nōn possum quīn rīdeās,** *I cannot prevent you from laughing.*

a. **Prohibeō,** *prevent*, regularly takes an infinitive: **Vōs trānsīre prohibēbō,** *I shall prevent you from crossing.*

70. ***Result Clauses.*** The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause that expresses the result of something told in the main clause. It is introduced by **ut** (**utī**), and is made negative by the usual **nōn**: **Servus tam dēfessus est ut nōn labōret,** *the slave is so tired that he does not work.* See section 85.

a. Often a result clause is anticipated by the presence in the main clause of such a word as **ita, tam, tantus, tot.**

71. ***Substantive Clauses of Result.*** The subjunctive is used in substantive clauses introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn** after verbs meaning *to happen* or *to bring to pass*: **Accidit ut advenīret,** *it happened that he arrived.*

72. ***Clauses of Description with* Cum.** The past progressive and past perfect subjunctive are used in subordinate clauses introduced by **cum,** *when*, to describe the circumstances under which the act of the main clause took place: **Cum Caesarī id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī,** *when it was reported to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city.* See section 117.

73. ***Descriptive Relative Clauses.*** The subjunctive is used in relative clauses that describe an antecedent and are essential to the thought: **Sōlī sunt quī contendant,** *they are the only ones who fight.*

a. A nonessential relative clause has the indicative, as **Caesar, quī erat imperātor, dīxit**; and it is set off by commas as in English.

b. An essential relative clause telling *what* person or thing is meant (determinative) has the indicative, as **Prīmī mīlitēs quī vēnērunt interfectī sunt**; and, as in English, it is not set off by commas.

c. An essential relative clause telling *what kind* of person or thing is meant (descriptive) has the subjunctive, as illustrated above; and, as in English, it is not set off by commas.

74. ***Causal Clauses with* Cum.** The subjunctive is used in a clause introduced by **cum**, *because*, *since*, to express cause: **Cum territī essent, salūtem in fugā petēbant**, *since they were frightened, they sought safety in flight.*

75. ***Adversative Clauses with* Cum.** The subjunctive is used in an adversative clause introduced by **cum**, *although*: **Cum paucī essent, tamen fortēs erant**, *although they were few, yet they were brave.*

76. ***Indirect Questions.*** The subjunctive is used in an indirect question: **Scīsne quot puerī absint**, *do you know how many boys are absent?* See section 149.

77. ***Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse.*** The subjunctive is used instead of the indicative in subordinate clauses that are part of an indirect statement: **Caesar dīxit Helvētiōs, quī cum Germānīs saepe contenderent, fortissimōs esse**, *Caesar said that the Helvetians, who often fought with the Germans, were very brave.* See section 251, note 34.

78. ***Clauses of Anticipation.*** The subjunctive is used in clauses introduced by **dum**, *until*, **antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, to express an act that is anticipated: **Caesar exspectāvit dum nāvēs convenīrent**, *Caesar waited until the vessels should assemble.* See section 238.

a. If these clauses state a fact, their verb is indicative: **Priusquam Atalanta pōmum lēgit, Hippomenēs ad fīnem vēnit**, *Hippomenes came to the goal before Atalanta picked up the apple.* **Priusquam . . . legeret** would have meant *before Atalanta could pick up the apple.*

79. **Quod** ***Causal with the Subjunctive.*** The indicative is commonly used in causal clauses with **quod**, but the subjunctive is used when it is desired to suggest that the reason is that of the subject of the main verb: **Imperātor mīlitem culpāvit quod nōn fortiter pugnāret**, *the general criticized the soldier because* (as the general asserted) *the soldier did not fight bravely.*

Imperative

80. The imperative is used to express a command: **Curre**, *run.*

a. A negative command is expressed by **nōlī**, or **nōlīte**, and an infinitive: **Nōlīte currere**, *do not run.*

Infinitive

81. ***Infinitive as Object.*** The infinitive with subject accusative may be the object of a verb: **Eurystheus Herculem duodecim labōrēs cōnficere jussit,** *Eurystheus ordered Hercules to accomplish twelve tasks.*

82. ***Complementary Infinitive.*** The object infinitive, without a subject, may be used to complete the meaning of another verb: **Herculem interficere cōnstituit,** *she determined to kill Hercules.*

83. ***Infinitive as Subject.*** The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the subject of a verb: **Errāre est hūmānum,** *to err is human*; **Eōs discēdere licet,** *they are allowed to depart.* See section 99.

84. ***Infinitive in Indirect Discourse.*** The infinitive with subject accusative may be used with verbs meaning *say, think, know, tell,* or *perceive* to express an indirect statement: **Poētae nārrant Herculem in Graeciā habitāvisse,** *poets say that Hercules lived in Greece.*

a. In an indirect statement the present infinitive expresses the same time as that of the verb of *saying* etc.

b. The perfect infinitive expresses time before that of the verb of *saying* etc.

c. The future infinitive expresses time after that of the verb of *saying* etc.

Participles

85. The participle is a verbal adjective. As an adjective, it agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case; as a verb, an active participle may take an object. See section 234.

86. ***Participles as Substitutes for Clauses.*** A participle modifying a noun may express the idea conveyed by a clause of time (*when*), cause (*because, since*), condition (*if*), or concession (*although*), or by a relative clause: **Alcmēna perīculō līberōrum commōta,** *Alcmena, alarmed* (or *who was alarmed, because alarmed, when alarmed*) *by the danger of her children.*

87. ***Future Active Participle with Forms of*** **Sum.** The future active participle is used as a predicate adjective with forms of **sum** to express *what is going to happen*: **Dictūrus sum,** *I am about to say, I am going to say.* See section 182.

88. ***Future Passive Participle with Forms of*** **Sum.** The future

passive participle (gerundive) is used as a predicate adjective with forms of **sum** to express *what ought to happen*: **Librī portandī sunt,** *the books must be carried* (lit. *the books are to be carried*). See section 247.

89. ***Future Passive Participle with* ad *or* causā.** The future passive participle is used modifying the noun of a phrase with **ad** (accusative) or **causā** (genitive) to show purpose: **Ad pācem petendam vēnērunt,** *they came to seek peace* (lit. *they came to peace to be sought*); **Pācis petendae causā vēnērunt,** *they came for the sake of seeking peace* (lit. *of peace to be sought*). See section 173.

a. **Causā** always follows the participle.

Gerund

90. The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the singular and lacking the nominative. As a verb, it may have an object. See sections 77–78.

91. ***Gerund as Noun.*** The gerund is used in the usual constructions of nouns: **Bellandī cupidus,** *desirous of warring*; **Spēs capiendī oppidum,** *hope of taking the town.*

92. ***Gerund with* ad *or* causā.** The gerund is used with **ad** (accusative) or **causā** (genitive) to show purpose: **Ad discendum in lūdum intrāmus,** *we go to school to learn* (lit. *for learning*); **Pācem petendī causā vēnērunt,** *they came to seek peace* (lit. *for the sake of seeking peace*). See section 127.

VOCABULARY REVIEWS

The following lists of words to be mastered during this year include one half of the words prescribed for the first two years by the 1928 Syllabus of New York State. The other half of these Syllabus words appear in the vocabulary reviews in "Latin for Today: First-Year Course." Words not in the 1928 Syllabus list for the first two years are starred. The following reviews include also one half of the words recommended by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years.

List 1, Lessons 1–6

1. accidō
2. adulēscēns
3. alius
4. āmittō
5. auctor *
6. audāx
7. celer
8. cibus
9. clāmor
10. cōgō
11. collis
12. commūnis
13. cōnstituō
14. cursus
15. dēfessus
16. dēsistō
17. dignus *
18. dīvidō
19. flōs *
20. fōrma *
21. grātia
22. humilis
23. impediō
24. incitō
25. incolumis
26. īnferus *
27. inīquus
28. inquam *
29. īnstituō
30. jūstus
31. labor (*noun*)
32. līberī
33. mēnsis
34. mereō
35. mīrus *
36. necesse
37. nōn modo . . . sed etiam
38. occāsus
39. paene
40. palūs
41. pār
42. pāreō *
43. pendeō *
44. prīmum
45. quīdam
46. saxum
47. scūtum
48. servitūs
49. sīc
50. simul
51. spērō
52. sponte
53. subsidium
54. superus
55. supplicium
56. tergum
57. totidem
58. ūsque
59. ūsus
60. ut
61. vīs

List 2, Lessons 7–12

62. acūtus *
63. admīror
64. advertō
65. aliter
66. alter
67. at
68. calamitās
69. cōnspectus
70. cōnspiciō
71. convertō
72. dēns
73. doleō *
74. ēripiō
75. extrā
76. famēs
77. fleō *
78. folium *
79. impetus
80. īnstruō
81. lītus
82. loquor
83. moror
84. mulier
85. nāscor
86. nisi
87. noceō
88. omnīnō
89. opprimō
90. oppugnō
91. patior
92. pecus
93. postulō
94. prex
95. priusquam
96. prōcēdō
97. proficīscor
98. prōgredior
99. quīcumque
100. recipiō
101. redigō
102. rūrsus
103. sententia
104. sequor
105. singulī

VOCABULARY REVIEWS

The following lists of words to be mastered during this year include one half of the words prescribed for the first two years by the 1928 Syllabus of New York State. The other half of these Syllabus words appear in the vocabulary reviews in "Latin for Today: First-Year Course." Words not in the 1928 Syllabus list for the first two years are starred. The following reviews include also one half of the words recommended by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years.

List 1, Lessons 1–6

1. befall, happen
2. youth, young man
3. another
4. send away, let go, lose
5. originator, founder *
6. bold, daring
7. swift
8. food
9. outcry, shout
10. drive together, gather, compel
11. hill
12. common, general
13. put together, establish, decide
14. running, course
15. tired out
16. desist, cease
17. worthy, deserving *
18. separate, divide
19. flower, bloom *
20. shape, beauty *
21. favor, influence, gratitude
22. low, lowly
23. hinder
24. urge on, arouse
25. unharmed
26. below *
27. uneven, unfair
28. said I *
29. set up, establish, undertake
30. just, fair
31. toil
32. (freeborn) children
33. month
34. earn, deserve
35. marvelous, astonishing *
36. necessary
37. not only . . . but also
38. falling, setting
39. almost
40. swamp, marsh
41. equal
42. obey *
43. hang, be suspended *
44. first
45. a certain one, some one
46. rock
47. shield
48. slavery
49. thus, so
50. together, at the same time
51. hope
52. of one's own will, voluntarily
53. reserve, reënforcement, assistance
54. upper
55. punishment
56. back, rear
57. just as many
58. up to
59. use, advantage, experience
60. in order that, so that
61. violence, force

List 2, Lessons 7–12

62. sharp *
63. wonder at
64. turn to, proceed against
65. otherwise
66. the other (of two), second
67. but
68. disaster
69. view, sight
70. behold
71. turn around, change
72. tooth
73. grieve *
74. snatch out, free
75. outside of, beyond
76. hunger, starvation
77. weep *
78. leaf *
79. attack, charge, rush
80. arrange, marshal
81. coast, shore, beach
82. talk
83. delay, tarry
84. woman
85. be born
86. if not, unless, except
87. harm
88. altogether, at all
89. crush, overwhelm
90. attack, assault
91. suffer, allow
92. cattle
93. demand
94. prayer
95. (sooner than) before, until
96. go forward, advance
97. set forth, start
98. step forward, proceed
99. whoever
100. take back, receive
101. drive back, reduce
102. (turned back) again
103. feeling, opinion
104. follow
105. one at a time

List 2, Lessons 7–12 (*Continued*)

106. sōlum (*adv.*)
107. speciēs
108. tendō *
109. tollō
110. tūtus
111. ūllus
112. ultimus *
113. vērō
114. vestis *
115. vix

List 3, Lessons 14–17

116. administrō
117. aeger
118. bīnī *
119. causā
120. commodus
121. complūrēs
122. conjūrō
123. cōnsuēscō
124. cōnsūmō
125. cotīdiē
126. crēber
127. cum (*conj.*)
128. dēdūcō
129. digitus
130. disciplīna
131. ēventus
132. familiāris
133. ferō
134. imperō
135. interrogō
136. laus
137. lūx
138. majōrēs
139. numquam
140. opera
141. opīniō
142. paulō
143. perpetuus
144. pīlum
145. placeō *
146. praebeō
147. praeficiō
148. praeter
149. prīvātus
150. procul
151. prōsequor
152. queror
153. religiō *
154. revertō
155. simulō *
156. singulāris
157. spondeō *
158. studeō
159. studium
160. subsequor
161. tam
162. testis *
163. tueor
164. uterque
165. ūtor
166. vāstō
167. vel
168. vereor
169. volō (velle)

List 4, Lessons 22–24

170. aciēs
171. adversus
172. aes
173. afferō
174. aliēnus
175. alō *
176. capillus *
177. cāsus
178. centuriō
179. cliēns
180. contemnō *
181. dēcernō
182. dēdō
183. dēspērō
184. ferrum *
185. fīgō *
186. fīō
187. for *
188. incendō
189. īnstitūtum
190. intereā
191. iste *
192. lēgātus
193. licet
194. magistrātus
195. metus
196. nē
197. occīdō
198. ops
199. orior
200. ōs (ōris)
201. paulātim *
202. persuādeō
203. plēbs
204. polliceor
205. potēns
206. praestō
207. prīmō
208. prīncipātus
209. quisquam
210. quisque
211. recēns
212. recūsō
213. restituō
214. terror
215. trādō
216. tribūnus
217. tumulus
218. ūnā
219. vinculum

List 2, Lessons 7–12 (*Continued*)

106. only
107. appearance
108. stretch *
109. lift, remove
110. protected, safe
111. any
112. farthest, last ; *plur.* those in the rear *
113. in truth, but
114. cloth, garment *
115. barely, scarcely

List 3, Lessons 14–17

116. govern, manage
117. sick
118. two each *
119. for the sake of
120. suitable, convenient
121. several, very many
122. conspire, plot
123. become accustomed
124. use up
125. every day, daily
126. thick, close, frequent
127. when, since, although
128. lead away, launch
129. finger, toe
130. training, discipline
131. outcome, result
132. belonging to the household, intimate
133. bring, bear, carry
134. command, impose
135. ask (a question)
136. praise, glory
137. light
138. ancestors
139. never
140. work, effort
141. belief, view
142. (by) a little
143. unbroken, lasting
144. spear
145. please *
146. hold in front, afford, furnish
147. put at the head of
148. along past, beside
149. apart, private
150. afar
151. follow on, pursue, escort
152. complain
153. scruple, religion *
154. turn back, return
155. pretend *
156. one by one, extraordinary
157. pledge, promise *
158. be eager, desire
159. eagerness
160. follow closely
161. thus, so
162. witness *
163. gaze at, protect
164. each of two, both
165. use, employ
166. lay waste
167. or
168. fear, respect
169. be willing, wish

List 4, Lessons 22–24

170. edge, line of battle
171. (turned toward) facing, opposite
172. copper, bronze, money
173. bring to
174. belonging to another, strange, unfavorable
175. nourish *
176. hair *
177. fall chance, accident
178. centurion
179. dependent, retainer, vassal
180. despise *
181. decide, decree
182. give up, surrender
183. give up hope
184. iron *
185. fasten *
186. be made, happen, become
187. speak *
188. set on fire
189. custom
190. meanwhile
191. that one (of yours) *
192. envoy, deputy
193. it is permitted
194. office, official
195. fear
196. lest, that not
197. kill, massacre
198. aid, resources
199. rise
200. mouth, face
201. little by little *
202. persuade, convince
203. common people
204. promise
205. able, powerful
206. stand before, excel, guarantee
207. at first
208. leadership
209. any one at all
210. each one
211. fresh, new
212. object, refuse
213. place back, restore
214. fright, panic
215. hand over, intrust, surrender
216. tribune
217. small hill, mound
218. together
219. bond, fetter

List 5, Lessons 25–28

220. aedificium
221. aetās
222. afficiō
223. amplius
224. an
225. arbitror
226. armō
227. bis
228. castellum
229. circiter
230. circumveniō
231. clam
232. colloquium
233. colloquor
234. comparō
235. comperiō
236. compleō
237. comprehendō
238. concilium
239. cōnflīgō
240. cōnor
241. cōnscrībō
242. cōnsuētūdō
243. continuus
244. cupidus
245. dēserō
246. ēdō
247. eō (*v.*)
248. exitus
249. expugnō
250. honor
251. inermis
252. jūs jūrandum
253. mīlitāris
254. mīror *
255. negōtium
256. nēmō
257. nē . . . quidem
258. nocturnus
259. nōlō
260. obsidiō
261. perfugiō
262. postrīdiē
263. potius
264. praefectus
265. prohibeō
266. prūdēns
267. quā
268. regiō
269. resistō
270. silentium *
271. sollicitō
272. summa
273. trānseō
274. ūtilis
275. vetustus

List 6, Lessons 29–33

276. adeō (*v.*)
277. aditus
278. agmen
279. audeō
280. commeātus
281. dēferō
282. dēspiciō
283. distribuō
284. extrēmus *
285. ferus
286. grātīs
287. indicō *
288. jamprīdem
289. mālō
290. mandō
291. necō *
292. nōbilitās
293. offerō
294. oportet
295. pateō
296. perītus
297. plērīque
298. possideō
299. prīstinus
300. prōdō *
301. quaestor
302. quoniam
303. respōnsum
304. stīpendium
305. supersum
306. suscipiō
307. tempestās
308. trīduum
309. undique
310. vehementer
311. voluntās

List 7, Lessons 37–40

312. adhibeō
313. aegrē
314. aliquis
315. ancora
316. aperiō
317. apertus
318. arcessō
319. attingō
320. cēnseō *
321. colligō
322. commoror
323. cōnferō
324. cōnsequor
325. cōnsistō
326. cōnsulō
327. contrōversia
328. cruciātus *
329. dēligō (-ere)
330. dēmōnstrō
331. etsī
332. exanimō *
333. fallō *
334. hortor
335. ineō
336. īnferō
337. īnsequor

List 5, Lessons 25–28

220. building
221. age, time
222. do to, affect
223. more
224. or (in a question)
225. consider, think
226. arm, equip
227. twice
228. fort, redoubt
229. about
230. come around, surround, cut off
231. secretly
232. conference
233. talk together, confer
234. make ready, prepare, procure
235. find out, ascertain
236. fill up
237. grasp, seize, understand
238. meeting, council
239. strike together, fight
240. try, attempt
241. write together, enroll
242. custom, habit
243. unbroken
244. desirous
245. give up, abandon
246. put out, put forth
247. go
248. outcome, end
249. take by storm
250. honor, glory, office
251. unarmed
252. oath
253. of a soldier
254. marvel at *
255. business, task
256. nobody
257. not even
258. nightly
259. be unwilling
260. siege
261. flee to, desert
262. the day after, the next day
263. rather, preferably
264. captain, commander
265. keep away
266. foreseeing, discreet, wise
267. by what way, where
268. boundary line, district, country
269. take a stand, resist
270. silence *
271. stir up, tempt
272. highest sum, total
273. go across, cross
274. useful
275. old, ancient

List 6, Lessons 29–33

276. go to, visit
277. approach
278. marching column
279. dare
280. supplies
281. carry away, report
282. look down upon, despise
283. distribute
284. farthest, extreme, last *
285. wild, fierce
286. for nothing
287. proclaim, appoint *
288. long ago
289. prefer
290. hand over, commission
291. kill *
292. rank, nobility
293. bring against, offer
294. it behooves, ought
295. lie open, extend
296. experienced, skilled
297. the greater part, majority
298. possess, hold
299. former, of old
300. put forth, betray *
301. quaestor
302. inasmuch as, since
303. answer
304. tribute, tax, campaign, pay
305. be over, remain, survive
306. take up, undertake
307. period of time, weather, storm
308. three days
309. from (on) all sides
310. strongly, violently
311. willingness, good will

List 7, Lessons 37–40

312. call in, admit, employ use
313. with difficulty
314. some, any
315. anchor
316. open
317. open
318. summon, invite
319. touch upon, attain
320. assess, estimate, think, vote *
321. gather, collect
322. remain
323. bring together, collect, transport
324. follow up, overtake, attain
325. take position, halt, stop
326. plan, consult, deliberate
327. dispute, quarrel
328. torture *
329. pick out, choose
330. point out
331. and if, although
332. kill *
333. deceive *
334. urge, advise
335. go into, undertake
336. bring in, bring against
337. follow on, pursue

List 7, Lessons 37–40 (*Continued*)

338. intersum *
339. intervāllum
340. jugum
341. lēnis *
342. nancīscor
343. noctū
344. occāsiō
345. occurrō
346. pereō
347. perferō
348. potior
349. praecipiō
350. praesum
351. redeō
352. referō
353. reficiō
354. rēmus *
355. repente
356. reperiō
357. sī quis
358. sīve *
359. subdūcō
360. sublevō
361. suprā
362. suspicor
363. tēlum
364. vigilia

List 8, Lessons 41–54

365. abdō
366. aequō *
367. aggredior *
368. angustiae
369. angustus
370. animadvertō
371. bīduum
372. citerior
373. collocō
374. concēdō
375. concīdō
376. cōnfertus
377. cōnfīdō
378. conquīrō
379. cōnsīdō
380. cōnspicor
381. cotīdiānus
382. dēditiō
383. differō
384. eōdem
385. equitātus
386. expediō
387. explōrātor
388. ferē
389. fossa
390. frūmentārius
391. hīberna
392. hiemō
393. hūmānitās
394. impedīmentum
395. impetrō
396. incolō
397. instō
398. intercēdō
399. interclūdō
400. invītus
401. item
402. lacessō *
403. lēgātiō
404. legiō
405. maleficium
406. mercātor
407. mētior
408. mūnītiō
409. nōn nūllus
410. obses
411. pācō
412. pāgus
413. persequor
414. populor
415. poscō
416. profectiō
417. propterea
418. repentīnus
419. vadum
420. vagor
421. vāllum
422. vetus
423. vīcus

List 9, Lessons 56–68

424. accēdō
425. adorior
426. agger
427. audācter
428. cōgitō *
429. cohors
430. commemorō
431. congredior
432. conjungō
433. cōnsentiō
434. contumēlia
435. cum . . . tum
436. dēcertō
437. dēclīvis
438. dēfēnsor
439. dēsum
440. dētrīmentum
441. dīripiō *
442. efficiō
443. equester
444. exercitātiō
445. experior
446. explōrō
447. factiō
448. frōns

List 7, Lessons 37–40 (*Continued*)

338. be between, be of importance *
339. space between walls, interval
340. yoke, ridge
341. gentle, kind *
342. obtain
343. at night
344. opportunity
345. run against, meet
346. go through, perish
347. bear through, endure, announce
348. get power over, gain possession of
349. advise, give directions
350. be ahead, be in charge of
351. go back, return
352. bring back, report
353. make over, repair
354. oar *
355. suddenly
356. gain back, discover, find
357. if any, whoever
358. or if, whether *
359. lead under, lead up to, draw up, beach
360. assist
361. above, beyond
362. suspect
363. missile, weapon
364. night watch, guard

List 8, Lessons 41–54

365. put away, hide
366. make equal *
367. go toward, attack *
368. narrowness, defile, pass
369. narrow
370. turn the mind to, observe
371. two days
372. this side of, hither
373. place together, establish
374. withdraw, yield, allow
375. kill
376. crowded together, dense
377. trust
378. search for, seek for
379. settle, take position
380. behold
381. daily
382. surrender
383. be different, differ, postpone
384. to the same place
385. body of horsemen, cavalry
386. extricate, free
387. scout
388. almost, about, generally
389. ditch
390. belonging to grain
391. winter quarters
392. spend the winter
393. kindliness, culture
394. hindrance; *plur.* baggage
395. obtain (a request)
396. dwell in
397. stand on, press on, be at hand
398. go between, hinder, pass (of time)
399. shut off, cut off
400. against one's will
401. likewise
402. challenge, harass *
403. mission, embassy
404. legion
405. evil deed
406. trader
407. measure out, distribute
408. fortification
409. some
410. hostage
411. make peace, subdue
412. district, canton
413. follow through, pursue
414. lay waste, ravage
415. demand, claim
416. departure
417. on account of this, therefore
418. sudden
419. shoal, ford
420. roam
421. rampart
422. old, long-standing
423. village

List 9, Lessons 56–68

424. go to, approach, be added
425. rise against, attack
426. mound of earth, wall, rampart, causeway
427. boldly
428. think, reflect *
429. cohort, troop
430. mention
431. step together, meet
432. join together, unite
433. think together, agree
434. insult
435. both . . . and, not only . . . but also
436. fight a decisive battle
437. sloping down
438. defender
439. be lacking
440. loss
441. tear apart, plunder *
442. work out, accomplish, bring about
443. of a horseman, equestrian
444. training
445. try out, test
446. reconnoiter
447. party, faction
448. forehead, front

List 9, Lessons 56-68 (*Continued*)

449. funditor
450. grātulātiō
451. levis
452. neuter
453. nēve, neu
454. nūdō
455. occultus
456. oppidānus
457. oppugnātiō
458. pābulum
459. partim
460. paulisper
461. paulum
462. perturbō
463. plērumque
464. praedicō (-āre) *
465. praesēns
466. praetereā
467. prōtinus *
468. quīn
469. quod sī
470. rēs frūmentāria
471. rēs mīlitāris
472. rūmor *
473. sagittārius
474. significō
475. statiō
476. submittō
477. supportō
478. tardō
479. temerē *
480. tormentum
481. tumulus
482. turpis
483. versor
484. vulgus

List 10, Lessons 70-75

485. admittō
486. aestus
487. aquila
488. circumsistō
489. citus *
490. classis
491. commendō
492. cōnfestim
493. cōnstat *
494. dispergō
495. dīversus
496. effugiō
497. exiguus
498. fidēlis
499. firmus
500. ignōtus
501. īnfrā
502. māteria
503. mātūrus *
504. nātiō
505. onerārius
506. onus
507. opportūnus
508. pābulor
509. pedes
510. pedester
511. portus
512. posteāquam *
513. prior
514. pulvis
515. quōminus
516. suspīciō
517. trabs *
518. ultrō
519. ūniversus

List 11, Lessons 77-82

520. adeō (*adv.*) *
521. adigō
522. admodum
523. dērigō *
524. dīligēns
525. dīmicō
526. efferō *
527. ēruptiō
528. intereō
529. interior
530. mediocris *
531. modo (*adv.*)
532. mōtus *
533. parcō *
534. prīdiē
535. quidem
536. sīcut
537. tegō
538. tot
539. uter
540. vallēs

List 12, Lessons 83-87

541. caedēs
542. cernō
543. commūnicō
544. exstruō
545. fīniō
546. incidō
547. minuō
548. nōscō
549. occultō

List 13, Lessons 89-95

550. alacer
551. ēditus *
552. fīdūcia
553. mandātum
554. necessārius
555. parum
556. perfidia
557. plānitiēs
558. praesertim
559. quiētus
560. recuperō

List 8, Lessons 56–68 (*Continued*)

449. slinger
450. congratulation
451. light, fickle
452. neither (of two)
453. and that not
454. make bare, empty
455. hidden, secret
456. of the town, townsman
457. assault
458. fodder
459. partly
460. for a little while
461. (for) a little
462. throw into confusion
463. for the greater part, generally
464. assert *
465. present, in person
466. besides this, moreover
467. at once *
468. indeed, (but) that (with negative expressions of doubt)
469. but if, and if
470. grain supply
471. warfare
472. talk, gossip *
473. archer
474. show, indicate
475. outpost, picket
476. send, send forth, send to assist
477. carry up, supply
478. make slow, check
479. rashly *
480. military engine
481. small hill, mound
482. base, disgraceful
483. turn about, dwell
484. common crowd

List 10, Lessons 70–75

485. let go, admit
486. heat, tide
487. eagle
488. hem in, surround
489. swift *
490. fleet
491. intrust
492. immediately
493. it appears *
494. scatter
495. turned away, different
496. escape
497. limited, little
498. faithful
499. strong
500. unknown
501. below
502. timber
503. ripe, early *
504. race, people
505. suitable for burden, transport (ship)
506. burden
507. at the right time, suitable
508. forage
509. foot soldier
510. of a foot soldier, on foot
511. harbor
512. after *
513. preceding, former
514. dust
515. that not
516. suspicion
517. beam *
518. beyond, unasked, voluntarily
519. all together

List 11, Lessons 77–82

520. to that point, so *
521. drive to, haul, move
522. very, very much
523. direct, guide *
524. careful
525. fight
526. bear out, lift up *
527. breaking out, sally
528. perish
529. inner
530. middle, average *
531. only, just now
532. commotion, tumult, uprising *
533. spare *
534. on the day before
535. certainly, at least
536. just as
537. cover, conceal
538. so many
539. which of two
540. valley

List 12, Lessons 83–87

541. slaughter
542. distinguish
543. share, communicate
544. pile up, build
545. limit, bound, end
546. befall, happen
547. lessen
548. learn, recognize
549. hide, conceal

List 13, Lessons 89–95

550. eager, cheerful
551. elevated, raised, high *
552. confidence
553. commission
554. necessary
555. (too) little
556. treachery
557. plain
558. particularly
559. at rest, peaceful
560. regain, get back

REVIEW OF THE ENTIRE VOCABULARY OF THE FIRST YEAR

This list of the words set for mastery in "Latin for Today: First-Year Course" includes one half of the words prescribed for the first two years by the 1928 Syllabus of New York State. The other half of these Syllabus words appear in the vocabulary reviews preceding this list. Words not in the 1928 Syllabus list for the first two years are starred. The following list includes also one half of the words recommended by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years. Review this list thoroughly at the beginning of the second year.

1. ā (ab)
2. absum
3. ac (atque)
4. accipiō
5. ācer
6. ad
7. addūcō
8. adiciō
9. adsum
10. adventus
11. aequus
12. aestās
13. ager
14. agō
15. agricola
16. altitūdō
17. altus
18. amīcitia
19. amīcus
20. amō
21. amplus
22. animus
23. annus
24. ante
25. anteā
26. antecēdō
27. antīquus *
28. appellō (-āre)
29. appropinquō
30. apud
31. aqua
32. arbor
33. arma
34. ars *
35. auctōritās
36. audiō
37. augeō
38. aut
39. aut . . . aut
40. autem
41. auxilium
42. barbarus
43. bellum
44. bene
45. beneficium
46. bonus
47. brevis
48. cadō
49. caedō
50. campus
51. capiō
52. captīvus
53. caput
54. carrus
55. castra
56. causa
57. cēdō
58. celeritās
59. centum
60. certus
61. cēterī
62. circum
63. circumdō
64. cīvis
65. cīvitās
66. clāmō
67. claudō
68. coepī
69. cognōscō
70. committō
71. commoveō
72. compellō (-ere)
73. condiciō
74. cōnficiō
75. cōnfirmō
76. coniciō
77. cōnsilium
78. cōnsul
79. contendō
80. contineō
81. contrā
82. conveniō
83. cōpia
84. cor *
85. cornū
86. corpus
87. crēdō *
88. cum (*prep.*)
89. cupiditās
90. cupiō
91. cūr
92. cūra *
93. cūrō
94. currō
95. cūstōs *
96. dē
97. dēbeō
98. decem
99. decimus
100. dēfendō
101. dēficiō
102. deinde
103. dēleō *
104. dēpōnō
105. dēscendō *
106. dēsīderō *
107. deus
108. dexter
109. dīcō
110. diēs
111. difficilis
112. difficultās
113. dignitās
114. dīligentia *
115. dīmittō

REVIEW OF THE ENTIRE VOCABULARY OF THE FIRST YEAR

This list of the words set for mastery in "Latin for Today: First-Year Course" includes one half of the words prescribed for the first two years by the 1928 Syllabus of New York State. The other half of these Syllabus words appear in the vocabulary reviews preceding this list. Words not in the 1928 Syllabus list for the first two years are starred. The following list includes also one half of the words recommended by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years. Review this list thoroughly at the beginning of the second year.

1. from, away from
2. be away, be absent
3. and so, and
4. take to, receive, accept
5. sharp, keen, eager
6. to, toward, near
7. lead to, influence
8. add to
9. be near, be present
10. approach, arrival
11. level, equal, kindly
12. summer
13. field, country
14. drive, do, plead
15. farmer
16. height
17. high, deep
18. friendship
19. friendly
20. love
21. large, splendid
22. spirit, courage, mind
23. year
24. before
25. before that, previously
26. go before, surpass
27. ancient, old-time *
28. name, call
29. approach
30. near, in the presence of, among
31. water
32. tree
33. arms, implements
34. skill, art, theory *
35. authority, influence
36. hear
37. make grow, increase
38. or
39. either . . . or
40. moreover, but
41. aid, assistance
42. foreign, rude
43. war
44. well
45. kind deed, service
46. good
47. short, brief
48. fall
49. fell, cut, kill
50. plain, field
51. take, seize
52. captive, prisoner
53. head
54. wagon, cart
55. camp
56. reason
57. move, go away, yield
58. swiftness, speed
59. hundred
60. sure, certain
61. the others, the rest
62. around
63. put around, surround
64. citizen
65. citizenship, community, state
66. shout, cry
67. close, shut
68. have begun
69. learn; *perf.* know
70. send together, intrust, join
71. move thoroughly, alarm
72. drive together, collect, force
73. agreement, terms, condition
74. accomplish, complete
75. strengthen, assert
76. hurl, throw
77. plan, counsel
78. consul
79. struggle, hasten
80. hold together, bound
81. against, opposite
82. come together, assemble
83. supply, abundance; *plur.* forces
84. heart *
85. horn, wing (of an army)
86. body
87. give trust, believe, trust *
88. with
89. desire, longing
90. desire, wish
91. why
92. care, anxiety *
93. care for, provide
94. run
95. guardian, watchman *
96. down from, concerning
97. owe, ought
98. ten
99. tenth
100. ward off, defend
101. fail, revolt from
102. thereupon
103. destroy *
104. put down, put aside
105. climb down, descend *
106. desire, long for *
107. good
108. right (of direction)
109. say, speak
110. day
111. difficult
112. difficulty
113. worth, rank
114. carefulness *
115. send away, dispatch

116. discēdō
117. diū
118. dō
119. doceō
120. dolor *
121. dominus
122. domus
123. dubitō
124. dūcō
125. dum

126. duo
127. dūrus *
128. dux
129. ē (ex)
130. ego
131. ēgregius

132. emō
133. enim
134. ēnūntiō
135. eō (*adv.*)

136. eques

137. equus
138. et
139. et . . . et
140. etiam
141. excēdō
142. excipiō
143. exemplum *
144. exerceō *
145. exercitus
146. exīstimō
147. expleō *
148. expōnō
149. exspectō

150. facile
151. facilis
152. faciō
153. factum
154. facultās

155. fāma
156. familia
157. fēmina
158. fidēs

159. fīlia
160. fīlius
161. fīnis

162. fīnitimus
163. flectō *
164. flūmen
165. fluō *
166. fors (forte) *
167. fortis
168. fortūna
169. frangō *
170. frāter
171. frūmentum
172. frūstrā
173. fuga
174. fugiō
175. fundō *
176. gēns
177. genus
178. gerō
179. gladius
180. glōria *
181. grātus *
182. gravis
183. grex *
184. habeō
185. haereō *
186. hic (*pron.*)
187. hīc (*adv.*)
188. hiems
189. homō
190. hōra
191. hostis
192. hūc
193. ibi
194. īdem
195. idōneus
196. igitur *
197. ignis
198. ignōrō

199. ille
200. impellō
201. imperātum
202. imperium
203. impōnō
204. in
205. incipiō
206. inde
207. indūcō
208. inimīcus
209. initium
210. injūria
211. inopia
212. īnsidiae
213. īnsigne *
214. īnsula
215. integer
216. intellegō
217. inter
218. interficiō
219. interim
220. intermittō
221. intrā
222. inveniō
223. ipse
224. is
225. ita
226. itaque
227. iter
228. jaciō
229. jam

230. jubeō
231. jūdicō *
232. jungō
233. jūrō
234. jūs
235. juvō *
236. labōrō
237. lapis
238. lātitūdō
239. latus (*noun*)
240. lātus (*adj.*)
241. laudō
242. legō (-ere)
243. lēgō (-āre) *
244. lēx
245. liber (*noun*)
246. līber (*adj.*)
247. līberō
248. lībertās
249. ligō *
250. lingua
251. lītera

252. locus
253. longus
254. lūdō
255. lūna
256. magis
257. magister

258. magnitūdō
259. magnopere
260. magnus
261. malus
262. maneō
263. manus
264. mare
265. maritimus

266. māter
267. maximus *

268. medius
269. memoria
270. mēns
271. mēnsa
272. merīdiēs
273. meus
274. mīles
275. mīlle
276. miser
277. mittō

116. go away
117. a long time
118. give
119. teach, inform
120. pain, grief *
121. master
122. home, house
123. hesitate, doubt
124. lead
125. while, as long as, provided, until
126. two
127. hard, harsh *
128. leader
129. out of
130. I
131. outstanding, distinguished
132. buy, take
133. for, indeed
134. disclose, announce
135. thither, to that place
136. horseman, knight; *plur.* cavalry
137. horse
138. and
139. both . . . and
140. also, even
141. go out, withdraw
142. take out, succeed to
143. sample, example *
144. train *
145. trained body, army
146. think, believe
147. fill out, fill *
148. put forth, set forth
149. look out for, wait for
150. easily
151. easy
152. do, make
153. deed
154. power of doing, ability, chance
155. reputation, rumor
156. household
157. woman
158. trust, pledge, reliability
159. daughter
160. son
161. end, boundary; *plur.* territory
162. neighboring
163. bend, turn *
164. river
165. flow *
166. chance *
167. brave
168. chance, fortune
169. break *
170. brother
171. grain
172. in vain
173. flight
174. flee
175. pour out *
176. family, clan, tribe
177. origin, kind, race
178. carry on
179. sword
180. renown, glory *
181. pleasing, grateful *
182. heavy, serious
183. herd, crowd *
184. have, hold
185. stick *
186. this
187. here, at this point
188. winter
189. man, human being
190. hour
191. enemy
192. hither
193. there
194. the same
195. suitable
196. therefore, thus *
197. fire
198. be unacquainted with
199. that
200. drive on, urge on
201. command
202. command, power
203. put on
204. in, into
205. begin
206. thence
207. lead on, influence
208. unfriendly
209. beginning
210. wrong
211. want, lack
212. ambush, treachery
213. badge, device *
214. island
215. whole
216. understand
217. between, among
218. kill
219. meanwhile
220. interrupt, stop
221. inside, within
222. come upon, find
223. self, very
224. this, that, he
225. thus, so
226. and thus, therefore
227. road, march
228. hurl, throw
229. now, already, presently
230. order, command
231. judge, decide *
232. join
233. make oath, swear
234. right, law
235. aid, please *
236. toil, suffer
237. stone
238. width
239. side
240. wide
241. praise
242. pick, choose, read
243. appoint *
244. law
245. book
246. free
247. set free
248. freedom
249. bind *
250. tongue, language
251. letter (of the alphabet); *plur.* a letter, letters
252. place
253. long
254. play
255. moon
256. more greatly, more
257. master, teacher, helmsman
258. greatness, size
259. greatly
260. great
261. bad
262. stay, remain
263. hand, band, troop
264. sea
265. of the sea, maritime
266. mother
267. very large, greatest, largest *
268. middle
269. memory
270. mind
271. table, dish
272. midday
273. my, mine
274. soldier
275. thousand
276. wretched
277. send away

278. modus
279. moneō
280. mōns
281. mōnstrō *
282. mora
283. mors
284. mōs
285. moveō
286. multitūdō

287. multus
288. mūniō

289. mūnus

290. mūrus
291. mūtō *
292. nam
293. namque *
294. nātūra
295. nauta
296. nāvigō
297. nāvis
298. -ne

299. nec (neque)

300. neglegō *
301. negō *
302. neque . . . neque
303. nihil
304. nōbilis
305. nōmen
306. nōn
307. nōndum
308. nōnus
309. noster
310. nōtus
311. novem
312. novus
313. nox
314. nūllus
315. num *

316. numerus
317. nunc
318. nūntiō
319. nūntius

320. ob

321. obiciō
322. obsideō
323. obtineō
324. occupō
325. octāvus
326. octō
327. oculus
328. officium

329. omnis

330. oppidum
331. opus
332. ōrātiō
333. ōrdō
334. ōrō
335. ostendō
336. parō

337. pars
338. parvus
339. passus
340. pater
341. patria
342. paucī
343. pāx
344. pecūnia
345. pellō
346. pendō
347. per
348. perdūcō

349. perficiō
350. perīculum
351. permaneō
352. permittō
353. permoveō

354. perspiciō

355. perterreō

356. pertineō
357. perveniō

358. pēs
359. petō
360. plēnus *
361. poena

362. poēta
363. pōnō
364. pōns
365. populus
366. porta
367. portō
368. possum
369. post
370. posteā

371. posterus
372. postquam
373. potestās
374. praeda
375. praemittō
376. praemium
377. praesidium
378. prehendō *

379. premō
380. prīmus
381. prīnceps
382. prō

383. probō *
384. prōdūcō

385. proelium
386. prōficiō
387. prōiciō
388. prōnūntiō
389. prope
390. propinquus
391. prōpōnō
392. proprius *

393. propter
394. prōvincia
395. proximus *

396. pūblicus

397. puella
398. puer
399. pugna
400. pugnō
401. putō
402. quaerō
403. quam
404. quantus
405. quārtus
406. quattuor
407. -que
408. quī
409. quiēs
410. quīnque
411. quīntus
412. quis
413. quō
414. quod
415. quoque
416. rapiō *
417. ratiō

418. reddō
419. rēgīna
420. rēgnum

421. regō
422. relinquō
423. reliquus

424. remittō

425. removeō

426. renūntiō
427. rēs

278. measure, manner
279. warn, advise
280. mountain
281. point out *
282. delay
283. death
284. manner, habit
285. move
286. large number, crowd
287. much; *plur.* many
288. do a task, build, fortify
289. task, duty, service, offering
290. (town) wall
291. change *
292. for
293. for indeed, for *
294. nature, character
295. sailor
296. sail
297. ship
298. interrogative particle
299. and not, not, neither
300. overlook, neglect *
301. deny, refuse *
302. neither . . . nor
303. nothing
304. well known
305. name
306. not
307. not yet
308. ninth
309. our, ours
310. known
311. nine
312. new
313. night
314. none, no
315. a question particle *
316. number
317. now
318. give news, announce
319. news, message, messenger
320. against, on account of
321. throw against
322. sit against, besiege
323. hold fast, obtain
324. seize
325. eighth
326. eight
327. eye
328. duty
329. all, whole; *sing.* every
330. town
331. work
332. speech
333. order, rank
334. pray, plead
335. hold out, show
336. make ready, prepare
337. part
338. small
339. pace, (double) step
340. father
341. one's country
342. a few, few
343. peace
344. money
345. strike, beat, drive
346. hang, suspend, pay
347. through
348. lead through, construct
349. accomplish
350. trial, danger
351. stay through, abide
352. allow
353. move strongly, excite
354. look through, understand
355. frighten thoroughly
356. extend, belong to
357. come through, arrive
358. foot
359. seek, attack, ask
360. full *
361. penalty, punishment
362. poet
363. put, place
364. bridge
365. people, nation
366. gate
367. carry
368. be able, can
369. after, behind
370. after that, afterwards
371. next, later
372. (later than) after
373. power
374. prey, booty
375. send ahead
376. reward
377. garrison
378. seize *
379. press
380. first
381. leading man, chief
382. in front of, in behalf of
383. prove, approve *
384. lead forward, protract
385. battle
386. accomplish, gain
387. hurl (forward)
388. declare
389. near, near by
390. near-by, kinsman
391. set forth, propose
392. belonging to, characteristic *
393. near, on account of
394. province
395. very near, close by, next *
396. belonging to the people, public
397. girl
398. boy
399. fight
400. fight
401. think
402. seek, ask
403. how, as, than
404. how great, as great
405. fourth
406. four
407. and
408. who, which, that
409. rest, quiet *
410. five
411. fifth
412. who, any
413. whither
414. because
415. also, too
416. seize *
417. reckoning, plan, reason
418. give back, return
419. queen
420. kingdom, royal power
421. direct, rule
422. leave behind
423. left behind, remaining, rest of
424. send back, let go, relax
425. move back, withdraw
426. announce, proclaim
427. thing

428. rēs pūblica
429. respondeō
430. rēx
431. rīpa
432. rogō
433. rota *
434. rumpō *
435. sacer *

436. saepe
437. sagitta
438. salūs
439. satis
440. satisfaciō

441. scandō *
442. sciō
443. scrībō
444. secō *
445. secundus

446. sed
447. sedeō *
448. semper
449. senātus
450. sentiō
451. septem
452. septimus
453. servō
454. servus
455. sex
456. sextus
457. sī
458. signum
459. silva
460. similis
461. sine
462. sinister
463. socius
464. sōl
465. sōlus
466. solvō

467. soror
468. spatium
469. spectō

470. spēs
471. spīrō *
472. statim

473. statuō

474. stō
475. stringō *
476. struō *

477. sub
478. subitō
479. succēdō
480. suī

481. sum
482. summus *
483. sūmō
484. superō

485. sustineō
486. suus

487. tamen

488. tandem *
489. tangō
490. tantus
491. tardus
492. temptō
493. tempus
494. teneō
495. terminus *

496. terra
497. terreō *
498. tertius
499. timeō
500. timidus
501. timor
502. toga
503. tōtus
504. trahō
505. trāns
506. trēs
507. tribuō

508. tū
509. tuba
510. tum
511. turris
512. tuus

513. ubi
514. ultrā
515. umquam *
516. unda *
517. unde
518. ūnus
519. urbs
520. uxor *
521. vacuus
522. vādō *
523. valeō
524. vehō *
525. veniō
526. ventus
527. verbum
528. vertō
529. vērus
530. vesper
531. vester
532. via
533. vīcīnus
534. victor
535. victōria
536. videō
537. vīgintī
538. villa
539. vincō
540. vir
541. virtūs
542. vīta
543. vītō
544. vīvō *
545. vīvus *
546. vocō
547. volvō *
548. vōx
549. vulnerō
550. vulnus

428. commonwealth
429. answer
430. king
431. bank, shore
432. ask, ask for
433. wheel *
434. break *
435. set apart, holy, cursed *
436. often
437. arrow
438. health, safety
439. enough
440. do enough, do one's duty, apologize
441. climb *
442. know
443. write
444. cut *
445. following, second, favorable
446. but
447. sit *
448. always
449. body of elders, senate
450. feel, think, judge
451. seven
452. seventh
453. keep, save
454. slave
455. six
456. sixth
457. if
458. sign, signal, standard
459. forest
460. like, resembling
461. without
462. left (of direction)
463. ally
464. sun
465. alone, only
466. untie, release, perform, pay
467. sister
468. space
469. look at
470. hope
471. breathe *
472. at once, immediately
473. set up, fix, determine
474. stand
475. draw, unsheathe *
476. pile up, build, plan *
477. under, close to
478. suddenly
479. approach, come next
480. (of) himself, herself, itself, themselves
481. be
482. greatest, highest *
483. take
484. overcome, surpass, defeat
485. uphold, resist
486. his, her, its, their (own)
487. however, nevertheless
488. at length *
489. touch
490. so great
491. slow
492. try, attempt
493. time
494. hold
495. boundary line, limit *
496. earth, land
497. frighten *
498. third
499. be afraid, fear
500. fearful, cowardly
501. fear
502. toga
503. whole
504. drag, draw
505. across
506. three
507. assign, grant
508. thou, you
509. trumpet
510. at that time
511. tower
512. thy, thine, your, yours
513. where, when
514. beyond
515. ever *
516. wave *
517. whence
518. one
519. city
520. wife *
521. empty
522. walk, go *
523. be strong
524. carry *
525. come
526. wind
527. word
528. turn
529. true
530. evening
531. your, yours
532. way, road
533. neighboring
534. conqueror
535. victory
536. see
537. twenty
538. farm house
539. conquer
540. man
541. manliness, bravery
542. life
543. avoid
544. be alive *
545. alive *
546. call
547. roll *
548. voice, word
549. wound
550. wound.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The starred words are those specified for the first and second years in the word lists of the New York syllabus and of the College Entrance Examination Board. An English derivative is given in parentheses after many words.

ā, *see* **ab**

***ab (ā, abs)**, *prep. with abl.*, away from, from, by: **a milibus passuum duobus**, two miles off; **vacuum ab**, destitute of; **ab tanto spatio**, so far off; **a fronte**, in front; **a tergo**, from *or* on the rear; **ab infimo**, at the foot; **a dextro cornu**, on the right wing

abdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, resign (abdicate)

abditus, *p.p. of* **abdo**

***abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [*ab-do*], hide. — *With* **in** *and acc.*, withdraw to. — **abditus, -a, -um**, *p.p.*, hidden, remote, removed

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead away (abduct)

abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, go away

abiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*ab-jacio*], throw away, throw down, throw, hurl (abject)

abiēs, -ietis, *f.*, fir *or* spruce

abigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*ab-ago*], drive away

abjectus, *p.p. of* **abicio**

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*ab-rapio*], snatch away, carry away

abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, repeal (abrogate)

abs, *see* **ab**

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*abs-caedo*], cut off, tear off, tear away

abscīsus, *p.p. of* **abscido**

absēns, -entis, *see* **absum**

absentia, -ae, *f.*, absence

abstergeō, -ēre, -tersī, -tersus, wipe away, dry

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*abs-teneo*], refrain, stay away (abstain)

abstrāctus, *p.p. of* **abstraho**

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [*abs-traho*], drag away (abstract)

abstulī, *see* **aufero**

***absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus**, be away, be absent. — **absēns**, *pres. p. as adj.*, absent

Absyrtus, -ī, *m.*, Absyrtus, brother of Medea

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, be strong in (abundant)

***ac**, *see* **atque**

Acastus, -ī, *m.*, Acastus, son of Pelias

***accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [*ad-cedo*], move toward, approach; be added (accede)

accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, kindle, arouse

acceptus, *p.p. of* **accipio**

accessus, *p.p. of* **accedo**

***accidō, -cidere, -cidī,** — [*ad-cado*], fall to; happen, occur (accident)

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*ad-caedo*], cut into

accingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus [*ad-cingo*], gird on. — **accīnctus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, wearing

***accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [*ad-capio*], take, receive; suffer; hear. — **acceptus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, acceptable, welcome (accept)

acclīvitās, -ātis, *f.*, ascent (acclivity)

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, Acco, a leader of the Senones

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ad-commodo*], adjust. — **accommodātus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, fitted (accommodate)

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitus, lie, recline (*at table*)

accūrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, careful

accurrō, -currere, -currī, — [*ad-curro*], run to, ride up

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, accuse, blame, find fault with (accuse)

***ācer, ācris, ācre,** *adj.*, sharp

acerbē, *adv.*, bitterly: **ferre inopiam** (suffer severely from)

acerbus, -a, -um [*acer*], *adj.*, hard to bear; severe, sharp

ācerrimē, *superl. of* **acriter**

***aciēs, -ēī,** *f.*, point; line, line of battle, army: **oculorum** (keen glance)

ācriter, *adv.*, sharply, fiercely, violently

āctuārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, swift-sailing

āctus, *p.p. of* **ago**

acūmen, -inis, *n.*, acuteness

***acūtus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, sharp (acute)

***ad,** *prep. with acc.*, to, toward, against, till, at, on. — *With numerals*, about

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make equal to, equal (adequate)

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, become attached to

addīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, award

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*add-do*], add (add)

***addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus,** lead to, draw to; induce, drive (adduce)

***adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus,** go to, visit, approach

***adeō,** *adv.*, to that point, thus far, so much, so

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, —, ride up

adfore, *see* **adsum**

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesus, stick (to) (adhere)

***adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** [*ad-habeo*], call in, admit; employ, use

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, urge

adhūc, *adv.*, up to this time, still

***adiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus** [*ad-jacio*], throw to, hurl, add

***adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus** [*ad-ago*], drive to, drive up, drive in, move up (*towers*), shoot, hurl (*weapons*)

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [*ad-emo*], take away

adipīscor, -pīscī, adeptus sum, arrive at, gain (adept)

***aditus, -ūs** [*adeo*], *m.*, approach, access

adjectus, *p.p. of* **adicio**

adjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctus, join to, attach (adjunct)

adjūtor, -ōris [*adjuvo*], *m.*, helper

adjuvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtus, assist, help

administer, -trī, *m.*, servant; priest

***administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, perform, manage, conduct (administer)

***admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum**, be surprised at, wonder at (admire)

***admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus**, let go; allow: **in se facinus** (commit a crime) (admit)

***admodum**, *adv.*, very, entirely, very much. — *With numerals*, fully, at least

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, warn, urge (admonish)

adnītor, -ī, -nīxus sum, struggle

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, grow up (adolescent)

***adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum**, attack

adōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, worship (adore)

adsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, stand by: **in conspectu patris** (appear) (assist)

***adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, be near, be present, be at hand

Aduatucī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Aduatuci, a tribe of Belgians

***adulēscēns, -entis**, *adj.*, young. — *As noun*, a youth, young man

adulēscentia, -ae, *f.*, youth (adolescence)

adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, come to, arrive at, reach

***adventus, -ūs** [*advenio*], *m.*, arrival, approach (advent)

adversārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposed. — *As noun*, opponent, enemy (adversary)

adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum, oppose

***adversus, -a, -um**, *adj.* *See* **adverto**

adversus, *prep. with acc.*, against

***advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus**, turn towards, turn. — **adversus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, opposite, unfavorable (adverse)

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call, summon (advocate)

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fly to

aedēs, -is, *f.*, building, house, dwelling

***aedificium, -ī** [*aedifico*], *n.*, building (edifice)

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, build

aedīlis, -is, *m.*, aedile

aedīlitās, -ātis, *f.*, aedileship

Aeētēs, -ae (*acc.* **-ēn**), *m.*, Aeëtes, king of Colchis

***aeger, -gra, -grum**, *adj.*, sick, disabled

aegerrimē, *superl. of* **aegre**

***aegrē** [*aeger*], *adv.*, ill, feebly; with difficulty

Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, Aemilius. — *Esp.*, L. Aemilius Paulus

aēneus, -a, -um [*aes*], *adj.*, of copper, bronze

aequālis, -e, *adj.*, equal

aequāliter, *adv.*, evenly

aequē [*aequus*], *adv.*, equally

Aequī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Aequians

aequinoctium, -ī [*aequus-nox*], *n.*, the equinox

aequitās, -ātis [*aequus*], *f.*, fairness, justice (equity)

***aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** make equal, equalize

***aequus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, even, level, equal; fair, just, calm

āēr, āeris (*acc.* āera), *m.*, air

***aes, aeris,** *n.*, copper; money: **aes alienum,** debt (*another man's money*)

Aesōn, -onis, *m.*, Aeson, father of Jason

***aestās, -ātis,** *f.*, summer

aestimātiō, -ōnis [*aestimo*], *f.*, valuation, estimation

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, value, estimate, regard (estimate)

aestuārium, -ī [*aestus,* tide], *n.*, estuary, marsh

***aestus, -ūs,** *m.*, heat; tide

***aetās, -ātis,** *f.*, age, time

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, everlasting (eternal)

affectus, *p.p. of* **afficio**

***afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus** [*ad-fero*] bring to, cause, offer

***afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** [*ad-facio*], do to, affect, afflict (affect)

affīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus [*ad-figo*], fasten to

affirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ad-firmo*], declare, affirm

affīxus, *p.p. of* **affigo**

afflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ad-flicto*], shatter

afflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus [*ad-fligo*], dash, shatter, damage (afflict)

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, Africa

Āfricānus, -ī, *m.*, the cognomen of P. Cornelius Scipio

Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa. — *As noun* (*sc.* **ventus**), the southwest wind

āfuisse, āfutūrus, *see* **absum**

Agēdincum, -ī, *n.*, Agedincum, a town of the Senones

***ager, agrī,** *m.*, land, field, territory, country

***agger, -eris** [*ad-gero*], *m.*, earth (*for a wall*), mound of earth, wall

***aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum** [*ad-gradior,* walk], go toward; attack (aggressive)

aggregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, gather. — *With reflexive,* flock (aggregate)

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, discuss (agitate)

***agmen, -inis** [*ago*], *n.*, army, line (*of troops on the march*): **novissimum** (the rear)

agnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, recognize

***agō, agere, ēgī, āctus,** drive, do; move on, advance; act, treat, discuss, plead: **annos** (live); **gratias** (render, give, express) (act)

agrārius, -a, -um [*ager*], *adj.*, agrarian

***agricola, -ae** [*ager, colo*], *m.*, farmer

agricultūra, *see* **cultura**

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing; ala (*a room of the Roman house*)

***alacer, -cris, -cre**, *adj.*, active, eager

alacritās, -ātis [*alacer*], *f.*, eagerness, readiness (alacrity)

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white (album)

Alcmēna, -ae, *f.*, Alcmena, mother of Hercules

Alesia, -ae, *f.*, Alesia, a city of the Mandubii

Alexander, -drī, *m.*, Alexander (the Great)

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*alienus*], alienate, estrange (alienate)

***aliēnus, -a, -um** [*cf. alius*], *adj.*, another's, strange, foreign, unfavorable (alien)

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time

aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time

***aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod)**, *indef. adj. or pron.*, some, any; someone, anyone, something, anything

aliquot, *indecl. adj.*, several, some

***aliter**, *adv.*, otherwise: **aliter . . . ac (atque)**, otherwise . . . than

alitus, *see* **alo**

***alius, -a, -ud**, *adj.*, another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another (*plur.*, some . . . others); one . . . one (*thing*), another . . . another

allātus, *p.p. of* **affero**

Allia, -ae, *f.*, Allia, a little river eleven miles from Rome

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ad-ligo*], bind to, attach

Allobrogēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Allobroges, a Gallic people, living near the Lake of Geneva

Allucius, -ī, *m.*, Allucius, a young Spanish chief

almus, -a, -um, *adj.*, nourishing, kind, bountiful

***alō, alere, aluī, altus (alitus)**, feed, support

Alpēs, -ium, *f. plur.*, the Alps

***alter, -era, -erum**, *adj.*, the other (*of two*); the second; **alter . . . alter**, one . . . the other

***altitūdō, -inis** [*altus*], *f.*, height, depth (altitude)

***altus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, high, deep. — *Neut. as noun*, the sea, the deep

ambactus, -ī, *m.*, vassal

Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Ambarri, a tribe of Gaul

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Ambiani, a Belgian tribe

Ambiorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Ambiorix, a chief of the Eburones

ambō, -ae, -ō, *num. adj.*, both

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, walk

āmentia, -ae [*a-mens*], *f.*, madness, frenzy, insanity

āmentum, -ī, *n.*, strap, thong

***amīcitia, -ae** [*amicus*], *f.*, friendship

***amīcus, -a, -um** [*amo*], *adj.*, friendly, well-disposed. — *Masc. as noun*, friend, ally (amicable)

***āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus**, send away, let go, lose

***amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, love, like

amor, -ōris [*amo*], *m.*, love, affection

Amphīōn, -onis, *m.*, Amphion, husband of Niobe

amplē, *adv.*, widely, largely. — **amplius**, *comp.*, farther, more, longer

amplificō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [*amplus-facio*], increase, enlarge

***amplius**, *n. comp.*, more, a greater number

***amplus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, large, wide, great; prominent, noble, distinguished (ample)

***an**, *conj.*, or (*introducing the second member of a double question*)

anceps, **-cipitis**, *adj.*, double-headed; double: **proelium** (on both fronts)

ancilla, **-ae**, *f.*, servant, helper

***ancora**, **-ae**, *f.*, anchor

angulus, **-ī**, *m.*, corner (angle)

***angustiae**, **-ārum** [*angustus*], *f. plur.*, narrowness, narrow pass, defile, defiles

***angustus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, narrow, confined: **in angusto esse**, to be in a critical position

anīlis, **-e**, *adj.*, of an old woman

anima, **-ae**, *f.*, breath, life. — *Plur.*, soul (animate)

***animadvertō**, **-vertere**, **-vertī**, **-versus** [*animus-adverto*], turn the mind to, attend to, observe (animadvert)

animal, **-ālis** [*anima*], *n.*, animal (animal)

***animus**, **-ī**, *m.*, soul, mind, feelings, courage, resolution: **bono animo esse**, be well-disposed; **animi causa**, for pleasure (animus)

Aniō, **-ēnis**, *m.*, the Anio, a stream emptying into the Tiber

***annus**, **-ī**, *m.*, year (annual)

annuus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, yearly

ānser, **-eris**, *m.*, goose

***ante**, *adv.*, before, in front: **paucis ante diebus**, a few days before. — *Prep. with acc.*, before

***anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously

***antecēdō**, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessus**, go forward, advance, surpass (antecedent)

anteferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātus**, place in advance, prefer

antepōnō, **-pōnere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, place before, think of more importance

antequam, *conj.*, before

antevertō, **-vertere**, **-vertī**, **-versus**, put before, prefer

Antiochus, **-ī**, *m.*, Antiochus, king of Syria

antīquitus, *adv.*, long ago

***antīquus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, old, ancient (antique)

ānulus, **-ī**, *m.*, ring

anxius, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, troubled, anxious (anxious)

Ap., *abbr. for* **Appius**

***aperiō**, **-perīre**, **-peruī**, **-pertus**, uncover, open, disclose. — **apertus**, **-a**, **-um**, *p.p. as adj.*, open, exposed, unprotected: **latus** (the right side) (aperture)

apertē, *adv.*, openly

***apertus**, **-a**, **-um**, *see* **aperiō**

Apollō, **-inis**, *m.*, Apollo, god of the sun, of prophecy, and of music, and leader of the Muses

appāreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, — [*ad-pareo*, appear], appear (apparent)

apparō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [*ad-paro*], prepare, get ready

***appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, call, name, address (appellate)

appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [*ad-pello*, drive], land, bring to land

Appennīnus, -ī, *m.*, the Apennines, a mountain range in Italy

appetō, -ere, -petīvī (-iī), -petītus [*ad-peto*], desire, approach, seek (appetite)

Appius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Appian

Appius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

appōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus [*ad-pono*], set before, serve (apposition)

apportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ad-porto*], bring, bring in

approbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ad-probo*, find good], approve (approve)

***appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*ad-propinquo*, draw near], approach

Apr., *abbr. for* **Aprilis**

Aprīlis, -e, *adj.*, of April

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suited, adapted (apt)

***apud**, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, with, before, in possession of

Āpūlia, -ae, *f.*, Apulia, a country of southeastern Italy

***aqua, -ae**, *f.*, water (aquatic)

***aquila, -ae**, *f.*, eagle; the standard

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia, a city of Cisalpine Gaul

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.*, Aquitania, a division of Gaul

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the people of Aquitania, the Aquitanians

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar

Arar, -aris, *m.*, the Saône

arātrum, -ī, *n.*, plow

arbitrium, -ī [*arbiter*, judge], *n.*, judgment, will, opinion, choice

***arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum** [*arbiter*, judge], think, suppose (arbitrate)

***arbor, -oris**, *f.*, tree

arceō, -ēre, -uī, — , ward off

***arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus**, summon, send for

Ardea, -ae, *f.*, Ardea, a town of Italy

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep, difficult (arduous)

ārea, -ae, *f.*, yard, courtyard

arēna, -ae, *f.*, sand; the arena

arēnōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sandy

Arethūsa, -ae, *f.*, the Arethusa, a fountain of Sicily

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silverware

argilla, -ae, *f.*, clay

Argō, Argūs (*acc.* Argo; *no dat. or abl.*), *f.*, the Argo, Jason's ship

Argonautae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, the Argonauts

Argus, -ī, *m.*, Argus, builder of the Argo

āridus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry. — *Neut. as noun*, dry land (arid)

ariēs, -ietis, *m.*, ram; battering-ram

Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus, a chief of the Germans

***arma, -ōrum**, *n. plur.*, arms, equipment (arms)

armāmenta, -ōrum [*armo*], *n. plur.*, implements; tackle, rigging (armament)

armātūra, -ae [*armo*], *f.*, equipment: **levis armatura**e, light-armed

armentum, -ī, *n.*, herd

***armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, equip, arm. — **armātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, armed, in arms, equipped. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, armed men (arm)

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, plow

Arria, -ae, *f.*, Arria, a Roman woman

arroganter, *adv.*, insolently

arrogantia, -ae, *f.*, arrogance

Arrūns, -untis, *m.*, Arruns, son of Tarquinius Superbus

***ars, artis**, *f.*, skill, art. — *Plur.*, the useful arts (art)

artifex, -icis, *m.*, artist

artificium, -ī [*artifex*], *n.*, a trade, artifice

Arvernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Arverni, a tribe in Gaul. — *Masc. plur.*, the Arverni

arx, arcis, *f.*, fortress, citadel

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [*ad-scando*, climb], climb up, climb, ascend: **navem** (embark) (ascend)

ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent

Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia, Asia Minor

aspectus, -ūs, *m.*, appearance (aspect)

asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, rough (asperity)

aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus [*ad-specio*, look at], look on

assiduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, constant, continuous (assiduous)

assuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, train, accustom

assuētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, familiar, accustomed

***at**, *conj.*, but, but yet

Atalanta, -ae, *f.*, Atalanta

āter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, black, dark-colored

Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Athens, a city in Greece

Athēnodōrus, -ī, *m.*, Athenodorus, a philosopher

Atlās, -antis, *m.*, Atlas

atque (ac), *conj.*, and, and especially: **idem atque**, the same as; **aliter . . . ac (atque)**, otherwise . . . than; **simul atque**, as soon as

Atrebās, -ātis, *adj.*, Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a tribe of Belgians). — *Plur.*, the Atrebates

ātrium, -ī, *n.*, atrium (*a room of a Roman house*)

Ātrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

attendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus [*ad-tendo*, stretch], give attention to, give heed, listen (attend)

***attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus** [*ad-tango*], touch at, arrive at, touch, border on

attonitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, stunned, alarmed

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*ad-tribuo*], allot to, assign (attribute)

attulī, *see* **affero**

***auctor, -ōris** [*augeo*], *m.*, helper; proposer (author)

***auctōritās, -ātis** [*auctor*], *f.*, authority, influence, prestige (authority)

auctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **augeo**. — *Comp.*, **auctior**, richer, greater

audācia, -ae [*audax*], *f.*, daring, boldness (audacity)

***audācter** [*audax*], *adv.*, boldly, fearlessly

***audāx, -ācis**, *adj.*, bold, daring, brave

***audeō, audēre, ausus sum**, dare. — **ausus, -a, -um**, *p.p. in pres. sense*, daring

***audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus**, hear, hear of. — **audiēns, -entis**, *pres. p. as adj.*, obedient (*with* **dicto**) (audience)

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [*ab-fero*], take away, remove

aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, — [*ab-fugio*], flee away, run away

***augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus**, increase

aureus, -a, -um [*aurum*], *adj.*, golden

aurīga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer, driver

auris, -is, *f.*, ear (aural)

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold

Aurunculēius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

auspicium, -ī, *n.*, omen, auspices (auspicious)

ausus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* audeo

***aut**, *conj.*, or: ***aut . . . aut**, either . . . or

***autem**, *conj.*, but, now, moreover, furthermore

auxiliāris, -e [*auxilium*], *adj.*, auxiliary. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops (auxiliary)

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus sum [*auxilium*], give assistance

***auxilium, -ī**, *n.*, assistance, aid, relief. — *Plur.*, auxiliaries

avāritia, -ae [*avarus*], *f.*, greed, avarice (avarice)

avārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, greedy

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, carry off, take away

Aventīnus, -ī, *m.*, the Aventine, one of the hills on which Rome was built

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, turn aside, turn away. — **āversus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, turned away (avert)

avidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, greedy, hungry (avid)

avis, -is, *f.*, bird (aviator)

avunculus, -ī, *m.*, uncle

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather

Axona, -ae, *f.*, the Axona, a river of Gaul, now the Aisne

Bacchus, -ī, *m.*, Bacchus, god of wine

baculus, -ī, *m.*, staff, wand

Baculus, -ī, *m.*, P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion

Baleāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic, of the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean

balteus, -ī, *m.*, belt

barba, -ae, *f.*, beard

***barbarus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, foreign, uncivilized. — *Masc. plur.*, barbarians (barbarous)

Baucis, -idis, *f.*, Baucis, wife of Philemon

beātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, happy

Belgae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, the Belgae *or* Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul

Belgium, -ī, *n.*, Belgium

bellātor, -ōris, *m.*, warrior, fighter

bellicōsus, -a, -um [*bellum*], *adj.*, warlike (bellicose)

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*bellum*], fight, make war

Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Bellovaci, a tribe of the Belgians

***bellum, -ī,** *n.*, war: **bellum gerere,** wage war

***bene** [*bonus*], *adv.*, well

***beneficium, -ī** [*bene-facio*], *n.*, kindness, service, favor (benefice)

benignē, *adv.*, kindly

bibō, -ere, bibī, —, drink (imbibe)

Bibracte, -is, *n.*, Bibracte, a town of the Haeduans

Bibrax, Bibractis, *f.*, Bibrax, a town of the Remi

***bīduum, -ī** [*bis-dies*], *n.*, two days' time, two days

biennium, -ī [*bis-annus*], *n.*, two years' time (biennial)

***bīnī, -ae, -a,** *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, two each, two, two at a time

bipartītō, *adv.*, in two divisions

***bis,** *num. adv.*, twice

Bīthȳnia, -ae, *f.*, Bithynia, a country in Asia Minor

Biturīgēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Bituriges, a tribe of Gaul

blandus, -a, -um, *adj.*, smooth, gentle, caressing (bland)

Bōiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Boii, a tribe of Gaul

bonitās, -ātis [*bonus*], *f.*, goodness: **agrorum** (fertility)

***bonus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, good: **bono animo esse,** to be well-disposed. — *Neut. as noun*, good, advantage; *plur.*, goods, property. — *Superl.*, **optimus, -a, -um,** best (optimist)

bōs, bovis, *m.*, ox. — *Plur.*, cattle (bovine)

bracchium, -ī, *n.*, *arm*

Bratuspantium, -ī, *n.*, Bratuspantium, a town of the Bellovaci

Brennus, -ī, *m.*, Brennus, leader of the Gauls

***brevis, -e,** *adj.*, short: **brevi,** in a short space (brief)

brevitās, -ātis [*brevis*], *f.*, shortness, short stature (brevity)

Britannī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Britons

Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain

brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

bulla, -ae, *f.*, amulet, charm

C, *for* **centum,** hundred

C., *abbr. for* **Gāius,** Gaius *or* Caius

cadāver, -eris [*cf. cado*], *n.*, corpse (cadaverous)

***cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus,** fall, be killed

caecitās, -ātis [*caecus*], *f.*, blindness

caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind

***caedēs, -is** [*caedo*], *f.*, murder, massacre, slaughter

***caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus,** cut, slay, kill

caelestis, -e [*caelum*], *adj.*, heavenly. — *Masc. plur.*, the gods (celestial)

caelum, -ī, *n.*, heaven, the sky

caeruleus, -a, -um [*caelum*], *adj.*, dark blue (cerulean)

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, C. Julius Caesar, the author of the "Commen-

taries," and L. Julius Caesar, a kinsman of the former and his legatus

caespes, -itis, *m.*, sod

caestus, -ūs, *m.*, boxing glove

caesus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **caedo**

Calaïs (*nom. only*), *m.*, Calaïs, one of the Argonauts

***calamitās, -ātis,** *f.*, disaster, defeat, misfortune (calamity)

calceus, -ī, *m.*, shoe

Caletī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Caleti, a tribe of the Belgians

Calliopē, -ēs, *f.*, Calliope, muse of epic poetry

cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, servant, camp follower

Calpurnia, -ae, *f.*, Calpurnia, a Roman lady

camillus, -ī, *m.*, an attendant in religious sacrifices

Camillus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

Campānia, -ae, *f.*, Campania, a district of Italy

***campus, -ī,** *m.*, plain, open field (campus)

candidātus, -ī [*candidus*], *m.*, a candidate

candidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white (candid)

Canīnius, -ī, *m.*, Caninius, a Roman consul

canis, -is, *m.*, dog (canine)

Cannēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of Cannae, a town in Apulia, where the Romans were defeated in 216 B.C.

canō, -ere, cecinī, —, sing, sound

Cantium, -ī, *n.*, Kent, the southeastern part of Britain

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, sing

***capillus, -ī,** *m.*, the hair (capillary)

***capiō, capere, cēpī, captus,** take, capture, get, acquire, seize: **portum** (arrive at, make); **fugam** (take to flight) (capture)

Capitōlīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Capitol, Capitoline

Capitōlium, -ī, *n.*, the Capitol

***captīvus, -a, -um** [*capio*], *adj.*, captive. — *Masc. as noun,* captive, prisoner (captive)

captus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **capio**

***caput, -itis,** *n.*, head; person; mouth (*of a river*); life: **poenam capitis** (of death); **capitis periculo** (of life) (capital)

carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison; starting point (*of a race*) (incarcerate)

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, be without, go without

carmen, -inis, *n.*, song, incantation

Carnutēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Carnutes, a Gallic tribe

carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh, meat (carnal)

carpō, -pere, -psī, -ptus, pluck

***carrus, -ī,** *m.*, cart (car)

Carthāginiēnsis, -is, *m.*, a Carthaginian

Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*, Carthage

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, precious, valuable

casa, -ae, *f.*, hut, cottage

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius

Cassius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, Cassivellaunus, a British chief

***castellum, -ī** [*castrum*], *n.*, fortress, outwork, redoubt (castle)

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus, a chief of the Sequani

Castor, -oris, *m.*, Castor, twin brother of Pollux

***castrum, -ī,** *n.*, fortress. — *Plur.*, camp: **castra ponere,** pitch camp; **castra movere,** break camp, move (-chester)

***cāsus, -ūs** [*cado*], *m.*, accident, fate, chance, misfortune: **casu,** by accident, by chance

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain

caterva, -ae, *f.*, throng, crowd

Catilīna, -ae, *m.*, a Roman name. — *Esp.*, L. Sergius Catiline, the conspirator

Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman name. — *Esp.*, M. Porcius Cato, a famous Roman censor

cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail (caudal)

***causa, -ae,** *f.*, reason, excuse, motive; case (*in law*): **satis causae,** sufficient reason; **causam dicere,** plead one's cause (cause)

***causā** [*abl. of causa*], by reason of, for the sake of (*with gen. preceding*)

cautē [*cautus, p.p. of caveo*], *adv.*, cautiously

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, be on one's guard (*against*) (cautious)

***cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus,** give way, yield, fall (by lot), retreat, retire (cede)

celeber, -bris, -bre, *adj.*, crowded, thronged

celebrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, brilliant, celebrated

***celer, -eris, -ere,** *adj.*, swift, fast

***celeritās, -ātis** [*celer*], *f.*, swiftness, speed (celerity)

celeriter [*celer*], *adv.*, quickly, speedily

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, conceal, hide

Celtae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, the Celts, a race in Gaul and Britain

cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner, banquet

Cēnabum, -ī, *n.*, Cenabum, the chief city of the Carnutes

cēnāculum, -ī [*ceno*], *n.*, dining-room

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dine

***cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus,** reckon, estimate; think, advise

cēnsor, -ōris [*censeo*], *m.*, censor

cēnsūra, -ae [*censeo*], *f.*, censorship

cēnsus, -ūs [*censeo*], *m.*, count, census (census)

centaurus, -ī, *m.*, centaur, a fabulous creature, half man, half horse

***centum (C),** *indecl. num. adj.*, hundred (cent)

***centuriō, -ōnis,** *m.*, centurion

cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax

Cerberus, -ī, *m.*, Cerberus, the dog guarding the entrance to the Lower World

Cerēs, -eris, *f.*, Ceres, goddess of agriculture

***cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus,** see

certāmen, -inis [*certo,* contend], *n.*, struggle, contest, rivalry

certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely, at least

***certus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, determined, fixed, certain: **certiorem facere,** inform, order (certain)

cervus, -ī, *m.*, deer, stag

***cēterī, -ae, -a,** *adj.*, *plur.*, the rest, the rest of, the remaining, the others

Cevenna, -ae, *f.*, the Cévennes, a mountain range on the west side of the Rhone valley

***cibus, -ī,** *m.*, food

cicātrīx, -trīcis, *f.*, scar

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, a name of a Roman family. — *Esp.*, M. Tullius Cicero, the orator

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Cimbri, a German tribe

Cīneās, -ae, *m.*, Cineas, a friend of King Pyrrhus

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, surround, encircle (cincture)

Circē, -ēs, *f.*, Circe, an enchantress

***circiter,** *adv., and prep. with acc.*, about, near

circuitus, -ūs [*circumeo*], *m.*, circuit, circuitous route, circumference: **in circuitu,** all around (circuit)

***circum,** *adv., and prep. with acc.*, about, around

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*circum-caedo*], cut around, cut

***circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus,** put around, surround, encircle

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go around, visit, make a tour of

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, pour around; crowd around, surround

circumitus, *p.p. of* **circumeo**

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, send around

***circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī (-stitī), —,** stand around, surround, hem in

circumspectius, *adv., comp.*, more carefully, rather carefully

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*circum-specio*, look at], look about, examine (circumspect)

circumstō, -stāre, -steti, —, stand around

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make an intrenchment around

***circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus,** surround

cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side, this side of

Cita, -ae, *m.*, C. Fufius Cita, a Roman knight

citātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **cito**

***citerior, -ius,** *adj., comp.*, nearer, hither

cithara, -ae, *f.*, a harp

citharoedus, -ī, *m.*, harpist, minstrel

citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*citus*], urge on, hurry. — **citātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, in haste (cite)

citō, *adv.*, quickly: **citissimē,** very rapidly

citrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, this side, within

***citus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, quick

***cīvis, -is,** *c.*, citizen (civil)

***cīvitās, -ātis** [*civis*], *f.*, citizenship, the citizens, a state, tribe

clādēs, -īs, *f.*, loss, slaughter, defeat

***clam,** *adv., and prep. with abl.*, secretly

***clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** shout, cry out

***clāmor, -ōris,** *m.*, shout, outcry (clamor)

clandestīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, secret (clandestine)

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous; loud, distinct (clear)

***classis, -is**, *f.*, fleet

Claudius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Appius Claudius

***claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus**, close, shut, hem in: **claudere agmen**, close the line of march, bring up the rear (close)

clēmentia, -ae [*clemens*, kind], *f.*, kindness, gentleness, mercy (clemency)

***cliēns, -entis**, *m.*, dependent, follower, retainer (client)

clientēla, -ae [*cliens*], *f.*, vassalage

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*com-acervus*], heap together, heap on top

coāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **cogo**

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, press together

coëō, -īre, -iī, —, come together, unite, meet

***coepī, -isse, coeptus**, *defective*, began, started. — **coeptus, -a, -um**, *p.p. used with pass. infinitives*, began

coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [*com-arceo*, shut up], confine, keep in check, restrain (coerce)

***cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*com-agito*], consider, think, think over (cogitate)

cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, family, clan

cognitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **cognosco**

cognōmen, -inis, *n.*, cognomen

***cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus**, learn, find out, investigate, inquire into. — *In perf. tenses*, know (cognizance)

***cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus** [*com-ago*], bring together, collect, assemble; force, compel, oblige (cogent)

***cohors, -hortis**, *f.*, cohort

cohortātiō, -ōnis [*cohortor*], *f.*, encouragement

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage

Colchī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Colchians, inhabitants of Colchis

Colchis, -idis (*acc.* **-ida**), *f.*, Colchis, a country east of the Black Sea

Collātīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Collatia

collaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, praise

colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bind together

***colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus** [*com-lego*, gather], gather together, collect. — *With reflex.*, collect one's self, recover (collect)

***collis, -is**, *m.*, hill

***collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, place, set, station

***colloquium, -ī**, *n.*, conference, interview (colloquy)

***colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum**, confer, hold an interview

collum, -ī, *n.*, neck

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, cultivate; inhabit; cherish, worship

colōnus, -ī, *m.*, colonist

color, -ōris, *m.*, color (color)

columba, -ae, *f.*, pigeon, dove

columen, -inis, *n.*, top, head, prop, support

columna, -ae, *f.*, column (column)

coma, -ae, *f.*, hair

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [*com-uro*, burn], burn up, consume

comes, -itis, *c.*, companion (count)

comitium, -ī, *n.*, comitium, a part of the Roman Forum. — *Plur.*, assembly of the Roman people, election

***commeātus, -ūs** [*commeo*, go back and forth], *m.*, trip; supplies, provisions

***commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, remind one of; speak of, state (commemorate)

***commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*com-mando*, commit], intrust, commend, surrender (commend)

commīlitō, -ōnis [*com-miles*], *m.*, fellow soldier

comminus [*com-manus*], *adv.*, hand to hand, in close combat

***committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus**, join; trust, intrust, allow: **proelium** (engage in) (commit)

Commius, -ī, *m.*, Commius, a leader of the Gauls

commodē, *adv.*, conveniently, fitly, readily: **satis commode**, to much advantage, very easily, satisfactorily

***commodus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, suitable, fitting, convenient, advantageous, well (*of health*). — *Neut. as noun*, comfort, advantage, interest (commodious)

***commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum**, delay

***commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**, move, stir, agitate; disturb, alarm (commotion)

***commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*communis*], share, make known, communicate (communicate)

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, strongly fortify

***commūnis, -e**, *adj.*, common, general (common)

commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, change, exchange (commute)

***comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together

***compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus**, drive together, drive in, force, drive (compel)

***comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus**, find out, discover. — **compertus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, certain

competītor, -ōris, *m.*, competitor (competitor)

compīlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, rob

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, embrace (complex)

***compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus**, fill up, fill (complete)

***complūrēs, -plūra**, *adj.*, *plur.*, very many, a great many

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bring together, collect

***comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus**, seize, catch, arrest, capture (comprehend)

comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, press together, squeeze (compress)

comprobō, -probāre, -probāvī, -probātus, assent to, ratify. — **comprobātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, approved

compulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* compello

cōnātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* conor

cōnātus, -ūs [*conor*], *m.*, attempt, effort

***concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus**, yield, allow, grant, permit (concede)

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, — [*com-cado*], fall down, fall

***concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus** [*com-caedo*], cut to pieces, kill, cut up

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, win over, gain, obtain (conciliate)

***concilium, -ī**, *n.*, meeting, assembly, council, conference, gathering (council)

concīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* concido

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arouse, stir up

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cry out, shout

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, *m.*, Conconnetodumnus, a leader of the Carnutes

concordia, -ae, *f.*, harmony (concord)

concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursus, run together, rush up, unite (concur)

concursus, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, collision

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*com-damno*], condemn, find guilty (condemn)

***condiciō, -ōnis**, *f.*, terms, condition (condition)

conditor, -ōris, *m.*, founder

condō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, establish, found

Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Condrusi, a Belgian tribe

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, bring together, bring up, hire (conduce)

cōnferciō, -fercīre, -fersī, -fertus, crowd together

***cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus**, bring together, get together, collect; postpone. — *With reflexive*, betake one's self, remove, take refuge (confer)

***cōnfertus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, close, crowded, dense

***cōnfestim**, *adv.*, immediately, at once

***cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [*com-facio*], accomplish, finish, complete, end, perform, furnish; exhaust, wear out (confection)

***cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum**, trust, be confident, trust to, have confidence in, rely on. — **cōnfīsus, -a, -um**, *p.p. in act. sense*, trusting in (confide)

***cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, strengthen, establish (**pacem**), confirm, reassure, encourage (confirm)

cōnfīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* confido

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum [*com-fateor*, confess], confess, admit (confess)

cōnfīxus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fastened together

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, be on fire, burn (conflagration)

***cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flictus**, dash together, dash against, contend, fight (conflict)

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, flee for refuge

cōnfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, bring together (confound)

cōnfūsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **confundo**

***congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum** [*com-gradior*, step], come together; engage, fight (congress)

congressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **congredior**

***coniciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus** [*com-jacio*], throw together, hurl, cast; place, station

conjectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **conicio**

conjūnctim [*conjungo*], *adv.*, in common

conjūnctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **conjungo**

***conjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctus**, unite, fasten together (conjunction)

conjūnx, -jugis [*conjungo*], *c.*, husband, wife

conjūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy, confederacy

***conjūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, take an oath; conspire, plot

***cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, attempt, try, endeavor (conative)

***conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus** [*com-quaero*], search for, seek for

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [*com-sanguis*], *adj.*, akin. — *As noun*, kinsman (consanguinity)

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [*com-scando*, climb], climb, climb upon, go on board (*a ship*)

***cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus**, enroll, levy, enlist: **epistulam** (write); **patres conscripti**, senators (conscript)

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sacred, holy (consecrate)

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus sum [*freq. of* **consequor**], overtake, follow up

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **consequor**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, consent (consensus)

***cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus**, agree, conspire (consent)

***cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum**, overtake; obtain, secure, attain (consequence)

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, preserve, spare (conserve)

Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, Considius, a Roman officer

***cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus**, sit down; take a position, halt, encamp, settle, meet

***cōnsilium, -ī**, *n.*, deliberation, counsel, plan, design, purpose (counsel)

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.*, very like, just like

***cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —**, take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (*of ships*), remain, stay. — *With* **in**, depend on, consist of (consist)

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, console, cheer. — **cōnsōlātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as pres.*, consoling (console)

***cōnspectus, -ūs,** *m.*, sight, view
cōnspicātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **conspicor**
***cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus** [*com-specio*, look at], catch sight of, see
***cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum** [*conspicio*], catch sight of, see
cōnstantia, -ae [*constans*, firm], *f.*, firmness, constancy, courage (constancy)
***cōnstat,** *see* **consto**
cōnstīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, press together, crowd
cōnstitī, *see* **consisto**
***cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus** [*com-statuo*], set up, raise; establish, station, arrange, draw up; determine, appoint, agree upon (constitute)
cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus, agree; be established, appear, be evident: **constat,** it appears (constant)
***cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus,** become accustomed. — *In perf. tenses,* be accustomed, be wont. — **cōnsuētus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, accustomed, wont, used
***cōnsuētūdō, -inis,** *f.*, habit, custom, practice
***cōnsul, -ulis,** *m.*, consul
cōnsulāris, -e [*consul*], *adj.*, consular, a man of consular rank. — *Masc. as noun,* ex-consul (consular)
cōnsulātus, -ūs [*consul*], *m.*, consulship
***cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultus,** deliberate; consult. — *With dat.*, take counsel for, look out for
cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, consider, take counsel (consult)
cōnsultō, *adv.*, purposely
cōnsultum, -ī [*consulo*], *n.*, decision, decree: **senatus consultum,** an order of the senate
***cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus,** waste, destroy, exhaust, spend (consume)
cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus, rise, rise up
contāctus, -ūs [*contingo*], *m.*, touch (contact)
contāgiō, -ōnis [*com-tango*], *f.*, contact (contagion)
***contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptus,** despise (contemn)
contemptiō, -ōnis [*contemno*], *f.*, contempt, scorn (contempt)
contemptor, -ōris [*contemno*], *m.*, a scorner, despiser
contemptus, -ūs [*contemno*], *m.*, contempt, scorn
***contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus,** strive, try, endeavor; hasten; fight, contend, wage war (contend)
contentiō, -ōnis [*contendo*], *f.*, struggle, efforts; contest, dispute (contention)
contentus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **contendo** *and* **contineo**
contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, interweave, weave together (context)
continēns, -entis [*contineo*], *f.*, continent
continenter, *adv.*, continually
continentia, -ae, *f.*, restraint
***contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus** [*com-teneo*], hold together;

restrain, hold, hold in check, hem in, bound. — *Pass. or with reflex.*, keep within, remain. — **continēns, -entis**, *pres. p. as adj.*, continual, continuous. — **contentus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, satisfied

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [*com-tango*], touch, reach, join. — *With dat.*, happen (contingent)

***continuus, -a, -um** [*contineo*], *adj.*, continuous, successive (continuous)

cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly, meeting

***contrā**, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, opposite, contrary to, against

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, draw together, contract, make smaller (contract)

contrārius, -a, -um [*contra*], *adj.*, opposite, contrary: **ex contrario**, on the contrary (contrary)

***contrōversia, -ae**, *f.*, dispute, quarrel (controversy)

contulī, *see* **cōnferō**

***contumēlia, -ae**, *f.*, outrage, insult, violence (contumely)

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, —, recover, get stronger (convalesce)

***conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus**, come together, meet, assemble; agree upon. — *With acc.*, meet, come to. — **convenit**, *impers.*, it is agreed (convene)

conventus, -ūs [*convenio*], *m.*, assembly, court (convent)

***convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus**, turn about, turn, change: **signa** (change front, wheel); **conversa signa in hostes inferre**, face about and charge the enemy (convert)

convīvium, -ī, *n.*, feast, banquet (convivial)

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call together, summon, call (convoke)

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, arise, spring up, break out

***cōpia, -ae**, *f.*, abundance, plenty, supply. — *Plur.*, resources, supplies, forces

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [*copia*], *adj.*, well supplied, wealthy (copious)

***cor, cordis**, *n.*, heart (cordial)

cōram, *adv.*, face to face, present, in person

Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth, a city in Greece

Coriolānus, -ī, *m.*, Coriolanus

Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, mother of the Gracchi

Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

***cornū, -ūs**, *n.*, horn; wing (*of an army*)

corōna, -ae, *f.*, garland, wreath, crown: **sub corona**, at auction (crown)

***corpus, -oris**, *n.*, body (corporal)

corrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, correct, make up (correct)

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, destroy, ruin, corrupt (corrupt)

***cotīdiānus, -a, -um** [*cotidie*], *adj.*, daily

***cotīdiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day

Cotta, -ae, *m.*, a Roman name. — *Esp.*, L. Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Caesar

Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, Cotuatus, a chief of the Carnutes

crās, *adv.*, tomorrow (procrastinate)

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

creātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **creo**

***crēber, -bra, -brum**, *adj.*, thick, close; numerous, frequent

crēditor, -ōris, *m.*, creditor

***crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus**, trust, believe, suppose (creed)

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, burn, consume (cremate)

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, create; elect, choose, appoint (create)

crepundia, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, rattle, plaything

Crēs, Crētis, *m.*, a Cretan. — *As adj.*, Cretan

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, grow, increase, grow powerful (crescent)

crīmen, -inis, *n.*, charge, fault, offense (crime)

crīnis, -is, *m.*, hair, lock (*of hair*)

croceus, -a, -um, *adj.*, yellow

***cruciātus, -ūs**, *m.*, torture

crūdēlis, -e, *adj.*, cruel

crūdēlitās, -ātis [*crudelis*], *f.*, cruelty

crūdēliter, *adv.*, cruelly

cubiculum, -ī, *n.*, chamber

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, blame, find fault with (inculpate)

culter, -trī, *m.*, knife

cultūra, -ae, *f.*, cultivation: **agri cultura**, agriculture (culture)

cultus, -ūs [*colo*], *m.*, cultivation; civilization, manner of life (cult)

***cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with

***cum**, *conj.*, when, whenever, while, since, inasmuch as, although, though: ***cum . . . tum**, while . . . so also, not only . . . but also; **cum primum**, as soon as

cumera, -ae, *f.*, a box (*for the utensils of a bride*)

cumulus, -ī, *m.*, pile, heap (cumulous)

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, hesitate

cunīculus, -ī, *m.*, mine

cupidē [*cupidus*], *adv.*, eagerly, zealously

***cupiditās, -ātis** [*cupidus*], *f.*, desire, eagerness, greed (cupidity)

Cupīdō, -inis, *m.*, Cupid

***cupidus, -a, -um** [*cupio*], *adj.*, eager, desirous, fond of

***cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus**, be eager (for), be anxious, desire

***cūr**, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why

***cūra, -ae**, *f.*, care, anxiety, attention

cūrātiō, -ōnis [*curo*], *f.*, cure

cūria, -ae, *f.*, the senate house

cūriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, meddlesome (curious)

Curius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Curius Dentatus, famous for his moderation and for his victories in war

***cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, take care, provide for. — *With gerundive*, cause (*to be done*), have (*done*) (cure)

***currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus**, run

currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot

Cursor, -ōris, *m.*, a Roman name

***cursus, -ūs** [*curro*], *m.*, running, speed, race, a run, a course: **cursu incitato** *or* **magno**, at full speed (course)

curūlis, -e, *adj.*, curule (*aedile*)

cuspis, -idis, *f.*, point, spear point

cūstōdia, -ae [*custos*], *f.*, custody, guard (custody)

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [*custos*], guard

***cūstōs, -ōdis**, *c.*, guard, watchman, keeper

Cynthus, -ī, *m.*, Cynthus, a mountain in Delos

Cyzicus, -ī, *f.*, Cyzicus, a city in Asia Minor

D, *Roman numeral for* five hundred

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, find guilty, condemn

datus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **do**

***dē**, *prep. with abl.*, from, down from, off from; about, of, in regard to, concerning, for. — *In expressions of time*, about: **de tertia vigilia**

dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess

***dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** [*dehabeo*], owe, ought, must. — *Pass.*, be due (debit)

dēbitor, -ōris [*debeo*], *m.*, debtor

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, retire, withdraw, withdraw from; die

***decem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten

decemvir, -virī, *m.*, decemvir

dēceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **decipio**

***dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus**, decide, decree, order

***dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, contend, carry on war, fight

decet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*, it becomes, befits

***decimus, -a, -um** [*decem*], *adj.*, tenth (decimal)

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*de-capio*], deceive

Decius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, P. Decius Mus, father and son, who devoted themselves to death in war

dēclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, practice speaking, declaim (declaim)

***dēclīvis, -e** [*de-clivus*, slope], *adj.*, sloping down, inclined (declivity)

decōrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitting (decorous)

dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, decree, decision (decree)

dēcrētus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **decerno**

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī *or* **-currī, -cursus**, run down, run away

decus, -oris, *n.*, honor

dēdecus, -oris, *n.*, disgrace, dishonor

dēditīcius, -a, -um [*dedo*], *adj.*, surrendered. — *Plur. as noun*, prisoners

***dēditiō, -ōnis** [*dedo*], *f.*, surrender

dēditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **dedo**

***dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus**, give over, surrender, give up, devote. — *In pass. or with reflex.*, surrender one's self, submit

***dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus**, lead down, lead off, lead away, conduct, launch (*of ships*) (deduce)

dēductiō, -ōnis [*deduco*], *f.*, wedding procession

dēfectiō, -ōnis [*deficio*], *f.*, revolt (defection)

***dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus**, ward off, defend, protect (defend)

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [*defendo*], *f.*, defense

***dēfēnsor, -ōris** [*defendo*], *m.*, defender

***dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus**, carry down, take away, carry, take, bring, land (*of ships*); report, offer, confer. — *Pass.*, be borne down *or* on, drift (*of ships*), turn aside (defer)

***dēfessus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, tired, exhausted

***dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [*de-facio*], fail, revolt, abandon (deficit)

dēfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, drive down, plant, set, fasten

dēfīxus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **defigo**

dēfore, *see* **desum**

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, *f.*, deformity

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, fly from, avoid, run away

dēiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*de-jacio*], cast down, cast, drive, drive out, dislodge, kill, deprive (dejection)

deinceps, *adv.*, in succession

***deinde**, *adv.*, then, next

dējectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **deicio**

dēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, slip down, fall, fall off

dēlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **defero**

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, delight, please (delectable)

dēlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **deligo (-ligere)**

dēlēctus, -ūs [*deligo*, pick out], *m.*, levy, conscription

***dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus**, blot out, wipe out, destroy (delete)

dēlētus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **deleo**

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, discuss, consult, deliberate (deliberate)

dēlictum, -ī [*delinquo*, fail], *n.*, offense

dēligātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **deligo (-āre)**

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*de-ligo*, bind], tie, moor

***dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus** [*de-lego*, choose], choose out, select. — **dēlēctus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, chosen, picked

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, —, hide away, hide

Delphī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Delphi, a town in Greece, famous for the oracle of Apollo

dēmessus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **demeto**

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, reap, cut down

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, move away, emigrate

dēminuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, diminish, lessen (diminution)

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, send down, let down, let fall. — *In pass. or with reflex.*, let one's self down, descend. — **dēmissus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, bowed, downcast, low

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus [*de-emo*, take], take down, take off, remove

***dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, point out, show, speak of, make known (demonstrate)

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally
***dēns, dentis**, *m.*, tooth (dental)
dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, thick, crowded, dense (dense)
dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, declare, warn (denounce)
dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive off, drive away
dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, lose, be deprived of
dēpereō, -perīre, -periī, -peritus, be lost
***dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus**, lay down, lay aside, place, deposit; give up, lose, abandon (deposit)
dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, ravage, lay waste (depopulate)
dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, —, demand, call for
dēpositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* depono
dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.*, mediator
dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, arrest
dēpulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* depello
***dērigō**, *see* dīrigō
dēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*de-rapio*], snatch away, tear away, pull down
***dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus** [*de-scando*, climb], descend, come down (descend)
dēscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, write down (describe)
dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, cut off
***dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus**, abandon, forsake. — **dēsertus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, deserted, solitary (desert)
dēsertor, -ōris, *m.*, deserter
dēsīderium, -ī, *n.*, longing
***dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, desire, miss, lose (desideratum)
dēsidia, -ae, *f.*, idleness
dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus [*de-salio*, leap], leap down, leap off, jump out
***dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitus**, cease, stop, desist from, abandon (desist)
***dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, cease to hope, despair. — **dēspērātus, -a, -um**, *as pass.*, despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate (despair)
***dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus** [*de-specio*, look at], look down, look down on; despise (despise)
dēstitī, *see* desisto
dēstrictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* destringo
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, draw, unsheathe
***dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, be wanting, fail
dēsuper, *adv.*, from above
dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, frighten off, deter, prevent (deter)
dētrāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* detraho
dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, drag off, draw off, take away, take off, withdraw (detract)
***dētrīmentum, -ī** [*detero*, rub off], *n.*, loss, injury, defeat, disaster (detriment)
dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*de-turbo*, disturb], drive off

* **deus, -ī**, *m.*, a god
dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, come, get to
dēvinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxī, -vīnctus, bind, bind together
dēvōtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* devoveo
dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, vow. — **dēvōtus, -ī**, *m. p.p. as noun*, a sworn follower (devote)
* **dexter, -tra, -trum**, *adj.*, right (*on the right hand*). — **dextra, -ae** (*sc.* **manus**), *f.*, the right hand (dexterous)
Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, goddess of the moon and of hunting
diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, sway
dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, adjudge, assign
* **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus**, say, speak, name; appoint, fix; **jus** (administer); **sententiam** (give)
dictātor, -ōris [*dīco*], *m.*, dictator
dictātūra, -ae, *f.*, dictatorship
dictum, -ī [*n. p.p. of dīco*], *n.*, statement, command: **dicto audiens esse**, be obedient, obey (dictum)
* **diēs, -ēī**, *m.*, day
* **differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus** [*dis-fero*], carry in different directions, scatter; postpone; differ (differ)
* **difficilis, -e** [*dis-facilis*], *adj.*, not easy, difficult
* **difficultās, -ātis** [*difficilis*], *f.*, difficulty, trouble (difficulty)
* **digitus, -ī**, *m.*, finger (digit)
* **dignitās, -ātis** [*dignus*], *f.*, worth, dignity, prestige, rank (dignity)
* **dignus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, worthy
dījūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*dis-judico*], decide, determine
dīlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* diligo
* **dīligēns, -entis**, *adj.*, careful, diligent, painstaking (diligent).
dīligenter, *adv.*, carefully, with care
* **dīligentia, -ae** [*diligens*], *f.*, care, pains, diligence (diligence)
dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [*dis-lego*, choose], love, be fond of
dīlūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxī, —, grow light
dīmēnsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* dimetior
dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum [*dis-metior*], measure out. — **dīmēnsus, -a, -um**, measured (dimension)
* **dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, fight
dīmidius, -a, -um [*dis-medius*], *adj.*, half. — *Neut. as noun*, a half
* **dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus** [*dis-mitto*], send away, let slip, let pass, let go, abandon; dispatch, dismiss (dismiss)
* **dīrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus** [*dis-rego*], direct (direct). — **dīrēctus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, perpendicular
dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [*dis-emo*, take], break up
* **dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus** [*dis-rapio*, seize], plunder, pillage
dīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dreadful
Dīs, Dītis, *m.*, Pluto, the god of the underworld
* **discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus**, withdraw, depart, retire, leave (*with* **ab**), go away

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, keep apart (discern)

discessiō, -ōnis [*discedo*], *f.*, departure

discessus, -ūs [*discedo*], *m.*, departure, withdrawal

* **disciplīna, -ae** [*disco*], *f.*, instruction, training, a system, a course of instruction (discipline)

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*dis-claudo*], keep apart, separate, divide

discō, discere, didicī, —, learn

discrētus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **discerno** *used as adj.*, separate, different

discrīmen, -inis, *n.*, crisis, risk, peril, danger (discriminate)

discussus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **discutio**

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [*dis-quatio*, shake], shake apart, drive away, clear away, remove (discuss)

disiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*dis-jacio*], disperse, scatter, ruin, destroy. — **disjectus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, scattered

disjectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **disicio**

* **dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersus** [*dis-spargo*, scatter], scatter, disperse (disperse)

dispersus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **dispergo**

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, station, place (dispose)

dispositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **dispono**

disputātiō, -ōnis [*disputo*], *f.*, discussion, dispute

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, discuss, investigate (dispute)

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [*dissentio*], *f.*, disagreement, dissension

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, disagree (dissent)

dissimilis, -e, *adj.*, unlike, dissimilar (dissimilar)

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*dissimulo*, make like], conceal, disguise

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [*dis-suadeo*, advise], advise against, oppose (dissuade)

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*dis-teneo*], keep apart, cut off, isolate

* **distribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus**, assign, distribute, divide (distribute)

distulī, *see* **differo**

dītissimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **dives**

* **diū**, *adv.*, for some time, long: **tam diu**, so long; **quam diu**, as long as; **diutius**, longer, any longer, rather long, too long; **diutissime**, for the longest time

diurnus, -a, -um [*dies*], *adj.*, of the day, daily, by day: **nocturnis diurnisque itineribus** (by night and day) (diurnal)

diūtius, diūtissimē, *comp. and superl. of* **diu**

diūturnitās, -ātis [*diuturnus*, long (*of time*)], *f.*, length of time, long continuance

* **dīversus**, *p.p. of* **diverto**

dīvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [*dis-verto*], separate. — **dīversus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, separate, distant, diverse, different (divert)

dīves, -itis, *adj.*, rich

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus, a leader of the Haeduans. — A leader of the Suessiones

Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico, a leader of the Helvetians

* **dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus,** divide, separate. — **dīvīsus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, divided (divide)

dīvīnitus, *adv.*, divinely

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the gods, divine: **res divinae,** matters of religion, religion (divine)

dīvīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **divido**

dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, riches, wealth

dīvitior, *comp. of* **dives**

* **dō, dare, dedī, datus,** give, concede, assign, grant: **in fugam** (put to flight); **negotium uti** (employ one to *etc.*)

* **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus,** teach, show, inform. — **doctus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, learned (doctor)

documentum, -ī [*doceo*], *n.*, warning, example (document)

* **doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitus,** feel pain, suffer; be pained, grieve

* **dolor, -ōris** [*doleo*], *m.*, pain, grief, distress; indignation (dolorous)

dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, tricks, stratagem

domesticus, -a, -um [*domus*], *adj.*, one's own, at home, private, personal (domestic)

domī, *locative*, at home

domicilium, -ī [*domus*], *n.*, house, dwelling place, home (domicile)

domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress

* **dominus, -ī,** *m.*, master, owner (dominie)

Domitius, -ī, *m.*, Domitius, a Roman name

* **domus, -ī (-ūs),** *f.*, house, home

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, —, sleep (dormitory)

dōs, dōtis [*do*], *f.*, marriage gift, dowry (dot)

dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, dragon, serpent

druidēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Druids

dubitātiō, -ōnis [*dubito*], *f.*, doubt, hesitation

* **dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*dubius*], doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful; hesitate (indubitable)

dubium, -ī, *n.*, doubt: **sine dubio,** undoubtedly

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful: **est dubium,** there is doubt (dubious)

ducentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, two hundred

* **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus,** lead, draw, bring, take; spin out; beguile along, keep waiting; consider: **in matrimonium** (marry) (ductile)

dulcēdō, -inis, *f.*, sweetness

dulcis, -e, *adj.*, sweet (dulcet)

* **dum,** *conj.*, while, so long as; till, until

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix, a leader of the Haeduans

* **duo, -ae, -o,** *num. adj., plur.*, two

duodecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, twelve

duodecimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, twelfth

duodēvīgintī [*duo de viginti*], *indecl. num. adj.*, eighteen

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*duplex*, twofold], double (duplicate)

dūritia, -ae [*durus*], *f.*, hardness, hardship (duress)

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*durus*], harden

***dūrus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, hard, severe, difficult

***dux, ducis** [*duco*], *c.*, leader, guide, commander (duke)

***ē**, *shortened form of* **ex**, *prep. with abl.*

Eburōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Eburones, a Belgian tribe

ecce, *interj.*, lo! behold!

Ēchō, -ūs, *f.*, Echo, a nymph

ecquis, ecquid, *interrog. pron.*, is there anyone who?

ēdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus [*ex-dico*], proclaim, announce, appoint (edict)

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, — [*ex-disco*], learn by heart, commit to memory

***ēditus, -a, -um**, *p.p. of* **edo**

***ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [*ex-do*, put], put forth, utter; conduct (**certamen**). — **ēditus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, elevated, raised, high (edit)

ēducātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, education

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bring up, educate (educate)

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*ex-duco*], lead out, draw (educe)

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-femina*], weaken, enfeeble (effeminate)

***efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus** [*ex-fero*], carry out, bring out, carry away, raise; spread abroad, make known; puff up, elate (elate)

effervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferbuī, — [*ex-fervesco*, begin to boil], boil up (effervesce)

***efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [*ex-facio*], make, enable, cause, construct, produce, accomplish (effect)

effigiēs, -ēī, *f.*, ghost, image

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [*ex-fodio*, dig], dig out

effossus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **effodio**

***effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitus** [*ex-fugio*], escape, fly from

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [*ex-fundo*], pour out, rush out (effusive)

egēns, -entis, *see* **egeo**

egeō, egēre, eguī, —, need, be in want of, lack. — **egēns, -entis**, *pres. p. as adj.*, needy, destitute

***ego, meī**, *pron., 1st person*, I, me. — *Plur.*, **nōs**, we, us

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [*ex-gradior*, step], go out, come forth, march out: **e navi** (land, disembark); **in terram** (go ashore)

ēgregiē [*egregius*], *adv.*, remarkably, finely, extremely well

***ēgregius, -a, -um** [*ex-grex*, herd], *adj.*, remarkable, eminent, notable, excellent (egregious)

ēgressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **egredior**

ēgressus, -ūs [*egredior*], *m.*, landing (egress)

ēheu, *interj.*, alas!

ēiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*ex-jacio*], cast out, drive out. — *With reflex.*, rush out, rush (eject)

eiusmodī, *as adj. phrase*, of this kind, of such a kind, such

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum [*ex-labor*, slip] slip away, escape (elapse)

ēlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **effero**

Elaver, -eris, *n.*, the Elaver, a river in Gaul

ēlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **eligo**

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant (elephant)

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*ex-lego*, choose], pick out, select. — **ēlēctus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, picked (*troops*) (elect)

Ēlysius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Elysian

ēmicō, -āre, -uī, -ātus, spring forth

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [*ex-mitto*], let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl. — *Pass., or with reflex.*, rush out (emit)

* **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus**, buy, purchase

* **enim**, *conj.*, for, but, now, for in fact

Ennius, -ī, *m.*, Ennius, a poet

* **ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*ex-nuntio*], report, disclose, reveal (enunciate)

* **eō, īre, iī, itus**, go, pass, march, advance, proceed

eō, *n. abl., see* **is**

* **eō**, *adv.*, thither, there, to that place

* **eōdem**, *adv.*, to the same place, in the same place

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter (epistle)

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Eporedorix, a leader of the Haeduans

* **eques, -itis** [*equus*], *m.*, horseman, knight. — *Plur.*, cavalry

* **equester, -tris, -tre** [*eques*], *adj.*, of knights, of cavalry (equestrian)

* **equitātus, -ūs** [*eques*], *m.*, cavalry

* **equus, -ī**, *m.*, horse (equine)

ēreptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **eripio**

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward

ergastulum, -ī, *n.*, prison

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, then

Ēridanus, -ī, *m.*, the Eridanus, a river

* **ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus** [*ex-rapio*, seize], snatch away, deprive, take from, rescue

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wander, stray; be mistaken (err)

* **ēruptiō, -ōnis** [*erumpo*, break out], *f.*, a breaking out, sortie, sally, rush (eruption)

essedārius, -ī [*essedum*], *m.*, charioteer

essedum, -ī, *n.*, chariot

* **et**, *conj.*, and

* **et . . . et**, both . . . and

* **etiam**, *adv.*, also, even, even now, yet; *in answers*, yes: **quin etiam**, nay more

Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, Etruria, a country of western Italy

* **etsī**, *conj.*, even if, although, though

Eurydicē, -ēs, *f.*, Eurydice, wife of Orpheus

Eurylochus, -ī, *m.*, Eurylochus, a companion of Ulysses

Eurystheus, -ī, *m.*, Eurystheus, king of Mycenae

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsus [*ex-vado*, go], go forth, escape (evade)

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [*ex-venio*], come out, turn out, happen

* **ēventus, -ūs** [*evenio*], *m.*, result, issue; fate; success; mishap (event)

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-voco*], call out, call forth, summon. — **ēvocātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj. and noun*, reënlisted veteran (evoke)

ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from; according to: **una ex parte**, on one side; **ex itinere**, on the march; **ex equis**, on horseback

exāctus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ended

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-agito*, *freq. of* **ago**, drive], harass, persecute

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, weigh (examine)

* **exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*ex-animus*], deprive of breath, kill. — **exanimātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, out of breath, weakened, exhausted

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsus, be inflamed, be provoked, rage

* **excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus**, go out, withdraw, retire (exceed)

excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsus, surpass, excel (excel)

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*ex-caedo*], cut out, cut off, break down (excise)

* **excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [*ex-capio*], take up, receive, welcome; capture; follow, come after (except)

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, rouse, stimulate; raise (*towers*); kindle (*fire*) (excite)

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cry out, exclaim (exclaim)

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*ex-claudo*], shut out, cut off (exclude)

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, torture, torment (excruciating)

excubitor, -ōris [*excubo*, stand guard], *m.*, sentinel

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, excuse (excuse)

* **exemplum, -ī**, *n.*, example, precedent (example)

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go forth, go out, emigrate

* **exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus** [*ex-arceo*, drive off], train, practice, exercise (exercise)

* **exercitātiō, -ōnis** [*exerceo*], *f.*, practice, exercise

exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*exerceo*], train, practice. — **exercitātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, trained

* **exercitus, -ūs** [*exerceo*], *m.*, army

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustus, drain off; carry off (*earth*); wear out, exhaust (exhaust)

exiguē [*exiguus*], *adv.*, scantily, barely

exiguitās, -ātis [*exiguus*], *f.*, scantiness

***exiguus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, narrow, scanty, small

eximius, -a, -um [*ex-emo*, take], *adj.*, exceptional, remarkable; very high (**opinio**)

exīstimātiō, -ōnis [*existimo*], *f.*, estimate, opinion

***exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*ex-aestimo*], estimate, believe, suppose, think, judge, imagine

exitium, -ī, *n.*, destruction

***exitus, -ūs** [*cf.* *exeo*], *m.*, exit; end; result, turn, outcome (exit)

***expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus** [*ex-pes*], set free, free. — **expedītus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, quick, active, light-armed (*of troops*), in light marching order (expedite)

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive out; dispel (expel)

***experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum**, experience, try (expert)

***expleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus**, fill out, fill up, complete (expletive)

***explōrātor, -ōris**, *m.*, scout

***explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, investigate, search, examine. — **explōrātus, -a, -um**, *p.p.*, assured, certain: **exploratā victoriā**, being assured of victory (explore)

***expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus**, place out, set forth: **exercitum** (disembark, draw up, array) (expose)

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry out, carry away (export)

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, —, demand

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [*ex-premo*], force out; raise up (express)

***expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, take (*by storm*), capture

expulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **expello**

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow out, follow up: **jus** (enforce, execute) (execute)

exsertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bare, exposed

exsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, —, leap out

exsilium, -ī, *n.*, exile (exile)

exspectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, expectation

***exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, look out for, wait to see, expect, wait (expect)

exspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, breathe out; die (expire)

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, rob, deprive

exstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus, stand out (extant)

exstrūctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **exstruo**

***exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus**, heap up, build up

exsul, -ulis, *m.*, exile

exsultātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, exultation

exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, leap up (exult)

extemplō, *adv.*, at once, straightway

exter, -era, -erum, *adj.*, outer, outside. — **extrēmus, -a, -um**, *superl.*, farthest, extreme, last (extreme)

extollō, -ere, —, —, praise (extol)

***extrā**, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, outside, out of (extra)

extrāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **extraho**

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, drag out, draw out (extract)

* **extrēmus**, *see* **exter**

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, burn up

faber, -brī, *m.*, mechanic, engineer (fabric)

Fabia, -ae, *f.*, Fabia, a Roman woman

Fabius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

Fabricius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, C. Fabricius, famous for his frugality and his conduct toward Pyrrhus. — *Also*, Fabricius Luscinus

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story (fable)

faciēs, -ēī, *f.*, face, appearance

* **facile**, *n. of* **facilis** *as adv.*, easily

* **facilis, -e** [*facio*], *adj.*, easy, convenient (facile)

facinus, -oris [*facio*], *n.*, deed; misdeed, crime

* **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus**, make, do, act: **iter** (march, travel, proceed). — *Pass.*, happen, result, occur

* **factiō, -ōnis** [*facio*], *f.*, party, faction (faction)

* **factum, -ī** [*facio*], *n.*, deed, act (fact)

* **facultās, -ātis** [*facilis*], *f.*, ease, facility; chance, opportunity; means, supply (faculty)

fāgus, -ī, *f.*, beech

* **fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus**, deceive (fallible)

falsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, false, unfounded (false)

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle, pruning hook; hook (*for demolishing walls*)

* **fāma, -ae**, *f.*, speech; fame, reputation; rumor, story, news (fame)

* **famēs, -is**, *f.*, hunger, starvation (famine)

* **familia, -ae**, *f.*, family, household (family)

* **familiāris, -e** [*familia*], *adj.*, of the household, friendly: **res** (estate, property). — *As noun*, friend (familiar)

familiāriter [*familiaris*], *adv.*, on intimate terms, intimately

fās, *n., indecl.*, right

fastīgium, -ī, *n.*, elevation, slope, descent

fātum, -ī [*for*, speak], *n.*, fate, lot, destiny (fate)

faucēs, -ium, *f. plur.*, throat, jaws

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautus, favor, be favorable to (favor)

favor, -ōris, *m.*, favor

fax, facis, *f.*, torch, firebrand, fire

fefellisse, *see* **fallo**

fēlīcitās, -ātis [*felix*], *f.*, good fortune, good luck (felicity)

fēlīciter [*felix*], *adv.*, luckily, successfully

fēlīx, -īcis, *adj.*, happy, lucky

* **fēmina, -ae**, *f.*, woman (feminine)

ferāx, -ācis [*fero*], *adj.*, fertile

* **ferē**, *adv.*, almost, about; usually. — *With negatives*, hardly

* **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, bear, bring, carry, endure, tolerate; pass (*of laws*); assert, declare, say: **magno dolore ferre**, be much pained, take it very hard; **moleste (graviter) ferre**, be annoyed at, be indignant at

ferrāmentum, -ī [*ferrum*], *n.*, tool (*of iron*), implement

ferreus, -a, -um [*ferrum*], *adj.*, of iron, iron

***ferrum, -ī**, *n.*, iron, steel, sword

fertilis, -e [*fero*], *adj.*, fertile, fruitful (fertile)

fertilitās, -ātis [*fertilis*], *f.*, fertility

***ferus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, wild, ferocious. — *Masc. as noun*, wild beast (fierce)

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*ferveo-facio*], heat, heat red-hot

ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī, —, glow, be hot, be red-hot (fervent)

fictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **fingo**

fīcus, -ī, *f.*, fig tree

***fidēlis, -e** [*fides*], *adj.*, faithful (fidelity)

***fidēs, -eī**, *f.*, good faith, fidelity, pledge, promise; belief: **fidem facere**, give assurance; **in fidem se permittere**, place themselves under the protection of

***fīdūcia, -ae** [*fidus*], *f.*, confidence, reliance (fiduciary)

fīdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, trustworthy, faithful

***fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus**, put, fix, fasten

***fīlia, -ae**, *f.*, daughter

fīliolus, -ī, *m.*, little son

***fīlius, -ī**, *m.*, son (filial)

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, mold, fashion, make; imagine; invent, contrive. — **fictus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*; *n. plur. as noun*, fictions (fiction)

***fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus** [*finis*], limit, measure (finite)

***fīnis, -is**, *m.*, limit, end.— *Plur.*, territories, country (finis)

***fīnitimus, -a, -um** [*finis*], *adj.*, neighboring, adjacent. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, neighbors

***fīō, fierī, factus sum**, *pass. of* **facio**

firmiter [*firmus*], *adv.*, steadily, firmly

***firmus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, strong, firm, steady (firm)

Flaccus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

Flāminīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, T. Quinctius Flamininus

Flāminius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, C. Flaminius Nepos, commander in the battle of Lake Trasimenus

flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame, fire (flame)

flammeum, -ī, *n.*, bridal veil

***flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus**, bend, turn (flex)

***fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus**, weep; weep for

flōrēns, -entis [*pres. p. of floreo*], *adj.*, blooming, flourishing, prosperous

flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, flourish

***flōs, flōris**, *m.*, flower (flower)

fluctus, -ūs [*fluo*], *m.*, wave

***flūmen, -inis** [*fluo*], *n.*, river

***fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus**, flow (fluent)

focus, -ī, *m.*, hearth

foedus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foul, ugly, horrible

foedus, -eris, *n.*, treaty, league, compact, agreement (federal)

***folium, -ī**, *n.*, leaf

fōns, fontis, *m.*, fountain, spring, source

***for, fārī, fātus sum**, speak, say

fore, *for* **futūrum esse**; *see* **sum**

forīs, *adv.*, out of doors, outside

***fōrma, -ae,** *f.*, shape, form, appearance; beauty (form)

fōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*forma*], form, shape

***fors, fortis,** *f.*, chance. — **forte,** *abl. as adv.*, by chance, as it happened

fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps

***forte,** *see* **fors**

***fortis, -e,** *adj.*, strong, brave, courageous

fortiter [*fortis*], *adv.*, bravely

fortitūdō, -inis [*fortis*], *f.*, bravery, prowess (fortitude)

***fortūna, -ae,** *f.*, luck, fortune, chance, fate, lot, chances. — *Plur.*, fortunes, property (fortune)

fortūnātus, -a, -um [*fortuna*], *adj.*, lucky, fortunate (fortunate)

forum, -ī, *n.*, market place

***fossa, -ae** [*fodio*, dig], *f.*, ditch, trench (fosse)

frāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **frangō**

***frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus**, break, wreck; break down, crush (fracture)

***frāter, -tris,** *m.*, brother

frāternus, -a, -um [*frater*], *adj.*, of a brother, fraternal (fraternal)

fraus, fraudis, *f.*, deceit, fraud (fraud)

frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, crowded, numerous, in great numbers (frequent)

frequentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*frequens*], crowd, throng

frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying on

frīgidus, -a, -um [*frigeo*, be cold], *adj.*, cold (frigid)

frīgus, -oris [*frigeo*, be cold], *n.*, cold. — *Plur.*, cold seasons

***frōns, frontis,** *f.*, front, brow: **a fronte**, in front (front)

frūctus, -ūs [*fruor*], *m.*, crops, fruit, income, profit, returns (fruit)

frūgālis, -e, *adj.*, frugal (frugal)

***frūmentārius, -a, -um** [*frumentum*], *adj.*, of grain: **loca** (producing grain); **res** (grain supply, provisions)

frūmentātiō, -ōnis [*frumentor*], *f.*, foraging expedition

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum [*frumentum*], forage, gather grain

***frūmentum, -ī** [*fruor*], *n.*, grain. — *Plur.*, crops

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, enjoy

***frūstrā,** *adv.*, in vain (frustrate)

frūx, frūgis [*cf. fruor*], *f.*, fruit. — *Plur.*, crops

Fūfius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

***fuga, -ae,** *f.*, flight: **se fugae mandare**, take to flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight

***fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus** [*cf. fuga*], flee, fly from, run away; shun, avoid

fugitīvus, -a, -um [*fugio*], *adj.*, runaway. — *Masc. as noun*, runaway slave (fugitive)

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*fuga*], put to flight, rout

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, —, glitter, be conspicuous (refulgent)

Fulvius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke (fumes)
funda, -ae, *f.*, sling
fundāmentum, -ī, *n.*, foundation
***funditor, -ōris** [*funda*], *m.*, slinger
***fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus**, pour, shed (**lacrimas**); scatter; rout
fūnebris, -e [*funus*], *adj.*, of a funeral. — *Neut. plur. as noun*, funeral rites
fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope
fūnus, -eris, *n.*, death, funeral (funeral)
fūr, fūris, *m.*, thief (furtive)
fūrāx, -ācis [*fur*], *adj.*, thievish
Furiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, the Furies (fury)
Fūrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, M. Furius Camillus, the dictator
furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, frenzy, fury (furor)
fūrtim, *adv.*, stealthily
fūrtum, -ī [*fur*], *n.*, theft
fūsilis, -e [*fundo*], molten, liquid, soft
fūsus, *p.p. of* **fundo**
futtilis, -e, *adj.*, worthless (futile)
futūrus, *see* **sum**

Gabalī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Gabali, a Gallic tribe
Gāia, -ae, *f.*, Gaia, a Roman name
Gāius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius *or* Caius, a Roman praenomen
Galba, -ae, *m.*, a Gallic and Roman name
galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul
Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Gallic
gallīna, -ae, *f.*, hen
Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic. — *As noun*, a Gaul, the Gauls
garrulus, -a, -um, *adj.*, talkative (garrulous)
Garumna, -ae, *m.*, the Garonne, a river of southwestern Gaul
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, be delighted, rejoice
gaudium, -ī [*gaudeo*], *n.*, joy
gāvīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **gaudeo**
Genāva, -ae, *f.*, Geneva, a city of the Allobroges
gener, -ī, *m.*, son-in-law
***gēns, gentis**, *f.*, tribe, clan, people (gentile)
***genus, -eris**, *n.*, race, family; kind, sort, class; character, nature, method (genus)
Gergovia, -ae, *f.*, Gergovia, a city of the Arverni
Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany
Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Germans, German
Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German. — *Masc. as noun*, a German
***gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus**, bear, carry, wear; carry on, manage, wage (*war*), hold (*a magistracy*), do (*business*). — *Pass.*, be done: **res gestae**, exploits, operations, campaign
gestus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **gero**
gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus [*gens*], bring forth, produce. — *Pass.*, spring up, arise
gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*, gladiator (gladiator)
***gladius, -ī**, *m.*, sword (gladiolus)
glāns, glandis, *f.*, nut, acorn; ball, missile (gland)

***glōria, -ae,** *f.*, fame, glory (glory)
glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum [*gloria*], glory in, boast of (*abl.*)
glōriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glorious, honorable (glorious)
Gorgobina, -ae, *f.*, Gorgobina, a town in the territory of the Haeduans
Gracchus, -ī, *m.*, Ti. Sempronius Gracchus, father and son
gradior, -ī, gressus sum, walk
gradus, -ūs, *m.*, step (grade)
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.— *As noun*, a Greek
***grātia, -ae,** *f.*, gratitude, good will, favor; influence, friendship: **gratias agere**, thank; **gratias habere**, be grateful; **gratias (gratiam) referre**, requite, thank. — *With gen.*, for the sake of, on account of (grace)
***grātīs,** *adv.*, free, without recompense
***grātulātiō, -ōnis** [*gratulor*], *f.*, congratulation, rejoicing
grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum [*gratus*], congratulate (congratulate)
***grātus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, grateful (grateful)
***gravis, -e,** *adj.*, heavy; serious, stern, severe, hard: **gravioris aetatis**, of more advanced years (grave)
gravitās, -ātis [*gravis*], *f.*, weight; seriousness; importance, power (gravity)
graviter [*gravis*], *adv.*, heavily, with great weight; severely, seriously: **graviter ferre**, be annoyed *or* indignant at
***grex, gregis,** *m.*, flock
gubernātor, -ōris [*guberno*, steer], *m.*, pilot, helmsman (governor)
gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, taste, eat (disgust)

***habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus**, have, hold, keep, occupy, possess; regard, consider: **castra** (occupy); **orationem** (deliver); **se habere**, be; **rationem habere**, have regard for (habit)
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dwell, live (habitation)
habitus, -ūs [*habeo*], *m.*, dress, garb
hāc, *adv.*, by this way, here
Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Haeduans, a Gallic tribe. — *Masc. as noun*, a Haeduan, the Haeduans
***haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesus**, remain fixed, stick, cling
Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, Hannibal, the great Carthaginian
Harpȳiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Harpies
Harūdēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Harudes, a German tribe
hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear
haud, *adv.*, not at all, not
hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, draw, drain, drink
haustus, -ūs [*hauriō*], *m.*, a drink
Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian
Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Helvetians. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the Helvetians
Helviī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Helvii, a Gallic tribe
herba, -ae, *f.*, plant (herb)

Herculēs, -is, *m.*, Hercules, a mythical Greek hero

hērēditās, -ātis [*heres*, heir], *f.*, inheritance (heredity)

hērēdium, -ī, *n.*, a hereditary estate

Hernicī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Hernici, a people in Latium

Hesperidēs, -um, *f. plur.*, Hesperides, daughters of Hesperus, who guarded the golden apples

hesternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, yesterday's: **hesterno die**, yesterday

***hīberna, -ōrum**, *n. plur.* (*sc.* **castra**), winter quarters (hibernate)

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland

***hic, haec, hoc**, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this, these, he, they, this man (woman *or* thing). — **hōc**, *n. abl., used adverbially*, in this respect, on this account. — **hic . . . ille**, the one . . . the other, this (*near by*) . . . that (*farther off*)

***hīc**, *adv.*, here, in this place

***hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*hiems*], pass the winter

***hiems, -emis**, *f.*, winter

hinc, *adv.*, from here, hence

Hippomenēs, -is, *m.*, Hippomenes, a youth who outran Atalanta

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain

hodiē [*hoc die*], *adv.*, today, now

***homō, -inis**, *m.*, man

honestus, -a, -um [*honor*], *adj.*, respected, honorable (honest)

***honor (honōs), -ōris**, *m.*, honor, respect: **honoris causā**, out of respect (honor)

***hōra, -ae**, *f.*, hour

Horātius, -ī, *m.*, Horatius Cocles, who defended the bridge at Rome

horreō, horrēre, horruī, —, bristle; shudder, shudder at, dread

horribilis, -e [*horreo*], *adj.*, terrible, dreadful (horrible)

horridus, -a, -um [*horreo*], *adj.*, bristling; frightful, dreadful, horrible (horrid)

***hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, encourage, urge on, address

hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden

hospes, -itis, *m.*, host. — *Also*, guest, stranger (host)

hospitāliter, *adv.*, hospitably (hospitality)

hospitium, -ī [*hospes*], *n.*, the relation of host *or* of guest; friendship, hospitality (hospice)

hostīliter, *adv.*, in a hostile manner

***hostis, -is**, *m.*, stranger, enemy (host)

***hūc**, *adv.*, hither, here, to this place: **huc accedebant**, to these were added

***hūmānitās, -ātis** [*humanus*], *f.*, civilization, cultivation, refinement (humanity)

hūmānus, -a, -um [*homo*], *adj.*, human; civilized, cultivated, refined (humane)

***humilis, -e** [*humus*], *adj.*, low, shallow; wretched, humble, poor (humble)

humilitās, -ātis [*humilis*], *f.*, lowness, shallowness; humble position (humility)

humus, -ī, *f.*, ground (humus)

Hylās, -ae, *m.*, Hylas, one of the Argonauts

I, *Roman numeral for* one
***ibi**, *adv.*, there
Iccius, -ī, *m.*, Iccius, a nobleman of the Remi
īcō, īcere, īcī, ictus, strike
ictus, -ūs [*ico*], *m.*, stroke
Id., *abbr. for* **Idus**
***īdem, eadem, idem** [*is-dem*], *dem. adj. and pron.*, the same; the same thing (things)
identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly, again and again
***idōneus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, fit, suitable
Īdūs, -uum, *f. plur.*, the Ides (*the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of the other months*)
***igitur**, *adv.*, therefore
***ignis, -is**, *m.*, fire. — *Plur.*, camp fires (ignite)
***ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*ignarus*, ignorant], not know, be ignorant of (ignore)
ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtus [*in-*, not, *(g)nosco*, know], pardon
***ignōtus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, unknown, strange
illātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **infero**
***ille, -a, -ud**, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that; *as pronoun*, he, she, it, they: **hic . . . ille**, this . . . that *or* the other; the latter . . . the former
illīc, *adv.*, there, in that place
illigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*in-ligo*], bind on, attach
illō, *adv.*, thither, there, that way
illūc, *adv.*, thither
illūstris, -e, *adj.*, famous, distinguished, important (illustrious)
Illyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyria
imāginor, -ārī, -ātus sum [*imago*], imagine (imagine)
imāgō, -inis, *f.*, image, likeness (image)
imbēcillitās, -ātis, *f.*, weakness
imbellis, -e [*in-bellum*], *adj.*, cowardly
imitātiō, -ōnis [*imitor*], *f.*, imitation, pretense (imitation)
imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, imitate, copy (imitate)
immānis, -e, *adj.*, monstrous, huge, enormous
immēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, huge, immense (immense)
immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, let in, let down (*into*), insert; throw, send against, let loose
immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*inmola*, meal], sacrifice (immolate)
immortālis, -e, *adj.*, immortal (immortal)
immūnis, -e, *adj.*, free, immune (immune)
impār, -paris [*in-par*], *adj.*, unequal
***impedīmentum, -ī** [*impedio*], *n.*, hindrance. — *Esp. in plur.*, baggage, baggage train (*including the beasts of burden*) (impediment)
***impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus**, entangle, hamper, interfere with, hinder, embarrass, impede (impede)
***impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus**, drive on; instigate, incite, impel (impel)

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, overhang (impend)

imperātor, -ōris [*impero*], *m.*, commander (*in chief*), general (emperor)

***imperātum, -ī** [*n. p.p. of impero*], *n.*, order, command

imperītus, -a, -um [*in-peritus*], *adj.*, unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in

***imperium, -ī**, *n.*, control, supremacy, power, rule; order, command; empire (empire)

***imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, demand; order, rule, command

***impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, accomplish, obtain (*a request*)

***impetus, -ūs**; *m.*, rush, attack violence, fury: **impetum facere**, to charge, attack (impetus)

impius, -a, -um, *adj.*, impious (impious)

impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill, complete

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, implore, beseech (implore)

***impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus**, place on, mount; embark, load (impose)

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, import (import)

impositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **impono**

imprīmīs *or* **in prīmīs**, *adv.*, among the first, especially

improvīsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unforeseen: **improviso** (**de improviso**), on a sudden, unexpectedly

imprūdentia, -ae *f.*, ignorance, want of forethought (imprudence)

impudēns, -entis, *adj.*, impudent, shameless (impudent)

impugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attack, invade, charge (impugn)

impulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **impello**

impūnitās, -ātis [*impunis*, unpunished], *f.*, freedom from punishment, impunity (impunity)

īmus, *see* **inferus**

***in**, *prep.*: 1. *With acc.*, into, on, within, to, against, among

2. *With abl.*, in, on, among, within; in the case of, in respect to: **in ancoris**, at anchor; **in primis**, among the first, especially

inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, vain, idle (inane)

incendium, -ī [*incendo*], *n.*, a burning, fire (incendiary)

***incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus**, set fire to, burn; rouse, excite (incense)

incēnsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **incendo**

inceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **incipio**

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, untrustworthy

***incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsus** [*in-cado*], fall upon, fall into; meet, occur, happen (incident)

***incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [*in-capio*], begin, undertake (incipient)

***incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, set in motion, urge on, drive, impel, excite. — **incitātus, -a, -um**, *p.p.*, angered, spurred on: **incitato equo**, at full gallop; **incitato cursu**, at full speed (incite)

inclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, incline

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*in-claudo*], shut in, imprison (include)

incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown; strange. — **incognitī, -ōrum**, *m. plur.*, strangers (incognito)

incola, -ae, *m.*, inhabitant

***incolō, -colere, -coluī**, — , inhabit, live (in), dwell (in)

***incolumis, -e**, *adj.*, unharmed, unhurt, safe

incommodus, -a, -um, *adj.*, inconvenient, unfortunate. — *Neut. as noun*, disadvantage, misfortune, defeat, disaster, loss (incommode)

incrēdibilis, -e [*in-*, not, *credo*], *adj.*, marvelous, extraordinary, incredible (incredible)

incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, devote one's self to (incumbent)

incursiō, -ōnis [*incurro*, run at], *f.*, attack, invasion (incursion)

incursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dash against, come to

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, upbraid, rebuke, chide, accuse

***inde**, *adv.*, from there, thence; then

***indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus**, order, proclaim, appoint (indict)

indignitās, -ātis [*indignus*, unworthy], *f.*, disgrace, outrage (indignity)

indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum [*indignus*, unworthy], be indignant (indignant)

indīligēns, -entis, *adj.*, negligent, careless, heedless

indīligenter [*indiligens*], *adv.*, carelessly, negligently

***indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus**, draw on; lead on; induce, impel (induce)

indulgentia, -ae [*indulgens*, kind], *f.*, indulgence, favor, clemency (indulgence)

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, put on

***ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, enter on, go into, adopt, make, begin, secure: **inita aestate**, at the beginning of summer; **inire rationem**, make a calculation, adopt a scheme; **inire consilium**, form a plan

***inermis, -e** [*in-*, not, *arma*], *adj.*, unarmed

īnfāmia, -ae, *f.*, dishonor, disgrace (infamy)

īnfāmis, -e, *adj.*, infamous

īnfandus, -a, -um [*in-for*, speak], *adj.*, unspeakable, awful

īnfāns, -antis, *m.*, child, infant (infant)

īnfantia, -ae, *f.*, infancy (infancy)

īnfectus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, *factus*], *adj.*, not done, unaccomplished

īnfēlīx, -īcis, *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy

***īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus**, bring in, import, put on; cause, inflict, commit: **bellum** (make); **signa** (advance, make a charge) (infer)

īnferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low: **inferior pars**, the lower end. — **īnferī, -ōrum**, *m. plur.*, the Lower World. — **īnfimus (īmus), -a, -um**, *superl.*, lowest, the bottom of: **infimus collis**, the foot of the hill (inferior)

īnfestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile, opposing

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*in-facio*], stain, infect (infect)

īnfimus, *see* **inferus**

īnfīnītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, countless, endless (infinite)

īnfirmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, feeble: **naves** (unseaworthy) (infirm)

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxus, flow into, empty into (influx)

***īnfrā**, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, below, farther down

īnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, pour in (infuse)

ingenium, -ī, *n.*, ability, genius, character (ingenious)

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, huge, enormous

ingrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ungrateful (ingrate)

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [*in-gradior*, step], march into, enter, march in (ingress)

iniciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*in-jacio*], throw into, throw upon; place on, put on, embark; inspire (inject)

inimīcitia, -ae [*inimicus*], *f.*, enmity, hostility, quarrel

***inimīcus, -a, -um** [*in-*, not, *amicus*], *adj.*, unfriendly, hostile. — *Masc. as noun*, enemy (inimical)

inīquitās, -ātis [*iniquus*], *f.*, inequality; unfairness, unfavorableness (iniquity)

***inīquus, -a, -um** [*in-*, not, *aequus*], *adj.*, uneven; unjust, unfavorable, unfair: **iniquior locus**, less favorable position

***initium, -ī** [*ineo*], *n.*, a beginning, the first of (initial)

initus, *p.p. of* **ineo**

injectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **inicio**

injungō, -ere, -jūnxī, -jūnctus, inflict, attach (injunction)

***injūria, -ae** [*in-*, not, *jus*], *f.*, injustice, outrage, injury, wrong (injury)

innocēns, -entis [*in-*, not, *nocens, pres. p. of noceo*], *adj.*, harmless, guiltless, innocent (innocent)

innumerābilis, -e, *adj.*, countless (innumerable)

innuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, beckon

***inopia, -ae** [*inops*, needy], *f.*, scarcity, want, privation, want of supplies

inopīnāns, -antis, *adj.*, unsuspecting, taken unawares

inopīnātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unexpected

***inquam**, *defective*, said I

inquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, ask, inquire (inquire)

inquit, *defective*, says he, said he, said

īnsciēns, -entis, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware

īnscius, -a, -um, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware

īnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, inscribe (inscribe)

īnsecūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **insequor**

***īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum**, follow up, pursue

***īnsidiae, -ārum** [*insideo*, sit in], *f. plur.*, ambush, treachery, plot (insidious)

***īnsignis, -e** [*in-signum*], *adj.*, marked, memorable. — **īnsigne, -is**, *n. as noun*, signal, sign, decoration

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus [*in-salio*, leap], leap on

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*in-sinus*, bosom], glide in, slip in (insinuate)

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, stand on, stand, keep one's footing; adopt (**rationem pugnae**) (insist)

īnsolēns, -entis, *adj.*, insolent, arrogant (insolent)

īnsolenter, *adv.*, insultingly, insolently, arrogantly

***īnstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus** [*in-statuo*], set up, set in order; provide, procure, get ready; set about, undertake, adopt, begin; teach, train (institute)

***īnstitūtum, -ī** [*n. p.p. of instituo*], *n.*, habit, practice, custom (institute)

***īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus**, be at hand, press on; threaten (instant)

īnstrūctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **instruo**

***īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus**, build, fit up, fit out, set in order, arrange, draw up (*of troops*) (instruct)

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.*, trained

īnsuētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccustomed, unused

***īnsula, -ae**, *f.*, island (insular)

intāctus, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, uninjured (intact)

***integer, -gra, -grum** [*in-*, not, *tango*, touch], *adj.*, untouched, whole, unwearied, fresh. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, fresh troops (integral)

***intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus** [*inter-lego*, gather], learn, know, find out, discover, understand (intellect)

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, stretch, strain, fix, be intent, be absorbed (intend)

intentiō, -ōnis [*intendo*], *f.*, concentration (intention)

intentus, -a, -um, *p.p.* of **intendo**

***inter**, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, within, for

***intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus**, come between, go between, exist, lie between, pass (*of time*) (intercede)

interceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **intercipio**

intercipiō, -ciṗere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*inter-capio*], intercept, cut off (intercept)

***interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus** [*inter-claudo*], cut off, shut off, block (*roads*): **fugam** (stop, cut off)

intercursus, -ūs [*intercurro*, run between], *m.*, intervention

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, forbid, prohibit (interdict)

interdiū, *adv.*, in the daytime

interdum, *adv.*, for a time, sometimes

***intereā**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime

***intereō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, perish, die, be killed

***interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [*inter-facio*], kill, put to death

intericiō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*inter-jacio*], throw in (*between*). — *Pass.*, intervene (interject)

***interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile

***interior, -ius**, *adj.*, inner, interior. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, men in the interior (interior)

***intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus**, leave off, intervene, stop: **neque diem neque noctem** (not cease day or night); **spatiis intermissis**, with (at) intervals; **nocte intermissa**, a night intervening (intermittent)

interneciō, -ōnis [*cf. neco*], *f.*, annihilation

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, put in between, interpose, allege (interpose)

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, interpret, explain (interpret)

***interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, question, ask (interrogate)

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, tear down

***intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, be between, be in, be engaged in: **non amplius interest**, there is an interval of not more than *etc.* (interest)

***intervāllum, -ī**, *n.*, interval (interval)

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, come up, arrive (intervene)

intoleranter, *adv.*, eagerly, recklessly

***intrā**, *prep. with acc.*, into, within, inside

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, enter, go in

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead in, bring in, march in (introduce)

introeō, -īre, -iī, -itus [*intro*, within, *eo*, go], come in, enter

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, send in

intrōrsus [*intro*, within, **versus**, *p.p. of* verto], *adv.*, inside, within

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, look at (intuitive)

intulī, *see* **infero**

inūtilis, -e, *adj.*, of no use, useless

invehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, bear in, bear

***inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus**, find, learn

inventor, -ōris [*invenio*], *m.*, discoverer (inventor)

inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvī, -ātus, become established, become fixed (inveterate)

invictus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquerable, invincible, unconquered

invidia, -ae, *f.*, hatred, envy, unpopularity (invidious)

invīsō, -vīsere, -vīsī, -vīsus, go to see

invīsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hated

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, invite, request (invite)

***invītus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, unwilling

Īphiclēs, -is, *m.*, Iphicles, brother of Hercules

***ipse, -a, -um**, *intens. pron.*, himself, he himself

īra, -ae, *f.*, anger (ire)

īrācundus, -a, -um [*ira*], *adj.*, violent-tempered

īrāscor, -scī, -tūs sum, be angry (irascible)

īrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, angry (irate)

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [*in-rumpo*, break], rush in, rush, charge

irruptiō, -ōnis [*irrumpo*], *f.*, attack, raid (irruption)

***is, ea, id**, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this, that, he, she, it. — **eō**, *n. abl.*, so much: **eo magis**, all the more; **eo gravius**, so much the more severely

***iste, ista, istud**, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that of yours, that

Isthmicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Isthmian

***ita**, *adv.*, so, in this way, thus, as follows: **ut . . . ita**, as . . . so; **non ita**, not so very, not very

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy

***itaque**, *adv.*, and so, accordingly, therefore

***item**, *adv.*, in like manner, also, in the same way (item)

***iter, itineris**, *n.*, road, march, journey: **in itinere**, on the road; **iter facere**, march, travel; **magnis itineribus**, by forced marches (itinerary)

iterō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, repeat (iterate)

iterum, *adv.*, a second time, again: **semel atque iterum**, again and again

Ithaca, -ae, *f.*, Ithaca, an island in the Ionian Sea

Itius, -a, -um, *adj.*, (*with* **portus**) Portus Itius, the harbor from which Caesar embarked for Britain

jaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, lie

***jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactus**, throw, hurl, cast

jactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, toss about, throw

jactūra, -ae [*jacio*], *f.*, loss

jaculum, -ī [*jacio*], *n.*, javelin

***jam**, *adv.*, now, already, by this time

***jam prīdem**, *adv.*, long ago

jānua, -ae, *f.*, door

Jāsōn, -onis, *m.*, Jason

jocus, -ī, *m.*, joke (joke)

***jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus**, order, command

jūdex, -icis, *m.*, judge

jūdicium, -ī [*judex*], *n.*, judgment, trial, opinion (judicial)

***jūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*judex*], decide, judge, think (adjudicate)

jūgerum, -ī, *n.*, acre

***jugum, -ī** [*jungo*], *n.*, yoke; ridge

jūmentum, -ī [*jugum*], *n.*, beast of burden

***jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus**, join, unite, attach together (join)

jūnior, *comp. of* **juvenis**

Jūnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

Jūnō, -ōnis, *f.*, Juno, queen of the gods

Juppiter, Jovis, *m.*, Jupiter, the supreme divinity of the Romans

Jūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura, a chain of mountains in Gaul

jūrgium, -ī, *n.*, quarrel

***jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, swear, take an oath (jury)

***jūs, jūris**, *n.*, justice, right, law, authority

***jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī**, *n.*, oath

jussū, *abl. used as adv.*, by order, by command

jūstitia, -ae [*justus*], *f.*, justice (justice)

***jūstus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, just, lawful; perfect, regular (just)

juvenis, -e, *adj.*, young. — *Masc. as noun*, a young man, a youth (juvenile)

juventūs, -ūtis [*iuvenis*], *f.*, the youth, the young men

***juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtus**, help, aid, assist

jūxtā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, next, near by

L, *Roman numeral for* fifty

L., *abbr. for* **Lucius**

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, Caesar's most trusted legatus

***labor, -ōris**, *m.*, labor, work, exertion, toil; trouble, hardship (labor)

***labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*labor*], work, toil; be hard pressed, labor (labor)

labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip

lac, lactis, *n.*, milk (lacteal)

***lacessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus**, attack, harass, assail, skirmish with

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear (lachrymal)

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*lacrima*], weep

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake (lake)

laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus, wound; break

laetitia, -ae [*laetus*], *f.*, joy, gladness

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad

lāna, -ae, *f.*, wool

lāneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, woolen, of wool

lanius, -ī, *m.*, butcher

***lapis, -idis**, *m.*, stone (lapidary)

Larēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the Lares, household gods

lassitūdō, -inis [*lassus*, weary], *f.*, weariness, exhaustion (lassitude)

lātē, *adv.*, widely: **latius**, too far; **longe lateque**, far and wide

lateō, latēre, latuī, —, be concealed, lie hidden (latent)

Latīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Latin. — *Masc. as noun*, a Latin

***lātitūdō, -inis** [*latus*, broad], *f.*, breadth, width (latitude)

Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Latobrigi, neighbors of the Helvetians

Lātōna, -ae, *f.*, Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana

latrōcinium, -ī [*latro*, robber], *n.*, robbery, brigandage

***latus, lateris**, *n.*, side (*of the body*); side, flank (lateral)

***lātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. of* **fero**

***lātus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, broad, wide, extensive

*** laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*laus*], praise, commend (laud)

Laurentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Laurentine, of Laurentum (*in Latium*)

Laurentius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Laurentian, of Laurentum (*in Latium*)

***laus, laudis**, *f.*, praise, credit, glory (laudably)

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvī (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), wash. — *In pass. used reflexively*, bathe (lave)

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, loosen, open out, extend (relax)

lectīca, -ae, *f.*, portable chair, litter

lectus, -ī, *m.*, couch, bed

***lēgātiō, -ōnis**, *f.*, embassy (legation)

***lēgātus, -ī** [*lego*, dispatch, appoint], *m.*, ambassador, envoy; lieutenant, officer, legatus (legate)

***legiō, -ōnis** [*lego*, gather], *f.*, legion (legion)

legiōnārius, -a, -um [*legio*], *adj.*, of a legion, legionary (legionary)

lēgitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, legal, lawful (legitimate)

***legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus**, gather; read; select (legible)

***lēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, appoint (delegate)

Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, the Lake of Geneva

***lēnis, -e**, *adj.*, gentle, light, smooth (lenient)

Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

lepus, -oris, *m.*, hare, rabbit

***levis, -e**, *adj.*, light, unimportant; inconstant, fickle

levitās, -ātis [*levis*], *f.*, lightness, fickleness (levity)

***lēx, lēgis**, *f.*, statute, law (legal)

libenter, *adv.*, willingly, gladly, with pleasure

***liber, -brī**, *m.*, book (library)

***līber, -era, -erum**, *adj.*, free, unrestricted

līberālis, -e [*līber*], *adj.*, liberal (liberal)

līberālitās, -ātis [*liberalis*], *f.*, generosity, liberality (liberality)

līberāliter [*liberalis*], *adv.*, generously, kindly

līberātor, -ōris [*libero*], *m.*, liberator (liberator)

līberē [*līber*], *adv.*, freely, boldly, without restraint

***līberī, -ōrum** [*līber*], *m. plur.*, children

***līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*līber*], free, set free, relieve (liberate)

***lībertās, -ātis** [*līber*], *f.*, liberty, freedom, independence (liberty)

***licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est)**, *impers.*, be allowed: **petere ut liceat**, to ask permission (licit)

līctor, -ōris, *m.*, lictor

Liger, -eris, *m.*, the Liger, a river of Gaul, now the Loire

lignātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, getting wood

ligneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wooden

***ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, bind, tie

līlium, -ī, *n.*, lily (lily)

līmen, -inis, *n.*, threshold

Lingonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Lingones, a tribe of Gaul

***lingua, -ae**, *f.*, tongue; language (lingual)

liquidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, flowing (liquid)

***līnea, -ae**, *f.*, letter (*of the alphabet*). — *Plur.*, alphabet, letter (*written message*), literature (letter)

***līnus, -oris**, *n.*, shore, beach (litoral)

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, place, station (locate)

***locus, -ī**, *m.* (*sing.*), *n.* (*generally plur.*), place, spot, region (*esp. in plur.*); rank; position, opportunity; situation, condition (local)

locūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **loquor**

longē, *adv.*, far, absent, distant

longinquus, -a, -um [*longus*], *adj.*, long, distant

longitūdō, -inis [*longus*], *f.*, length (longitude)
***longus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, long (long)
***loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**, speak, talk, converse (elocution)
lūceō, -ēre, lūxī, — [*lux*], shine (translucent)
Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen
Lucrētia, -ae, *f.*, Lucretia
Lucterius, -ī, *m.*, Lucterius, a Gallic leader
lūctus, -ūs, *m.*, grief, sorrow
lūdibrium, -ī, *n.*, object of sport
***lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus**, play (delude)
lūdus, -ī, *m.*, game; school
Lugotorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Lugotorix, a British chief
lūmen, -inis, *n.*, light, lamp (luminous)
***lūna, -ae**, *f.*, moon. *Personified*, **Luna**, the Moon (lunar)
lūx, lūcis** [*cf.* ***luceo], *f.*, light, daylight: **prima luce**, at daybreak
lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, riotous living (luxury)
lūxus, -ūs, *m.*, indulgence
lyra, -ae, *f.*, lyre (lyre)

M., *abbr. for* **Mārcus**
Macedonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Macedonians
Macedonia, -ae, *f.*, Macedonia
māceria, -ae, *f.*, wall of clay, wall
Macrīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name
magicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, magic (magic)
***magis**, *adv.*, more, rather: **eo magis**, so much the more, all the more. — **maximē**, *superl.*, especially
***magister, -trī**, *m.*, teacher, master (master)
***magistrātus, -ūs** [*magister*], *m.*, office; magistrate (magistrate)
magnificus, -a, -um [*magnus-facio*], *adj.*, splendid, grand, magnificent (magnificent)
***magnitūdō, -inis** [*magnus*], *f.*, greatness, size, stature, force, severity (magnitude)
***magnopere**, *adv.*, greatly
***magnus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, great, large, important, serious. — **major**, *comp. in plur. as noun*, elders, ancestors. — **major (nātū)**, older (*comp. of* **senex**). — **maximus**, *superl.*, largest, very large, greatest, very great, *etc.*: **maximis itineribus**, by forced marches (magnate, maximum)
Maharbal, -alis, *m.*, Maharbal, an officer of Hannibal's army
major, *see* **magnus**
***majōrēs, -um**, *m. plur*, ancestors
male, *adv.*, badly, unsuccessfully. — **peius**, *comp.* — **pessimē**, *superl.*
***maleficium, -ī**, *n.*, harm
***mālō, mālle, māluī, —** [*magis, volo*], wish more, wish rather, prefer
malum, -ī [*malus*], *n.*, evil, mischief, misfortune
***malus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, bad. — **peior**, *comp.*, worse. — **pessimus**, *superl.*, worst, very bad
***mandātum, -ī** [*n. p.p. of mando*], *n.*, command, instructions (mandate)

***mandō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, intrust, instruct, commit: **se fugae** (take to) (mandatory)

Mandubiī, **-ōrum**, *m. plur.*, the Mandubii, a tribe of Gaul

māne, *adv.*, in the morning

***maneō**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsus**, stay, remain; continue (manse)

manipulāris, **-is** [*manipulus*], *m.*, a soldier of a maniple

manipulus, **-ī** [*manus*], *m.*, handful; maniple

mānō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, —, flow, run (emanate)

mānsī, *see* **maneō**

***manus**, **-ūs**, *f.*, hand, company, band, troop; power: **in manibus nostris**, within hand's reach (manufacture)

Mārcellus, **-ī**, *m.*, a Roman name

Mārcus, **-ī**, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

***mare**, **-is**, *n.*, the sea: **nostrum** (*i.e.* the Mediterranean); **mare Oceanum**, the ocean (marine)

***maritimus**, **-a**, **-um** [*mare*], *adj.*, of the sea, maritime, naval: **ora** (the seashore) (maritime)

marītus, **-ī**, *m.*, husband (marital)

Marius, **-ī**, *m.*, a Roman name

Mārs, **Mārtis**, *m.*, Mars, god of war (martial)

***māter**, **-tris**, *f.*, mother: **mater familias** (*old gen. of* **familia**), matron (maternal)

***māteria**, **-ae**, *f.*, wood, timber (material)

mātrimōnium, **-ī**, [*mater*], *n.*, marriage: **in matrimonium ducere**, marry (matrimony)

Matrona, **-ae**, *m.*, the Marne, a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris

mātrōna, **-ae**, *f.*, lady, woman, matron (matron)

mātrōnālis, **-e**, *adj.*, of a matron, matronly

mātūrē [*maturus*], *adv.*, speedily

mātūrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [*maturus*], hasten, make haste

***mātūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, early; ripe, mature (mature)

maximē, *adv.*, most, very, especially

***maximus**, *see* **magnus**

Mēdēa, **-ae**, *f.*, Medea, daughter of Aeëtes, king of Colchis

medicāmentum, **-ī**, *n.*, drug

medicīna, **-ae**, *f.*, art of healing, medicine (medicinal)

medicus, **-ī**, *m.*, doctor (medical)

***mediocris**, **-cre** [*medius*], *adj.*, middling, moderate: **spatium** (a little, no great); **non mediocris**, no little, no small degree of (mediocre)

mediocriter [*mediocris*], *adv.*, moderately: **non mediocriter**, in no small degree

Mediolānum, **-ī**, *n.*, Mediolanum, a town in Italy, now Milan

mediterrāneus, **-a**, **-um** [*medius-terra*], *adj.*, inland (mediterranean)

***medius**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, the middle of: **de media nocte**, about midnight (medium)

mehercule, *interj.*, by Hercules!

melior, *comp. of* **bonus**

melius, *comp. of* **bene**

membrum, **-ī**, *n.*, limb (*part of the body*) (member)

memorābilis, -e, *adj.*, memorable (memorable)

***memoria, -ae** [*memor*, mindful], *f.*, memory, recollection: **memoria tenere**, remember; **nostrā memoriā**, within our memory, in our own time (memory)

Menapiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Menapii, a Belgian tribe

Menēnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Esp.*, Menenius Agrippa

***mēns, mentis,** *f.*, mind, state of mind, feeling (mental)

***mēnsa, -ae,** *f.*, table

***mēnsis, -is,** *m.*, month

mēnsūra, -ae [*metior*], *f.*, measure (mensuration)

mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mention (mention)

***mercātor, -ōris,** *m.*, trader

mercātūra, -ae, *f.*, traffic, trade

mercēs, -ēdis [*merx*], *f.*, hire, pay, wages

Mercurius, -ī, *m.*, Mercury, the messenger of the gods

***mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus,** win, deserve, gain; serve: **mereri de,** render service to (merit)

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, plunge, sink (merge)

meridiānus, -a, -um [*meridies*], *adj.*, of midday (meridian)

***meridiēs, -ēī** [*medius-dies*], *m.*, midday, noon; the south

meritum, -ī [*n. p.p. of mereor*], *n.*, merit, service, kindness (merit)

meritus, -a, -um [*p.p. of mereor*], *adj.*, deserved, fit, proper

merx, mercis, *f.*, wares, merchandise

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, a Roman name

mēta, -ae, *f.*, goal

***mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum,** measure out, distribute (mete)

Mētius, -ī, *m.*, Metius, a Gaul

metō, metere, messuī, messus, cut, reap, gather

metuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*metus*], fear

***metus, -ūs,** *m.*, fear

***meus, -a, -um,** *poss. adj.*, my, mine

mī, *voc. sing. of* **meus**

Midās, -ae, *m.*, Midas, a Phrygian king

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, move (migrate)

mihi, *see* **ego**

***mīles, -itis,** *m.*, soldier

***mīlitāris, -e** [*miles*], *adj.*, of the soldiers, military: **res militaris,** warfare (military)

mīlitia, -ae [*miles*], *f.*, military service. — **mīlitiae,** *locative*, in the field of war (militia)

***mīlle,** *indecl. adj. and noun*, thousand: **mille passus** *or* **mille passuum,** thousand paces, mile (mile)

minae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, threats

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, the goddess of the arts

minimē, *adv.*, least, very little, not at all

minimus, -a, -um, *adj., superl. of* **parvus,** smallest, least (minimum)

ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, serve (minister)

minor, -us, *adj., comp. of* **parvus,** smaller, less. — **minor (nātū),** younger (*comp. of* **juvenis**) (minor)

Mīnōs, -ōis, *m.*, Minos, one of the judges in the Lower World

***minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus** [*minus*], lessen, weaken, diminish: **aestus** (ebb) (minute)

minus, *adv.*, less, not so (minus)

mīrāculum, -ī [*miror*], *n.*, wonder, miracle (miracle)

***mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum** [*mirus*], wonder, wonder at. — **mīrātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. in pres. sense*, surprised

***mīrus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, surprising, wonderful

misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtus, mix, mingle (mix)

***miser, -era, -erum**, *adj.*, miserable, wretched, pitiable, poor (miser)

misericordia, -ae, *f.*, mercy, pity

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum [*miser*], bewail, complain of (commiserate)

missus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **mitto**

***mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus**, send, dispatch, discharge, shoot: **sub jugum mittere**, send under the yoke (mission)

mōbilitās, -ātis [*mobilis*, movable], *f.*, mobility, inconstancy, fickleness (mobility)

moderor, -ārī, -ātus sum [*modus*], control, regulate, restrain (moderate)

modestia, -ae, *f.*, self-control, modesty (modesty)

***modo**, *adv.*, only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: **non modo**, not only; **modo . . . modo**, now . . . now

***modus, -ī**, *m.*, measure, quantity; manner, way, fashion, style, method; limit: **quem ad modum**, how (mode)

moenia, -ium [*munio*], *n. plur.*, fortifications, walls

molestē, *adv.*, heavily, severely: **moleste ferre**, take it ill, be vexed at

molestia, -ae, *f.*, annoyance, vexation

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; weak, feeble

mollitia, -ae [*mollis*], *f.*, weakness

Mona, -ae, *f.*, Mona, now the Isle of Man

***moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, remind, warn, advise, urge, instruct

***mōns, montis**, *m.*, mountain (mount)

***mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, point out, make known, show

mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, wonder, monster (monster)

monumentum, -ī [*moneo*], *n.*, monument (monument)

***mora, -ae**, *f.*, delay

morātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **moror**

morbus, -ī, *m.*, sickness, disease (morbid)

Morinī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Morini, a tribe of the Belgians

morior, morī, mortuus sum [*mors*], die (mortuary)

***moror, -ārī, -ātus sum** [*mora*], retard, check, delay, tarry

***mors, mortis**, *f.*, death (mortal)

morsus, -ūs, *m.*, bite

mortālis, -e, *adj.*, mortal. — *Masc. as noun*, a mortal, human being (mortal)

mortiferus, -a, -um [*mors-fero*], *adj.*, fatal

mortuus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **morior** *as adj.*, dead

***mōs, mōris**, *m.*, custom. — *Plur.*, customs, habits, character (moral)

mōtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **moveo**

***mōtus, -ūs** [*moveo*], *m.*, movement, disturbance, uprising

***moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus**, move, remove: **castra** (break camp) (move)

mox, *adv.*, soon

Mūcius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Mucius Scaevola, who tried to kill Porsena

***mulier, -eris**, *f.*, woman

multa, -ae, *f.*, a fine (mulct)

***multitūdō, -inis** [*multus*], *f.*, great number; the multitude (multitude)

multō, *adv.*, much

multum, *adv.*, much

***multus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, much, many: **multo die**, late in the day; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night. — *Comp.*, **plūs, plūris**, *as adj.*, more, much; *as noun*, several, many. — *Superl.*, **plūrimus, -a, -um**, most, very many, very much: **quam plurimi**, as many as possible; **plurimum posse**, have most power, be very influential; **plurimum valere**, be strongest (plural)

munditia, -ae, *f.*, elegance

mundus, -ī, *m.*, universe, world (mundane)

***mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus**, fortify; defend, guard; build

***mūnītiō, -ōnis** [*munio*], *f.*, a fortification, works, defenses (munitions)

***mūnus, -eris**, *n.*, duty; present, gift: **munus militiae**, military service

mūrālis, -e [*murus*], *adj.*, of a wall, wall (mural)

***mūrus, -ī**, *m.*, wall (immune)

Mūsa, -ae, *f.*, a Muse

***mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, change (mutation)

Mȳsia, -ae, *f.*, Mysia, a country of Asia Minor

nactus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **nanciscor**

***nam**, *conj.*, for

***namque**, *conj.*, for (*more emphatic than* **nam**)

***nancīscor, -cīscī, nactus sum**, find, obtain

Narbō, -ōnis, *m.*, Narbo, a city of the Roman Province, now Narbonne

Narcissus, -ī, *m.*, Narcissus

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tell, relate (narrate)

***nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum**, be born, arise, spring up, be found. — **nātus, -a, -um**, *p.p.*, sprung, born (nascent)

Nāsīca, -ae, *m.*, a Roman name

nātālis, -e [*natus*], *adj.*, of birth (natal)

nātiō, -ōnis** [*cf.* ***nascor], *f.*, race, tribe, clan (nation)

natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, swim, float (natatorium)

nātūra, -ae** [*cf.* ***nascor], *f.*, nature, character (nature)

nātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **nascor**

nātus, -ūs [*cf.* ***nascor***], *m.*, birth: **maiores natu**, elders

***nauta, -ae**, *m.*, sailor

nauticus, -a, -um [***nauta***], *adj.*, of a sailor (*or* sailors), naval (nautical)

nāvālis, -e [***navis***], *adj.*, of ships, naval (naval)

nāvicula, -ae [***navis***], *f.*, small boat, skiff

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [***navigo***], *f.*, voyage, traveling by sea (navigation)

nāvigium, -ī [***navis***], *n.*, vessel, boat

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [navis***], sail (navigate)

***nāvis, -is**, *f.*, ship, vessel, boat: **oneraria** (transport); **longa** (war galley) (nave)

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, do zealously: **operam** (do one's best)

***-ne** (*enclitic*), *sign of a question expecting an affirmative or negative answer*, not?

nē, *adv.*, *negative with the volitive subjunctive*, not. — ***nē . . . quidem**, not . . . even

***nē**, *conj.*, lest, that . . . not, not to, in order that . . . not, for fear that. — *After verbs of fearing*, that

***nec**, *see* **neque**

necessārius, -a, -um** [necesse***], *adj.*, necessary: **tempus** (critical). — *As noun*, kinsman, close friend. — *Abl. as adv.*, **necessāriō**, necessarily, unavoidably (necessary)

***necesse**, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, inevitable

necessitās, -ātis [***necesse***], *f.*, necessity, compulsion (necessity)

necessitūdō, -inis [***necesse***], *f.*, intimacy, close relations

***necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, put to death, kill, murder

nefārius, -a, -um [***nefas***], *adj.*, wicked (nefarious)

nefās, *indecl. n.*, a wrong, a crime

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus** [nec-lego***, gather], disregard, neglect (neglect)

***negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, say no, say . . . not, refuse, deny (negative)

negōtior, -ārī, -ātus sum [***negotium***], do business (negotiate)

negōtium, -ī** [nec-otium***, ease], *n.*, business, occupation, undertaking; difficulty, trouble: **quid negoti**, what business? **dare negotium alicui**, employ one, give in charge to

Nemesis, -is, *f.*, Nemesis, the goddess of justice

nēmō** [ne-homo***], *c.*, no one, nobody

Neptūnus, -ī, *m.*, Neptune, god of the sea

nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means, not at all

***neque (nec)**, *conj.*, and not, and yet . . . not, nor: **neque enim**, for . . . not

***neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor

nēquīquam, *adv.*, in vain

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Nervian. — *Masc. plur.*, the Nervii, a tribe of the Belgians

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew, muscle. — *Plur.*, power, strength, vigor (nerve)

nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī, —, not know: **nescio quis,** I know not who

neu, *see* **neve**

***neuter, -tra, -trum** [*ne-uter*], *adj. and pron.*, neither. — *Plur.*, neither side (neuter)

***nēve (neu),** *conj.*, and not, nor

nex, necis, *f.*, death

***nihil,** *indecl. n.*, nothing. — *As adv.*, not at all: **non nihil,** somewhat (nihilist)

nihilō, *abl. as adv.*, none, no: **nihilo minus,** none the less

nimius, -a, -um, *adj.*, too great, excessive

Niobē, -ēs, *f.*, Niobe

***nisi,** *conj.*, unless, except

Nitiobrogēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Nitiobroges, a tribe of Aquitania

nītor, nītī, nīxus *or* **nīsus sum,** struggle, strive: **niti insidiis** (rely upon)

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow

nōbilis, -e** [*cf.* ***nosco], *adj.*, famous, noble, well-born. — *Plur. as noun*, the nobles (noble)

nōbilitās, -ātis** [nobilis***], *f.*, the nobility, the nobles (nobility)

nōbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [***nobilis***], make famous

nocēns, *see* **noceo**

***noceō, nocēre, nocuī,** —, injure, harm, harass. — **nocēns, -entis,** *pres. p. as adj.*, guilty

***noctū,** *adv.*, by night

nocturnus, -a, -um** [nox***], *adj.*, nocturnal, by night, night (nocturnal)

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** — [ne-volo***], be unwilling, wish not to. — **nōlī, nōlīte,** *imper.*, do not (*with infin.*)

***nōmen, -inis,** *n.*, name; account (noun)

nōminātim [***nomen***], *adv.*, by name

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [***nomen***], name, mention, call (nominate)

***nōn,** *adv.*, not: **non est dubium,** there is no doubt; **non jam,** no longer; **non nihil,** something, somewhat; **non numquam,** sometimes

***nōn modo (nōn sōlum) . . . sed etiam (vērum etiam),** not only . . . but also

***nōn nūllus,** *see* **nullus**

***nōndum,** *adv.*, not yet

nōnne [***non-ne***], *interrog. adv., suggesting an affirmative answer*, not ?

***nōnus, -a, -um,** *num. adj.*, ninth (noon)

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.*, Noreia, a city of the Norici

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Norici, Norican

nōs, *see* **ego**

***nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus,** learn, become acquainted with. — *In perf. tenses*, know, recognize

***noster, -tra, -trum,** *poss. adj.*, our, ours. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, our men (*the Romans*) (nostrum)

nostrum, *gen. plur. of* **ego**

***nōtus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, known, noted, famous

***novem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine

Noviodūnum, **-ī**, *n.*, Noviodunum, a town of the Bituriges. — A town of the Suessiones

novitās, **-ātis** [*novus*], *f.*, novelty, strangeness

***novus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, new, fresh; strange. — **novissimus**, **-a**, **-um**, *superl.*, latest, last: **agmen** (the rear) (novice)

***nox**, **noctis**, *f.*, night: **prima nocte**, in the early part of the night; **multa nocte**, late at night

noxia, **-ae** [*cf.* *noceo*], *f.*, crime, guilt (noxious)

nūbō, **nūbere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptus**, veil; marry (*of a woman*)

***nūdō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [*nudus*], lay bare, expose

nūdus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, naked, bare, unprotected, exposed (nude)

***nūllus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, not any, no. — *As noun*, no one. — **nōn nūllus**, some; *plur. as noun*, some, some persons (nullify)

***num**, *interrog. adv., suggesting a negative answer*

nūmen, **-inis**, *n.*, divine will, divine power; divinity

***numerus**, **-ī**, *m.*, number (number)

Numida, **-ae**, *m.*, a Numidian

nummus, **-ī**, *m.*, coin, money

***numquam**, *adv.*, never

***nunc**, *adv.*, now

***nūntiō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [*nuntius*], report, tell, announce (announce)

***nūntius**, **-ī**, *m.*, messenger; news: **nuntium mittere**, send word (nuncio)

nūper, *adv.*, lately, recently, not long ago

nūpta, **-ae** [*p.p. of* *nubo*], *f.*, bride

nūptiae, **-ārum**, *f. plur.*, wedding

nūptiālis, **-e**, *adj.*, wedding (nuptial)

nurus, **-ūs**, *f.*, daughter-in-law

nusquam, *adv.*, nowhere

nūtrīx, **-īcis**, *f.*, nurse

nūtus, **-ūs** [*nuo*, nod], *m.*, a nod

nympha, **-ae**, *f.*, nymph (nymph)

***ob**, *prep. with acc.*, against; on account of, for

obdūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, draw over; lead towards, lead against: **fossam** (construct)

obēdiō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, obey (obedient)

***obiciō**, **-icere**, **-jēcī**, **-jectus** [*ob-jacio*], throw against, present, set up, expose. — **objectus**, **-a**, **-um**, *p.p. as adj.*, lying opposite, lying in the way (object)

objectus, **-a**, **-um**, *p.p. of* **obicio**

oblātus, **-a**, **-um**, *p.p. of* **offero**

oblinō, **-linere**, **-lēvī**, **-litus**, smear (obliterate)

oblīquus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, slanting, sideways (oblique)

obscūrus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, dark (obscure)

obsecrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, entreat, beg

observō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, pay attention to (observe)

***obses**, **-idis** [*cf.* *obsideo*], *c.*, hostage

obsessus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **obsideo**

***obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus** [*ob-sedeo*, sit], blockade, block, besiege, guard (obsession)

obsidiō, -ōnis** [*cf.* ***obsideo], *f.*, siege, blockade

obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, seal up, seal

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, implore

***obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus** [*ob-teneo*], retain, occupy, possess; gain, acquire, obtain (obtain)

obtulī, *perf. of* **offero**

obviam, *adv.*, in the way of, to meet (obvious)

***occāsiō, -ōnis** [*ob-cado*], *f.*, opportunity (occasion)

***occāsus, -ūs** [*ob-cado*], *m.*, a falling, a setting: **solis** (the sunset, the west)

***occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus** [*ob-caedo*], kill, massacre

occīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **occido**

***occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*occultus*], conceal, hide

***occultus, -a, -um** [*p.p. of occulo*, hide], *adj.*, concealed. — *Neut. as noun*, secret place; **in occulto**, in secret (occult)

occupātiō, -ōnis [*occupo*], *f.*, occupation, business affairs (occupation)

***occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, seize, take possession of: **regna** (usurp). —**occupātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, engaged, employed, busy (occupy)

***occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursus** [*ob-curro*, run], meet, come on, attack, find (occur)

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, ocean (ocean)

Ocelum, -ī, *n.*, Ocelum, a town in Cisalpine Gaul

Octāvius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

***octāvus, -ā, -um** [*octo*], *num. adj.*, eighth (octave)

octingentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, eight hundred

***octō**, *indecl. num. adj.*, eight (October)

octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty

***oculus, -ī**, *m.*, the eye (oculist)

ōdī, ōdisse, *defective*, hate, detest

odium, -ī [*cf.* ***odī***], *n.*, hatred (odium)

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus [*ob-fendo*, strike], hurt, offend: **animum** (hurt the feelings) (offend)

offēnsum, -ī [*offendo*], *n.*, offense (offense)

***offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus** [*ob-fero*], throw in one's way, offer: **se morti** (expose one's self to) (offer)

***officium, -ī**, *n.*, service, duty, allegiance, obligation: **discedere ab officio**, fail in duty (office)

oleum, -ī, *n.*, oil (oleomargarine)

ōlim, *adv.*, once, once on a time

ōmen, -inis, *n.*, omen (omen)

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [*ob-mitto*], let go by, disregard: **consilium** (neglect) (omit)

***omnīnō** [*omnis*], *adv.*, wholly, altogether, entirely, on the whole, utterly, in all, at all, whatever (*with negatives*)

***omnis, -e**, *adj.*, all, the whole of, every (omnibus)

***onerārius, -a, -um** [*onus*], *adj.*, for burdens: **naves** (transports)

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*onus*], load

***onus, -eris**, *n.*, burden, weight (onus)

opācus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shaded, dark (opaque)

***opera, -ae** [*opus*], *f.*, work, pains, attention: **operam navare**, do one's best; **operam dare**, devote one's self, take pains (opera)

***opīniō, -ōnis** [*opinor*], *f.*, notion, expectation, idea, reputation (opinion)

opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, suppose (opine)

***oportet, -ēre, -uit**, it ought, it is necessary, it is best

***oppidānus, -a, -um** [*oppidum*], *adj.*, of a town. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, townspeople

***oppidum, -ī**, *n.*, stronghold, town

Oppius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Oppian (*of a law proposed by C. Oppius*)

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [*ob-pono*], oppose (oppose)

opportūnē, *adv.*, opportunely

opportūnitās, -ātis [*opportunus*], *f.*, timeliness, fitness, good luck, favorable location (opportunity)

***opportūnus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, opportune, advantageous, lucky (opportune)

oppositus, -a, -um [*p.p. of oppono*], *adj.*, opposed, opposite (opposite)

oppressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **opprimo**

***opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus** [*ob-premo*], overwhelm, crush, overpower, surprise (oppress)

***oppugnātiō, -ōnis** [*oppugno*], *f.*, siege, attack

***oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*ob-pugno*], attack, lay siege to

***ops, opis**, *f.*, help, aid. — *Plur.*, resources, strength, wealth (opulent)

optimē, *superl. of* **bene**

optimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **bonus** (optimist)

opus, *indecl. n.*, need, necessity

***opus, operis**, *n.*, work, labor; works, fortifications

ōra, -ae, *f.*, shore, coast

ōrāculum, -ī [*oro*], *n.*, oracle

***ōrātiō, -ōnis** [*oro*], *f.*, speech, address (oration)

ōrātor, -ōris [*oro*], *m.*, speaker, ambassador, envoy (orator)

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle: **orbis terrarum**, the circle of lands, the world (orbit)

***ōrdō, -inis**, *m.*, series, row, tier, rank (*of soldiers*), grade, arrangement, order (order)

Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Orgetorix, a nobleman of the Helvetians

***orior, orīrī, ortus sum**, arise, spring up; begin, start. — **oriēns, -entis**, *pres. p. as adj.*, rising: **sol** (sunrise, the east) (orient)

ōrnāmentum, -ī [*orno*], *n.*, an adornment; an honor (ornament)

ōrnātus, -ūs [*orno*], *m.*, adornment

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, adorn, equip, furnish; honor. — **ōrnātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, furnished, well-equipped, honored (ornate)

***ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, speak; pray, entreat, ask (orate)

Orpheus, -ī, *m.*, Orpheus, a Thracian bard, who could charm beasts and move rocks and trees by his music

ortus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **orior**

ortus, -ūs [*orior*], *m.*, rising, source: **solis** (the east)

os, ossis, *n.*, bone (ossify)

***ōs, -ōris**, *n.*, the mouth, the face (oral)

ōsculum, -ī [*os*], *n.*, a kiss

***ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus**, present, show, point out, make known, state, declare

ostentātiō, -ōnis [*ostendo*], *f.*, pride (ostentation)

Ōstiēnsis, -e, *adj.*, Ostian

ōtium, -ī, *n.*, repose, leisure, quiet

ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep

P., *abbr. for* **Publius**

pābulātiō, -ōnis [*pabulor*], *f.*, foraging for fodder

***pābulor, -ārī, -ātus sum** [*pabulum*], gather fodder

pābulum, -ī** [*cf.* ***pasco, feed], *n.*, fodder

***pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*pax*], pacify, subdue. — **pācātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, peaceable, quiet

Pactōlus, -ī, *m.*, the Pactolus, a river famous for its golden sands

Padus, -ī, *m.*, the Po, a river of Italy

paedagōgus, -ī, *m.*, attendant (pedagogue)

***paene**, *adv.*, almost, nearly

Paetus, -ī, *m.*, Paetus, a Roman, husband of Arria

***pāgus, -ī**, *m.*, district, canton (pagan)

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly

Palātium, -ī, *n.*, the Palatine, one of the seven hills of Rome (palace)

***palūs, -ūdis**, *f.*, marsh

pālus, -ī, *m.*, stake

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus, spread out. — **passus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, outstretched; loosened: **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands

panthēra, -ae, *f.*, panther (panther)

Papīrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

***pār, paris**, *adj.*, equal, alike, like (par)

parātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **parō** *as adj.*, ready, prepared

parcē [*cf.* ***parco***], *adv.*, sparingly, frugally

***parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus**, spare: **parcendo**, by economy

parēns, -entis [***pario***, bear], *c.*, parent (parent)

***pāreō, pārēre, pāruī**, —, appear; obey, submit to

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, bring forth; produce, obtain

***parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, procure, provide, prepare, arrange (pare)

***pars, partis**, *f.*, portion, part, share; side, direction, region: **una ex parte**, on one side; **ex utraque parte**, on both sides (part)

***partim**, *adv.*, partly, in part

partus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **pario**

***parum**, *adv.*, not much, not sufficiently

***parvus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, small, little, slight

passus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **pando**; *also p.p. of* **patior**

***passus, -ūs**, *m.*, step, pace: **mille passus** *or* **mille passuum**, *a Roman* mile, *five thousand feet* (pace)

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*pateo-facio*], lay open, open, open up

patefīō, -fierī, *pass. of* **patefacio**

***pateō, -ēre, -uī**, —, lie open, spread, extend. — **patēns, -entis**, *pres. p. as adj.*, open, exposed (patent)

***pater, -tris**, *m.*, father: **pater familias** (*old gen. of* **familia**), head of the family. — *Plur.*, ancestors; the patricians

paternus, -a, -um [*pater*], *adj.*, paternal, of a father (paternal)

patientia, -ae, *f.*, patience, endurance (patience)

***patior, patī, passus sum**, suffer, endure, allow, permit (passive)

Patrae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Patrae, a town in Greece

***patria, -ae** [*pater*], *f.*, native land, country

patrius, -a, -um [*pater*], *adj.*, ancestral, of one's fathers, of a father

patrōnus, -ī, *m.*, protector, patron (patron)

patruus, -ī [*pater*], *m.*, uncle (*on the father's side*)

***paucī, -ae, -a**, *adj.*, few

paucitās, -ātis [*paucī*], *f.*, small number, scarcity (paucity)

***paulātim**, *adv.*, little by little, a little at a time, gradually

***paulisper**, *adv.*, a little while

***paulō** [*abl. of paulus*, little], *adv.*, a little, slightly

***paulum, -ī** [*neut. of paulus*, little], a little. — *As adv.*, a little, a short distance, somewhat

Paulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

pauper, -eris, *adj.*, poor (pauper)

paupertās, -ātis [*pauper*], *f.*, poverty (poverty)

***pāx, pācis**, *f.*, peace, favor (peace)

pectus, -oris, *n.*, breast, heart (pectoral)

pecūlātus, -ūs, *m.*, theft (peculation)

***pecūnia, -ae** [*pecus*], *f.*, money, wealth (pecuniary)

***pecus, -oris**, *n.*, cattle. — *Plur.*, cattle, flocks and herds

***pedes, -itis** [*pes*], *m.*, footman, foot soldier; the infantry

***pedester, -tris, -tre** [*pedes*], *adj.*, of infantry, of persons on foot, by foot: **copiae** (the infantry) (pedestrian)

peditātus, -ūs [*pedes*], *m.*, infantry

Pedius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

peior, *see* **malus**

peius, *see* **male**

Peliās, -ae, *m.*, Pelias, king of Thessaly, uncle of Jason

pellis, -is, *f.*, hide, skin: **sub pellibus**, in tents

***pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus**, beat, drive, defeat, repulse

Penātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, Penates

pendeō, -ēre, pependī, —, hang (pendent)

*pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out; pay (*a penalty*), suffer (*punishment*) (expend)

penitus, *adv.*, far within: penitus ad, all the way to

*per, *prep. with acc.*, through, along, over, among, by means of

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus, go over, relate, describe; end

percellō, -cellere, -culī, -culsus, strike; affect

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*per-capio*], acquire, learn, feel, hear (perceive)

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursus, run along

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, hit, strike, run through (percussion)

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, —, learn thoroughly

perditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* perdo

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, destroy, ruin, lose. — perditus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, ruined, desperate, abandoned

*perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead through, lead along, conduct, bring, bring over, make

peregrīnus, -ī, *m.*, alien, foreigner

*pereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, perish, be killed (perish)

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ride through

perfacilis, -e, *adj.*, very easy

*perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, carry through, carry; spread; bear through, endure, suffer, submit to

*perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*per-facio*], do, complete, finish; bring about (perfect)

*perfidia, -ae [*perfidus*, treacherous], *f.*, treachery, faithlessness (perfidy)

perfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, pierce, transfix

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [*per-frango*], break through

perfuga, -ae [*cf. perfugio*], *m.*, fugitive, deserter

*perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, run away, escape to, desert

perfugium, -ī [*perfugio*], *n.*, place of refuge, refuge

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus [*per-rego*], keep on, advance

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus sum [*periculum*], try, test, try to find out

perīculōsus, -a, -um [*periculum*], *adj.*, dangerous (perilous)

*perīculum, -ī, *n.*, test, trial, attempt; peril, danger, risk (peril)

*perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skilled, skillful

perlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* perfero

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*per-lego*, read], read through

*permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsus, remain, continue, persist

*permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, grant, allow, give up, intrust (permit)

*permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, influence, affect. — permōtus, -a, -um, *p.p.*, much influenced, overcome

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, destruction, ruin (pernicious)

perpaucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, very few, a very few

perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum [*per-patior*], suffer, endure

***perpetuus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, continuous, lasting, permanent: **in perpetuum**, forever. — **perpetuō**, *abl. as adv.*, forever, constantly, continually (perpetual)

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, break through

perruptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **perrumpo**

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, write in full, set down, state, describe

***persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum**, follow up, pursue, attack (persecute)

Perseus, -ī, *m.*, Perseus, king of Macedonia

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, persist (persevere)

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, pay, suffer (*punishment*)

persōna, -ae, *f.*, mask, character, person (person)

***perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus** [*per-specio,* look at], see through; understand, learn, perceive, observe, discover (perspective)

***persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus**, induce, persuade, convince. — *Pass.* (*impers.*), be persuaded (*with dat. of person*) (persuade)

***perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus**, terrify, alarm

pertināciа, -ae, *f.*, obstinacy, stubbornness (pertinacity)

***pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —** [*per-teneo*], tend, extend; have to do with (pertain)

pertulī, *see* **perfero**

perturbātiō, -ōnis [*perturbo*], *f.*, disturbance, alarm, panic (perturbation)

***perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, disturb, throw into confusion, alarm, terrify (perturb)

pervādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsus, go through (pervade)

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, roam about

***perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus**, arrive at, reach, come, arrive

***pēs, pedis**, *m.*, foot, leg: **pedem referre**, draw back, give way (pedal)

pessimus, -a, -um, *see* **malus**

pestis, -is, *f.*, pest, curse (pest)

***petō, petere, petīvī, petītus**, attack, make for, try to get, seek; ask, request (petition)

Petrōnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

phalanx, -angis, *f.*, phalanx (phalanx)

pharetra, -ae, *f.*, quiver

Phāsis, -idis (*acc.* **-im**), *m.*, the Phasis, a river flowing into the Black Sea

Philēmōn, -onis, *m.*, Philemon, a countryman of Asia Minor

Philippus, -ī, *m.*, Philip, king of Macedonia

philosophus, -ī, *m.*, philosopher

Phīneus, -ī, *m.*, Phineus, a blind king of Thrace

Phoebē, -ēs, *f.*, Diana

Phoebus, -ī, *m.*, Apollo

Phrixus, -ī, *m.*, Phrixus, brother of Helle

pietās, -ātis, *f.*, duty, sense of duty (piety)

***pīlum, -ī**, *n.*, javelin (pile)

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman name

***placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, please. — *Esp. in third person*, it pleases (please)

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pacify, appease (placate)

***plānitiēs, -ēī** [*planus*], *f.*, plain

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, flat, level, even (plane)

plausus, -ūs, *m.*, clapping, applause, approval (applause)

plēbēius, -a, -um [*plebs*], *adj.*, of the common people, plebeian (plebeian)

***plēbs, -is**, *f.*, the common people

***plēnus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, full

***plērīque, -aeque, -aque**, *adj.*, most of, very many

***plērumque**, *adv.*, generally, usually, for the most part, very often

plumbum, -ī, *n.*, lead: **plumbum album**, tin (plumber)

plūrimus, *see* **multus**

plūs, *see* **multus**

Plūtō, -ōnis, *m.*, Pluto, king of the Lower World

pōculum, -ī, *n.*, cup

***poena, -ae**, *f.*, penalty; punishment (penal)

Poenus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Carthaginian. — *Masc. as noun*, Carthaginian

***poēta, -ae**, *m.*, poet (poet)

***polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum**, offer, promise

pollicitātiō, -ōnis [*polliceor*], *f.*, offer, promise

pollicitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **polliceor**

Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.*, Polyphemus, one of the Argonauts

pompa, -ae, *f.*, procession (pomp)

pōmum, -ī, *n.*, apple (pomology)

pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight (ponderous)

***pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**, lay down, place, put; lay, make depend on: **castra** (pitch); **in fuga praesidium** (find, seek). — **positus, -a, -um**, *p.p.*, situated, lying, depending on (position)

***pōns, pontis**, *m.*, bridge (pontoon)

pontifex, -ficis, *m.*, pontifex, priest (pontifical)

populātiō, -ōnis [*populor*], *f.*, a plundering, raid

***populor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, ravage, devastate

***populus, -ī**, *m.*, people, nation, tribe (people)

Porcius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

porcus, -ī, *m.*, pig (pork)

***porta, -ae**, *f.*, gate, door (porter)

portentum, -ī, *n.*, sign, omen (portent)

***portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, carry, bring, convey (portage)

***portus, -ūs**, *m.*, harbor, port (port)

***poscō, poscere, poposcī**, —, demand, require, claim

positus, **-a, -um**, *p.p. of* **pono**

possessiō, -ōnis [*possideo*], *f.*, possession, occupation; possessions, lands (possession)

*possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, occupy, possess, hold (possess)

*possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can: plurimum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence (posse)

*post, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, behind, after; afterwards, later: post se, in their rear

*posteā, *adv.*, afterwards

*posteāquam, *conj.*, after

*posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day.—*Plur. as noun*, posterity. — postrēmus, -a, -um, *superl.*, last. — postrēmō, *abl. as adv.*, lastly, finally (postern)

posthāc, *adv.*, after this

postis, -is, *m.*, post, doorpost (post)

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, place after, prefer (postpone)

*postquam, *conj.*, after

postrēmō, *see* posterus

postrēmus, *see* posterus

*postrīdiē [*posterus-dies*], *adv.*, the next day: postridie eius diei, the next day after that

postulātum, -ī [*n. p.p. of postulo*], *n.*, demand, request, claim (postulate)

*postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, claim, ask, request, demand, require

*potēns, -entis [*pres. p. of possum*], *adj.*, powerful, influential (potent)

potentia, -ae [*potens*], *f.*, power, authority (potency)

*potestās, -ātis [*potis*, able], *f.*, power, control, ability, opportunity, chance

*potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get the control of (*abl. or gen.*)

potītus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* potior

*potius, *adv.*, rather

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in comparison with

*praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus [*prae-habeo*], offer, present, furnish

praeceps, -cipitis [*prae-caput*], *adj.*, headlong, in haste: locus praeceps, a precipitous place (precipitous)

*praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*prae-capio*], take beforehand; order, give instructions (precept)

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*praeceps*], throw headlong: se (plunge headlong) (precipitate)

praecipuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, special

praeclārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, brilliant; splendid, famous

praecō, -ōnis, *m.*, herald

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursus, run before, outstrip, anticipate

*praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, prey, plunder (prey)

*praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, proclaim, assert, boast (predicate)

praedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, foretell, predict (predict)

praedium, -ī, *n.*, farm, estate

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead before, construct in front

*praefectus, -ī, *m.*, a captain, commander (prefect)

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, place before, esteem above, prefer. — *With reflexive,* excel (prefer)

***praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [*prae-facio*], put before, place in command of, set over

praefīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, set up in front (prefix)

***praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,** send forward, send on, send ahead (premise)

***praemium, -ī,** *n.*, reward, prize (premium)

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, place before, prefer; put in command, set over

praesaepiō, -īre, -saepsī, -saeptus, block

praesaeptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* praesaepio

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, order, direct, give directions (prescribe)

***praesēns, -entis,** *see* praesum

praesentia, -ae [*praesens*], *f.*, presence, the present moment: **in praesentia,** at the moment (presence)

***praesertim,** *adv.*, especially, particularly

praesideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [*prae-sedeo*], watch over, protect (preside)

***praesidium, -ī** [*praesideo*], *n.*, a guard, garrison; fortification, intrenchment; protection, safety: **in fuga praesidium ponere,** seek safety in flight

praestāns, -stantis [*praesto*], *adj.*, remarkable, conspicuous

***praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus,** stand before, excel, be superior; furnish, display: **praestat,** it is better; **officium** (discharge, perform)

***praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus,** be in front, be at the head of, be in command. — **praesēns, -entis,** *pres. p.*, present, immediate: **pluribus praesentibus,** in the presence of many (present)

***praeter,** *adv., and prep. with acc.*, along by, past, beyond; except, beside, contrary to

***praetereā,** *adv.*, furthermore, besides

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go by, pass by, pass over. — **praeteritus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, past: **praeterita,** *n. plur.*, the past (preterite)

praeterquam, *adv.*, except

praetextātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wearing the toga praetexta

praetextus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bordered with purple

praetor, -ōris [*praeeo,* go before], *m.*, praetor

praetōrius, -a, -um [*praetor*], *adj.*, of a praetor, praetorian: **praetoria cohors,** the bodyguard (*of a commander*)

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, burn at the end

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, pray, pray to (imprecate)

***prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus,** grasp, seize (comprehend)

***premō, premere, pressī, pressus,** press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress (press)

pretium, -ī, *n.*, price, cost, bribe (price)

***prex, precis,** *f.*, prayer, entreaty

***prīdiē,** *adv.*, the day before

prīmipīlus, -ī, *m.*, the first centurion

***prīmō** [*abl. of primus*], *adv.*, at first

***prīmum** [*acc. of primus*], *adv.*, first, in the first place: **cum primum,** as soon as; **quam primum,** as soon as possible

***prīmus, -a, -um,** *adj.*, first; *see* **prior** (prime)

***prīnceps, -ipis,** *adj.*, first, chief, foremost. — *As noun,* leader, chief (prince)

***prīncipātus, -ūs** [*princeps*], *m.*, foremost position, first place, leadership, leading position

prīncipium, -ī [*princeps*], *n.*, beginning

***prior, -us,** *adj.*, former, before: **priores,** those in front. — **prius,** *n. as adv.*, before (*see also* **priusquam**). — **prīmus, -a, -um,** *superl.*, first: **agmen** (front); **in primis,** especially. — *See* **primo** *and* **primum** (prior)

***prīstinus, -a, -um** [*prius*], *adj.*, old, former (pristine)

prius, *see* **prior**

***priusquam,** *conj.*, earlier than, until, before. — *Often separated,* **prius . . . quam**

***prīvātus, -a, -um** [*privo*], *adj.*, private, personal. — *Masc. as noun,* private citizen (private)

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, deprive

***prō,** *prep. with abl.*, in front of, before; in place of, instead of; for, on behalf of; in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, considering, in return for

***probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** approve, test, prove, show (probe)

***prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus,** go forward, advance: **longius** (go to a distance) (proceed)

***procul,** *adv.*, at a distance, far from

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, care for, have charge of, attend to (procure)

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursus, run forward, charge

procus, -ī, *m.*, suitor

prōditor, -ōris [*prodo*], *m.*, traitor, betrayer

prōditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **prodo**

***prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [*pro-do,* put], give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down

***prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus,** lead out, draw up (*troops*); protract, prolong (produce)

proelior, -ārī, -ātus sum [*proelium*], fight

***proelium, -ī,** *n.*, battle, contest, skirmish: **committere** (engage, join battle)

***profectiō, -ōnis** [*proficiscor*], *f.*, a setting out, departure

profectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **proficiscor**

prōfectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **proficio**

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, advance, bring toward

professus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **profiteor**

*prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*pro-facio*], accomplish (profit)

*proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus sum, start, leave, depart, set out

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, [*pro-fateor*, confess], declare publicly, state (profess)

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitus, flee, escape

prōgnātus, -a, -um [*pro-(g)natus, p.p. of (g)nascor*], *adj.*, sprung from: **prognati ab**, descendants of

*prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [*pro-gradior*, step, go], go forward, march forward, proceed, go (progress)

prōgressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **progredior**

*prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [*pro-habeo*], keep off, repel, stop, prevent, forbid (prohibit)

*prōiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*pro-jacio*], throw forward, abandon, throw away: **se ex navi** (leap) (project)

proinde, *adv.*, therefore, hence

prōmissum, -ī [*promitto*], *n.*, promise

prōmissus, -a, -um [*promitto*], *adj.*, long, hanging (*of hair*)

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, send forth; promise (promise)

prōmulgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, publish, make known, propose (promulgate)

prōnuba, -ae, *f.*, the pronuba, a bridesmaid

prōnūntiātiō, -ōnis [*pronuntio*], *f.*, proclamation (pronunciation)

*prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make known, communicate, give orders, declare (pronounce)

*prope, *prep. with acc.*, near; almost, nearly. — **propius**, *comp., adv.*, nearer. — **proximē**, *superl., adv.*, lately, last

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive away, repulse, rout, force back (propel)

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten, hurry

propinquitās, -ātis [*propinquus*], *f.*, nearness, vicinity; nearness in blood, relationship (propinquity)

*propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, near at hand, near; related. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, relatives

propior, -us [*prope*], *adj.*, nearer. — **proximus, -a, -um**, *superl.*, nearest, next, neighboring (proximate)

propitius, -a, -um, *adj.*, favorable (propitious)

*prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, place before, set out; offer, put in the way, make known (propose)

*proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, one's own, peculiar: **fines** (particular). — *Neut. as noun*, peculiar possession, mark (proper)

*propter, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, close by; on account of

*propterea, *adv.*, on this account: **propterea quod**, because

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight in defense

prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow (prow)

prōscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, offer for sale (proscribe)

***prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum**, pursue, escort; address (prosecute)

Prōserpina, -ae, *f.*, Proserpine, daughter of Ceres

prōspectus, -ūs [*prospicio*, look forward], *m.*, outlook, view (prospect)

prōsperē, *adv.*, successfully

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, destroy, lay prostrate (prostrate)

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, be useful, benefit, assist

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus protect, cover (protect)

***prōtinus**, *adv.*, straightway, at once

prōvectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **proveho**

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, carry forward. — *In pass.*, be carried forth, sail

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, foresee, take care, provide, arrange beforehand (provide)

***prōvincia, -ae**, *f.*, province (province)

prōvīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **provideo**

prōvocātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, appeal (provocation)

proximē, *see* **prope**

***proximus**, *see* **propior**

***prūdēns, -entis**, *adj.*, wise (prudent)

prūdentia, -ae [*prudens*], *f.*, foresight, discretion (prudence)

pūblicē [*publicus*], *adv.*, in the name of the state, publicly

Pūblicola, -ae, *m.*, a Roman surname

***pūblicus, -a, -um** [*populus*], *adj.*, of the people, of the state, public: **in publicum**, into a public place; **res publica**, commonwealth, state (public)

Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

pudor, -ōris, *m.*, sense of shame, sense of honor

***puella, -ae**, *f.*, girl

puellāris, -e [*puella*], *adj.*, girlish

***puer, -ī**, *m.*, boy, servant, slave. — *Plur.*, children: **a pueris**, from childhood

puerīlis, -e [*puer*], *adj.*, of a child: **aetas** (of childhood) (puerile)

pueritia, -ae [*puer*], *f.*, boyhood

***pugna, -ae**, *f.*, fight

***pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, fight

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful

pulchritūdō, -inis [*pulcher*], *f.*, beauty (pulchritude)

Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, T. Pullo, a centurion

pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, beat, beat on (pulsate)

pulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **pello**

***pulvis, -eris**, *m.*, dust (pulverize)

pūniceus, -a, -um, *adj.*, reddish

Pūnicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Punic

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, punish (punitive)

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, clean; excuse (purge)

purpura, -ae, *f.*, purple

pūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pure, white, clean (pure)

***putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, think, suppose, consider (putative)

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (*with* **montes**) the Pyrenees

Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*, Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus

Q., *abbr. for* **Quīntus**

***quā**, *rel. adv.*, by which (*way*), where

quācumque, *rel. adv.*, by whichever (*way*), wherever

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, four hundred

***quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus**, search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask (query)

quaesīvī, *see* **quaerō**

quaestiō, -ōnis [*quaero*], *f.*, investigation (question)

***quaestor, -ōris** [*quaero*], *m.*, quaestor

quaestus, -ūs [*quaero*], *m.*, acquisition, gain

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort? (quality)

***quam**, *adv. and conj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how? — 2. *Rel.*, as, than. — *Often with superlatives*, as . . . as possible: **quam maximus**, the greatest possible; **quam maxime potest**, as much as he can, as much as possible

quam diū, *adv.*: 1. *Rel.*, as long as. — 2. *Interrog.*, how long?

quandō, *adv.*, at any time: **si quando**, if ever, whenever

***quantus, -a, -um**, *adj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how great? how much? — 2. *Rel.*, as great as, as much as: **tantum . . . quantum**, so (as) much . . . as (quantity)

quārē, *interrog. adv.*, why?

***quārtus, -a, -um** [*quattuor*], *num. adj.*, fourth (quart)

quasi, *conj.*, as if, as it were

quatiō, -ere, —, —, shake

***quattuor**, *indecl. num. adj.*, four

quattuordecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fourteen

***-que**, *conj.*, and

***queror, querī, questus sum**, complain, bewail, lament (querulous)

questus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **queror**

quī, quae, quod, *interrog. adj.*, which? what?

***quī, quae, quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that

quī, qua (quae), quid, *used after* **si, ne, ubi**, *etc., indef. adj.*, any

quicquam, *see* **quisquam**

***quīcumque, quae-, quod-**, *indef. rel. adj. and pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever

quid, *interrog. adv.*, why?

***quīdam, quae-, quod- (quid-)**, *indef. adj. and pron.*, a certain, certain, a kind of

***quidem**, *adv.*, indeed, at least, certainly: **ne . . . quidem**, not even

quidnam, *interrog. pron.*, what, pray?

***quiēs, -ētis**, *f.*, rest, sleep, repose (quiet)

quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quiētus, rest, keep quiet, become quiet (quiescent)

***quiētus, -a, -um** [*p.p. of quiesco*] *adj.*, at rest, quiet, peaceable

***quīn** [*qui* (*old abl.*), *-ne*]: 1. *Corroborative adv.*: **quin etiam**, nay

even, in fact. — 2. *Conj. after a negative expression of doubt, hindrance, etc.*, but that, that, from (*doing a thing*), to (*do a thing*): **non dubito quin**, I do not doubt that

Quīnctius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, L. Quinctius Flamininus

quīndecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifteen

quīngentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, five hundred

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, five at a time, five each

quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty

***quīnque**, *indecl. num. adj.*, five

quīnquerēmis, -is, *f.*, quinquereme (*a vessel with five banks of oars*)

quīnquiēs [*quinque*], *adv.*, five times

***quīntus, -a, -um** [*quinque*], *num. adj.*, fifth

Quīntus, -ī [*quintus*], *m.*, a Roman praenomen

***quis, quae, quid**: 1. *Interrog. adj. and pron.*, who? which? what? — 2. *Indef. pron.*, one, anyone, anything

***quisquam**, *no fem.*, **quid-** *or* **quic-**, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any, anyone, anything

***quisque, quae-, quid-**, *indef. adj. and pron.*, each, each one, every

quō, *abl. of measure of difference as adv.*, the (*more, etc.*)

***quō**, *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, whither? — 2. *Rel.*, whither, into which, as far as. — 3. *Indef.*, anywhere

quō, *conj.* (*with comparatives*), in order that, that

quoad, *conj.*, as far as, until, as long as

***quod**, *conj.*, because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that

***quod si**, *conj.*, but if

***quōminus** *or* **quō minus**, *conj.*, that not, so that not

quondam, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time

***quoniam** [*quom* (= *cum*), *jam*], *conj.*, inasmuch as, since, as

***quoque**, *adv.*, also, as well

quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every direction

quot, *indecl. adj., interrog.*, how many?

quotannīs [*quot-annus*], *adv.*, every year, yearly

quotiēns, *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how often? how many times? — 2. *Rel.*, as often as

rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, root; foot (*of a mountain*) (radical)

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsus, shave

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough

rapiditās, -ātis [*rapidus*, swift], *f.*, swiftness, rapidity (rapidity)

rapīna, -ae [*rapio*], *f.*, plunder. — *Plur.*, plundering

***rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus**, snatch, seize

raptor, -ōris [*rapio*], *m.*, robber

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, few; rare (rare)

***ratiō, -ōnis** [*reor*], *f.*, a reckoning, an account; reason, plan, science, manner, method, consideration (ratio)

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft

ratus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **reor**

Rauracī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Rauraci, a tribe on the upper Rhine

rebelliō, -ōnis [*re-bellum*], *f.*, uprising (rebellion)

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, recede (recede)

***recēns, -entis**, *adj.*, new, fresh, late (recent)

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsus, review, inspect

receptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **recipio**

receptus, -ūs [*recipio*], *m.*, retreat, refuge

recessus, -ūs [*recedo*], *m.*, retreat (recess)

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsus [*re-cado*], fall again, fall back, fall upon

***recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [*re-capio*], take back, get back, recover; take in, receive, admit. — *With reflexive*, retreat, withdraw (receive)

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, read aloud (recite)

recognōscō, -cognōscere, -cognōvī, -cognitus, review (recognize)

rēctē [*rectus*], *adv.*, rightly

rēctus, -a, -um [*p.p. of rego*], *adj.*, straight, correct (rectify)

***recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, get back, recover, regain (recuperate)

***recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*re-causa*], refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; make objections

redāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **redigo**

redditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **reddo**

***reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [*red-do*], give back, restore, pay, render

redēmptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **redimo**

***redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, go back, return

***redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus** [*red-ago*], bring back, reduce, render, bring under, make

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [*red-emo*], buy back, redeem; purchase, buy, secure (redeem)

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, renew, restore, revive

reditus, -ūs [*redeo*], *m.*, return

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead back, bring back, draw back (reduce)

***referō, referre, rettulī, relātus**, bring back, return; report, offer: **gratias (gratiam)** (show one's gratitude); **pedem** (retreat, draw back). — *With reflexive*, retreat, retire (refer)

***reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus** [*re-facio*], repair, refresh: **se ex labore** (rest) (refectory)

refulgeō, -fulgēre, -fulsī, —, flash back, gleam, shine (refulgent)

rēgia, -ae [*rex*], *f.*, palace

***rēgīna, -ae**, *f.*, queen

***regiō, -ōnis**, *f.*, country, district (region)

rēgius, -a, -um [*rex*], *adj.*, royal

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*regnum*], rule, reign, govern (reign)

***rēgnum, -ī** [*cf. rego*], *n.*, kingdom, royal power, throne

***regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**, direct, manage, rule

regredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [*re-gradior*, step, go], go back

Rēgulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name. — *Esp.*, M. Atilius Regulus, who was captured by the Carthaginians

reiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*re-jacio*], throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off (reject)

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —, be weakened

relātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **refero**

relevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, relieve, lighten

relictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **relinquo**

***religiō, -ōnis** [*re-ligo*, bind], *f.*, religious scruple, religion, religious observance, religious matter (religion)

***relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus**, leave behind, abandon, leave. — *Pass.*, be left, remain (relinquish)

***reliquus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, left, remaining, the rest, the others; future. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the rest

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsus, remain behind, remain, stay (remain)

remedium, -ī, *n.*, remedy, cure (remedy)

Rēmī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Remi, a tribe of the Belgians

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, row

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, move back, return

remissus, -a, -um [*remitto*], *adj.*, mild, less severe (remiss)

***remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus**, send back, throw back; relax, cease to use, give up (remit)

remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, soften, become feeble

***removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**, move back, move away, remove. — **remōtus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, far away, remote (remove)

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum [*remunus*], repay, requite (remunerate)

***rēmus, -ī**, *m.*, oar

***renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, report, bring back word, proclaim (renounce)

reor, rērī, ratus sum, think

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, drive back, repulse (repel)

***repente**, *adv.*, suddenly

***repentīnus, -a, -um** [*repens*, sudden], *adj.*, sudden, hasty, unexpected. — **repentīnō**, *abl. as adv.*, suddenly

***reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus** [*re-pario*, get], find out, discover

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, seek again, demand back, ask for (repeat)

repleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill (replete)

rēpō, rēpere, rēpsī, rēptus [*cf. serpens*], creep, crawl

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry back, gain (report)

repperī, *see* **reperiō**

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, do at once (represent)

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, blame, censure (reprehend)

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, refuse, reject (repudiate)

repulsa, -ae [*f. p.p. of repello*], *f.*, repulse, defeat (repulse)

repulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **repello**

requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [*re-quaero*], seek again, ask for, request, need, miss (require)

***rēs, reī**, *f.*, property, business, affair, matter, thing, fact, occurrence, event, case, action, act: **quam ob rem**, *interrog.*, why? *rel.*, on which (this) account, for which (this) reason (real)

rēs familiāris, reī familiāris, *f.*, property

***rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae**, *f.*, grain supply

***rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris**, *f.*, warfare

***rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae**, *f.*, the state, the commonwealth (republic)

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, cut away, break down, destroy (rescind)

resēdisse, *see* **resido**

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, keep back, reserve (reserve)

resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, —, sit down; settle down, subside, become calm (reside)

***resistō, -sistere, -stitī, —**, stand back, stop; withstand, resist; remain (resist)

resonō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, resound (resound)

respergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersus [*re-spargo*], spatter

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*re-specio*, look], look back, look back at, consider, regard (respect)

***respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus**, reply, answer (respond)

***respōnsum, -ī** [*n. p.p. of respondeo*], *n.*, reply (response)

***restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus** [*re-statuo*], renew, replace, restore (restitution)

retentus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **retineo**

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*re-teneo*], hold back, retain, maintain, restrain, arrest (retain)

retrō, *adv.*, backward

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, tear away, pull away

reverēns, -entis, *adj.*, respectful (reverent)

reverentia, -ae [*reverens*], *f.*, respect, regard (reverence)

***revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus**, return (*in perf. tenses*). — *Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses*, return, go back, come back (revert)

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call away, call back, recall (revoke)

***rēx, rēgis**, *m.*, king (regal)

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, laugh, laugh at, smile (deride)

***rīpa, -ae**, *f.*, bank (river)

rīvus, -ī, *m.*, brook, stream (rival)

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak; strength (robust)

***rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, ask, request, ask for

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. — *Masc. as noun*, a Roman

Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, Romulus

rōstra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, the Rostra, an elevated platform in the Forum, from which speakers addressed the people

rōstrum, -ī [*rodo*, gnaw], *n.*, beak. — *Esp. of a ship*, beak, ram (rostrum)

***rota, -ae**, *f.*, wheel (rotary)

rudis, -e, *adj.*, rough (rude)

Rūfīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

ruīna, -ae, *f.*, ruin (ruin)

***rūmor, -ōris**, *m.*, rumor, report (rumor)

***rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus**, break down (rupture)

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, cliff, rock

***rūrsus**, *adv.*, again, in turn

rūsticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, rural, in the country (rustic)

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Ruteni, a Gallic tribe

Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Sabines

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

Sabis, -is, *m.*, the Sabis, a river of Gaul, now the Sambre

***sacer, -cra, -crum**, *adj.*, holy, sacred (sacred)

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. and f.*, priest, priestess; priesthood (sacerdotal)

sacrificium, -ī [*sacrum*, sacred thing, *facio*], *n.*, sacrifice (sacrifice)

sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sacrificium*], sacrifice

sacrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, declare sacred; condemn, curse (consecrate)

sacrōsānctus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sacred, inviolable (sacrosanct)

***saepe**, *adv.*, often : **minime saepe**, very rarely. — **saepius**, *comp.*, many times, repeatedly

saepenumerō, *adv.*, oftentimes, many times

saepēs, -is [*cf.* ***saepio***, hedge in], *f.*, hedge

***sagitta, -ae**, *f.*, arrow

***sagittārius, -ī** [*sagitta*], *m.*, archer, bowman

sagulum, -ī, *n.*, military cloak

Saguntum, -ī, *n.*, Saguntum, a town of eastern Spain

Salīnātor, -ōris, *m.*, Salinator, a Roman general

Salmydēssus, -ī, *m.*, Salmydessus, a town in Thrace

salūbris, -e, *adj.*, healthful (salubrious)

***salūs, -ūtis**, *f.*, health, welfare, safety (salutary)

salvē, salvēte, *imper.*, hail! welcome!

Samnītēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the Samnites

Samnīticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Samnite

sānctus, -a, -um, *adj.*, holy, sacred, inviolable, solemn (saint)

sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood (sanguinary)

Santonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Santones, a tribe of Gaul

sapiō, -ere, -iī (-īvī), —, be wise (sapient)

sarcina, -ae [*sarcio*, sew up], *f.*, pack. — *Plur.*, baggage, packs

***satis**, *adv. or adj.*, sufficiently; enough, sufficient: **satis habere**, consider sufficient, be satisfied

***satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus**, satisfy, make amends, apologize (satisfy)

satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.*, apology (satisfaction)

saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded

***saxum, -ī**, *n.*, rock

Scaevola, -ae, *m.*, a Roman name

scālae, -ārum [*scando*], *f. plur.*, ladder, scaling ladder (scale)

***scandō, -ere**, —, —, climb

scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat

scelerātus, -a, -um [*scelus*], *adj.*, accursed, wicked

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness

scēptrum, -trī, *n.*, scepter (scepter)

scientia, -ae [*sciens, pres. p. of scio*], *f.*, knowledge, skill (science)

***sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus**, know

Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman name. — *Esp.*, P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, who defeated Hannibal at Zama

***scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus**, write (scribe)

***scūtum, -ī**, *n.*, shield

sē, *see* **sui**

sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, go apart, go away, withdraw (secede)

sēcessus, -ūs [*secedo*], *m.*, a retreat, a quiet spot

***secō, -āre, secuī, sectus**, cut (sector)

sēcum, *for* **cum se**

secundum, *see* **secundus**

***secundus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, following, second; favorable, successful. — **secundum**, *neut. acc. as prep. with acc.*, along, in the direction of, in accordance with (second)

secūris, -is, *f.*, ax; authority

secūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **sequor**

***sed**, *conj.*, but

sēdecim [*sex-decem*], *indecl. num. adj.*, sixteen

***sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus**, sit, be seated

sēdēs, -is [*sedeo*], *f.*, seat; abode, settlement

sēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, settle (sedative)

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Segusiavi, a people of Gaul

sella, -ae, *f.*, bench, stool

semel, *num. adv.*, once: **semel atque iterum**, again and again

sēmentis, -is [*semen*, seed], *f.*, a sowing: **sementes facere**, sow grain

sēminārium, -ī [*semen*, seed], *n.*, seed-bed (seminary)

sēmita, -ae, *f.*, path

sēmiūncia, -ae, *f.*, half an ounce

***semper**, *adv.*, always

Semprōnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

senātor, -ōris [*senex*], *m.*, senator (senator)

***senātus, -ūs** [*senex*], *m.*, senate (senate)

senectūs, -ūtis [*senex*], *f.*, old age

senex, *gen.* **senis**, *adj.*, old. — *As noun*, old man, aged person

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, six each, six at a time

Senonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Senones, a Gallic tribe

***sententia, -ae** [*sentio*], *f.*, opinion, sentiment, feeling, purpose (sentence)

***sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, perceive, know, see, think, learn about, learn (sense)

sēparātim, *adv.*, separately, privately

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, separate. — **sēparātus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, separate (separate)

sepeliō, -pelīre, -pelīvī, -pultus, bury, inter

***septem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven

septentriōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the seven plow oxen (*the stars of the Great Bear*); the north

***septimus, -a, -um**, *num. adj.*, seventh

sepulcrum, -ī, *n.*, tomb, burial-place (sepulcher)

sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial

Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the Seine

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Sequanians. — *Masc. as noun*, a Sequanian

***sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, follow, accompany (sequence)

sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, talk (sermon)

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, plant, sow

serpēns, -entis [*pres. p. of serpo*, creep], *f.*, serpent (serpent)

serva, -ae, *f.*, slave

servīlis, -e .[*servus*], *adj.*, of a slave, servile (servile)

serviō, -īre, -iī, -ītus [*servus*], be a slave to, serve (serve)

***servitūs, -ūtis** [*servus*], *f.*, slavery, servitude (servitude)

***servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, keep, save, preserve

***servus, -ī**, *m.*, slave, servant (serf)

sēsē, *see* **sui**

seu, *see* **sive**

sevēritās, -ātis [*severus*, strict], *f.*, strictness, harshness (severity)

***sex**, *indecl. num. adj.*, six

sexāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixty

sexcentī (ses-), -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, six hundred

Sextius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

***sextus, -a, -um**, *num. adj.*, sixth

Sextus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

***sī**, *conj.*, if; to see if, whether

***sī quis**, if anyone, if any

sibi, *see* **sui**

***sīc**, *adv.* (*with verb*), so, in this manner, thus. — **sīc utī**, *as conj.*, just as, just as if

siccitās, -ātis [*siccus*], *f.*, dryness, drought

siccus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry

Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily

***sīcut, sīcutī** = **sīc utī**

sīdus, -eris, *n.*, star (sidereal)

signifer, -ferī [*signum-fero*], *m.*, standard bearer

***significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*signum-facio*], make signs, indicate, make known, show (signify)

***signum, -ī**, *n.*, sign, signal; standard (*for military purposes*): **signa inferre**, advance to attack, charge; **conversa signa inferre**, face about and charge (sign)

* **silentium, -ī** [*silens*, silent], *n.*, stillness, silence. — **silentiō**, *abl.*, in silence, silently (silence)
Sīlēnus, -ī, *m.*, Silenus, teacher of Bacchus
* **silva, -ae**, *f.*, forest, woods (sylvan)
silvestris, -tre [*silva*], *adj.*, woody, wooded
* **similis, -e**, *adj.*, like, similar (simile)
similitūdō, -inis [*similis*], *f.*, similarity, likeness (similitude)
* **simul**, *adv.*, at the same time. — **simul atque** *or* **ac**, *conj.*, as soon as (simultaneous)
simulācrum, -ī [*simulo*], *n.*, image, likeness
* **simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, pretend (simulate)
simultās, -ātis [*similis*], *f.*, rivalry
sīn, *conj.*, but if
* **sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without
singillātim [*singulī*], *adv.*, singly, one by one
* **singulāris, -e** [*singulī*], *adj.*, solitary, single; extraordinary
* **singulī, -ae, -a**, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, one at a time, single, each, individual, one by one (single)
* **sinister, -tra, -trum**, *adj.*, left (sinister)
sinus, -ūs, *m.*, fold
sitiō, -īre, -īvī, — [*sitis*], be thirsty
sitis, -is, *f.*, thirst
situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, position (site)
* **sīve (seu)**, *conj.*, if either, or if: **sive (seu) . . . sive (seu)**, either . . . or, whether . . . or
socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law
societās, -ātis [*socius*], *f.*, fellowship, league, association (society)
* **socius, -ī**, *m.*, companion, ally, comrade (social)
* **sōl, sōlis**, *m.*, sun. — *Personified*, Sol, the Sun (solar)
sōlācium, -ī, *n.*, solace, comfort (solace)
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be wont, be accustomed
sōlitūdō, -inis [*solus*], *f.*, loneliness; wilderness (solitude)
* **sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, stir up, instigate, disturb, tempt (solicit)
sollicitūdō, -inis [*sollicitus*], *f.*, anxiety (solicitude)
sollicitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, anxious (solicitous)
Solōn, -ōnis, *m.*, Solon, a lawgiver among the Greeks
solum, -ī, *n.*, soil, foundation, bottom, earth
* **sōlum**, *n. acc. as adv.*, alone, only
* **sōlus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, alone, only
solūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **solvo**
* **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus**, unbind, loose; set sail (solve)
somniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dream
somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep
sonus, -ī, *m.*, sound (sound)
* **soror, -ōris**, *f.*, sister (sorority)
sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance (sort)
spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus, scatter, sprinkle (sparse)
spatiōsus, -a, -um [*spatium*], *adj.*, spacious (spacious)
* **spatium, -ī**, *n.*, space, extent, distance; time, space of time (space)

***speciēs, -ēī** [*specio*, see], *f.*, sight, show, appearance, vision (species)

spectāculum, -ī [*specto*], *n.*, show; theater (spectacle)

spectātor, -ōris [*specto*], *m.*, spectator (spectator)

***spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, look at, regard; face

speculātor, -ōris [*speculor*], *m.*, spy, scout (speculator)

speculātōrius, -a, -um [*speculator*], *adj.*, scouting, reconnoitering (**navigia**)

speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, spy (speculate)

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus, scorn, spurn

***spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*spes*], hope, hope for, expect

***spēs, speī**, *f.*, hope, expectation

spīritus, -ūs [*spiro*, breathe], *m.*, breath; spirit. — *In plur.*, pride, arrogance (spirit)

***spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, breathe

splendidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, splendid, magnificent (splendid)

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, rob, deprive (spoil)

***spondeō, -ēre, spopondī, spōnsus**, pledge, promise (sponsor)

spōnsālia, -ium [*cf.* ***spondeo***], *n. plur.*, betrothal

***sponte** (*abl.*), *f.*, of one's own will, voluntarily (spontaneous)

squālidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unkempt (squalid)

stabilitās, -ātis [*stabilis*, steady], *f.*, steadiness, firmness (stability)

stabulum, -ī, [*sto*], *n.*, stable (stable)

***statim** [*sto*], *adv.*, at once, immediately

***statiō, -ōnis** [*sto*], *f.*, position, post, picket: **in statione**, on guard (station)

statua, -ae [*sto*], *f.*, statue (statue)

***statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus** [*status*], set up; establish, determine, decide (statute)

statūra, -ae [*sto*], *f.*, stature, size (stature)

status, -ūs [*sto*], *m.*, position, condition, situation (status)

stella, -ae, *f.*, star (stellar)

stetī, *see* **stō**

stilus, -ī, *m.*, stilus (style)

stīpendium, -ī** [*stips*, gift, ***pendo], *n.*, tribute; pay (stipend)

***stō, stāre, stetī, stātus**, stand, abide by (stand)

strāmentum, -ī, *n.*, straw, thatch

strēnuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, active (strenuous)

strepitus, -ūs [*strepo*], *m.*, noise, din

strepō, -ere, -uī, —, hum, rustle, roar

strigōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, thin, lank

***stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus**, draw, unsheathe (stringent)

***struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus**, build (structure)

***studeō, studēre, studuī**, — [*studium*], be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (*with dat.*), study (student)

studiōsus, -a, -um [*studium*], *adj.*, zealous, studious (studious)

***studium, -ī,** *n.*, eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness, enthusiasm; a pursuit, occupation, study (study)

stultitia, -ae, *f.*, stupidity

stupeō, -ēre, -uī, —, be stunned, be amazed

Styx, -gis, *f.*, the Styx, a river in the Lower World

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, persuade, urge (suasion)

suāvitās, -ātis, *f.*, sweetness (suavity)

***sub,** *prep.*: 1. *With abl.*, under; at the foot of. — 2. *With acc.*, under, close to. — *Of time,* toward, just before

***subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus,** draw up, lead up: **navem** (beach, draw up)

subductiō, -ōnis [*subduco*], *f.*, drawing up, beaching (*ships*)

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go under; undergo; come up, approach

subiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*sub-jacio*], throw under, place below; subject, expose to; throw up. — **subjectus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, lying near, adjacent (subject)

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*sub-ago*], bring under, subdue

***subitō,** *abl. as adv.*, suddenly

subitus, -a, -um [*p.p. of subeo*], *adj.*, sudden, quick, hasty

sublātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **tollo**

***sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** lighten, raise, raise up; assist. — **sublevātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, supporting one's self

subluō, -luere, —, **-lūtus,** wash

submergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus, submerge, plunge (submerge)

subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, supply, furnish, provide

***submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,** send up, send to one's assistance (submit)

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, drive off, dislodge

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, dig under, undermine

***subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum,** follow on, follow (subsequent)

***subsidium, -ī** [*sub-sedeo,* sit], *n.*, reënforcement, help, relief, support, assistance (subsidy)

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, stop behind, halt, make a stand: **ancora** (hold) (subsist)

subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be under, be near, be close by, approach

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, take away, carry away (subtract)

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, come under; come to the support of, assist (subvention)

***succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus** [*sub-cedo*], come up to, advance, succeed, take the place of, come next; prosper (succeed)

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, set on fire

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*sub-caedo*], cut under, cut down

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursus [*sub-curro*], run to support, help, succor (succor)

sūcus, -ī, *m.*, juice
sudis, -is, *f.*, stake
Suessiōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Suessiones, a tribe of the Belgians
Suēvī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Suevi, tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany
suffrāgium, -ī, *n.*, ballot, vote (suffrage)
Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Sugambri, a German tribe
***suī, sibi, sē**, *reflex. pron.*, himself, *etc.*
Sulpicius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name
***sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**, be: **sibi esse in animo**, (that) they have in mind, intend
***summa, -ae**, *f.*, top; sum, total, main part: **belli** (the general management, the chief control); **imperi** (chief command) (sum)
***summus**, *see* **superus**
***sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus** [*sub-emo*, take], take, get, assume: **sumere supplicium de**, inflict punishment on
sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [*sumptus*], *adj.*, expensive, costly (sumptuous)
sūmptus, -ūs [*sumo*], *m.*, expense
super, *prep. with acc.*, above, over, upon
superbē [*superbus*], *adv.*, haughtily, arrogantly
superbia, -ae [*superbus*], *f.*, pride
superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, proud, haughty (superb)
superior, *see* **superus**
***superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*superus*], surpass, be superior to, prevail, overcome, conquer, defeat (superable)
supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessus, sit above; decline, refrain from (supersede)
superstitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, superstition (superstition)
***supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, be over, be left, remain, survive
***superus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, higher, being above. — **superī, -ōrum**, *m. plur.*, the gods of heaven. — *Comp.*, **superior**, higher, upper; preceding, previous; superior, victorious. — *Superl.*, **suprēmus**, highest. — *Also*, **summus**, highest, the highest part of, the top of; greatest, most important (superior, supreme)
supervolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fly over, fly above
supplēmentum, -ī, *n.*, supply, reenforcement (supplement)
supplex, -icis, *c.*, suppliant
supplicātiō, -ōnis [*supplico*, supplicate], *f.*, supplication; a thanksgiving (supplication)
***supplicium, -ī**, *n.*, punishment
suppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [*sub-pono*], place under
***supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*sub-porto*], bring up, convey, supply, furnish (support)
***suprā**, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, above, beyond
suprēmus, *see* **superus**
sūrculus, -ī, *m.*, sprout
***suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus** [*subs* (= *sub*), *capio*], take upon one's self (**sibi**), assume, undertake, engage in (susceptible)

suspendō, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnsus [*subs* (= *sub*), *pendo*], hang up, hang (suspend)
suspicātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* suspicor
* **suspīciō, -ōnis** [*sub-specio*, look], *f.*, suspicion (suspicion)
* **suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum** [*cf. suspicio*], suspect
sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sustineo*], sustain, hold out
* **sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus** [*subs* (= *sub*), *teneo*], hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear; stop (sustain)
sustulī, *see* tollo
* **suus, -a, -um**, *possessive adj.* (*reflex., referring back to the subject*), his, her, its, their. — *Without a noun*, **suī**, their (his) men, countrymen, their friends; **sua**, their (his) possessions; **se suaque omnia**, themselves and all their possessions
Symplēgadēs, -um, *f. plur.*, the Symplegades, fabulous rocks in the Black Sea
Syria, -ae, *f.*, Syria

T., *abbr. for* Titus
tabella, -ae, *f.*, tablet
taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop (tavern)
tabernāculum, -ī [*taberna*, hut], *n.*, tent (tabernacle)
tablīnum, -ī, *n.*, tablinum
tabula, -ae, *f.*, record, table; document, list (table)
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, be silent; keep secret, conceal. — **tacitus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, silent, in silence (tacit)
tālea, -ae, *f.*, bar
tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, so great, this
* **tam**, *adv.*, so, so much
* **tamen**, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, still, however
Tamesis, -is, *m.*, the Thames
* **tandem**, *adv.*, at last. — *In questions, to add emphasis*, pray, tell me
* **tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus**, touch (tangent, tact)
Tantalus, -ī, *m.*, Tantalus, a king of Phrygia
tantulus, -a, -um [*tantus*], *adj.*, so small, so little, so trifling
* **tantus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, so much, so great, such (*of magnitude*): **tanta exiguitas temporis**, so little time. — **tantum**, *n. as adv.*, only, merely
* **tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*tardus*], retard, check, hinder
* **tardus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, slow, late, sluggish (tardy)
Tarquinia, -ae, *f.*, Tarquinia, sister of Tarquinius Superbus
Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Tarquinius Superbus, last of the kings
Tartarus, -ī (*plur.* Tartara, **-ōrum**), *m. and n.*, Tartarus, the Lower World
taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull
tēctum, -ī [*n. p.p. of tego*], *n.*, roof, house
tēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* tego
tegimentum, -ī [*tego*], *n.*, covering
* **tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus**, cover, thatch, hide, conceal
* **tēlum, -ī**, *n.*, weapon, javelin, spear

temerārius, -a, -um [*temere*], *adj.*, reckless, rash, hasty

***temerē**, *adv.*, blindly, without reason; recklessly, hastily

temeritās, -ātis [*temere*], *f.*, indiscretion, rashness, haste, foolhardiness (temerity)

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (*of a wagon*)

temperantia, -ae [*temperans, pres. p. of tempero*], *f.*, self-control, prudence (temperance)

temperātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mild, temperate (temperate)

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*tempus*], control; refrain, restrain one's self (temper)

***tempestās, -ātis** [*tempus*], *f.*, time, season; weather; bad weather, storm (tempest)

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple (temple)

***temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, try, attempt, make an attempt on (tempt)

***tempus, -oris**, *n.*, time, occasion, opportunity, crisis: **tam necessario tempore**, at so critical a moment; **omni tempore**, at all times, always (temporal)

tenācius, *adv.*, rather strongly (tenacious)

Tencterī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Tencteri, a branch of the Usipetes

***tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus**, stretch, stretch out, pitch (*tent*) (tend)

***teneō, tenēre, tenuī**, —, hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: **se tenere**, remain; **memoriā tenere**, remember (tenet)

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, thin, delicate, feeble (tenuous)

ter, *num. adv.*, three times, thrice

***tergum, -ī**, *n.*, back: **terga vertere**, turn and fly; **a tergo**, in the rear

***terminus, -ī**, *m.*, end, limit, boundary (terminus)

***terra, -ae**, *f.*, earth; land, region; ground (terrace)

***terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus**, frighten, alarm; deter

terribilis, -e [*terreo*], *adj.*, dreadful, frightful (terrible)

territō, -āre, —, —, [*terreo*], frighten

***terror, -ōris** [*terreo*], *m.*, fright, alarm, panic (terror)

***tertius, -a, -um**, *num. adj.*, third (tertiary)

testāmentum, -ī [*testor*, testify], *n.*, a will (testament).

testimōnium, -ī [*testis*], *n.*, proof, evidence (testimony)

***testis, -is**, *m.*, witness (testify)

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed

Teutonēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), *m. plur.*, the Teutones, a German people

Thēbae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Thebes, a city of Boeotia

Thēbānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Thebans

Thēseus, -ī, *m.*, Theseus, a mythical king of Athens

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly, a country in northern Greece

Thrācia, -ae, *f.*, Thrace, a country north of Greece

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, the river on which Rome is situated

Tiberius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Tigurini. — *Masc. plur.*, the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii

* **timeō, -ēre, -uī, —**, be afraid, fear. — *With dat.*, be anxious for, be anxious about. — **timentēs**, *pres. p. as noun*, the timid, the fearful

timidē [*timidus*], *adv.*, with timidity: **non timide**, fearlessly

* **timidus, -a, -um** [*timeo*], *adj.*, cowardly, frightened, timid (timid)

Tīmocharēs, -is, *m.*, Timochares, a friend of Pyrrhus

* **timor, -ōris** [*timeo*], *m.*, alarm, fear, dread (timorous)

tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus, wet, dye, tinge, color (tinge)

titulus, -ī, *m.*, title (title)

Titūrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, Q. Titurius Sabinus, a legatus of Caesar

Titus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen

* **toga, -ae**, *f.*, toga

togātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clad in the toga

tolerābilis, -e [*tolero*], *adj.*, endurable (tolerable)

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bear, endure, hold out, support: **famem** (keep from starvation) (tolerate)

* **tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus**, raise, lift, carry, carry off; remove, take away, destroy: **ancoras** (weigh). — **sublātus, -a, -um**, *p.p.*, elated

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the Tolosates, a people of Gaul

tonō, -āre, -uī, —, thunder

* **tormentum, -ī** [*torqueo*, twist], *n.*, torture; an engine (*for throwing missiles*) (torment)

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus, scorch, burn (torrid)

* **tot**, *indecl. adj.*, so many

* **totidem**, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number

* **tōtus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, the whole, the whole of, all, entire. — *Often best translated by an adverb*, entirely, throughout (total)

* **trabs, trabis**, *f.*, a beam, a timber

trāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **traho**

* **trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus** [*trans-do* (put)], hand over, give up, deliver up, surrender, recommend; hand down, teach, communicate, relate (tradition)

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*trans-duco*], lead over, lead across, bring over, transport, win over (traduce)

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, javelin

* **trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus**, drag, drag along, drag in, draw in (tract)

trāiciō, -icere, -jēcī, -jectus [*trans-jacio*], throw across, throw over; cross; transfix, pierce (trajectory)

trājectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **traicio**

trājectus, -ūs [*traicio*], *m.*, passage, route

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātus [*trans-no*, swim], swim across

tranquillitās, -ātis [*tranquillus*], *f.*, stillness, calm (tranquillity)

tranquillus, -a, -um, *adj.*, calm, peaceful (tranquil)

***trāns**, *prep. with acc.*, across, over; on the other side of

Trānsalpīnus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, Transalpine

trānscendō, **-scendere**, **-scendī**, **-scēnsus** [*trans-scando*, climb], climb across, board (*ships*) (transcend)

***trānseō**, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itus**, cross, pass over, pass through (transit)

trānsferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātus**, carry over, transfer, change the place of (transfer)

trānsfīgō, **-fīgere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxus**, pierce through (transfix)

trānsgredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum** [*trans-gradior*, step], step across, step over, cross (transgress)

trānsitus, **-ūs** [*transeo*], *m.*, going over, crossing (transit)

trānslātus, **-a**, **-um**, *p.p. of* **transfero**

trānsportō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, bring over, carry over, carry (transport)

trānsversus, **-a**, **-um** [*p.p. of trans-verto*, turn across], *adj.*, transverse: **fossa** (a ditch at right angles) (transverse)

Trasimēnus, **-ī**, *m.*, Trasimenus, a lake in Etruria

Trebia, **-ae**, *m.*, the Trebia, a river in northern Italy

trecentī, **-ae**, **-a**, *num. adj., plur.*, three hundred

tredecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, thirteen

trepidō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, tremble at; shake, tremble (trepidation)

***trēs**, **tria**, *num. adj.*, three

Trēverī, **-ōrum**, *m. plur.*, the Treveri, a people in northeastern Gaul

tribūnal, **-ālis** [*tribunus*], *n.*, tribunal, platform (tribunal)

tribūnātus, **-ūs** [*tribunus*], *m.*, tribunate (tribunate)

tribūnicius, **-a**, **-um** [*tribunus*], *adj.*, of a tribune

***tribūnus**, **-ī**, *m.*, tribune of the soldiers, military tribune (tribune)

***tribuō**, **-uere**, **-uī**, **-ūtus** [*tribus*], distribute; grant, render, assign, attribute

tribus, **-ūs**, *f.*, tribe

tribūtum, **-ī** [*n. p.p. of tribuo*], *n.*, tribute (tribute)

triclīnium, **-ī**, *n.*, dining-room

***trīduum**, **-ī** [*tres-dies*], *n.*, three days' time, three days

trīgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, thirty

trīnī, **-ae**, **-a**, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, three each, three sets of

tripartītus, **-a**, **-um** [*tres-partitus*, divided], *adj.*, divided in three. — **tripartītō**, *abl. as adv.*, in three divisions (tripartite)

triplex, **-icis** [*tres*; *cf. plico*, fold], *adj.*, threefold: **acies** (triple, in three divisions *or* lines) (triple)

triquetrus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, triangular

trīstis, **-e**, *adj.*, sad, gloomy, dejected

trīstitia, **-ae** [*tristis*], *f.*, sadness

triumphō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus** [*triumphus*], triumph, have a triumphal procession

triumphus, **-ī**, *m.*, triumphal procession, triumph (triumph)

Trōja, -ae, *f.*, Troy

***tū, tuī**, *plur.* **vōs**, *pers. pron., 2d person*, you

***tuba, -ae**, *f.*, trumpet (tuba)

***tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum**, watch, guard, protect

tulī, *perf. of* **fero**

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Tulingi, neighbors of the Helvetii

***tum**, *adv.*, then, at this time: **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also

tumultus, -ūs** [*cf.* ***tumeo, swell], *m.*, uproar, confusion, commotion; uprising, revolt (tumult)

tumulus, -ī** [tumeo***, swell], *m.*, hill, mound

tunc [***tum***], *adv.*, then, at that time, just then

tunica, -ae, *f.*, tunic (tunic)

turba, -ae, *f.*, crowd, throng

turma, -ae, *f.*, squadron, troop

***turpis, -e**, *adj.*, ugly; unbecoming, disgraceful, dishonorable

turpitūdō, -inis [***turpis***], *f.*, disgrace (turpitude)

***turris, -is**, *f.*, tower

Tusculānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Tusculum, Tusculan. — *Masc. as noun*, a Tusculan

tūtor, -ārī, -ātus sum, defend

tūtus, -a, -um** [*p.p. of* ***tueor], *adj.*, protected, safe, secure. — **tūtō**, *abl. as adv.*, in safety, safely

***tuus, -a, -um**, *poss. adj.*, your, yours

ūber, -eris, *adj.*, stout, plump

***ubi**, *adv. and conj.*, where, in which: **ibi ubi**, in the place where. — *Of time*, when: **ubi primum**, as soon as

Ubiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Ubii, a German tribe

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, punish, take vengeance on, avenge

Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, Ulysses

***ūllus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, a single, any. — *Masc. as pron.*, anybody, anyone

ulterior, -us [*cf.* ***ultra, ultro***], *adj.*, farther, more remote (ulterior)

***ultimus, -a, -um**, *superl. of* **ulterior**, farthest, last: **ultimi**, those in the rear (ultimate)

***ultrā**, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, beyond (ultra)

***ultrō**, *adv.*, to the farther side, beyond; voluntarily, freely, besides

ultus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **ulciscor**

umbra, -ae, *f.*, shadow, shade, ghost

umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder

***umquam**, *adv.*, ever: **neque . . . umquam**, and never

***ūnā**, *adv.*, together, along with, at the same time, in the same place, also

***unda, -ae**, *f.*, wave, water

***unde**, *adv.*, whence, from which

ūndecimus, -a, -um [***unus-decimus***], *num. adj.*, eleventh

***undique**, *adv.*, from every side, from all quarters, on every side

unguentum, -ī [***unguo***], *n.*, ointment (unguent)

unguō, unguere, ūnxī, ūnctus, anoint

ūniversus, -a, -um** [unus-versus***, *p.p. of* ***verto***], *adj.*, all together, all, entire (universe)

***ūnus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, one, a single, the same, alone, only (unit)

urbānus, -a, -um [*urbs*], *adj.*, of a city, in the city; of the city (*Rome*) (urban)

***urbs, urbis**, *f.*, city; the city (*Rome*)

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, – –, press, press hard, urge (urge)

Usipetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Usipetes, a German tribe

usquam, *adv.*, anywhere

***ūsque**, *adv.*, all the way, even to, till, even till

ūsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **utor**

***ūsus, -ūs** [*utor*], *m.*, use, practice, experience; advantage, service: **usus est**, is necessary, it is necessary, there is need (use)

***ut (utī)**, *adv. and conj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how? — 2. *Rel.*, as, so as, when, inasmuch as. — *With subjv.*, that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although; *after verbs of fearing*, that not

***uter, -tra, -trum**, *adj. and pron.*: 1. *Interrog.*, which (*of two*)? — 2. *Rel.*, whichever (*of two*)

***uterque, utra-, utrum-**, *adj. and pron.*, both: **utraque castra**, both camps

utī, *see* **ut**

***ūtilis, -e** [*utor*], *adj.*, useful, of use, helpful

ūtilitās, -ātis [*utilis*], *f.*, advantage, benefit, service (utility)

***ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum**, *with abl.*, use, exercise, practice, employ, have, enjoy, possess (use)

utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides

utrum, *adv.*, whether

***uxor, -ōris**, *f.*, wife (uxorious)

V, *Roman numeral for* five

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, be vacant, be unoccupied, lie waste (vacate)

vacuus, -a, -um** [*cf.* ***vaco], *adj.*, free, vacant, empty, destitute of (vacuum)

***vādo, -ere**, —, —, go, walk

vadum, -ī** [*cf.* ***vado, go], *n.*, ford: **vado**, by fording. — *Plur.*, ford, shoals, shallows

vae, *interj.*, alas! woe!

vāgīna, -ae, *f.*, sheath

***vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, roam about, roam, wander (vagary)

valdē, *adv.*, very much, vigorously

valē, valēte, *imper.*, good-by! farewell!

***valeō, valēre, valuī, valitus**, be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful: **plus valere**, be more powerful; **plurimum valere**, be very strong, have great influence. — **valēns**, *pres. p. as adj.*, strong (value)

Valerius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

valētūdō, -inis [*valeo*], *f.*, health; ill health, illness

validus, -a, -um [*valeo*], *adj.*, strong, robust (valid)

***vallēs, -is**, *f.*, valley (valley)

***vāllum, -ī**, *n.*, palisade, rampart (wall)

vānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, vain (vanity)

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, various, diverse (various)

vās, vāsis (*plur.* **vāsa, -ōrum**), *n.*, vessel, jar (vase)

***vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*vastus*, waste], lay waste, devastate, ravage

vectīgal, -ālis [*cf. veho*], *n.*, tribute. — *Plur.*, revenues

***vehementer** [*vehemens*, violent], *adv.*, violently, severely, strongly, exceedingly

vehiculum, -ī [*veho*], *n.*, carriage (vehicle)

***vehō, vehere, vexī, vectus**, carry, bear. — *Pass.*, be borne, go, ride, sail

Veientēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, inhabitants of Veii

Veiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Veii, a city of Etruria

***vel**, *conj.*, or: **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or

vellus, -eris, *n.*, fleece

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*velum*], veil, cover

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, quick (velocity)

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, curtain, veil; sail (veil)

velut (velutī), *adv.*, even as, just as: **velut si**, just as if

vēnātiō, -ōnis [*venor*, hunt], *f.*, hunting, the chase. — *Plur.*, hunting, hunting excursions

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, put to sale, sell (vend)

venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti

venia, -ae, *f.*, favor, pardon

***veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus**, come, go

venter, -tris, *m.*, belly

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*venio*], come often, visit

***ventus, -ī**, *m.*, wind (ventilate)

Venus, -eris, *f.*, Venus, goddess of love

verber, -eris, *n.*, whip, lash, blow (reverberate)

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.*, Verbigenus, a canton of the Helvetians

***verbum, -ī**, *n.*, word: **pluribus verbis**, at great length; **facere verba**, speak (verb)

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Vercingetorix, a noble of the Arverni

verēcundia, -ae, *f.*, modesty

***vereor, -ērī, -itus sum**, fear, be afraid, dread. — **veritus**, *p.p. in pres. sense*, fearing

vergō, -ere, —, —, incline, slope, lie (verge)

veritus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **vereor**

***vērō** [*verus*], *adv.*, in truth, in fact, certainly; but, on the other hand, however

versicolor, -ōris, *adj.*, many-colored

***versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [*verto*], turn, deal with. — *In the pass. as dep.*, engage in, be, be busy, fight (versatile)

versus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **verto**

versus [*p.p. of verto*], *adv., and prep. with acc.*, towards, in the direction of

versus, -ūs [*verto*], *m.*, a turning; a verse (*of poetry*) (verse)

Verticō, -ōnis, *m.*, Vertico, one of the Nervii

***vertō, vertere, vertī, versus**, turn: **terga** (turn and flee)

***vērus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, true; real, right. — *Neut. as noun*, the truth (verity)

***vesper, -erī**, *m.*, evening (vespers)
Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta, goddess of the hearth
***vester, -tra, -trum**, *poss. adj.*, your, yours
vēstīgium, -ī, *n.*, footstep, footprint, track, traces (vestige)
vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [*vestis*], clothe
***vestis, -is**, *f.*, garment, robe, dress (vest)
vestītus, -ūs [*vestio*], *m.*, clothing, garments
vestrum, *gen. plur. of* tū
veterānus, -a, -um [*vetus*], *adj.*, veteran (veteran)
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid (veto)
***vetus, -eris**, *adj.*, old, former, of long standing
***vetustus, -a, -um** [*vetus*], *adj.*, old, ancient
vēxillum, -ī, *n.*, flag
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, harass, annoy, overrun (vex)
***via, -ae**, *f.*, road, way, route, march (via)
vīcēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, twenty
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, twentieth
vīciēs, *num. adv.*, twenty times
***vīcīnus, -a, -um**, *adj.*, near, neighboring. — **vīcīnī, -ōrum**, *m. plur.*, neighbors (vicinity)
vicis (*gen.*), *f.*, change, turn: **in vicem**, in turn (vicar)
victima, -ae, *f.*, victim, sacrifice (victim)
***victor, -ōris** [*vinco*], *m.*, victor. — *As adj.*, triumphant, victorious
***victōria, -ae** [*victor*], *f.*, victory (victory)
victus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **vinco**
victus, -ūs [*vivo*], *m.*, life; food (victuals)
***vīcus, -ī**, *m.*, village
***videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus**, see, observe, examine, take care. — *In pass.*, be seen; seem, seem best (vision)
Vienna, -ae, *f.*, Vienna, a town of the Allobroges
vigilantia, -ae, *f.*, watchfulness, vigilance (vigilance)
***vigilia, -ae** [*vigil*, awake], *f.*, watch (vigil)
***vīgintī**, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty
vigor, -ōris, *m.*, vigor, strength
***vīlla, -ae**, *f.*, villa (villa)
vīmen, -inis, *n.*, twig
vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus, bind, fetter
***vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus**, conquer, defeat, prevail
vīnctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **vincio**
***vinculum, -ī** [*vincio*], *n.*, chain
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, claim, demand; avenge: **in aliquem** (inflict punishment) (vindicate)
vīnea, -ae, *f.*, vine arbor; shed
vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine (wine)
viola, -ae, *f.*, violet
violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, abuse, injure (violate)
***vir, virī**, *m.*, man, husband
vīrēs, *see* **vīs**
virga, -ae, *f.*, twig, shoot
Virginia, -ae, *f.*, Virginia
Virginius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name
virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden

viridis, -e, *adj.*, green
virīlis, -e [*vir*], *adj.*, of a man, manly (virile)
virītim [*vir*], *adv.*, man by man, to each separately
Viromanduī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Viromandui, a tribe of Belgians
***virtūs, -ūtis** [*vir*, *f.*, manliness], valor, courage; merit, noble conduct, virtue; *plur.*, merits, brave acts (virtue)
***vīs, vīs**, *f.*, force, might, violence: **vim facere**, use violence. — *Plur.*, **vīrēs**, strength, force, powers (vim)
vīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **video**
vīsus, -ūs [*video*], *m.*, sight, vision
***vīta, -ae**, *f.*, life (vital)
vitium, -ī, *n.*, fault, vice (vice)
***vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, avoid, escape
vitrum, -ī, *n.*, woad (*a blue dye*)
vitta, -ae, *f.*, fillet
***vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus**, live: **lacte** (live on) (vivacious)
***vīvus, -a, -um** [*vivo*], *adj.*, alive, living (vivisection)
***vix**, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely
vixdum, *adv.*, scarcely, barely, hardly
vōbīs, *see* **tu**
***vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, call, summon, invite (vocation)
Vocontiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Vocontii, a tribe in Gaul
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fly (volatile)
***volō, velle, voluī**, —, wish, be willing, want
Volscī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Volscians, a people in Latium
volucer, -cris, -cre [*cf.* ***volo***, fly], *adj.*, winged. — *Fem. as noun*, bird
voluntās, -ātis** [volo***, wish], *f.*, consent, desire, will, approval
voluptās, -ātis [*cf.* ***volo***, wish], *f.*, pleasure, delight (voluptuous)
Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name. — *Esp.*, C. Volusenus, one of Caesar's officers
***volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus**, roll (volution)
Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*, L. Vorenus, a centurion
vōs, *see* **tu**
voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, vow, promise, pledge, make a vow (vow)
vōx, vōcis** [*cf.* ***voco], *f.*, voice, word, expression, shout; cries, words, talk (vocal)
Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan, god of fire
vulgō [***vulgus***], *adv.*, generally
***vulgus, -ī**, *n.*, crowd, common people (vulgar)
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus** [vulnus***], wound, hurt (vulnerable)
***vulnus, -eris**, *n.*, wound
vultus, -ūs, *m.*, look, expression, countenance, face

X, *Roman numeral for* ten

Zama, -ae, *f.*, Zama, a town in northern Africa, near which Hannibal was defeated by Scipio in 202 B.C.
Zētēs, -ae, *m.*, Zetes, one of the Argonauts
zōna, -ae, *f.*, girdle (zone)

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

The principal parts of the Latin verbs may be found in the Latin-English Vocabulary. The figure after a verb indicates the conjugation of the verb.

able (be), possum
about, *prep.*, dē, *with abl.*
about to, *fut. act. participle*
according to, *abl. of accordance*
account, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
accustomed (be), soleō, 2
across, *prep.*, trāns, *with acc.*
advantage, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
advise, moneō, 2
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, *f.*
after, *conj.*, postquam. *Suggests also the use of a participle or an ablative absolute*
after, *prep.*, post, *with acc.*
against, *prep.*, ad, in, contrā, *with acc.*
ago, *adv.*, ante
aid, *n.*, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
aid, *v.*, prōsum, *with dat.*
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, -um, *m. plur.*
allow, patior, 3
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, *f. plur.*
already, jam
also, quoque
although, *suggests the use of a participle or an ablative absolute*
always, semper
ambush, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
among, inter, apud, *with acc.*
ancestors, majōrēs, -um, *m. plur.*
anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um
and, et, -que, atque
announce, nūntiō, 1
another, alius, alia, aliud; alter, -era, -erum
anyone, quisquam
apologize, satisfaciō, 3, *with dat.*
Appius, Appius, -ī, *m.*
appoint, creō, 1
approach, appropinquō, 1, *with dat.*
approval, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
Arar, Arar, -aris, *m.*
Argonauts, Argonautae, -ārum, *m. plur.*
arm, *v.*, armō, 1
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arouse, incitō, 1
arrest, prehendō, 3
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, 4
art, ars, artis, *f.*
article, rēs, reī, *f.*
as, quod. *Suggests also the use of a participle or an ablative absolute*

as . . . possible, quam, *with the superlative of an adjective or adverb*
as soon as, simul atque, ut prīmum
ascend, ascendō, 3
ascent, ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
ask, rogō, 1; petō, 3; quaerō, 3
assemble, conveniō, 4
at first, prīmō
at home, domī
at once, statim
atrium, ātrium, -ī, *n.*
attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attack, *v.*, oppugnō, 1; impetum faciō, 3
attempt, *n.*, cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*
attempt, *v.*, cōnor, 1; temptō, 1
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
avenge, ulcīscor, 3
Aventine, Aventīnus, -ī, *m.*
await, exspectō, 1
awe, reverentia, -ae, *f.*

ballot, suffrāgium, -ī, *n.*
bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, *n.*, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*
be, sum
be accustomed, soleō, 2
be away, absum
be distant, absum
be in charge, praesum, *with dat.*
be in command, praesum, *with dat.*
be unoccupied, vacō, 1
be unwilling, nōlō
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
because, quod. *Suggests also the use of a participle or an ablative absolute*
because of, propter, ob, *with acc.*
become accustomed, cōnsuēscō, 3
before, *conj.*, antequam, priusquam
before, *prep.*, ante, apud, *with acc.*
beg, obsecrō, 1; petō, 3
begin, coepī, 3; incipiō, 3
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m. plur.*
believe, crēdō, 3, *with dat.*
best, optimus, -a, -um
boat, nāvis, -is, *f.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
Boii, Bōiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
book, liber, -brī, *m.*
both, uterque, -traque, -trumque
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e
break camp, castra moveō, 2
bride, nova nūpta, novae nūptae, *f.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
brief, brevis, -e
bring, portō, 1; ferō
bring together, comportō, 1
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
Briton, Britannus, -ī, *m.*
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*
build, aedificō, 1
but, sed
by, ā, ab, *with abl.*
by chance, forte

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1
Camillus, Camillus, -ī, *m.*
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
camp follower, cālō, -ōnis, *m.*
can, possum
capture, capiō, 3
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carry on war, bellum gerō, 3
carry out (plans), cōnficiō, 3

Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*
Carthaginians, Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
case, causa, -ae, *f.*
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, *m.*
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*; equitēs, -um, *m. plur.*
censor, cēnsor, -ōris, *m.*
censorship, cēnsūra, -ae, *f.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain, certus, -a, -um; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
chance, facultās, -ātis, *f.*
chance (by), forte
charge, be in, praesum, *with dat.*
chariot, esseda, -ae, *f.*; carrus, -ī, *m.*
charioteer, essedārius, -ī, *m.*
charm, dulcēdō, -inis, *f.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, ēligō, 3
Circe, Circē, -ēs, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
civilization, cultus, -ūs, *m.*
clansman, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
clemency, misericordia, -ae, *f.*
cohort, cohors, -hortis, *f.*
collect, cōgō, 3
come, veniō, 4
come up, coörior, 4
command, *n.*, imperium, -ī, *n.*
command, *v.*, imperō, 1, *with dat.*; jubeō, 2
companion, socius, -ī, *m.*
conquer, vincō, 3; superō, 1
Considius, Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*
construct, struō, 3
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
contain, contineō, 2
continent, continēns, -entis, *m.*
control, regō, 3
controversy, contrōversia, -ae, *f.*
Cornelius, Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
covering, tegimentum, -ī, *n.*
cross, trānseō
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*; īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.*
cut (sods), circumcīdō, 3

daily, cotīdiānus, -a, -um
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m.*
daybreak (at), prīmā lūce
dear, cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
decide, cōnstituō, 3; jūdicō, 1
decision, dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*
declare, cōnfirmō, 1
defeat, vincō, 3; superō, 1
defend, dēfendō, 3
delay, moror, 1
deliberate, dēlīberō, 1
delight, dēlectō, 1
demand, postulō, 1
depart, discēdō, 3; proficīscor, 3
deprive, prīvō, 1
depth, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
descend, dēscendō, 3
desert, dēserō, 3
desire, *n.*, cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*
desire, *v.*, cupiō, 3
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um
determine, cōnstituō, 3
devastate, vāstō, 1
die, morior, 3
differ, differō
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, *f.*
disappoint, dēiciō, 3

distant (be), absum
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
division, pars, partis, *f.*
do, faciō, 3; agō, 3
do one's duty, officium praestō, 1
draw out, ēdūcō, 3
draw up (line of battle), īnstruō, 3
dream, somnium, -ī, *n.*
drive back, reiciō, 3
drive out, expellō, 3
Druids, druidēs, -um, *m. plur.*
dry land, āridum, -ī, *n.*
duty, officium, -ī, *n.*
dwell, incolō, 3

each, quisque
each year, quotannīs
easily, facile
easy, facilis, -e
eighteen, duodēvīgintī
elect, creō, 1
elephant, elephantus, -ī, *m.*
employ, ūtor, 3, *with abl.*
encourage, hortor, 1
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*; inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
enjoy, fruor, 3, *with abl.*
enroll, cōnscrībō, 3
enter, intrō, 1
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
equestrian, equester, -tris, -tre
escort, dēdūcō, 3
every day, cotīdiē
everything, omnia, -ium, *n. plur.*
excel, praestō, 1, *with dat.*; superō, 1; plūs valeō, 2
exile, exsilium, -ī, *n.*
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

Fabricius, Fabricius, -ī, *m.*
face, faciēs, -ēī, *f.*
family, familia, -ae, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far, longē
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farther, longius
farthest, longissimē
fate, fātum, -ī, *n.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
favor, faveō, 2, *with dat.*
favorable, fēlix, fēlīcis
fear, *n.*, timor, -ōris, *m.*; metus, -ūs, *m.*
fear, *v.*, timeō, 2; vereor, 2
few, paucī, -ae, -a
fidelity, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
field, ager, -grī, *m.*
fight, pugnō, 1
fill, compleō, 2
find, inveniō, 4; reperiō, 4
find out, cognōscō, 3; sciō, 4
first, prīmus, -a, -um
five, quīnque
five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a
flee, fugiō, 3
fleece, vellus, -eris, *n.*
flower, flōs, flōris, *m.*
follow, sequor, 3
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
for, enim, nam
for the purpose of, ut, *with subjunctive*; *gerund or gerundive with* ad *or* causā
for the sake of, ut, *with subjunctive*; *gerund or gerundive with* ad *or* causā
force, vīs, vīs, *f.*
forced marches, magna itinera, magnōrum itinerum, *n. plur.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*

form (plans), capiō, 3
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
forum, forum, -ī, *n.*
four, quattuor
free, līber, -era, -erum; līberātus, -a, -um
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um; bonō animō
frighten, terreō, 2; perterreō, 2
from, ē, ex; ā, ab; dē, *with abl.*
from above, dēsuper
fruit, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
fugitive, fugitīvus, -ī, *m.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um

garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
garment, vestis, -is, *f.*
gather, conveniō, 4; cōgō, 3; legō, 3
Gaul (the country), Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gaul (a Gaul), Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
German, Germānus, -ī, *m.*
get possession of, potior, 4, *with abl.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, 1
give orders, imperō, 1, *with dat.*
give thanks, grātiās agō, 3
give up, dēsistō, 3, *with abl.*
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
go, eō
go back, revertō, 3
go on (of things), gerō, 3
go out, exeō
going to, *act. periphrastic conjugation*
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
good, bonus, -a, -um
good luck, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
Gracchus, Gracchus, -ī, *m.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
great, magnus, -a, -um
greedy, avārus, -a, -um
Greek, *adj.*, Graecus, -a, -um

Haeduans, Haeduī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*
happy, laetus, -a, -um
hard, dūrus, -a, -um
hard-pressed, labōrāns, -antis
harm, noceō, 2, *with dat.*
have, habeō, 2
he, is
health, valētūdō, -inis, *f.*
hear, audiō, 4
heavy, gravis, -e
help, *n.*, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
help, *v.*, juvō, 1; auxilium dō, 1
Helvetians, Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
hide, sē abdō, 3; lateō, 2; occultō, 1
hill, collis, -is, *m.*; mōns, montis, *m.*
himself, (*reflexive*) sē; (*intensive*) ipse
hinder, impediō, 4; dēterreō, 2
his, eius
his own, suus, -a, -um
hold, teneō, 2
hold out, sustineō, 2
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*
hope, *n.*, spēs, -eī, *f.*
hope, *v.*, spērō, 1
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*

horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*; domicilium, -ī, *n.*
how long, quam diū
how many, quot
human, hūmānus, -a, -um
hurl, jaciō, 3; adigō, 3
hurry, contendō, 3
husband, marītus, -ī, *m.*; conjūnx, -jugis, *m.*

I, ego
Iccius, Iccius, -ī, *m.*
if, sī. *Suggests also the use of a participle or an ablative absolute*
ill-disposed, inimīcō animō
image, imāgō, -inis, *f.*
impossible (be), nōn licet
in, in, *with abl.*
in order to, ut, *with the subjunctive*; *gerund or gerundive with* ad *or* causā
increase, augeō, 2
influence, addūcō, 3; commoveō, 2
inform, certiōrem faciō, 3
injury, injūria, -ae, *f.*
inquire, quaerō, 3
institute, cōnstituō, 3
intend, in animō habeō, 2
interest, studium, -ī, *n.*
interrupt, intermittō, 3
into, in, *with acc.*
it, id
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

Jason, Jāsōn, -onis, *m.*
javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
join, jungō, 3; conjungō, 3
joke, jocus, -ī, *m.*
journey, *n.*, iter, itineris, *n.*
journey, *v.*, iter faciō, 3
joy, gaudium, -ī, *n.*
jump down, dēsiliō, 4

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre
keep, teneō, 2; retineō, 2
keep out, prohibeō, 2
kill, necō, 1; interficiō, 3
kind, *n.*, modus, -ī, *m.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
know, sciō, 4; cognōscō, 3; intellegō, 3

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
lack, *n.*, inopia, -ae, *f.*
lack, *v.*, dēsum
land, *n.*, terra, -ae, *f.*; ager, -grī, *m.*
land (from ship), ex nāvī ēgredior, 3
later, *adv.*, post
laugh, rīdeō, 2
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lay aside, dēpōnō, 3
lead, dūcō, 3
lead back, redūcō, 3
lead out, ēdūcō, 3
lead together, condūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
learn, cognōscō, 3; intellegō, 3
leave, excēdō, 3; relinquō, 3; ēgredior, 3; exeō
legatus, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
leisure, ōtium, -ī, *n.*
less, minus
lest, nē, *with the subjunctive*
let, *suggests the use of the volitive subjunctive*

letter, līter̄a, -ae, *f.*; epistula, -ae, *f.*
lictor, līctor, -ōris, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
like, similis, -e
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
literature, līterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
little, *adj.*, parvus, -a, -um
little, *adv.*, paulō
live, incolō, 3; habitō, 1; vīvō, 3
locate, locō, 1
long, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um
long, *adv.*, diū
long time, *adv.*, diū
look for, quaerō, 3
lose, āmittō, 3; omittō, 3
Lower World, īnferī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
Lucretia, Lucrētia, -ae, *f.*
luxury, lūxuria, -ae, *f.*

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
make, faciō, 3
make (an account), cōnficiō, 3
make (a joke), dīcō, 3
make use of, ūtor, 3, *with abl.*
man, homō, -inis, *m.*; vir, virī, *m.*
manage, administrō, 1
maniple, manipulus, -ī, *m.*
manner, modus, -ī, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a
march, iter, itineris, *n.*
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
master, dominus, -ī, *m.*
material, māteria, -ae, *f.*
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
Menenius, Menēnius, -ī, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
method, modus, -ī, *m.*
midst of, medius, -a, -um
might, *v.*, licet
mile, mīlle passuum
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*; animus, -ī, *m.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
monster, mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*
more, plūs
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*; collis, -is, *m.*
move, moveō, 2; commoveō, 2
much, *adv.*, multō
my, meus, -a, -um

narrate, nārrō, 1
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
nation, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
near, prope, *with acc.*
necessary (be), oportet
need, necesse est; *passive periphrastic conjugation*
neglect, neglegō, 3
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
neither, neuter, -tra, -trum
Nervii, Nerviī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
never, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
no, nūllus, -a, -um
no great, parvus, -a, -um
no longer, nōn jam
no one, nūllus, -īus, *m.*; nēmō, nēminis, *m.*
nobility, nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*
noble, nōbilis, -e
noise, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*; clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
Noreia, Nōrēia, -ae, *f.*
not, nōn; nē, *with volitive subjunctive*
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*
number of, aliquot

obey, pāreō, 2, *with dat.*
offer, offerō
often, saepe
omen, ōmen, -inis, *n.*
on, in, *with abl.*
one, ūnus, -a, -um
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
or, aut, vel
order, *n.*, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*
order, *v.*, imperō, 1, *with dat.*; jubeō, 2
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
ornament, ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.*
Orpheus, Orpheus, -ī, *m.*
other, alius, alia, aliud; alter, -era, -erum
other (the others), cēterī, -ae, -a; reliquus, -a, -um
ought, dēbeō, 2; *passive periphrastic conjugation*
our, noster, -tra, -trum
our men, nostrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
out of, ē, ex, *with abl.*
overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3

pack, sarcina, -ae, *f.*
palace, rēgia, -ae, *f.*
Papirius, Papīrius, -ī, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
pass (of souls), trānseō
patricians, patrēs, -um, *m. plur.*
pay, pendō, 3
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people of Tusculum, Tusculānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
people of Veii, Veientēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
period of two years, biennium, -ī, *n.*
permissible (be), licet
Perseus, Perseus, -ī, *m.*
persuade, persuādeō, 2, *with dat.*
pertain, pertineō, 2
Phineus, Phīneus, -ī, *m.*
pierce, trānsfīgō, 3
pitch (camp), pōnō, 3
pity, misericordia, -ae, *f.*
place, locus, -ī, *m.*
place in command, praeficiō, 3, *with dat.*
plan, *n.*, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*; modus, -ī, *m.*
plan, *v.*, parō, 1; cōnsilium capiō, 3
plead (a case), dīcō, 3
please, dēlectō, 1; placeō, 2, *with dat.*
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um
pleasure, grātia, -ae, *f.*
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
pluck, rapiō, 3
plunder, praeda, -ae, *f.*
Pluto, Plūtō, -ōnis, *m.*
possessions, bona, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
possessions (their), sua, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
power, imperium, -ī, *n.*; rēgnum, -ī, *n.*; potestās, -ātis, *f.*
practice, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
praise, *n.*, laus, laudis, *f.*
praise, *v.*, laudō, 1
prepare, compōnō, 3
prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*
private, prīvātus, -a, -um
proceed, prōgredior, 3; proficīscor, 3
procession, pompa, -ae, *f.*
promise, polliceor, 2
protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
provide, prōvideō, 2
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
public, pūblicus, -a, -um
Pullo, Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*

punish, pūniō, 4
pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.*
purple, purpura, -ae, *f.*
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*

quickly, celeriter

raft, ratis, -is, *f.*
raise, tollō, 3
rapidly, celeriter
rather than, potius quam
reach, perveniō, 4
ready, parātus, -a, -um
realm, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
rejoice in, gaudeō, 2
relative, propinquus, -ī, *m.*
remain, maneō, 2
remarkable, ēgregius, -a, -um
Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
remove, moveō, 2
repair, reficiō, 3
repeal, abrogō, 1
repel, repellō, 3
report, renūntiō, 1
return, revertō, 3
resist, resistō, 3, *with dat.*
rest, cēterī, -ae, -a; reliquus, -a, -um
revise, recognōscō, 3
reward, praemium, -ī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
root, rādix, -īcis, *f.*

Sabinus, Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*
sail, nāvigō, 1
save, servō, 1
say, dīcō, 3
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
see, videō, 2
seek, petō, 3
seem, videor, 2
seize, capiō, 3; occupō, 1
select, ēligō, 3
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senate house, cūria, -ae, *f.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō, 3
send ahead, praemittō, 3
Sequanians, Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
set foot, cōnsistō, 3
set out, proficīscor, 3
set sail, solvō (nāvem), 3
setting out, profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*
seventh, septimus, -a, -um
she, ea
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shoe, calceus, -ī, *m.*
shore, lītus, -oris, *n.*
short, brevis, -e
shout, exclāmō, 1; magnā vōce dīcō, 3
show, dēmōnstrō, 1; ostendō, 3; ūtor, 3, *with abl.*
shut out, exclūdō, 3
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
sing, cantō, 1
six, sex
size, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
skilled, perītus, -a, -um
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slay, occīdo, 3; interficiō, 3
so, ita, sīc, igitur, tam
so much, *adj.*, tantus, -a, -um
so much, *adv.*, tantum

so that, ut, *with the subjunctive in a clause of result*
sod, caespes, -itis, *m.*
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
some, aliquis
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
soon, mox
soul, anima, -ae, *f.*
spare, parcō, 3, *with dat.*
speak, dīcō, 3
speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
spread out, laxō, 1
standard bearer, signifer, -erī, *m.*; aquilifer, -erī, *m.*
start (battle), committō, 3
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
steep, dēclīvis, -e
stop, prohibeō, 2
storm, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*; rēs, reī, *f.*
strange, novus, -a, -um
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vīrēs, -ium, *f. plur.*
strong, validus, -a, -um
study, discō, 3
such great, tantus, -a, -um
sufficient, satis
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
summon, arcessō, 3
superstition, superstitiō, -ōnis, *f.*
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
surpass, superō, 1; praestō, 1, *with dat.*
surround, circumveniō, 4; circumdō, 1
sweet, dulcis, -e
swine, porcus, -ī, *m.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*
sympathize, cōnsentiō, 4
take a position, cōnsistō, 3
take off, dētrahō, 3
take to flight, mē in fugam dō, 1
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*
task, rēs, reī, *f.*
teach, doceō, 2
tell, nūntiō, 1
tenth, decimus, -a, -um
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
territory, fīnis, -is, *m.*
than, quam; *ablative if* quam *is omitted*
that, *conj., in purpose and result (affirmative)*, ut
that, *dem. pron. and adj.*, ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id
that not, (*purpose*) nē; (*result*) ut . . . nōn
their, eōrum, eārum, eōrum
their own, suus, -a, -um
then, tum
there, ibi
think, putō, 1
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
though, *suggests the use of a participle or an ablative absolute*
thousand, mīlle
three, trēs, tria
through, per, *with acc.*
throw, jaciō, 3; mittō, 3
throw one's self, sē inicere, 3; sē prōicere, 3
Tigurini, Tigurīnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
till, colō, 3
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um
to, ad, in, *with acc.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
train, exerceō, 2
training, disciplīna, -ae, f.

transports, nāvēs onerāriae, nāvium onerārium, *f. plur.*
treaty, foedus, -eris, *n.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
tribe, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
tribuneship, tribūnātus, -ūs, *m.*
tribute, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
trouble, negōtium, -ī, *n.*
trust, cōnfīdō, 3, *with dat.*
try, cōnor, 1; temptō, 1
turn, vertō, 3; flectō, 3
turn (change), mūtō, 1
turn away, āvertō, 3
Tusculan, Tusculānus, -ī, *m.*
Tusculum, Tusculum, -ī, *n.*
two, duo, duae, duo
two years' time, biennium, -ī, *n.*

unfavorable, aliēnus, -a, -um
unharmed, incolumis, -e; tūtus, -a, -um
unoccupied (be), vacō, 1
unskilled, imperītus, -a, -um
unwilling (be), nōlō
use, *n.*, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
use, *v.*, ūtor, 3, *with abl.*

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
Veii, Veiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
very near, proximus, -a, -um
vessel, nāvis, -is, *f.*
victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
vigorously, vehementer
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*
Volusenus, Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*
Vorenus, Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*

wage war, bellum gerō, 3
walk, ambulō, 1
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um
warn, moneō, 2
watch, spectō, 1
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
wave, unda, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*; modus, -ī, *m.*
wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
wear, gerō, 3
wearied, dēfessus, -a, -um
weeping, lacrimāns, -antis
well-known, nōtus, -a, -um
what, quis, quae, quid
what a great, quantus, -a, -um
when, ubi, *with the indicative*; cum, *with the subjunctive. Suggests also the use of a participle or an ablative absolute*
where, ubi
whether, num, utrum
which, *interrog.*, quis, quae, quid
which, *rel.*, quī, quae, quod
which of two, uter, -tra, -trum
while, dum. *Suggests also the use of a participle or an ablative absolute*
who, *interrog.*, quis, quae, quid
who, *rel.*, quī, quae, quod
whole, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr
wide, lātus, -a, -um
width, lātitūdō, -inis, *f.*
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
wild, ferus, -a, -um
willing (be), volō
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*

winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
wish, cupiō, 3
with, cum, *with abl.*
withdraw, discēdō, 3; excēdō, 3
withstand, perferō
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*
woods, silva, -ae, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
workman, faber, -brī, *m.*
worthy, dignus, -a, -um
wretched, miser, -era, -erum
write, scrībō, 3
wrong, injūria, -ae, *f.*

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
years, **period of two**, biennium, -ī, *n.*
you, tū
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
your, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum

zeal, studium, -ī, *n.*

INDEX

Arabic numbers refer to sections, unless otherwise stated; but references to the Appendix are preceded by Ap. Roman numerals refer to pages of the Introduction. Especially important references are in black-faced type.

ablative
absolute, 21, 18; 32, 1, 10; **33**; 36, 6; 70, 14; **231**; Ap. 33
of accompaniment, 30, 9; Ap. 29
of accordance, 141, 9; Ap. 31, *a*
of agent, 30, 9; Ap. 40
of cause, 126, 13; Ap. 32
of comparison, 141, 3; **144**; 202, 7; 256; Ap. 35
of degree (measure) of difference, 76, 24; 83, 7; 109, 6; 215, 2; 256; Ap. 36
of description, 83, 4; 109, 3; **183**; Ap. 37
of manner, 30, 9; Ap. 31
of means, 30, 9; Ap. 30
of place whence (from which), 30, 9; **93**; 98; Ap. 39
of place where (in which), 30, 9; **93**; Ap. 41
of respect, 30, 9; Ap. 43
of separation, 30, 9; **98**; Ap. 38
of time when or within which, 30, 9; Ap. 42
with **dignus**, 7, 13; 142; Ap. 44
with prepositions, Ap. 45
with special deponent verbs, 76, 18; 97, 17; 109, 4; **112**; Ap. 34
accusative
adverbial, 225, 32, 40; 229, 26
as direct object, 24, 7; Ap. 23
as subject of infinitive, 24, 7; Ap. 27
of extent, 24, 7; Ap. 26
of place whither (to which), 24, 7; 32, 2; **93**; Ap. 24
two accusatives, direct object and secondary object, 136, 17; direct object and adjunct accusative, Ap. 9, *b*; Ap. 28
with compounds of **trāns**, 194, 5; 229, 4
with prepositions, Ap. 25
adjectives
agreement of, Ap. 2
comparison, regular, Ap. p. 11; irregular, Ap. p. 11
declension, first and second, Ap. p. 4; irregular, Ap. p. 6; third, Ap. p. 5; of comparatives, Ap. pp. 6–7
denoting a part, 138
numeral, Ap. p. 12
predicate, Ap. 3, 9
substantive use, Ap. 6
superlatives, with **quam**, 172, 13
adverbs, comparison, Ap. p. 11
adversative clause
with indicative, Ap. 62
with subjunctive, Ap. 75
agreement
of adjective with noun, Ap. 2
of appositives, Ap. 4
of participial part of infinitive with subject, 16, 4; 21, 13; 27
of relative with antecedent, Ap. 5
of verb with subject, Ap. 1
plural verb with singular subject, 97, 7; Ap. 1, *a*
aliquis, declension, Ap. p. 9
alius, declension, Ap. p. 6; used twice in different cases, 251, 15
alter, declension, Ap. p. 6
Anglo-Saxon, p. xix; 45, 4; 133, 2; 187, 4; 212, 5; 260, 7
antecedent
in the relative clause, 109, 1; 194, 10; 263, 3
omission of, 91, 7; 251, 27; 263, 13

antequam, with indicative, Ap. 78, *a*
with subjunctive, 237, 1; **238**
appositives, agreement of, Ap. 4
Aryan, p. xix; 45, 4

cardinal numerals, Ap. p. 12
causal clauses
with **cum**, Ap. 74
with **quod**, **quia**, etc. with indicative, 104, Note 2; Ap. 79; with subjunctive, Ap. 79
characteristic clauses. *See* **relative clause**
clauses, dependent, 51, 7; **84**
cognate languages, p. xix; 45, 4; **212**, 5; 260, 7; 279, 4
collateral reading, p. xvi; pp. 5, 83, 152–153
comparatives, declension, Ap. p. 6
comparison, of adjectives, Ap. p. 11; of adverbs, Ap. p. 11
compounds, 300, 3
conjugation of verbs
deponent, Ap. pp. 21–23
irregular, Ap. pp. 23–29
regular, Ap. pp. 13–21
cum clauses
adversative, 156, 6; Ap. 75
causal, Ap. 74
descriptive, 91, 9; 103, 6; **117**

dative
double dative, 206, 18; **208**; Ap. 19, *a*
of agent, 246, 13; **248**; Ap. 20
of indirect object, 19, 8; Ap. 14
of possession (possessor), 131, 19; 141, 2; **143**; 190, 9; Ap. 21
of purpose, 156, 24; **208**; Ap. 19
of reference, 19, 8; Ap. 16
of separation, 131, 10; 229, 21; Ap. 22
with adjectives, 19, 8; Ap. 15
with compounds, 43, 4; 48, 12; 76, 5; 91, 10; **111**; Ap. 17
with passive of special verbs, Ap. 18, *a*
with special verbs, 7, 5; 43, 10; 61, 17; **71**; 273, 5; Ap. 18
declensions
of adjectives, Ap. pp. 4–7
of nouns, Ap. pp. 1–3; of **i**-stems, 30, 4; Ap. p. 2
of pronouns, Ap. pp. 7–10
defective verbs, 53, 10; 148, 5
demonstrative pronouns, declension, Ap. p. 8
deponent verbs, 21, 11; 26, 2; 32, 5; 38, 4; 43, 5, 11, 16; 48, 4, 10; 53, 3; **54**; 70, 19; 234, 1; Ap. pp. 21–23
derivatives, English, p. xviii; direct and indirect, 13, 3
domī, 'at home,' 93
doublets, 73, 4; 212, 4
duo, declension, Ap. p. 6

ego, declension, Ap. p. 7
eō, conjugation, Ap. p. 27
etsī, in adversative clauses, Ap. 62

fearing, verbs of, Ap. 68
ferō, conjugation, Ap. p. 26
fīō, conjugation, Ap. pp. 27–28
future perfect tense, Ap. 54
future tense
indicative, Ap. 54
infinitive, 16, 7; 21, 13; 26, 8; **27**
participle, 26, 8; **27**; 173; 178, 5; 247

genitive
objective, 70, 13; 83, 15; **97**, **4**
of description, 14, 9; **183**; Ap. 12
of measure, 141, 8; **183**; Ap. 12, *a*
of the whole, 14, 9; **138**; Ap. 11
possessive, 14, 9; Ap. 10
with adjectives, 109, 5; 116, 11; 141, 14; **142**; Ap. 13
with **causā**, 61, 14
gerund, 26, 7; 53, 5; 76, 10; **77**; **78**; Ap. 90
gerundive, expressing purpose, 169, 14; 172, 14; **173**; Ap. 89

heteronyms, 187, 4; 285, 4
hic, declension, Ap. p. 8
hindering, verbs of, Ap. 69
historical present, 172, 16; 177, 1, 2; Ap. 51

idem, declension, Ap. p. 8
ille, declension, Ap. p. 8
imperative, Ap. 80
impersonal passive, 83, 3; 97, 20; 110; **207**; Ap. 48

impersonal verbs
licet, 97, 22; **132**; Ap. 49
oportet, 131, 17; **132**; Ap. 49
implied indirect discourse, 306, 15
in with acc. and abl., 93
indefinite pronouns
declension, Ap. pp. 9–10
uses, 16, 3; 136, 2; 149
indicative mood
in adversative clauses, Ap. 62
in causal clauses, Ap. 79
in relative clauses, Ap. 60
in temporal clauses, Ap. 61
indirect questions, 121, 3; 126, 14, 15; 148, 12, 16; **149**; Ap. 76
indirect statements, Ap. 84
contrasted with indirect questions, 149
subordinate clauses in, mood of, 152, 7; 251, 34; Ap. 77
infinitive
as object, 99; Ap. 81
as subject, 99; Ap. 83
complementary, Ap. 82
future active, 16, 7; 21, 13; 26, 8; **27**
in indirect discourse, Ap. 84
perfect passive, 16, 4; **27**
summary of, **27**
tenses in indirect statements, Ap. 84, *a*, *b*, *c*
intensive pronoun, declension, Ap. p. 8
interrogative pronoun, declension, Ap. p. 9
ipse, declension, Ap. p. 8
irregular verbs, conjugation
eō, 124, 1
ferō, 61, 7; 76, 14; **101, 1**
fīō, 53, 6; 97, 23; 116, 12; **119, 1**
volō, 76, 16; 109, 12; **114, 1**
is, declension, Ap. p. 8

Latin, as an aid in English spelling, 40
Latin words and roots in English, **agere**, 285, 3; **capere**, 273, 2; **cernere**, 300, 2; **claudere**, 212, 2; **-clīnāre**, 118, 2; **crux**, 291, 6; **-cumbere**, 35, 2; **dicāre**, 273, 3; **dō**, 230, 3; **emere**, 178, 2; **ferō**, 187, 3; **fīdere**, 212, 3; **flōs**, 23, 4; **fluere**, 260, 2; **gerere**, 239, 2; **gradī**, 195, 2; **jungere**, 279, 3; **leg-**, 178, 3; **levis**, 230, 2; **loquī**, 267, 5; **mandāre**, 153, 2; **merx**, 303, 2; **movēre**, 285, 2; **nāscī**, 80, 3; **nōscere**, 279, 2; **pend-**, 4, 2; **perīculum**, 260, 6; **poena**, 303, 3; **pondus**, 113, 1; **prehendere**, 13, 2; **premere**, 260, 3; **prex**, 45, 3; **quaerere**, 243, 2; **ratiō**, 239, 5; **regere**, 303, 6; **rumpere**, 187, 2; **salīre**, 267, 2; **sequī**, 88, 3; **sistere**, 243, 4; **solvere**, 23, 3; **-spicere**, 252, 2; **statuere**, 267, 3; **struere**, 203, 2; **sūmere**, 260, 4; **tangere**, 56; **tendere**, 29, 3; **tenēre**, 243, 3; **testis**, 67, 3; **trahere**, 252, 3; **tribuere**, 9, 3; **vagārī**, 174, 2; **volvere**, 18, 3
lest, 226, Note
locative case, 43, 2; 76, 29, 33; **93**; 95, 2; Ap. 47

mālō, conjugation, Ap. pp. 28–29
methods of study
comprehension of thought, pp. xxi–xxii; p. 87
inflections, p. xvi
syntax, p. xvi
vocabulary, p. xvi; 8; 16, 11; 21, 17

nē, conjunction
with clauses of purpose, 91, 21; Ap. 64
with substantive clauses, after verbs of fearing, 226; Ap. 68; after verbs of hindering, Ap. 69
with volitive subjunctive, 61, 28; 63; Ap. 63
negatives, 61, 28; 63; 85; 91, 21; 104, Note 1; 122; 226
nōlō, conjugation, Ap. pp. 28–29; use, Ap. 80, *a*
nominative as subject or predicate of a finite verb, review of, 14, 9; Ap. 8, 9
nōn, with clauses of result, 85
nouns
first declension, Ap. p. 1
second declension, Ap. p. 1
third declension, Ap. pp. 2–3
fourth declension, Ap. p. 3
fifth declension, Ap. p. 3
irregular nouns, Ap. p. 3
numerals, Ap. pp. 6, 12

object, direct, Ap. 23; indirect, Ap. 14
order of words, pp. xxii–xxiv; 7, 6; 16, 1
ordinal numerals, Ap. p. 12

participles
condensed use of, 91, 23; 206, 25; 233, 9; 234, 3
containing the leading idea, 109, 2; 234, 4
definition, Ap. 85
equivalent to clauses, 24, 6; Ap. 86
future active, 26, 8; **27**; Ap. 87
future passive, 173; 178, 5; 247; Ap. 88
in the periphrastic conjugations, Ap. 87, 88
perfect participle of deponent verb, 70, 19; 156, 8; **234, 1**
present active, 16, 10; **21, 2**; 24, 5; **27**; 133, 2
summary of, **27**
translation of, 24, 6; 70, 19
used substantively, 83, 18, 24; 206, 26; 234, 2; Ap. 6
passive voice, dative retained with, 152, 10; 207; 233, 17; Ap. 18, *a*
past participle with **habeō**, 230, 4
past perfect tense
indicative, Ap. 56
subjunctive, 105; Ap. 58; Ap. 59, *b*
past progressive (imperfect) tense
indicative, Ap. 53
repeated action, 225, 2; Ap. 53
subjunctive, 76, 13; 86; Ap. 58; Ap. 59, *b*
perfect tense
indicative, Ap. 55
infinitive, 16, 4
participle, 70, 19; 156, 8; 234, 1
subjunctive, 105; Ap. 58; Ap. 59, *c*
periphrastic conjugations
active, 53, 2; 109, 14; 156, 14; 181, 5; **182**
passive, 131, 13; 148, 16; 215, 24; 246, 13; **247**; 249
personal pronouns, declension, Ap. p. 7
place, from which (whence), 30, 9; **93**; 95, 2
in which (where), 30, 9; **93**; 95, 2
to which (whither), 24, **7**; 32, 2; **93**; 95, 2
plūs, declension, Ap. p. 7
possum, conjugation, Ap. pp. 24–25
postquam, with indicative, Ap. 61
predicate adjective, Ap. 3, 9
predicate noun, agreement, Ap. 3, 9
prepositions
with ablative, Ap. 45
with accusative, Ap. 25
present tense
historical, 172, 16; 177, 1, 2; Ap. 51
indicative, Ap. 50
infinitive, in indirect discourse, Ap. 84
participle, 16, 10; 21, 2; 27; Ap. p. 5
subjunctive, 65; Ap. 58; Ap. 59, *a*
with **dum**, Ap. 52
pronouns, declensions, Ap. pp. 7–10
purpose, expression of
adverbial clause, 76, 13; 97, 14; 103, 2; **104**; Ap. 64
dative of, 208
gerund with **ad** or **causā**, 126, 10; **127**; Ap. 92
gerundive, 169, 14; **173**; Ap. 89
relative clause, 121, 16, 17; 152, 16; 156, 10; 181, 15; 186, 9; **199**; Ap. 65
relative clause containing a comparative, 186, 19; **242, 14**; Ap. 66
supine, 269, 1

quam, with comparatives, 144; Ap. 35, *a*
with superlatives, 172, 13
quamquam, with indicative, Ap. 62
questions
indirect, 149; Ap. 76
introductory words, 38, 1
quī, indefinite, declension, Ap. p. 9
quī, relative, declension, Ap. p. 9
quīdam, declension, Ap. p. 10; use, 16, 3
quīn, after verbs of hindering, Ap. 69
quis, indefinite, declension, Ap. p. 9; use, 136, 2; 149
quis, interrogative, declension, Ap. p. 9; use, 149
quisquam, declension, Ap. p. 10
quisque, declension, Ap. p. 10
quō, with purpose clauses, 186, 19; 242, 14; Ap. 66

quod, in causal clauses, with indicative, 104, Note 2; Ap. 79; with subjunctive, Ap. 79
in substantive clauses of fact, 221, 12
quōminus, after verbs of hindering, Ap. 69

reflexive pronouns, declension, Ap. p. 7
relative clause
antecedent in, 263, 3
contrasted with indirect question, 149
descriptive (characteristic), Ap. 73
of fact, Ap. 60
of purpose, 199
preceding antecedent clause, 194, 10
relative pronoun
agreement of, Ap. 5
beginning a new sentence (introductory relative), Ap. 7
declension, Ap. p. 9
result clauses
adverbial, 76, 15, 36; 83, 1, 5, 17; **85**; Ap. 70
substantive, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 229, **7**; 266, 18; Ap. 71
tenses in, 85; 191; 194, 3; Ap. 59, *c*
romance languages, p. xviii; 153, 3; 230, 4
French, 35, **3**; 94, 3; 100, 2, 3; 106, **3**; 113, **3**; **123**, **3**; 128, 3; 133, **3**; **145**, **3**

semi-deponent verbs, 137
separation, ablative of, Ap. 38
dative of, Ap. 22
sequence of tenses, explanation of, 191; Ap. 59
sōlus, declension, Ap. p. 6
stories of words, ambition, 239, 4; avalanche, 291, 2; candidate, 23, 5; consider, 303, 4; constable, 94, 2; defalcation, 291, 5; derivative, 291, 3; fossil, 88, 2; insult, 267, **6**; interest, 303, 5; item, 178, 4; jest, 239, 3; opportunity, 260, 5; pagan, 195, 3; peculiar, 29; pilgrim, 273, **4**; reverend, 73, 2; rival, 291, 4; seminary, 73, 3; umpire, 9, 4; volume, 18, 4
subjunctive mood, in English, 62
subjunctive mood, in Latin
after verbs of fearing, 148, 14; 215, 5; **226**; Ap. 68
after verbs of hindering, Ap. 69
forms of, 64
in adversative clauses, Ap. 75
in causal clauses, Ap. 74, 79
in clauses of anticipation, 237, 1; **238**; 240; 255, 24
in clauses of description (relative), Ap. 73
in clauses of purpose, 76, 13; 91, 17; 199; Ap. 64, 65, 66
in clauses of result, 76, 15, 36; 83, 1, 5, 17; **85**; Ap. 70
in **cum** clauses of description, 91, 9; **117**; Ap. 72
in indirect discourse, in subordinate clauses, 152, 7; 251, 34; Ap. 77
in indirect questions, 121, 3; 126, 14, 15; Ap. 76
optative, 61, 3, 28
volitive, 43, 15; 48, 2, 9, 14; 53, 1; 61, 3, 28; **63**; Ap. 63
substantive clauses
after verbs of fearing, 148, 14; 156, 9; 215, 5; **226**; 227; Ap. 68
after verbs of hindering, Ap. 69
of fact, 221, 12
of result, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 229, 7; 266, 18; Ap. 71
volitive, 121, 4, 11; **122**; Ap. 67
sum, conjugation, Ap. pp. 23–24
suffixes, review of, 50
-ālis, 106, 1; **-idus**, 145, 2; **-īlis**, etc., 128, 1; **-mentum**, 203, 3; **-mōnium**, 67, 4; **-ulum**, 123, 1; **-ulus**, 80, 4
supine, 269, 1

temporal clauses
indicative uses
with **antequam** or **priusquam**, denoting a fact, Ap. 78, *a*
with **dum** meaning *while*, Ap. 52
with **postquam**, **ut**, **ubi**, etc., Ap. 61

subjunctive uses
with **antequam** or **priusquam** denoting anticipation, 238; Ap. 78
with **cum** in descriptive (circumstantial) clauses, 117; Ap. 72
tenses
of the indicative, Ap. 50–57
of the infinitive, in indirect discourse, Ap. 84, *a*, *b*, *c*
of the subjunctive, in dependent clauses, Ap. 58–59
sequence of, 191; Ap. 59
tōtus, declension, Ap. p. 6
translation, p. xix; p. 156
of the ablative absolute, 33; 36, 6
of expressions of purpose, 104; 127
of future infinitive, 97, 18
of impersonal verbs, 132, Note
of participles, 24, 6; 36, 7
of the passive periphrastic, 248
of purpose clauses, 104; 199
trēs, declension, Ap. p. 6
tū, declension, Ap. p. 7

ubi, with indicative, Ap. 61
ūllus, declension, Ap. p. 6
ūnus, declension, Ap. p. 6
ut
with clauses of purpose, 104; Ap. 64
with clauses of result, 85; Ap. 70
with indicative, 84
with substantive clauses of volition, 122; Ap. 67
uter, declension, Ap. p. 6
ūtor, with ablative, Ap. 34
utrum . . . an, 152, 17

verbs
agreement of, Ap. 1
See **conjugation** *and the several tenses*
vocative, Ap. 46
volitive subjunctive, Ap. 63
volō, conjugation, Ap. pp. 28–29

DEPARTMENT ... TION
COUNTY ...
S...
ALHAMBRA C... DISTRIC
No. 29 47